THE
HIMALAYAN
GAZETTEER

Vol. II Part I

EDWIN T. ATKINSON

COSMO PUBLICATIONS
NEW DELHI  INDIA
1981
First published under the title
'THE HIMALAYAN DISTRICTS of the North Western Provinces of India'

THIS EDITION 1981

Published by
COSMO PUBLICATIONS
24B, ANSARI ROAD
NEW DELHI-110002

Printed by
MEHRA OFFSET PRESS
NEW DELHI-110002
PREFACE.

The system of transliteration used is the same as in former volumes and need not be given here. With the exception of the alphabetical list of villages, towns and local sub-divisions in the Himalaya of the North-Western Provinces, this volume concludes all that I have undertaken to prepare. Since April, 1876, I have not been in charge of the North-Western Provinces Gazetteer, and what I have done has been accomplished in the few hours of leisure that I could secure for the task and without assistance of any kind. The present volume was prepared for printing during my absence on furlough in 1882-83, and had the disadvantage of being carried through the press in India whilst I was far away from any references. Still, it is hoped that its contents will be found suggestive to many, of the lines that they should take up, not only for the higher aim of aiding in the great work of diffusing a knowledge of India and its peoples, but for the personal aim of following out some study which may give to the student a fresh interest in life and help to dissipate the "general dissatisfaction" which an eternal round of hearing petty cases and going through drills and parades, added to climatic influences, is certain to effect. The materials lie around in abundance whichever way one's tastes may lie, and it has been my principal object in all that has been written, to suggest to the rising generation of officials what they can do, and help them on the way.

The chapter on Zoology is local as far as the Insectae, but for that division my work reviews the major portion of what has been written regarding the insects of India, excluding British Burmah. It is an attempt for the first time in any European language to take stock, as a whole, of the species that have been described as occurring in India, and is necessarily full of omissions; for it is not in the power of any one to examine thoroughly the vast literature on the subject. Such as they are, these lists are offered as an aid to the student of our Indian fauna, and have been made more useful by a short introduction to each order and a reference to works where the subject will be found explained and illustrated more
fully. A work of this kind is necessary to induce those with time and tastes for investigating our exceedingly rich fauna to proceed with their work, and it is hoped that the publication of these lists will induce many to take to the study of some particular branch of natural history the materials for which have been indicated by me. I am indebted to Mr. Greig, Conservator of Forests, North-Western Provinces, for his interesting notes on the mammalia; to Major G. F. L. Marshall for the list of birds, and to Mr. Theobald for aid in compiling the list of reptiles and land and fresh-water shells. The authorities consulted in the remaining orders are fully noticed by me in the ‘References’ at foot of each, and the whole represents the outcome of notes made during the last twenty years. The history of the Khasiyas of Kumaon and its rulers up to the publication of this volume has no existence, and what I now give may be fairly taken as an example of what can be done by piecing together facts gathered here and there from writers in Latin, Greek and Sanskrit. Pursuing the Khasiyas or Khasas wherever they have been named by these writers, and all allusions to the Himalaya of the North-Western Provinces and the sacred world-famed shrines of Badarinath and Kedarnath, we have a fairly-connected history of the people and the country from the very earliest times. The local inscriptions and the records of the neighbouring country of Nepal fill up many a gap and confirm or explain tradition. For tradition, I have had the valuable notes of the late Rudradatta Pant, a learned Brahman of Almora, the results of whose inquiries were transmitted to me by Sir John Strachey. I also examined the records of all suits for revenue-free grants of land, chiefly decided by Mr. Traill, the first Commissioner of Kumaon, and from them obtained copies of the grants made by the earlier rulers, which afford a fair series from the fifteenth century onwards, and confirm in a great measure or correct the data arrived at from traditional sources. They also explain in many instances the reasons for the grants, and thus afford valuable materials for history, and with the local genealogies give a fairly exhaustive and accurate list of the rulers.

The travels of Hwen Thsang have been examined and confirmed, and the sites of Brahmapura and the Amazonian kingdom of the

Queens of the East,' the Srí Ráya of the Puránas, have been ascertained: Tradition connected Kumaon with the celebrated
Vikramāditya, but I have shown that the popular story of that Rāja and his era cannot be accepted; that the Saka era was really established in 79 A.D., to mark the consecration of the Buddhist Saka king Kanishka: but the Vikramāditya era was not used until the eighth century, though dating from 56 B.C., and was the invention of the anti-Buddhist faction. Neither of these eras is connected with the local history of Kumaon.

Another important bye-examination is the question of the connection between the Khasas and Katyārī rulers in Kumaon and the Kho people and Kator rulers in Kashkāra at the western end of the Himālaya beyond Kashmir. This connection was suggested by the late Sir H. M. Elliot, and I have examined it so far as my materials allowed, and have afforded the inquirer, by references, means for judging for himself of the correctness or otherwise of the conclusions at which I have arrived (p. 438). One outcome of this digression is the conviction that the time has passed for attributing to the small Aryan immigration to which we owe the Vedas, the origin of all the races who are assumed to be of Aryan blood, and even for holding that all so-called Rajpūts are of Aryan descent. What Aryans were, and how to tribes of common origin the name has been denied, has been noticed; and it would not be difficult to show that some of our oldest Rajpūt tribes are of Baktrian, Parthian or Skythian origin. Indeed, no result of my researches is of more importance than this, that the Aryans of the Vedas were soon absorbed by the indigenous populations and the never-ceasing waves of immigrants, and have left behind them a language and a literature as their most lasting remains. The Khasiyas of Kumaon have as much right to be called an Aryan race in its widest sense as many others with a more established name, but the fact that they have not yet come up to their plains brethren in caste and religious observances still excludes them from the ranks of the twice-born. A close observer can still see amongst them the working of those laws which have in the course of centuries transmuted many a similarly-situated tribe into good Hindús. A prosperous Kumāoni Dom stonemason can command a wife from the lower Rajpūt Khasiyas, and a successful Khasiya can buy a wife from a descendant of a family of pure plains pedigree. Year by year the Brāhmanising influence proceeds, and
people are becoming more orthodox in their religious observances and the sanes of the dīi minores are becoming somewhat neglected. No more powerful influence in this direction exists than the teachings of our educational department, strange as it may seem; but with education comes a fitness for higher employment, and with us in Kumaon, higher emoluments means respectability, and this in turn ensures orthodoxy. The few prayers of the hard-worked cultivator are improved into the lengthened ostentatious services of the well-paid leisure-loving clerk or contractor.

The chapters on religion\(^1\) open up a new survey of the subject. We commence with religion as it is, and work upwards. We have before us a census of nearly one thousand temples, and the analysis of the forms worshipped in them gives us an accurate grasp of the existing phenomena. This accomplished, the historic method is adopted and the history of each form, or rather class of forms, is traced with the result that we find that Buddhism, though nominally dead, yet lives and is still the faith of the masses; for the existing ceremonies and services can be traced back as readily to corrupted Buddhism as to Sivaism. This explains the apparent disappearance of Buddhism in the tenth to the twelfth century, and answers the query which has often arisen in the mind of the thoughtful observer,—how did Buddhism disappear; what were the influences at work which led to the downfall of a religion which for fifteen centuries occupied the thoughts and held the affections of a great section of the Indian people? The answer is clearly, that Buddhism has been absorbed by Sivaism and that both have been influenced to such a degree by the polydaemonistic cults of the aboriginal tribes as to preserve little of their original structure. This mingling of the pre-Brahmanical, Buddhistic and Animistic conceptions has given us the existing Hinduism of the masses, and has had even a considerable influence in moulding the tenets of the more esoteric schools.

Our examination of the religious festivals observed in Kumaon supports these conclusions: The more popular of these are regulated by the solar calendar and the Saka year, and where held according to the luni-solar year, are by no means of Brahmanical origin. They are the festivals at the two harvests;

\(^1\) These form, with considerable local additions, the substance of a paper read by me before the Asiatic Society of Bengal.
those in honor of the Nágas at the Jeth Dasahra and Nág-pam-
chami, the great Saiva Saktá services of the first nine nights of
Chait and Asoj, and the festivals in honor of the rural deities,
Ghantakarn, Goril, Chaumu, &c. The sacrifice of kids is a part of
almost all the ceremonies on these occasions, young male buffaloes
are also offered, and in former times human sacrifices were no:
uncommon at the temples of the dark half of the consort of Sív.
All these facts mark the non-Brahmanical origin of the more popular
festivals of the mass of the people. An examination of the san-
dhya or daily prayers and of the services given in the Dasakar-
mádi paddhati or 'manual of the ten rites, &c,' also shows that the
solid portion of the ritual is borrowed from the Tantras, the
acknowledged fifth Veda of both Saiva and Baudhá in the tenth
century. Most of us have seen the natives of India at their daily
devotions and have doubtless wondered what their meditations
were, and what the curious movements of the hands within the
prayer-bag (gaumnukk) and muttered words intended. I am not
aware that these have ever been the subject of inquiry, or that
they have ever been recorded and explained, and now record the
prándyádm and its prefaces after a lengthened practice of them
myself. The other portions of the ritual have never been given in
such detail, and without them the services cannot be either correctly
appreciated or properly understood. Nearly all these ceremonies
possess more or less ornate rituals which are full of those mystical
formulæ, dharanis, mantras, vijás and mudras which appear to
have been the fashion all over the world when the Tantras were
written—for India has its dark middle ages quite as much as Eu-
rope. In nothing is the kinship of race more distinctly shown
than in the history of thought in India and in Europe; almost every
theory advanced by Greek and Roman thinkers has its parallel in
India; and in the kaleidoscopic mass of beliefs to be studied in any
considerable Indian town, we can find curious and startling
analogies with the broad beliefs of the inhabitants of our European
cities. Let this real union help us in our efforts to know each
other, and to this end I offer this portion of my last contribution
to our knowledge of the North-Western Provinces.

CALCUTTA;  
20th March, 1884.  

E. T. ATKINSON.
ERRATA.

[List of some of the errata, chiefly due to the fact that the work was printed in India on revised first proofs whilst the writer was in England.]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page.</th>
<th>Line from top of page.</th>
<th>For</th>
<th>Read</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>third</td>
<td>fourth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Pseudepitas schistacea</td>
<td>Semnopithecus schistacea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>21, 84</td>
<td>Inus</td>
<td>Maecus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Pachyurus indica, An</td>
<td>Crocidura caruleosceus, Shaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Sorex socatus Hodg</td>
<td>Crocidura murina.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>pygmeaides</td>
<td>pygmeaides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Hyena</td>
<td>Hyena.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>1, 16</td>
<td>Nemoroedus</td>
<td>Nemoroedus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Hoewen</td>
<td>Hoewen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Canines</td>
<td>Canines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Antelepe</td>
<td>Antelepe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Rhinosceras</td>
<td>Rhinosceras.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Brooks</td>
<td>Brooks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>(No. 20)</td>
<td>caruleosceus</td>
<td>caruleosceus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>(No. 180)</td>
<td>Brochycpteram</td>
<td>Brachycpteram.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>(No. 237)</td>
<td>shrike</td>
<td>shrike.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>(No. 624)</td>
<td>red-headed</td>
<td>red-headed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>t. 100</td>
<td>t. 77.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Bene</td>
<td>Bene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>calathrus</td>
<td>calathrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>(Margin)</td>
<td>Bentamena</td>
<td>Pentamena.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Amazine</td>
<td>amazine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>colysideae</td>
<td>Colysideae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Palestrinnes</td>
<td>Palestrinnes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>bisus</td>
<td>hirus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>chatopistes</td>
<td>chaetopistes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>immutabilis</td>
<td>immutabilis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Metrioerrhynochus</td>
<td>Metrioerrhynochus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>caruleosmaculate</td>
<td>caruleosmaculate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>carulespaunis</td>
<td>carulespaunis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Ochthenomus</td>
<td>Ochthenomus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Onytosnus</td>
<td>Onytosnus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Blasyrus</td>
<td>Blasyrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>peregrinus</td>
<td>peregrinus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Enope</td>
<td>Enope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Disoasterma</td>
<td>Disoasterma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Coloborbonbus</td>
<td>Coloborbonbus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>plagithyurus</td>
<td>plagithyurus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Inosqualis</td>
<td>Inosqualis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>fusca</td>
<td>fusca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>colostena</td>
<td>Colostena.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Pharmasia</td>
<td>Pharmasia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Cassidae</td>
<td>Cassidae.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Aspidomorpha</td>
<td>Aspidomorpha.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Lacteoptera</td>
<td>Lacteoptera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>148</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Galerucida</td>
<td>Galerucida.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Coccinellida</td>
<td>Coccinellida.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>G. Edwardsi of Westwood,</td>
<td>A. peregrinus of Olivier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>virgeus</td>
<td>virgeus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Line from top of page</td>
<td>For</td>
<td>Blend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>(under figure)</td>
<td>cells</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>166</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>dels whole line.</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>167</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Edrus</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td>pulchera</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>dels crucifera</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>dels humeralis</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>dels dentipes</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>171</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Metacenthus, Costa</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>dels grandis, Gray.</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Lohita</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Antilochus</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>dels russus (As. Bur.) Stié.</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>173</td>
<td>13, 14</td>
<td>dels leynardus heres, Endechnus famulus</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Enagoras</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>dels Sycamus collaria</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td>dels nigricollis</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>dels costalis</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>31</td>
<td>dels pulchriventris</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Last line</td>
<td>dels Erythrichotes</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>174</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>dels Androcclus granulatus</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Lacotrophes</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ruber</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Areea</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pomponia, Tibeca, Stí</td>
<td>dels costalis</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Isagonus</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Omit line 3</td>
<td>geminata</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>gemmata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>andamaensis</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>vivescoens</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td>verisamor</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Omit 'mauricianus.'</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Isagonus</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>249</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Omit 'indica Linn.'</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>274</td>
<td>25, 28</td>
<td>Bahlíkas</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>275</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>some</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>276</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Achosmenide, Sasanide</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>277</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Bharates</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>Aitárya</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>279</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Rishikas</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>282</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Chándás</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Dráviras</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>284</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Siddhárañwa</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>294</td>
<td>Note</td>
<td>with these</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Note</td>
<td>4 page</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>-Note</td>
<td>see page</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Páhana</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>346</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>Mohondra</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>347</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Kateswar</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>348</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Maheshamardini</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>368</td>
<td>Note</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>373</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>374</td>
<td>Note last line but one</td>
<td>Bodhisattwa</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>376</td>
<td>Note last line but one</td>
<td>279</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>384</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Gandhabhillas</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note line one</td>
<td>347, 337, 279</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>391</td>
<td>Note</td>
<td>Appolladotus</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: The table entries are excerpts from a list, possibly related to entomology or a similar field. The columns describe various entries such as page numbers, lines from the top of the page, and references to species or terms such as 'cells,' 'Edrus,' 'pulchera,' and 'Bertyus, Serw.' The 'Blend' column appears to list alternative spellings or related information.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Line from top of page</th>
<th>For</th>
<th>Read</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>402</td>
<td>Note 5 add</td>
<td>'or rather ostrich's eggs'</td>
<td>Guhjeswarf.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>465</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>Guhjiaware</td>
<td>Guhjiaware.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>469</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>'actual records of'</td>
<td>important records ascribed to Nalu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522</td>
<td>22, 32</td>
<td>Nálu</td>
<td>Nálu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>530</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Gorkhális</td>
<td>Gorkhális.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>sir</td>
<td>sir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>548</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>portion</td>
<td>portion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>555</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>'faújádárs'</td>
<td>'faújádárs'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561</td>
<td>last line</td>
<td>invoked</td>
<td>invoked.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>585</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>shall</td>
<td>should.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>610</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>an arrangement which.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Kathmándu</td>
<td>Kathmándu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>626</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>description</td>
<td>disposition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>677</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Bradashaw</td>
<td>Bradshaw.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>713</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>thy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>721</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>though</td>
<td>through.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>752</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Prájna</td>
<td>Prájna.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>769</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>after 'since' add</td>
<td>'then'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>780</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>Udyat chandeswar</td>
<td>Udyotchandeswar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>795</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>god</td>
<td>god.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>801</td>
<td>last line</td>
<td>Naikrini</td>
<td>Naikuni.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.
(Zoology Vertebrata.)


References ... ... ... ... ... 44, 72, 78, 86

CHAPTER II.
(Zoology Invertebrata.)


References at the end of each section ... ... ... ... 67-266

CHAPTER III.

History.


CHAPTER IV.

History-(contd.)

CHAPTER V.

HISTORY—(contd.)


CHAPTER VI.

HISTORY—(contd.)


CHAPTER VII.

HISTORY—(concluded.)


CHAPTER VIII.
RELIGION.

CHAPTER IX.
RELIGION—(contd.)

Index ... ... ... ... ... 985—984
THE
HIMALAYAN DISTRICTS
OF THE
NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

PART II.

CHAPTER I.
ZOOLOGY (Vertebrata).

CONTENTS.


The fauna of Kumaun is as varied as its flora, but up to the present, with the exception of the mammalia, birds, fishes, and butterflies, it has not received the attention to which its interesting character and position entitle it. The materials for the two following chapters were collected with a view to give an account of the fauna of the North-Western Provinces, and the portion comprising the mammals and birds of the plains has already appeared in the third volume of the Gazetteer. We shall here confine ourselves to the mammals, birds, reptiles, and fishes of the hills. For the remaining orders it has not been possible (except in the case of butterflies) to separate the species common to the hills and plains from those only found in the hills and those only found in the plains, or indeed to distinguish clearly between the species proper to upper India and those found in other parts of India. This difficulty arises chiefly from the careless notation of locality adopted by the older writers on natural history, who were the first to describe many species, and whose names therefore stand to the present day and cannot be ignored. The word 'India' or 'Indes-orientales' attached as the locality to the descriptions of species, up to very recent
times, comprises widely different places. From indications it would appear to include in some instances the Phillipine islands, the islands of the Malay archipelago and other countries which the writer placed without specification in his ideal Indian region. In the same manner the words 'North-India' and 'North-Bengal' sometimes mean Asám and sometimes the North-Western Provinces and the Panjáb, so that to rediscover these species and assign them to their proper localities remains one of the objects which the present generation of observers should place before themselves. In the words of Wallace:—"It is admitted that a knowledge of the exact area occupied by a species or a group is a real portion of its natural history, of as much importance as its habits, its structure or its affinities; and that we can never arrive at any trustworthy conclusions as to how the present state of the organic world was brought about, until we have ascertained with some accuracy the general laws of the distribution of living things over the earth's surface." Mr. W. Blanford has divided India into a series of provinces which would suit our purpose with the addition of the precise locality. They are (1) the Panjáb province or sub-region, including the Panjáb, Sind, Kachh and western Rajputána: (2) the Indian province, including the rest of the Peninsula and northern Ceylon, except the Malabar and Eastern-Bengal province: (3) the Malabar province, comprising the low country on the west coast of India from Cape Comorin to a little north of Bombay and the range of hills along the same coast as far north possibly as the Tápti river and also the hill tracts of southern Ceylon: (4) the Asám (Eastern-Bengal) province, limited by a line drawn northwards from the head of the bay of Bengal. The Indian province is further divided into sub-provinces:—(1) the Gangetic sub-province or Hindustán extending south as far as the Narmada, and in its eastern portion comprising only the valley of the Son and that of the Ganges as far as Benares: (2) the Deccan sub-province stretching from the Narmada to the Krishna; bounded on the east by a line drawn north and south a little east of Nágpur, and on the west by a line drawn a little cast of the crest of the Western Gháts or Sahyádri range: (3) the Bengal sub-province, bounded on the west by the preceding and extending as far south as the Godávari: (4) the Madras sub-

1 Island life, p. 13.
province includes the remainder of southern India and the plains of northern Ceylon. An insect caught at Allahabad should be labelled "Hind. (All'd.)," by which the province and precise locality is at once distinguished. We need hardly remark that the geographical distribution of animals is one of the most interesting branches of natural history and one that leads indirectly to results bearing on the most important biological questions of the day.

In the following pages, with the exception of the birds and butterflies, the lists do not pretend to be exhaustive or to be in all cases quite up to the most recent and approved systematic arrangement. With the small leisure and the smaller materials for reference at my command it would be hopeless to attempt completeness. The lists of the Arachnida and Insecta are compiled from my notebooks and include the jottings-down of many years. Where the word 'India' has been given as the locality from which a recorded species was received, no mention of the locality is given in the lists; but where any part of India is distinctly indicated, it is noted in brackets. Many of these localities may have been given in error, but for this the list is not responsible. The references at the foot of each section include the authorities from which many of the names of Indian species have been taken, and a short notice under each order will give a very general idea of the animals belonging to it and the sources of my information. It is with much reluctance that these imperfect notes are submitted in their present form, but the knowledge that opportunity for revision and completion will probably never occur and that they are the only ones of their kind yet available has wrung an unwilling consent to their publication, in the hope that

1 The following abbreviations have been used:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As.</td>
<td>for Asām, including Silhat, Kachār, Sikkim, Nāga hills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ben.</td>
<td>Bengal: evidently used in a broad sense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bom.</td>
<td>Bombay: includes the presidency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cal.</td>
<td>Calcutta.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dec.</td>
<td>Deccan, especially Pāṇa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Him.</td>
<td>Himalaya.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In.</td>
<td>All India: used where the insect is recorded from Mad., Bom., Ind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mad.</td>
<td>Madras: includes Carnatic, Coromandel coast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mal.</td>
<td>Malabar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mus.</td>
<td>Mussoorie.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. I.</td>
<td>North India: either Hindustān or Asām.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. B.</td>
<td>North Bengal: chiefly N.-W. Provinces and Oudh.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>Nilgiris, in Madras.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panj.</td>
<td>Panjāb.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
they may induce others with more time and better materials to give us a complete history of the lesser forms of animal life in India.

**Mammalia.**

So much has been written about the mammals of India that in the present list of the principal species that are found in Kumaun, a reference to Jerdon or some other authority is alone made, which with the notes on the papers of Hodgson and others at the end of the section will sufficiently indicate the sources of more precise information. For the local notes on the Mammalia I am indebted to Mr. G. Greig, Conservator of Forests, who has kindly placed the results of some fifteen years' observation of the wild animals of these hills in my hands.

**Simiadae—Monkeys.**


Large herds of this handsome monkey are commonly to be met with throughout the wooded portions of the hills, from the dense jungles of the submontane tract up to the oak and fir forests at 12,000 feet above the level of the sea. The langur feeds on wild-fruit and flowers and on the buds and young leaves of many trees and plants, but acorns form its chief food from August to February, and during those months it is found in all the great oak forests. Potatoes, when procurable, are greedily eaten, but it seldom attacks other cultivated crops. It may, however, occasionally be seen stealing into a garden to feed on the buds and tender leaves of the rose. The langur is very common about Naini Tál and Mussooree and in the mixed forests of the Bhábar, where it often falls a prey to the stealthy leopard that lies in wait for it at the foot of a tree. It is probable that the species which frequents the forests of the submontane tract in the cold season migrates to the outer range in summer, but it does not go far into the interior, and the species that is found to the north of the outer range of hills appears to be permanently resident there and is found there at all seasons of the year. It is a curious fact that the deer known as simbar, chital, and gural are frequently seen near a herd of langurs. The two former may keep near the monkeys for the sake of the fruit that is shaken from the trees, but the gural cannot have such an object in view as
it does not eat fruit. He may, however, desire the society of the langur for protection, since there is no animal more quick of hearing. The langur is frequently the first to give notice of the approach of a leopard or tiger. In evidence of the friendly feeling that exists between these monkeys and the deer tribe it may be worth recording that a herd of chital has been seen feeding under a tree, whilst the langur, hanging from the branches, playfully touched the backs of the deer with their fore-hands. Langurs are easily tamed and differ from the Bengal monkey in not being mischievous or vicious. One had the run of a vegetable garden and used to feed on the peas without doing any further damage, finishing one pod before taking another. He was very amiable and indolent, resting on a branch all day after his meals until he got hungry again. He was never angry with anyone or anything and never appeared to imagine that dogs or men could attempt to do him any harm. The Himalayan langur is easily distinguished from the Bengal langur (P. Entellus) by its hands being concolorous with its body and by its loud grunting note of alarm, whilst the hands of the latter are jet black and its voice is more of a deep bass mournful bellow.


This is the common red-faced and red-callositied monkey found all over these provinces and extending in the Himalaya up to 7,000 feet. It feeds on many sorts of grain, fruits, flowers, buds and leaves and even insects, such as locusts and grasshoppers. The herds generally establish themselves on a steep bank in a mango-grove near a village or in forest or precipitous ground near outlying cultivation, whence they emerge when unobserved and do immense damage to cultivated crops. They are mischievous, treacherous and dirty in their habits and do not form desirable pets.

Inuus Pelops, Horsfield—Hill monkey. Jerdon, 11.

Major Hutton obtained this monkey from the interior of the Mussooree hills, where it replaces I. Rhesus at high elevations, but the difference between the two species is not well established.
**CHIROPTERA.**


This species is common throughout the Tarai and feeds on fruits, wild and cultivated.


Common throughout all India, feeding on fruits, wild and cultivated.


Procured from Mussooree, Nepal, Darjiling.


Procured from Mussooree.


Procured from Mussooree and Central Nepal.


Common about Mussooree, procured at Darjiling.


Procured at Mussooree.


Procured at Mussooree.


Procured from Nepal and Mussooree, but rare.


Procured from Mussooree, Nepal, Darjiling.
Phyllorhina diadema, Geoff. ; H. nobilis, Cantor. Dobson, 61.
Procured from Dehra Dún.

Procured in Dehra Dún and near Púna.

Phyllorhina bicolor, Temn. Dobson, 70.
Procured in Dehra Dún.

Phyllorhina fulva, Gray. Dobson, 72.
Procured at Hardwár.


Not uncommon in the submontane tract. Blyth has shown that this species sucks the blood from other bats. Attaching itself firmly behind the ear it sucks the blood during flight and when its victim falls exhausted, devours it.


Same as the European species ; found throughout the hills, Simla, Mussooree.

Vesperugo noctula, Schreb.; Vespertilio labiata, Hodgson.
Jerdon, 36 ; Hodgson, *l.c.*, IV., 700 : Dobson, 89.
Procured from the central region of Nepal.

Procured beyond Mussooree, rare.


Common in the valleys beyond Mussooree.


Found all over India and reported from Dehra Dún and the Taráí.
**Himalayan Districts**

*Vespertilio mystacinus*, Leis. Dobson, 133.
Found throughout the Himalaya.

*Vespertilio murinus*, Schreb. Dobson, 137.
Found throughout the north-west Himalaya.

Found in Chamba and Mussooree.

*Vespertilio nipalensis*, Dobson. Mon., 141.
Procured from Nepal.

Found in Mussooree.

Found in the north-west Himalaya and Tibet.


This beautiful yellow bat has been procured from Sikkim, Nepal, and the Himalaya, also from Central India.

**Talpidae.**

Procured from Darjiling, Nepal, and Kumaun.

Procured from Sikkim, doubtful in Kumaun.

**Soricidae.**

Common throughout the hills and plains, procured at Naini Tál, Almora and Mussooree, possibly imported in baggage.

*Sorex Tytleri*, Blyth—Dehra shrew. Jerdon, 56.
Procured from Dehra Dún.

Procured from Sikkim, Darjiling, Nepal, and Mussooree.
Orocidura pygmaoides, And.; Sorex micronyx, Blyth—Small-clawed pigmy shrew. Jerdon, 58; Blyth, J. A. S., Ben., XXIV, 33; Anderson, Ibid., XLVI, ii., 279.

Procured from Kumaun and Mussoorie.


Ursidae.


This is the red, gray, or silver or snow bear of sportsmen. It is found in Dárma and Byáns, but, strange to say, it has not been distinctly noticed between the Pindar and Trijogi-Narāyan on the ridge separating the Mandākini from the Bhilang. To the west it occurs throughout native Garhwal and Bisahr to Kashmir and also across the passes in Tibet. As a rule it seeks the upper ranges, living along or above the upper limit of forest far away from the haunts of man and feeds on roots, weeds, grasses and even insects, lizards and snakes. It trusts almost entirely to its sense of smell to detect the presence of an enemy, and with a favourable wind will distinguish a man fully a quarter of a mile off. Its powers of sight are, however, so weak that it is one of the easiest of the larger animals to stalk and shoot. In one case, the wind being favourable, a sportsman was able to creep up to within fifteen feet of a brown bear that was feeding on a slope without alarming it. In some places this bear visits the maize plantations and the orchards, and in many places solitary males take to sheep-stealing and commit great havoc amongst the mountain flocks. Owing to the formation of its claws, it is a bad climber and seldom mounts a tree. As a rule, the brown bear is a timid animal and disinclined to fight, but instances are not wanting in which it has shown considerable determination and courage. It hibernates from December to March, retiring to a hollow in the rocks or under the roots of a large tree. The fat that has accumulated in the summer is all absorbed during the long sleep, and in April the bear awakes thin and ragged, the stomach quite empty and the fur full of scurf. The brown bear
pairs about August, and the young ones, generally two, are produced in April or May. It is very partial to raw flesh and readily eats one of its own kind when the skin has been removed, as well as the carrion of cows that have died from disease or accident. See note on Horsfield's description in Cal. J. N. H., III., 268.

_Ursus tibetanus_, Cuv.: _torquatus_, Schinz.—Himalayan black bear—_Rchh., bhátu_. Jerdon, 70.

This bear is very commonly met with all through the hills from the Tons to the Sárđa and from the upper limits of vegetation down to as low as 3,000 feet. It has been procured at Gorighát on the Ganges about eight miles above Hardwár, but is, however, seldom seen in the lower hills except during winter. It climbs trees far better than the brown bear and frequently mounts them to plunder the combs of the honey-bee. The black bear is very destructive to such crops as maize, _mandua_, buckwheat and gourds. It is also exceedingly fond of fruit, such as apricots, peaches, apples and walnuts, and occasionally grazes on green wheat and barley when they are young and succulent and before the ear has formed. At times, when cultivated fodder is not procurable, it feeds on acorns, the young shoots of the _ningál_ (hill bambo) and other jungle fruits, roots and grasses. Both the black and the brown bear devour beetles, grasshoppers and locusts and eat flesh both fresh and putrid. Occasionally one takes to killing and eating sheep, but an old resident well acquainted with these hills declares that in his experience he has only known of one case in which a black bear had become a confirmed sheep-stealer. This was a very large old male covered with scars and bearing the marks of three bullet wounds. He cared neither for men nor dogs and died fighting bravely to the last. The black bears of the upper ranges hybernate, but those of the lower hills do not. They show more fight than the brown bear and many villagers are mauled by them every year. As a rule, the black bear will never touch a man if the man shows a bold front, but if he is come upon suddenly and at close quarters and the man turns to run, the courage of the bear rises to the occasion and he follows the man and claws him on the head and face.

The bear usually charges on all fours at a gallop like a great dog, with its mouth open and emitting a loud angry grunt at almost
every stride. Those that live in the upper ranges produce their cubs, usually two at a time, in April-May, but those frequenting the lower ranges are not so regular in their habits. All make their dens in naturally-formed caves, and to these the female retires during the period of gestation and old and young seek a refuge in them when pursued. The black bear has almost if not quite as inferior a sense of sight as the brown bear and an equally keen sense of smell. It is more intelligent and can easily be tamed, but, strange to say, if noosed by the foot in a trap and unable to break away by force, it never attempts to sever the rope or sapling to which the gin is attached and remains a prisoner until it dies or is killed. This fact is vouched for by a well-known sportsman. Black bears are sometimes killed by tigers, and specimens have been procured which bore unmistakeably the marks of a tiger's claws and teeth. It is doubtful whether *Ailurus fulgens*, Cuv., the red cat bear, the *wāh* of Nepāl and *bhāuna richh* of the west, occurs in these provinces. It has been procured in Nepāl and may be easily recognised from the deep ochreous red colour of the head, and its face, chin and ears within being white. It is reported as having been found to the west and east of our limits and may possibly occur within them. See Jerdon, 74: Hodgson in J. A. S., Ben., VI., 560.


This bear hardly bears out its English appellation, for it can run fairly fast and is not of slothful habits. It is found all through the sal forests of the lower hills and in the Tarşī, where it is frequently met with in swampy ground and marshes and is much feared by elephants. Its principal food is ants, beetles, grass-hoppers, fruits, roots, and honey, and it probably also consumes frogs, fish and flesh when it can lay hold of them. Its powers of suction and propelling wind from its mouth are remarkable. With its powerful claws it scrapes a large hole at the base of a white-ant's nest, then blows away the dust and sucks out the larva. It is especially fond of the fruit of the *mahua, jāman*, and *D. Melanoxylon*. The young are produced at various times, but usually about December to January, and in March they are able to accompany their mother in her travels. They are easily tamed and become quite tractable. See Tickell's paper, Cal. J. N. H., I, 199.
**MELIDIDÆ.**


This species is not uncommon in the submontane tract and lower outer hills. Specimens have been procured at Rúnnagar and in the Pátli Dún. It feeds on rats, mice, birds, frogs and insects, and is often very destructive to poultry. It probably also feeds on honey when procurable.

**MUSTELIDÆ.**

*Martes flavigula*, Bodd.; *Hardwickei*, Horsf.—Black-capped marten—*Chitrola, titarola*. Jerdon, 82.

This very common animal is very destructive to game in Kumaun and occurs almost from the southern boundary up to the limits of vegetation. It is on the move all hours of the day and generally hunts in pairs, though as many as ten have been seen hunting together at the same time. It is a very fair runner on the ground and as active as a squirrel in trees and is perhaps the boldest of all the minor carnivora. Some dogs chased a pair and caught one whilst the other took refuge in a tree; although the owner of the dogs was standing by encouraging them to kill the one that had been caught, the other came down from the tree and vigorously attacking the dogs perished in defence of its companion. Natives say that martens kill small deer and they are certainly very destructive to poultry. They travel great distances and are constantly changing their ground, so that it is difficult to meet with them.


This small animal frequents the walls of terraces and houses that have been built of dry masonry, but is nowhere common.


Said to occur in eastern Kumaun.

*Mustela Erminra*—Stoat, ermine.

Specimens have been procured from Jaunsár and Bisahr and it is common in Lahúl, Spiti, and Tibet. Jerdon, 84.

This otter is found throughout the Taráí and in all the larger streams along the foot of the hills, ascending the rivers to thirty miles and perhaps more. It is difficult to determine where it gives place to the hill otter. It usually hunts in parties of five or six, though as many as twelve have been seen together in the Rámganga in the Pátli Dún and twenty in the Súswa in Dehra Dún. The skin must be ‘plucked’ before becoming the beautiful otter fur so popular for the trimming of ladies’ dresses. It is better to pluck the skin before it is taken off, an operation which can usually be done by relays of men in about six hours, as the long hairs come out very easily, leaving the under fur exposed. The fur of the Indian otter is very good, though somewhat inferior in texture to that of the European species. It is in great request with the Tibetans and Bhotiyas, who use it as ear lappets for their caps.


It is not clear whether this otter occurs in the Kumaun Himálaya. It is the common otter of Europe, and, so far as is known, is restricted to the interior of the Himálaya.


This small otter is of an earthy brown or chestnut-brown above and has been procured in the Sárda at Barndeó, above the junction of the Alaknanda and Pindar near Karnprayág, in the Nandákini above Nandprayág and in the Bhilang. The claws are very minute, and hence its English name. Otters are easily tamed and become very much attached to their owners.

FELIDÆ.

Felis Tigris, Linn.—Tiger—*Sher, shu, bágh.* Jerdon, 92.

The tiger is found from the Taráí up to 10-11,000 feet and is believed occasionally to cross the passes into Tibet. Those which are found on the outer ranges doubtless migrate to the Bhábar and Taráí, but those found in the interior never leave the hills. They are quite different in appearance, being more bulky, with longer and
more furry hair and shorter and thicker tails. Twenty years ago tigers were very numerous in the Bhábar, the Tarái and the hills, but owing to the extension of cultivation, the increase of population and the greater use of arms of precision, their numbers have considerably diminished. The hill tiger is a quarrelsome animal and often attacks one of its own species that trespasses on its domain. In 1870 a dead tiger was brought into camp that had apparently been killed by another tiger, and about three years ago an officer found a very old male tiger in the Jaunsáir hills that had been killed and partially eaten by another tiger. The tiger does not confine itself to animals killed by it in the chase. It has been known to eat the putrid carcase of a buffalo that had died by accident, and in the hills the common bait for the dead-fall trap is a dead sheep or goat. The pairing time is from December to January, when the males may be heard making their peculiar sighing-bellowing noise to attract the females. The females appear to breed every second or third year, producing, generally in the cold weather, from two to five and sometimes six cubs at a birth. It is very rarely, however, that more than three survive, and generally there are only two and often only one. The largest skins have been procured from the Bhágirathi valley and one over 9′9″ from the nose to the tip of the tail in Jaunsár. Several over ten feet have been obtained in the Tarái. Tigers always kill large animals, such as a full-grown buffalo or bullock, by seizing the throat from below; but with smaller animals, such as sheep, deer and man, they usually grip from above and break the neck. It will be useful here to summarise the information that we possess regarding the statistics of deaths from the attacks of wild animals. These, though now some sixty per cent. less than they were thirty years ago, are still sufficiently numerous to place the hill-districts of these provinces at the head of the list both for deaths of human beings from tigers, leopards and bears and for the numbers of these animals destroyed in order to claim the rewards. In the earlier years of British rule Katyur and Gangoli were almost deserted on account of the presence of numerous "man-eating" tigers. As late as 1848, Mr. Batten, writing of Gangoli, describes Pattis Bel, Athagaon and Kamsýár as excessively jungly and harassed by tigers:—‘In some of the tracts near the rivers notorious ‘man-eaters’ are hardly ever absent and at times the
loss of human life is considerable.' In the Bhábar, as at present tigers were numerous. Parguna Chandpaur and the Pátli Dún in Garhwal1 as well as the whole of the Tarai district long held an unenviable notoriety as well for the insalubrity of their climate as for the number of tigers that they harboured. In the twenty years between January, 1860, and January, 1880, the records of the Kumaun district show that 692 persons were killed by wild-beasts or snakes, without reckoning those where the cause of death was not ascertained or not reported, which may safely be estimated at one-fourth more. Fifty human lives are thus lost every year in the Kumaun district alone. During the same period, in the same district, 624 tigers, 2,718 leopards, 4,666 bears and 27 wild-dogs were destroyed and rewards were paid for their capture amounting to Rs. 30,812. This return does not give the entire number of these wild animals killed, as in many cases the reward is not claimed or the skin gets spoiled before it can be taken in or the animal perishes in some place where it is not possible to follow it and obtain evidence of its death. From a return of inquests held in Garhwal between 1850 and 1863, the number of deaths from the attacks of wild animals was recorded at 276 during that period, and Rs. 13,784 were paid as rewards for the destruction of 91 tigers, 1,300 leopards and 2,602 bears. Taking the decade 1870-79, the returns show that 211 persons (123 males) were killed by wild animals and Rs. 9,317 were paid as rewards for destroying 62 tigers, 905 leopards and 1,740 bears. A similar series of returns for the Tarai district show that between 1867 and 1869 the mortality from the attacks of wild animals amounted to 54. Between 1871 and 1879, the deaths of 289 persons (157 males) were recorded and Rs. 357 were disbursed in rewards for the destruction of 43 tigers, 43 leopards and 4 bears. In many cases, however, the reward was not claimed, and the returns must be considered as only approximate. The statistics of the Dehra Dún district for the years 1875-79 show the deaths from the attacks of wild animals to be 34, the majority of which were caused by wild elephants. During the same

1 Mr. Traill writes thus of Nágpur in Garhwal (26th June, 1818):—"While the rest of Kumaun everywhere exhibits an astonishing increase of cultivation, this pargana remains a solitary instance of non-improvement; the causes of this are to be found in the ravages annually committed thereon by tigers, a circumstance which, while it prompts the desertion of existing villages, prevents the occupation of new. The tigers in this province are formidable rather from the nature of the country than from their numbers."
five years Rs. 647 were disbursed on account of the destruction of 30 tigers, 53 leopards, 25 bears and 4 wolves. In the appendix will be found a detailed account of the number of persons killed and animals destroyed in each district for five years. This return is avowedly imperfect, as it only includes the deaths reported to the authorities and the animals killed for which rewards have been claimed.


It is still a matter of discussion whether there are two distinct species of leopards, for it is difficult to believe that the insignificant cat-like, round-headed little animal of from 5'-6' in length is the same as the powerful, handsome panther measuring 7½'-8' and almost as bulky as a small tigress. A specimen 7'9" long took the united efforts of three strong men to place it on an elephant. In the hills, at least, the larger variety does not appear to be slighter in build than the smaller, still there is some ground for the statement that the larger variety is the more slender even there. A specimen procured in the Pátli Dún appeared to be a very different form from that observed in the western Himálaya. It was taller than the ordinary leopard, very slightly built, had a rather long head and was very savage. It is, however, very uncommon. The ordinary leopard, both the large and the small variety, is very common all over the hills and in parts very destructive. The natives kill a great number in dead-fall traps baited with a dead sheep, goat or dog. In western Garhwal they use a trap that catches the leopard alive and which is much better in every way, as there is no fear of killing dogs in it, and a live bait is used which is quite safe from the leopard. This trap consists of a narrow passage built with big stones with a rough frame-work of wood at the entrance, in which is fitted a sliding bar to serve as a door. At the other end of the trap is a small space for the kid or puppy; and this is partitioned off by a stone slab with holes bored in it. The sliding bar is raised and then the trap is set in exactly the same manner as the dead-fall trap. The leopard creeps in to attack the bait, the door falls down behind him, and he is at once secured in such a cramped position that he is unable to exert his strength in trying to get free and remains there until the trapper kills him. The leopard is particularly fond of dogs and has been known to carry
them off in broad daylight from houses in Naini Tál and Almora and in the evening from the public roads in presence of the owners.

**Felis Uncia**, Sch. ; *unciaedes*, Hodg. ; *Irbius*, Ehr.—Ounce, snow-leopard—*Barhal-hai*. Jerdon, 101.

The snow-leopard is nowhere common to the south of the snowy range, but there are generally one or two on all hills where the blue sheep (*Ovis Nahura*) are found. As a rule they do not frequent the wooded parts of the hills, though a female and two cubs were procured in the forest near Jhála in the Bhágirathi valley. The ounce feeds on the blue-sheep, musk-deer and other animals found near its haunts, and it will kill domestic sheep and goats if it finds the opportunity for catching a stray one. It is a very timid animal and in these hills does not appear to carry off dogs. The fur is of a pale-yellowish ground with dark gray marks all over the body except on the stomach which is pure white. The skin is rare and valuable.

**Felis viverrina**, Benn. ; *viverriceps*, Hodg. ; *celidogaster*, Tem. ; *himlayana*, Jerd.—Large tiger-cat—*Jangli-billi*. Jerdon, 103.

A fine specimen of this powerful cat was procured at the foot of the hills in western Garhwál, but it is very rare.

**Felis bengalensis**, Desm. ; *nipalensis* and *pardichrous*, Hodg.—Leopard cat—*Baghera-billi*. Jerdon, 105.

This very handsome cat is found all over these hills at elevations 6-11,000 feet up to the limits of forest. It does not appear to frequent the lower ranges or the jungles of the submontane tract. Its principal food is rats and mice, but it is also very destructive to young birds of all kinds, particularly to young pheasants. It is a good climber and always seeks a tree when pursued by dogs. The markings seem to vary with the locality and its altitude and differ much in specimens from the same district. It is doubtful whether *F. aurata*, Tem. (*F. moormensis*, Hodg.), the bay cat (Jerdon, 107), occurs west of the Káli.

**Felis Chaus**, Guld. ; *affinis*, Gray ; *Lynchus erythrostis*, Hodg. ; *Chaus lybicus*, Gray—Common jungle-cat—*Ban-billi*. Jerdon, 111,
and Blyth's note on wild types of the domestic cat. J. A. S., Ben., XXV., 439.

This cat is very common in the forests of the submontane tract and in the hills of the lower range up to 6,000 feet. It lives in grass or high crops, such as sugarcane, maize, and the millets, and feeds on rats, mice, birds, and leverets. It produces its young above ground in thick cover and does not frequent caves or holes. It breeds twice a year, producing two or three young at a birth. A kitten of this species grew up to be a very tame and affectionate pet. When first secured it was kept alive by forcing goat's milk down its throat with a spoon and afterwards a few bits of cooked meat were placed on a saucer with the milk, and it would then take a bit of the meat in its mouth and suck the milk through the meat. It never attempted to lap like the young of the domestic cat. There is a black species unnoticed by Jerdon, not uncommon in the forests of the submontane tract below Garhwal. At a distance of 15-20 paces it looks quite black, but on closer inspection its colour is blackish brown with indistinct dark spots, the tips of the hairs being black. It is about the size of the common jungle cat and a true Felis in regard to its rounded head, short and strong jaws, cutting teeth, powerful limbs, and retracted claws. Mr. Greig has seen four specimens and is in possession of the skins of two.


The red lynx has been found in the Dehra Dün and probably exists in the forests below the Garhwal and Kumaun hills, which are of a character similar to those of the Dehra Dün and are only separated from them by the Ganges.

VIVERRIDÆ.

*Hyæna striata*, Zim.—*Hyæna—Bhagīār, lakar-bāgh*. Jerdon, 118.

The hyæna is common in the submontane tract, but it seldom enters these hills. Below the hills it frequents broken, raviny ground where there is plenty of cover, sometimes in forest and sometimes in thorny jungle, and sandy watercourses where there is plenty of long grass. It is a skulking cowardly animal and never shows fight, even when wounded, if it has strength left to crawl away. It is said to be very partial to donkeys and dogs and
will kill domestic sheep and goats if it comes across stray ones, but its principal food is carrion and old bones. It is almost quite nocturnal in its habits, leaving its lair at dusk and returning before break of day. In the Panjāb, it is found in the hills at Sābahū, Dagshāi, and Kasauli.

**Viverra Zibetha**, Linn.; **V. orientalis, melanurus** and **civettoides**, Hodg.—Large civet-cat.

This civet yields the drug of that name and is said to occur in the Tarāi and hills. See Hodgson's description, Cal. J. N. H., II., 47, 61; Jerdon, 120.


This civet-cat is very common in the scrub jungle all along the submontane tract, but it seldom enters the hills. It is generally found in the thorny thickets of the jujube (*ber*) or in grass jungle or sandy ground where rats are numerous. It has an exceedingly strong scent, and dogs are very fond of hunting it. The civet, though occasionally extracted, is of little value.

**Prionodon pardicolor**, Hodgson (Cal. J. N. H., II., 57, and Jerdon, 124), the tiger spotted civet, does not appear to occur in Kumaun, though found in Nepal, where it is said to be common.


This tree or bear-cat is said to be found throughout the Tarāi below the hills extending into Bengal and Behar. There are two other allied species, apparently undescribed, which have been procured by Mr. Greig. Of one he has seen five specimens and describes it as about 40 inches long, the tail being about half that length and very broad at the base: colour, a fine, bright dark grey throughout, with the exception of the feet and ears, which are black. This species is generally found in pairs. It climbs trees well and seems extremely fond of apples and other fruit. It has been procured at Binsar and in Naini Tāl and as far west as Kulu. In shape it resembles an otter: hence its vernacular name *ban-ṭād* (forest-otter) in Kulu and *khar-ṭād* (grass-otter) in Kumaun. Of the second species Mr. Greig procured a single specimen of a female at Naini Tāl which was of a much duller gray; its tail was shorter and at
the base not more than half the breadth of the tail of the former, and it had altogether a different appearance.

**Paguma laniger**, Gray, the *Martes laniger* of Hodgson, found in Tibet and the adjoining snowy region of the Himalaya and procured in Nepal; may occur in Kumaun. Jerdon, 129.

**Herpestes malaccensis**, Cuv.; *H. Nyula*, Hodgs.—Bengal mongoose—*Nyula*. Jerdon, 134

This little animal is found in the submontane tract and Dehra Dún and is replaced in the hills by the next


This species is found all over the lower Himalaya from Sikkim to Kashmir and also in the submontane tract.

**Canidae.**

**Canis pallipes**, Sykes—Wolf—*Bheriya*. Jerdon, 139.

The wolf is found throughout the submontane tract and in the Dehra Dún, where a reward is given for its destruction. It does not seem to enter the hills.

**Canis aureus**, Linn.—Jackal—*Gidhar, shiyàl*. Jerdon, 142.

Jackals are nowhere more common than in the Tarāi and the scrub jungle along the foot of the hills. They ascend the valleys communicating with the plains, but are seldom found above 6-7,000 feet. Their ordinary food is carrion, but they kill a great many young deer and often catch pea-fowl and are very fond of maize. They are very persistent in following a wounded deer, but they rarely venture near it until it is so exhausted as to be obliged to lie down. One seen pursuing a wounded doe antelope was observed to bring her to bay several times, but it never dared to touch her until she fell exhausted by the loss of blood from her wounds. On another occasion two jackals were pursuing a ravine deer, but they never attempted to fix it until it had fallen. Two hounds were, on another occasion, worrying a jackal when suddenly another came up and joined them in tearing the animal to pieces. The dogs did not seem to notice the stranger and he did not appear to be afraid of them. It was not until the master of the dogs showed himself that the jackal left off his task and slunk away, whilst the dogs showed
no desire to follow him. Jackals frequently go mad and are then more dangerous than mad dogs, as they attack all living beings that they meet. Their fur if taken in December-February and properly cured makes excellent carriage rugs. It is very difficult to capture them as they will not enter any description of box trap no matter how skilfully baited, and they are not often caught in dead-fall traps. The gin-trap when skilfully used is alone successful.


The wild-dog is found in all parts of the hills between the Tons and the Sárda, and, whether they have increased in numbers or not of late, are now included in the list of animals for whose destruction the State pays a reward. They live chiefly on deer and their favourite prey is the sâmbhar, which is more easily run down than other deer. They kill a good number of cattle where deer are scarce and appear to hunt by scent just like a pack of hounds. They have very powerful jaws, and when they bring an animal to bay, they continue to spring at its hind quarters and stomach, taking out a mouthful at each bite, until the beast drops from exhaustion, when they go in and soon leave nothing but the bones. A dozen of them have been known to eat up a full-grown sâmbhar in little more than five minutes. In the valley of the Bhâgirathí they are sometimes found close to the snows, hunting the blue-sheep (bharal). The wild-dog is of a bright rusty-red colour with black tips to his ears and tail, height about 19 inches, length of body 35 inches and of tail 16 inches. Mr. Greig notes the existence of another wild dog in Kashmir which has apparently not been noticed by Jerdon. He describes it as not so large as the bhaunsa and of exactly the same colour as a jackal. As many as twenty hunt together in a pack, uttering a snarling, cackling noise when disturbed. They prey on the ibex and musk-deer and do not disdain to eat carrion, having been seen to feed on the carcase of a bear from which the skin had been taken the previous day. Mr. Wilson has noticed that during the breeding season the wild-dog will drive its prey towards its lair before closing in and killing it, evidently in order to save itself the trouble of conveying the carcase to its young. See Hodson's paper in Cal. J. N. H., II., 205, and Campbell's note on the osteology of

**Vulpes bengalensis**, Shaw.; *Cuon chrysurus, xanthurus, and russescens*, Gray; *C. Kokree*, Sykes—Indian fox—*Lomri*. Jerdon, 149; Blyth’s note, J. A. S., Ben., XXIII., 279.

This pretty little animal is only found occasionally in the Tarâi and low country at the foot of the hills. It does not appear to enter the hills, where it is replaced by the following. It is easily tamed if taken young and makes a faithful, affectionate pet.

**Vulpes montanus**, Pearson; *V. himalaicus*, Ogilvy—Hill fox—*Kuniya shiyâl* (Kumaun); *wânu* (Nepâl); *loh* (Kashmîr). Jerdon, 152.

This handsome fox is found all over the hills from the Tons to the Sârda, 4-12,000 feet. Its principal food is rats and offal, but it will take poultry when it has the opportunity, and doubtless constantly kills young pheasants and partridges. It is a very poor runner on level ground, and even on open hill sides an ordinary half-bred greyhound can easily catch it. It carries a very fine fur and its skin is in great demand for making rugs.

**Delphinidæ.**

**Platanista gangetica**, Lebeck—Gangetic porpoise—*Sûs*. Jerdon, 158.

This porpoise is said to have been captured at Hardwâr.

**Sciuridæ.**

**Sciurus palmarum**, Gmelin; *S. penicillatus*, Leach—Common striped squirrel—*Galheri*. Jerdon, 170.

This little squirrel is found throughout the submontane tract and Dûns, ascending the lower valleys to a short distance.


This curious squirrel is common in all large forests in the hills above 5,000 feet. It feeds on walnuts, hazel-nuts, acorns, and the bark and tender shoots of many trees. It is quite nocturnal in its habits, living in hollow trees during the day and coming out to feed
at dusk. A bonfire in the forest will bring numbers to the neighbouring trees at dusk. Its fur is very good, but the skin is so very fine that it is difficult to cure it without tearing it. It travels about the forest by climbing to a top of a tree and then sailing off downwards in a diagonal direction to another some thirty or forty yards off. It rarely descends to the ground. It is very timid and can easily be tamed.


This squirrel occurs in situations similar to the preceding, 6-10,000 feet, and has frequently been procured near Landour and in Kumaun.


This marmot is found all along the perpetual snow line in places which are suitable for its burrows. Mr. Greig notes that he has seen marmots in such places that would answer to the description of either Jerdon's Tibetan marmot or his red marmot, sitting side by side and sometimes a black one along with them, so that it is probable Blandford has been right in uniting them. They live at an elevation 12-16,000 feet and emerge from their burrows in May, when the snow melts. Their food consists of roots and vegetables, but it is not known for certain whether they hibernate during the winter or store up a sufficient supply of food to last them for the six months during which they are snowed up. For synonymy see J. A. S. Ben., XII., 410, and XLIV., ii., 122, containing Blandford's review of the genus.

**Muridae.**


This burrowing rodent has been procured in Dehra Dún, where it does considerable damage in the plantations.

**Mus Hardwickii**, Gray—Short-tailed mole-rat. Jerdon, 190; Anderson, J. A. S., Ben., XLVII., ii., 221.

Occurs doubtfully in the Dún, ascending the lower hills.


Common everywhere in the hills and plains.

This species occurs in the Tarai area adjacent plains.


This rat occurs commonly in houses and near cultivation.

Mus niviventer, Hodg.—White-bellied house rat. Jerdon, 200; Hodgson, l. c.

Specimens of this rat have been procured from Mussooree and Naini Tal.


This pretty small mouse is commonly found in the thatch and amongst the beams of houses from the hill southwards.

Mus homourus, Hodg.—Hill mouse. Jerdon, 204.

This is the common mouse of hill stations from the Panjab to Darjiling.

Mus crassipes, Blyth.—Large-footed mouse. Jerdon, 204.

Procured from Mussooree.

Mus Tytleri, Blyth.—Long-haired mouse. Jerdon, 205.

Specimens of this mouse have been procured from Dehra Dun.


This species occurs at high elevations throughout the hills. Procured from Darjiling and Kunáor.


This rat is said to have been procured in the upper Pattis of Kumaon. See Hodgson's description, Cal. J. N. H., II., 60.


This vole has been procured at high elevations in Western Garhwal and from Chini in Kunáor.
The porcupine commonly occurs throughout the submontane tract and in the hills up to 8,000 feet. In the level country at the foot of the hills it makes its own burrows, and when beating with elephants through long grass, the presence of these burrows is felt when the elephant sinks into one up to his chest and gives itself and its rider a troublesome shake. In the hills the porcupine makes its home in natural caves and crevices in the rocks. It is nocturnal in its habits and a great pest to potato-growers, gardeners, and cultivators generally. The best way to kill it is to find its cave and suffocate it by burning wetted straw in the entrance. It may also be taken in the ordinary dead-fall trap (jūndā) baited with mangle-stones, potatoes or beet-root and the like. If caught in the gin trap, it generally bites off the trapped leg and escapes. It has the power of throwing its quills with great force, but is not able to direct them. In one case a porcupine pursued by terriers raised his quills and expelled a dozen or more with such force that two of them were picked out of a tree close by at more than three feet from the ground. These had pierced through the bark and were tightly fixed in the wood. They frequently injure dogs severely, but the wounds usually heal without festering. Natives are very fond of porcupine's flesh and young ones make excellent curries, and baked in a paste of flour they are very delicately flavoured. For European tastes, however, the adult animal is somewhat rank and coarsely flavoured.

Leporidae.

Lepus ruficaudatus, Geoff; L. indicus and macrotus, Hodg.—Common Indian hare—*Khargosh*. Jerdon, 224 : Hodgson, J. A. S., Ben., IX., 1,183 ; XVI., 572.

The hare occurs throughout the submontane tract and outer ranges up to 7,000 feet and has been procured on Badkot above 8,000 feet. It is doubtful whether *L. hispidus*, Pearson, the hispid hare of the *sāl* forests of the Gorakpur submontane tract, extends as far westwards as Kumaon : see Hodgson, l. c.

An ordinary observer would not take this tailless rat-like animal for a hare. In appearance it is like a guinea-pig, but much smaller and is very common on all the upper hills at the edge of the forest at 9-16,000 feet.

**Elephantidae.**

_Elephas indicus_, Cuv.—Indian elephant—_Háthi_. Jerdon, 229.

At the present time there are about 150 wild elephants in the tract between the Sárdá and the Ganges, and about 50 in the Dún and Siwálik tract between the Ganges and the Jumna. They do much damage to the cultivation on the border of the forest, and the number of young trees and bambus destroyed by them is very great. In former years, elephants were caught in pits (ogi), but these caused such loss of cattle that the practice was prohibited in 1817. Subsequently it was ordered that all pits should be destroyed and that any elephants found in them should be confiscated and sold on behalf of Government, and any person, in future, digging pits for the purpose of catching elephants should not only be fined, but also be held liable for any loss that ensued. The annual cess levied on the capture of elephants never exceeded one thousand rupees in any year, whilst the grazing dues in the tract between the Rámganga and the Sárdá exceeded thirty thousand rupees. The relative value of the two sources of revenue, therefore, offered no inducement to continue permission for the establishment of elephant pits, and the difficulty found in procuring redress for losses caused by cattle falling into the pits led to the strict enforcement of the rule forbidding their excavation. Looked on in another point of view, the pit system of catching elephants was highly uneconomical, as fully three-fourths of the animals captured were either fatally or seriously injured. Accordingly, in 1824, several elephants found in pits were seized and sold, and the proceeds were credited to Government. In 1827, the restriction was removed, and rules were framed for the digging of pits and the collection of dues on

1 To Board, dated 7-12-18. From Mr. Shore, dated 14-3-27.
" ditto, 21-3-27. " ditto, " 21-6-27.
" ditto, 22-5-27.
the capture of elephants, which subsequently received the sanction of Government. But little advantage, however, accrued from this permission to either the persons engaged in catching the elephants or to Government. After the mutiny, for some time, a regular kheddah was established at the foot of the hills for the purpose of catching elephants for the public service, but was soon abandoned. By a recent Act of the Legislative Council no one is allowed to kill or capture an elephant without special permission of the local authorities. In 1873, the Maharaja of Balrampur captured thirty head, and in 1879 he secured twenty-eight head. The plan of driving the herds into fenced enclosures is not practised here, where the system is either to run the wild elephants down in the open and lasso them, or to surround them in a gorge by placing fifty or sixty tame elephants in a narrow place where the hills on either side are precipitous and then drive down towards them the wild herd. The men engaged in driving are armed with guns or they beat drums and cymbals and blow horns and keep up a perpetual din. So soon as the wild herd approaches near enough, the tame elephants are rushed at them, and if the ground be favourable and the kheddah be well managed very few, except the large males, escape. The tame elephants have a rope securely fastened around their necks, to which is attached a second rope ending in a running noose. Five or six of them surround and hustle the wild animal until the phunets (noose-men) are able to attach at least two of the nooses, when the remainder retire whilst the wild elephant commences the series of struggles that ends in its complete submission. The running noose is then loosened and so tied that it cannot slip and strangle the captive. It is only where there is not much scrub or jungle that the attempt to run down wild elephants in the open ever succeeds. In favourable places the wild animal is captured after a fair chase of about a mile.¹

Solitary old males are sometimes met with, and are very dangerous to those who have to frequent the haunts affected by them.

¹ An account of elephant shooting and elephant catching in Dehra Dun will be found in Dunlop's 'Hunting in the Himalaya,' London, 1869. From the same work the following vocabulary of the mahouts or elephant-drivers is taken:—'Mail' (pronounced, 'mile,') 'get up' or 'go one' : 'buith,' 'sit down' : 'dut,' 'stop' : 'dut-dut,' 'go backwards' : 'diy,' 'step over' : 'loma,' 'dum,' 'take a long step' : 'thuth' : 'break' : 'beri' 'let go' or 'stop feeding' : 'chai,' 'turn' and 'chai-dut,' 'turn round.' These phrases are in common use by elephant-drivers all over the North-Western Provinces.
In the Dún, where they appear to be more numerous, the pathways made by them may be easily recognized, being on plain land about four feet wide and on hilly ground about half that width, well-marked, and bearing the signs of having been formed by some animal of great weight.


The wild pig occurs in numbers throughout the tract between the Tons and the Sárđa from the plains up to 10,000 feet. In the lower hills they are to be found in every place where there is good cover, and in the upper hills in the oak forests especially. They feed on acorns, wild fruits, and roots, but also do much damage to sugarcane, maize, and rice, when opportunity occurs. Occasionally they eat carrion. An old wild boar is the most fearless of all wild animals. No leopard dare attack him, and he has been known to beat off a tiger; whilst men, and elephants even, are often attacked by him without having given any provocation. As a rule, the largest boars are found far up in the oak forests. See Hodgson in J. A. S. Ben., XVI., 423.


This miniature pig is of a blackish brown colour and seldom weighs more than ten pounds. It occurs in the Tarái and is greatly prized by the Bhūksas and Thárus, but is nowhere very common.

**Cervinæ.**


The swamp deer was formerly very plentiful all through the Tarái, but the clearances of the last quarter of a century have reduced its numbers considerably. It is now seldom found west of the Dhabka river except in the eastern Dún of Dehra, and even between that river and the Sárđa is nowhere common. It chiefly affects swampy ground well covered with reeds and tall grass, hence the ordinary name; but it is also found at certain seasons in
dry tracts where there are patches of long grass along the edge of the sal forests. The stags shed their horns in March, and few are seen with them after the 1st of April. The horns are particularly handsome, carrying from ten to fifteen or more points. See Hodgson's note, J. A. S. Ben. V., 240.


The sāmbhar still exists in nearly all the great forests from the plains up to 10,000 feet, but in very small numbers compared with twenty years ago. It is the finest of the deer tribe, and is much prized by sportsmen for its magnificent horns and the difficulty in obtaining them. Those that permanently frequent the upper hills possess more massive horns and thicker and longer hair, and are more robust in build than those found in the lower hills and the Tarāi. In the rains they descend from the lower hills and return when the grass dries up in April. Very few remain permanently in the Tarāi. Natives run down a large number every year with dogs, and when snow is on the ground the deer are soon caught, but at other times they generally run a mile or two before being brought to bay. When hard pressed, the sāmbhar always runs down the hill and makes for water: the dogs then surround it and keep it at bay until the hunters arrive. The sāmbhar affords good sport to a hunter on foot, as it has very keen powers of sight, scent, and smell; but to the hunter mounted on an elephant it falls an easy prey, being so accustomed to wild elephants as to feel no alarm on the approach of a tame one. Each horn has three tines including the brow antler and two at the top of the beam. The horns are shed during May and the rutting season occurs in October-November.


Hodgson has distinguished two varieties of this species under the names A. major and A. mediua, but this difference requires confirmation. The spotted deer is the most common of all its tribe found in the forest along the foot of the hills. When the jungle is dense it occurs in herds of from ten to twenty, but when the grass
has been burned down it crowds together for mutual protection, and herds numbering several hundreds may be seen. These are very difficult to approach and easily alarmed. The spotted deer is nowhere to be found north of the second range of low hills. The stags shed their horns at irregular times from October until March, chiefly, however, in October-November. The rutting season is equally irregular, since the stags commence to rut so soon as their new horns are perfect. Each horn has three tines, the brow antler and two at the extremity of the beam, like the sâmbar, and frequently 'sports' occur at the base of the brow antler.


The hog-deer is found within the same limits as the spotted deer, from the jungles along the foot of the Himalaya to the second range of low hills. It affects grassy swamps or grass jungle along the banks of streams, and only retires into forest when much disturbed. It affords excellent sport for elephant beating, for none but a skilful shot could secure a hog-deer as it dashes across a small opening in the forest when running away. The rutting season occurs October-February, and the horns are shed in March and early April. The horns are like those of a sâmbar in miniature, except that they generally curve in more towards the tip.


The rib-faced or barking-deer is common throughout the tract between the Tons and the Sárda up to 10,000 feet, wherever there are extensive forests. Its hard bark is constantly heard at all times of the day and night, but being a very poor runner on level ground, it seldom ventures out into the open. It is generally a solitary animal, except during the rutting season, when two or three may be seen feeding together. The upper jaw of the male is armed with two formidable tusks, with which it can inflict very severe wounds. Cases are known in which dogs have been killed or severely wounded by the male kákar. Colonel Markham says that "as it runs a curious rattling noise may often be heard like that
from two pieces of loose bone knocked together sharply," but it would appear that this phenomenon is confined to the female. The males shed their horns in May and rut during October-November. The barking deer is quite helpless in the snow, and consequently great numbers are killed every year. The venison is seldom fat, but is very good if hung up for a few days before being cooked.


The musk-deer is found in the upper ranges from 8,000 feet to the limits of forest, but it is so much sought after for its valuable perfume-bearing pods that it is now becoming rare all through these hills. The pods and even the dung of this deer smell strongly of musk, though its flesh is not in the least tainted and makes very good venison. The female has no musk. An ordinary pod weighs about two tolas, but sometimes they are twice that weight, and are worth from ten to fifteen rupees per tola. The more common variety of the mark deer is of a brownish grey colour varying in shades on the back where it is darkest. The hair is coarse and very brittle so that it is difficult to obtain a good skin. Musk-deer are nearly always solitary and are only found in the forest, where they prefer rocky, precipitous ground. They are very active and sure-footed, and bound from ledge to ledge with the most graceful facility. Both sexes are destitute of horns, but the males have long slender tusks in the upper jaw (about 3 inches long) that grow downwards and then slightly backwards. The musk-deer is one of the smallest of its family being seldom more than twenty inches high at the shoulder. It is frequently taken in a simple snare by the hill-men, who, for this purpose, make a low hedge along the ridge of a spur sometimes a mile in length or more and just sufficiently high and thick to tempt the game to save themselves the trouble of jumping or flying over. Openings are left in the hedge at intervals of thirty feet in which the snares are set. These are laid flat on the ground, the upper end being attached to a stout sapling bent over so as to form a strong spring. When the musk-deer approaches the hedge, he turns aside until he discovers an opening, through which he walks and puts his foot in the snare. The end of the sapling is thus released and instantly springs up,
suspending the deer by the leg. Many pheasants are captured in these snares in the same manner. See Hodgson's notes, J. A. S., Ben., VIII., 202: X., 795: Kinloch gives a photograph of a head, 41.

**Antilopinae.**


The *nil-gái* is only found in certain patches of forest along the foot of the hills, and usually close to cultivation. It does much damage to young wheat, and no ordinary fence will keep it out. The female has no horns, and gives excellent venison or rather beef.


This graceful little animal is found throughout the low plateaux and hills covered with sāl forest and the dry jungle between them and the Tārāi. It is generally seen alone or in pairs. It does not seem to suffer from the heat, for except during May–June it never seeks a shady place to lie in, and is usually found in a patch of grass or a *ber* (*Z. Jujuba*) bush, and in the hills it frequents grassy glades in the forest. It is a rather difficult animal to hit as it bounds away. The two pairs of horns are quite separate from each other; the posterior pair are 4”–5” long and the anterior pair 1”–2.” The female has no horns. It rarely carries any fat, and the venison is poor and dry.

*Antilope cervicapra*, Pallas; *A. bezoartica*, Ald.—Indian Antelope—*Haran*. Jerdon, 276.

The Indian antelope commonly known as the black-buck occurs only in the tract along the southern boundary bordering on the plains. It is found in open plains or in low grass or light scrub jungle and rarely enters the forest. The horns of those found in this division are small, eighteen inches being rather above than under the average. See on the synonymy, Blanford in J. A. S., Ben., XLIV., ii., 18.
Nemorhaedus bubalis, Hodgson; Antilope Ther and N. proelius, Hodg.—Forest goat—Tehr, sarau, aimu. Jerdon, 284.

The sarau is found in most of the rough, rocky hill forests 3,000-9,000 feet. It affects precipitous, densely-wooded places, is solitary in its habits, and is rarely seen in the open except at dusk and daydawn. It is a very fierce animal when brought to bay by wild or tame dogs, and generally succeeds in killing one or two with its short, sharp horns. Its flesh is very coarse, strong, and unpalatable. The horns of both males and females are 9"-10" long, tapering to a point and curved backwards. The skin is very tough and strong and makes good leather. Although it has an awkward gait, it can cross precipitous ground with great ease and descend slopes with marvellous rapidity. The female produces one kid, generally in March-April. For Hodgson's description see J. A. S., Ben., IV., 489.


This pretty animal is found throughout the outer ranges 3,000-9,000 feet. Both sexes have horns; those of the male are 6"-9" long and those of the female are 4"-6" long and considerably thinner. They generally occur in parties of three and four, but where they are abundant herds of ten and twelve are met with. The largest males are usually solitary. They feed up to 9-10 A.M. and again from 2-3 P.M. during the hot weather, but in the cold weather they wander about all day. Chamois shooting is the best possible practice for the young sportsman, enabling him to learn stalking, to walk across steep ground, and to use his rifle satisfactorily. The female produces her young, generally one, though sometimes two, during April-May. A kid, if caught when young, makes a very tame and amusing pet. For Hodgson's description see J. A. S., Ben., IV., 488.

Hemitragus jemlaicus, Smith; Capra Jharal and C. quadrirmammi, Hodgson—Himalayan wild goat—Tehr, jula (male), jhàral. Jerdon, 286.

This true wild goat is found in the most precipitous parts of the upper Himalaya, 7,000-12,000 feet, though it also occurs at 6,000 feet in suitable places. Those found at low elevations are called
'khur-tehr' by the hill men: they are exactly the same as the others, but do not possess such fine coats nor such long horns. Both sexes have horns, but those of the female are neither so massive nor so long as those of the male. The horns touch at the base and are sub-compressed, sub-triangular and curve backwards considerably. Those of the male measure 10\textasciitilde-15\textasciitilde along the curve and are 9\textasciitilde-12\textasciitilde in circumference at the base. The rutting season commences about the second week in October and the young are produced in April-May. The oldest males will be found close up to the snow-line in August-September and the females are often seen above the forest limit. As the snow falls they descend to the valleys, but never leave the precipices except to graze on grassy slopes close by. To enjoy tehr shooting a man must be an expert cragsman and must have a very good head. The ground affected by them is always very dangerous, and no one should venture on it without a good guide. For Hodgson's description see J. A. S., Ben., IV, 491.


This wild sheep is very plentiful about Niti and Laphkhel, and there are a few at the head of the Pindar river and some are said to occur in the Dárma and other valleys to the eastward. They frequent the grassy slopes and rocky ground between the upper limit of forest and the snow-line 10,000-16,000 feet. The old males leave the females from June until September and live by themselves in parties of three to twelve or more. In October they begin to join the females and in November their rutting season commences. The lambing season occurs in May-June. The old males are very fat in September-October and then yield excellent venison. Barhal shooting gives fine sport, but entails hard walking and often very difficult climbing. Both sexes possess horns; those of the male measure 20\textasciitilde-30\textasciitilde along the curve and 10\textasciitilde-13\textasciitilde around the base. The female is a smaller animal than the male, and has small, depressed horns only slightly recurved. The bluish-brown coat of the old males, with its band of jet black on the lower part of the neck and chest and along the flanks and its pure white stomach, makes a very handsome rug. Mr. Wilson notes that the males are seldom seen far from some rocky ground, to which they retire when
armed, and that all are accustomed to place sentries on some commanding positions whilst the rest of the flock is feeding. For Hodgson’s description see J. A. S., Ben., IV., 492; Lydekker, ibid, XLIX., ii., 131: Kinloch gives a photograph of the head of a male, 25.

The wild buffalo and the rhinoceros are no longer found west of the Sárda, and must be definitively excluded from the list of Kumaon mammals. It is now only necessary very briefly to indicate the principal animals of that portion of Tibet adjoining Kumaon and Garhwal. There we have the chús or Tibetan antelope (Kamas Hodgsoni) on the slopes near lake Mánasasrowar and along the head-waters of the Satlaj, and the pretty Tibetan gazelle (Pissopara pictocaudata), the gazæ of the Húniyas. But the most conspicuous and most common amongst the larger mammalia is the Kyang or wild-ass (A. Kyang). It roams all over the country in troops of ten to twenty. Solitary males are, however, met with and frequently bear the marks of the conflict that has led to their expulsion from the drove. Their summer coat is close and shining, above clear antelopine-red; below with the entire limbs and muzzle flavescent-white: mane, tuft of tail and a dorsal line connecting them brown-black. The winter coat is rough like that of a camel and the rufous hue is more pronounced. Almost all writers notice the occurrence in numbers of this animal beyond the passes from British territory into Tibet. The chánko or chángü, Tibetan wolf (Canis laniger) is not uncommon, though from its habits it is seldom seen. It is very fierce and bold, and does considerable damage to the flocks of the Húniyas. Hodgson states that F. Diardi, Desm. (Jerdon, 102), the clouded leopard, occurs in Tibet, but it is doubtful. The more common lynx is the ee of the Húniyas, the Felis isabilina of Blyth, but there is a second smaller cat-like animal, F. Manul, Pallas (F. nigripunctus, Hodg.). There are several species of badger, a pole-cat, martens, weasels, numerous marmots and leporine animals, a description of which will be found in the works noticed in the ‘References’ attached to this chapter. The ban-chaur or wild yak (Bos grunniens, Lin.) is found in the valleys around the head-waters of the Satlaj and in similar localities the nyón or nán (Ovis Ammon, Lin.) is met with, though in no great numbers. Dunlop procured a specimen so the
yak on the Tibetan side of the snows, in the tract between the Niti and the Unta-dhúra pass and a specimen of the nyána near the same locality. Both these animals are of great size. The tame yak exceeds in bulk the ordinary bullock of the plains, and in the expressive language of the hill-men, "the liver of a wild yak is a load for a tame one." Dunlop shot one measuring nine feet around the chest, while his horns were sixteen inches in circumference at the base and eleven inches half way up. A specimen of the nyána is said to have stood thirteen hands high, but the usual height is 86"-44." One measuring 42" high was 74" in length; tail with the hair 8"; ear 6": horns along the curve 40" and circumference at the base 17." A head with horns attached will weigh 40lb., a fair load for a porter in the hills. The márkhor (Capra megaceros, Hut.), the ibex (Capra sibirica, Meyer) and the uríd (Ovis cycloce- ros, Hut.) are not found in the Kumaon Himalaya nor in the portion of Tibet between the sources of the Satlaj and those of the Karnáli.

The domestic cattle indigenous to the province are small in size and usually red or black in colour, resembling much the Kerry cow in appearance. Every morning the village herds are driven to the ridges of the neighbouring hills for pasture, and are again collected before sunset and housed either in the lower story of the dwelling-house or in a temporary shed erected close to the village site. As a rule, the milch cattle are not fed on grain or chaff, but are only pastured, and after the harvest are allowed to eat down the stalks remaining in the fields. During the early winter and summer, when the grass is dry and worthless, the cattle from the lower hills of Kumaon are driven to the Bhábar for pasturage where they remain from October until May. Whilst there, the inhabitants of neighbouring villages in the hills usually canton together and construct for themselves temporary sheds of boughs of trees with roofs of thatch or leaves. The cattle of the upper hills and of the greater part of Garhwál and westward to the Tons find pasturage all the year round in the upper hills. Neither bullocks nor buffaloes are used for commercial transport, but they share with ponies and women the duty of carrying their owners' baggage in the annual migration to and from the Bhábar.
census of domestic cattle has been taken of late years, but in 1822 a rough estimate gave 241,314 head distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>District</th>
<th>Cows</th>
<th>Bullocks</th>
<th>Buffaloes</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kumaun</td>
<td>53,210</td>
<td>26,928</td>
<td>63,999</td>
<td>144,137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garhwal</td>
<td>66,286</td>
<td>22,544</td>
<td>8,236</td>
<td>105,166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>149,303</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since then it would be safe to say that the cattle have increased by one-third, giving in round numbers an estimate of 321,000 head for Kumaon and Garhwal, or half a million for the tract between the Tons and Sarda, excluding the Tarai. The cattle in the Tarai temporarily increase in numbers every year by the droves brought up from the plains for pasturage. The average of the returns for the three years 1876-77 to 1878-79 shows that 35,000 head of cows and bullocks and 4,000 head of buffaloes paid the grazing tax each year, to which must be added those which escaped the tax owing to local privileges. The number of the latter may be gathered from the plough statements, allowing two bullocks for each plough and also an average of two cows for each plough, and taking the ploughs at 18,000 we have 72,000 head of cattle belonging to the permanent inhabitants of the Tarai, and adding these to the cattle sent for grazing a total of 111,000 for the whole Tarai or say 600,000 head of cattle for the entire tract with which we are concerned. This is merely an estimate, but it is the nearest that under the circumstances we can arrive at.

The greater part of the supply of bullocks for agricultural purposes is met from the Bhabar, where they are bred in large numbers or are imported from the Oudh districts notably from Nanpara. A pair of light bullocks will cost from Rs. 20 to Rs. 50 and a large pair up to Rs. 80. Several attempts have been made to improve the local breed of agricultural cattle, but all have failed. Bulls imported from Hissar were found to be unable to endure the steamy heat and the troublesome insect torments of the Bhabar and Tarai. The cultivators objected to them that they were too heavy for common purposes, and that it required more care than could be bestowed to bring up the young calves. The foot-and-mouth disease is common and in some years runs through whole tracts of country, destroying great numbers of cattle: during the year 1881 it has
been particularly severe in Kumaun. It is said to be a variety of rinderpest for which no effectual remedy has yet been discovered, though, according to some, the leaves of the common Potentilla dried and powdered and administered internally are said to possess prophylactic properties in these cases. Buffaloes are kept in considerable numbers for milking purposes and manure, and those bred in the Bhábar often attain to an enormous size. There are several local breeds varying in value from 20 to 60 rupees each.

In the Bhotiya maháls or villages north of the culminating range of the Himalaya the chaura-gdi or yak (Bos grunniens, Lin.) imported from Tibet and the hybrids between that animal and the kine of the country are used for carrying purposes. When the sire is a yak and the dam a hill cow, the hybrid is called juba; when the parentage is reversed, the produce is called garjo. The juba is found more valuable than the other hybrid or than either of the pure stocks. It will carry from two to three maunds and is also used for riding in the snows. It is very sure-footed, hardy and docile and capable of enduring great fatigue. Its price is from 30 to 60 rupees. Both varieties breed freely together and with the pure stock; in the former case the race degenerates, but in the latter the offspring gradually resumes the characteristics of the pure breed. The yak is seldom brought down lower than the summer residence of the Bhotiyas, though the juba goes as far as Rámnagar without appreciable injury. Those used in the local traffic are bred for the most part in Bisahr.

The sheep and goats used by the Bhotiyas for carrying purposes are not bred by them, but are purchased in the villages of the Dánpur and Badhángarh parganas or are imported from the Chamba district of the Panjáb Himalaya. The latter is the usual course, and in order to keep the trade in their own hands, the importers bring only ewes. Traill's description still holds good:—"The pasture on the upper ranges of the Himalaya are found to yield a grass in a peculiar degree nutritive to sheep. On the melting of the winter snows, towards the end of March, these mountains which, though lofty, are by no means precipitous, become covered with verdure, and are then

1 In Tibetan dzhobu.
resorted to by the flocks of the neighbourhood. A few days are said to suffice to restore the animals to condition, though ever so much reduced by the fasts and rigors of the preceding winter. The grass of these pastures is distinguished by the shepherds under a particular name, and has the universal reputation of being inexhaustible, the growth during the night being said to compensate fully for the consumption of the day. The flocks continue here till the commencement of the rains, when they are driven to less rich pastures on the more southern ridges; with the setting in of winter, they return to the villages. During this season, the sheep are compelled to browse with the goats; branches, chiefly of the oak, being cut down for them, and hay, though stored in small quantities for cattle, is never given to sheep. In some parts of Garhwal the leaves of trees, particularly of the mulberry, are dried and stocked in autumn, to serve as fodder for the winter. The bimas or mulberry is there, consequently, much valued, and the property in its foliage forms an object of sale and purchase distinct from the land. While on the mountains, the flocks are secured during the night in folds; these are situated along the ridges, and being intended for annual resort, are substantially built with layers of dry stone: the wall is raised to nine or ten feet, so as to exclude beasts of prey: only a single door of entrance is left, and that of the smallest dimensions, with the same view, as the leopards, when the door is high, break it down without difficulty by leaping against it. In the interior, sloping chhappars are erected along one or more sides, according to the number of animals to be sheltered. Every village has commonly its separate fold at each of the periodical pastures; the ridges in question, consequently, exhibit the appearance of a chain of fortified posts, the resemblance being increased by the individual sites of these erections, which, with a view to facility of draining, are placed on the summits of rising grounds."

The hill sheep are small with wiry brownish-grey wool, short tails and large horns. They are not good for the table and are kept for the sake of the wool, out of which coarse blankets are made. Attempts have been made to improve the breed by the importation of Tibetan, English and Australian rams, but hitherto the results are imperceptible. The common diseases of sheep, such as rot, mange, smallpox, &c. are all here prevalent and, in some years, extremely
destructive; the goats are further liable, in wet weather, to a disease called khari, which frequently terminates in the loss of the hoofs. The casualties are further augmented by exposure and fatigue, by accidents, and by wild beasts; and as the females—even those with young at their feet—are not exempted from labor, it can be a matter of no surprise that the Bhotiya annually finds himself called on to make a fresh outlay for keeping up his stock. The common description of sheep carries from ten to sixteen pounds and is worth about three rupees. The Tibetan sheep are also employed by the Bhotiyas in their carrying trade and are taller, stronger and more active than the Kumaon breed. They carry from thirty to forty pounds, but being unable to bear the heat of the Cis-Himalayan tract are usually kept by their owners at some adjoining village in Tibet and are brought into use when the passes open. The regular day's journey is about five miles in consequence of the great time required for pasture which is their only subsistence.

Goats both those bred in Kumaon and those imported from Tibet are also used in the carrying trade. They bear burdens of from twelve to twenty-four pounds and are worth four to five rupees. They are usually chosen from their superior boldness and activity as leaders of the flock and are furnished with bells. It is chiefly by means of these goats and sheep that the salt and borax of Tibet are brought to the lowland markets and there exchanged for the commodities of the plains. The salt and borax are carried in a sort of pack made of worsted with a pair of pockets called kurbaj (phancha in Garhwal) slung across the animal's back. These pockets are partly covered with leather to protect the contents from moisture when travelling or when piled on the ground in camp. The pack is girted underneath the body and a band around the chest and another crupper-wise under the tail render it perfectly safe when moving up or down hill. It is marvellous to observe the business-like way in which these little beasts of burden carry their loads. Coming upon them on the very narrowest, steepest and most slippy ascent or on the brink of a precipice, they seem intent only on pursuing their way, not turning aside for anything or any one, their obstinacy often causing the traveller uneasiness and always teaching him patience. And not the less curious is to observe
flocks of them numbering many hundreds meeting in a narrow path, each going the contrary way and yet none make a mistake, but persist in following their own leader and patiently overcome all obstacles in doing so. Goats are sometimes imported from Tibet for food or sacrifice, but their flesh is very strong and ill-flavoured. The indigenous breed is raised in the same places and by the same people who keep the indigenous sheep. Goats are, as a rule, low sized and sturdily made, although those bred in the more northern pastis often attain fair proportions. They are subject to the same diseases as sheep and are frequently poisoned by eating the rank herbage that springs up in the rains. The leaves of the ayár (Andro-med.a ovalifolía) so common about Naini Tál are also said to be fatal to goats. The hill-goat is useless for milk-giving purposes and is bred chiefly for the carrying trade or for food and sacrifice. Large flocks of sheep and goats arrive in the Tarāū from the plains about the end of October for pasture. They consist for the most part of ewes, and as soon as the lambs are sufficiently strong, they are again taken to the plains. The sheep brought for the supply of the Mussooree and Naini Tál markets usually come from the Kangra and Kulu districts of the Panjáb Himálaya, though the districts of the middle Duáb also supply a large number, smaller in size, but, when fed on gram for some time, yielding excellent mutton.

From the earliest years of British rule much attention has been paid to collecting information regarding the pushm or shawl-wool trade with Tibet, but with little practical result. The papers by Raper and Moorcroft in the earlier records and that drawn up by Captain E. Smyth in 1853 are now obsolete, but still present some features of interest. Pushm is procurable at all the Tibetan marts at from ten to twelve annas per pound, to which has to be added the cost of carriage. There are two sorts, the black and white; the latter being more valuable and more common than the former. The pushm of the yak is also produced in large quantities, but is much coarser than goat pushm. It is not much sought after for export and is consumed on the spot for making ropes, cloth for tents and coarse blankets for wear. Rúdük and Gartok are the principal marts for the sale of shawl-wool, which is procurable also at Taklakhrā, Chaprááng, Gángri and from Haurba, Chhyúolithol Banbuwałthol,
Dáblíng and Magana. The export trade is principally confined to Ladák and Káshmír. The goat-shearing season commences about the beginning of June and the hair is not separated from the pushm or under-wool by the Huniyas, but is sold as sheared and is subsequently sorted by the purchasers. For some years all the wool produced to the north of Gartok and also that from the districts to the east and south has, by order of the Chinese authorities, been concentrated there and sold only to Ládáki and Káshmíri merchants or their agents. Still the Kumaoni traders have always been able to smuggle some shawl-wool into Kumaon, but the demand is so restricted and the market for this class of wool having been already well established at Rámpur in Bisahúr, the quantity has never been considerable. The Kumaoni traders are also put to some disadvantage by the lateness of the season at which the passes are open. The road from Kunáor to Tibet along the valley of the Satlaj by which much of the pushm is imported opens very early and the traders have time to push up to Taklakhár to the east of the Byáns pass before our Bhotiyas have begun to cross their passes. Of late years a trade in wool, both raw and manufactured, has sprung up, but is subject to many vicissitudes. The imports through the passes into British territory have been as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Raw wool. Maunds</th>
<th>Blankets Maunds</th>
<th>Value Rs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1877-78</td>
<td>6,228</td>
<td>1,072</td>
<td>1,09,645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1878-79</td>
<td>2,049</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>54,142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1879-80</td>
<td>2,373</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>51,275</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This trade is almost entirely in sheep's wool and can hardly be considered well-established. The Huniyas bring their earliest ventures to Milam and have their sheep sheared there, selling the produce to our Bhotiyas. A certain small amount is also brought by the Bhotiyas from Gartok, but only, so it appears, sufficient to give them and their women employment in the manufacture of the thick woollen blankets known as thalmas and chaptas and the coarse gowns known as chugas or bakus. These are distinguished from the local woollen manufactures by their having the wool on one side combed up so as to resemble a fleece. A Bhotiya is hardly ever to be seen without a string of this wool spinning by the simple means of a leaden weight and the torsion given by his fingers. The women

1 Fuller in Rep., 1873-79.
weave the thread into blankets, which sell at Bageswar fair at from five to eight rupees each. The Tibetan wool can be delivered at Bageswar at about twenty rupees for 82 lb. The coarser wool of the Bhotiya sheep is known as bagûlti and is entirely consumed locally for local wants. There does not seem to be much prospect of any important trade arising in wool with Tibet. The pušhû is limited in supply and fetches uncleaned from Rs. 60 to Rs. 70 per 82 lb. at Bageswar, and the trade is still practically a monopoly in the hands of the agents of the Kâshmir and Ludhiâna manufacturers. The supply of sheep's wool from all this portion of Tibet can hardly exceed 15,000 maunds or 550 tons, quite insufficient to establish a special industry and the supply from the carrying sheep is consumed locally. Those who are interested in the question of the wool-trade with Tibet will find some accurate information on the subject in the annual reports of the Department of Commerce.

The Tibetan or hill pony is imported from Tibet by the Bhotiyas and is generally known under the name guânt. Those brought from the Chhamurti district are held in high repute and fetch very high prices. The price of the ordinary guânt ranges from Rs. 150 to Rs. 300. They are clumsy, rough and small, but sagacious, strong, active, very sure-footed and docile. The pony in more common use amongst the hill people is the banjâra variety, bred in large numbers along the foot of the hills. It is a very hardy, useful small sized animal and does most of the carrying work between the plains and the hill sanitarium. It is worth from twenty to forty rupees. Grass, gram, barley-meal, urd and bhat are used as fodder for ponies, and the last is the only grain procurable for them in the upper patti.

There are two varieties of the domestic dog—the Tibetan mastiff, which is large, strong with a shaggy coat, very fierce and well adapted to defend the flocks of its owner from beasts of prey and robbers; and the hill variety of the common pariah dog of the plains. The former will not stand well the heat of the plains and owing to its fierce disposition is an undesirable pet; the latter is a finer and more handsome animal than his brother of the plains and becomes an attached and faithful companion. Both are much subject to hydrophobia, and few years pass without its occurrence being brought to notice unpleasantly. I have heard of Tibetan terriers, but have never seen them.
Dábáling and Magana. The export trade is principally confined to Ladák and Káshmír. The goat-shearing season commences about the beginning of June and the hair is not separated from the pushm or under-wool by the Huniyas, but is sold as sheared and is subsequently sorted by the purchasers. For some years all the wool produced to the north of Gartok and also that from the districts to the east and south has, by order of the Chinese authorities, been concentrated there and sold only to Ladáki and Káshmír merchants or their agents. Still the Kumaoni traders have always been able to smuggle some shawl-wool into Kumaon, but the demand is so restricted and the market for this class of wool having been already well established at Rámpur in Bisáhr, the quantity has never been considerable. The Kumaoni traders are also put to some disadvantage by the lateness of the season at which the passes are open. The road from Kunáor to Tibet along the valley of the Satlaj by which much of the pushm is imported opens very early and the traders have time to push up to Taklakhár to the east of the Byáns pass before our Bhotiyas have begun to cross their passes. Of late years a trade in wool, both raw and manufactured, has sprung up, but is subject to many vicissitudes. The imports through the passes into British territory have been as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1877-78</td>
<td>6,225</td>
<td>1,072</td>
<td>1,09,845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1878-79</td>
<td>2,049</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>54,143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1879-80</td>
<td>2,373</td>
<td>311</td>
<td>51,275</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This trade is almost entirely in sheep's wool and can hardly be considered well-established. The Huniyas bring their earliest ventures to Milam and have their sheep sheared there, selling the produce to our Bhotiyas. A certain small amount is also brought by the Bhotiyas from Gartok, but only, so it appears, sufficient to give them and their women employment in the manufacture of the thick woollen blankets known as thalmas and chaptas and the coarse gowns known as chaugas or bakus. These are distinguished from the local woollen manufactures by their having the wool on one side combed up so as to resemble a fleece. A Bhotiya is hardly ever to be seen without a string of this wool spinning by the simple means of a leaden weight and the torsion given by his fingers. The women

1 Fuller in Rep., 1873-79.
weave the thread into blankets, which sell at Bageswar fair at from five to eight rupees each. The Tibetan wool can be delivered at Bageswar at about twenty rupees for 82 lb. The coarser wool of the Bhotiya sheep is known as bagidh and is entirely consumed locally for local wants. There does not seem to be much prospect of any important trade arising in wool with Tibet. The pushen is limited in supply and fetches uncleaned from Rs. 60 to Rs. 70 per 82 lb. at Bageswar, and the trade is still practically a monopoly in the hands of the agents of the Kashmir and Ludhiana manufacturers. The supply of sheep's wool from all this portion of Tibet can hardly exceed 15,000 maunds or 550 tons, quite insufficient to establish a special industry and the supply from the carrying sheep is consumed locally. Those who are interested in the question of the wool-trade with Tibet will find some accurate information on the subject in the annual reports of the Department of Commerce.

The Tibetan or hill pony is imported from Tibet by the Bhotiyas and is generally known under the name guxt. Those brought from the Chhamur district are held in high repute and fetch very high prices. The price of the ordinary guxt ranges from Rs. 150 to Rs. 300. They are clumsy, rough and small, but sagacious, strong, active, very sure-footed and docile. The pony in more common use amongst the hill people is the banjara variety, bred in large numbers along the foot of the hills. It is a very hardy, useful small sized animal and does most of the carrying work between the plains and the hill sanitaria. It is worth from twenty to forty rupees. Grass, gram, barley-meal, urd and bhat are used as fodder for ponies, and the last is the only grain procurable for them in the upper pattis.

There are two varieties of the domestic dog—the Tibetan mastiff, which is large, strong with a shaggy coat, very fierce and well adapted to defend the flocks of its owner from beasts of prey and robbers; and the hill variety of the common pariah dog of the plains. The former will not stand well the heat of the plains and owing to its fierce disposition is an undesirable pet; the latter is a finer and more handsome animal than his brother of the plains and becomes an attached and faithful companion. Both are much subject to hydrophobia, and few years pass without its occurrence being brought to notice unpleasantly. I have heard of Tibetan terriers, but have never seen them.
The following references are chiefly to the reports and works of local observers which contain much local information that has never been made use of in the systematic works. Hodgson and Blyth among the older and Blanford, Stoliczka and Dobson amongst later writers have done much for the Indian mammalia:

Jerdon.—Indian Mammals. Calcutta, 1867.
Gray.—Illustrations of Indian Zoology. London, 1833-34.
Royse.—Illustrations of the Botany and other branches of the Natural History of the Himalayan mountains (the mammalogy by W. Ogilby). London, 1839.

To the sportsman I commend the following works:
Baldwin, J. H.—Large and small game of Bengal and the North-Western Provinces. London, 1876.

HODGSON'S PAPERS.
Note on Zoological nomenclature. J. A. S. Ben., V., 751.
Three new species of monkey. Ibid., IX., 1211 (P. schistaceus, etc.)
A new species of Plecotus. Ibid., XVI., 894 (P. auritus).
On Megaderma schistacea. Ibid., XVI., 889: XI., 225 (M. Lyra).
Synopsis of the Vespertilionidae of Nepal. Ibid., VI., 699.
Description of the Kathiah nyula. Ibid., IV., 702 (Mustela Kathiah).
Two new species of flying squirrel. J. A. S. Ben. XIII., 67 (Jerdon, 177 178).
A Rhinolophus from central Nepal. Ibid., XII., 409. (Jerdon, 22).
Four new species of otter. Ibid., VIII., 319 (Jerdon, 86).
A new species of porcupine. Ibid., XVI., 771 (Jerdon, 291).
A new mole, Talpa macrura. Ibid., XXVII., 176 (Jerdon, 61).
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

On the civet of India. Ibid., II, 47 (V. Zibetha).

LAGOMYS napalensis. Ibid., X., 354 (L. Roylif).
The hispid hare of the wild forest. Ibid., XVI., 572 (Lepus hispidus).
The common hare of the plains and Sub-Himalaya. Ibid., IX., 1183 (L. r.-fl.
caudatus).
A new form of hog. Ibid., XVI., 423 (Jerdon, 241).
The pigmy hog of the Tarai. Ibid., XVI., 593 (Jerdon, 244).
Anatomy of Alurus, Fuscus and Stylurus. Ibid., XVII., ii., 475, 572.
On a new species of Cervus, IV., 683: XII., 597.
Cervus Elaphus of the wild forest. X., 721 (Jerdon, 251).
Cervus Duvaucelli. V., 240 (Jerdon, 254).
On the genus Moschus. VIII., 202, X., 795 (Jerdon, 268).
On the Shaw or Tibetan stag. XIX., 466, 578: XX., 358 (Jerdon, 251).
The Jirali. I., 66, 115 (Jerdon, 256).
On a new Tibetan antelope. XV., 334.
On the Churu antelope. III., 124.
On various genera of Ruminants. XVI., 665.
Antelope Hodgsoni. I., 59.
Synopsis of the Thear and Ghoral antelopes. IV., 497 (Jerdon, 284-5).
The wild goat and wild sheep of the Himalaya. IV., 490, 710: V., 245: X.,

Gray.—On the double-horned Asiatic Rhinoceros An Mag. N. H. 4th Ser.,
X., 207: XII., 253 (Sclater in Ibid., X., 398). On the smaller spotted cats of Asia.
Ibid., XIII., 63: XIV., 577. On Paradoxus, Atychista and Paguma. Ibid.,
XIV., 241. List of the species of Feline animals. Ibid., XIV., 331.

Cope, E. D.—On the genera of Felidae and Caninae. Ibid., 5th Ser., V., 36,
93.

BLYTH’S PAPERS.

Catalogue of the Mammalia in the Museum of the Asiatic Society. Calcutta,
1860.

On the different species of Orang-utan. J. A. S. Ben., XXII., 369: XXIII.,
210: XXIV., 518.

Notes of various Mammalia with descriptions of many new species. Ibid.,
XIII., 463.

The Mammals and birds of Burmah. Ibid., XXIV., Extra.
Zoological collection from Chera Punji. Ibid., XX., 517.
Mammalia and birds of Ceylon. Ibid., XX., 153.
On the fauna of the Nicobar Islands. Ibid., XV., 367.
The bat, Taphozous longimanus. Ibid., XI., 784.
Three species of bat of the genus Taphozous. Ibid., X., 974.
On the genus Megaderma. Ibid., XI., 255.
Memoir on the rats and mice of India. Ibid., XXXII., 327: XXXIV., 192.


Description of *Caprolagus*, a new genus of Leporine mammals. *Ibid.*, XIV., 247


**DOBSON'S PAPERS ON BATS.**


Monograph of the Asiatic Chiroptera and catalogue of the species of bats in the Indian Museum, Calcutta. Loudon, 1876.
Conspectus of the sub-orders, families and genera of Chiroptera by the

Lydekker, R.—On the dentition of Felis tigris. J. A S. Ben., XLVII.,
ii., 4. On the dentition of Rhinoceros. Ibid., XLIX., ii., 126.

Tylor.—A new species of Paradoxura. Ibid., XXXIII., 183.

Tichell.—Note on the Gibbon. Ibid., XXXIII., 183.

Blanford, W.—Zoological notes. Ibid., XXXVI., ii., 189: XL., ii., 207: XL.,
152. On Golanda Elliotti from Sind. Ibid., XLV., ii., 185: XLVI., ii., 266.
On some mammals from Tenasserim. Ibid., XLVII., ii., 150.

On a new hedgehog (E. Niger). Ibid., XLVII., ii., 212. Description of an
Arvicola from the Panjab Himalaya. Ibid., XLIX., ii., 266. The African element

Andrews, J.—Description of some new and little known Asiatic shrews.
Ibid., XLVII., ii., 196. On the species of Nuska and A. Indica. Ibid., XLVII.,
Ser., XVI., 262.

TIBETAN FAUNA.

Hodgson, B. H.—The mammals of Tibet. J. A. S. Ben., XI., 275. The
Tibetan badger. Ibid., XVI., 763. The pole-cat of Tibet. Ibid., XVIII., 446. A
new Tibetan antelope. Ibid., XV., 384. Tibetan and Himalayan marmots. Ibid.,
XII., 609. New species: Lagomys Cussonia and Mustela Tenon. Ibid., XXVI.
207. (Note on the former by F. Stoliczka. Ibid., XXXIV., ii., 108; but see Blanford
in Ibid., XLIV., ii., 110.) On the wild ass and wolf of Tibet by the same.
Cal. J. N. H., VII., 469.

Blyth, E.—On the different animals known as wild asses. J A S. Ben.,
XXVIII., 229: XXXI., 363. A monograph of the species of wild sheep. Ibid.,
X., 368: XVI., 350.

Hume, A. O.—On a supposed new sheep. Ibid., XLVI., ii., 297.

Gunter, A.—Description of some Leporine mammals from Central Asia.

Severtzoff, H.—Mammals of Turkestan. Ibid., XVIII., 40, 120, 168, 208,
325, 377.

Blanford, W.—On the scientific names of Capra aegagrus, the Panang or
Persian wild goat and of Capra Falconeri, the Markhor. J. A. S. Ben., XLIV.,
ii., 12. List of Mammalia collected by Dr. Stoliczka with the Yarkand mission.
Ibid., XLIV., ii., 103. On the species of Marmot inhabiting the Himalaya, Tibet
and the adjoining regions. Ibid., XLIV., ii., 144. Note on a large hare inhabiting
high elevations in western Tibet. Ibid., XLIV., ii., 214. On Felis Shashiana,
a new Lyncine cat from Eastern Turkistan. Ibid., XLV., ii., 49. An undescribed
weasel from Yarkand. Ibid., XLVI., ii., 259. On two Asiatic bears, the Ushak of
Biluchistán and U. priuscaus of Tibet. Ibid., XLVI., ii., 315. On an apparently
new hare and other mammals from Gilgit. Ibid., XLVI., ii., 323: XLVIII., ii.,
Ser., XVI., 309.


**B I R D S.**

The hill districts of the North-Western Provinces are about equally distant from the Brahmaputra on the one hand and the Indus on the other, and occupy the central portion of the Himálayan range proper. The birds of the Eastern Himálayan forms in the lower hills; and in Nepál, especially to the north, the fauna is characterised by many peculiar and striking forms, but few of which are as yet known to cross the Káli into Kumaun. In the Western Himálayan, the fauna approaches to that of the western palæarctic region, and stragglers from among some of the more typical forms find their way as far as Garhwál. On the north the mountain-haunting species of the Eastern palæarctic region are found, while to the south is the Indian region proper, with its fairly distinctive fauna. The commoner birds of this tract are those which are found throughout the Himálayan range, but situated as it is, many stragglers from the surrounding regions are found among the rarer birds. On the west such species as Coracias garrula, Calacanthis burtoni, and others, extend into Garhwál; on the north stragglers from Tibet, such as Corvus tibetanus, Syrrhaptes tibetanus, Perdix hodgoriax, &c., are occasionally met with; on the east, Nepálese forms, such as Palaearnis javanicus, Oriolus traillii, Cissa sinensis, Hemicurus schistaceus, Yuhina occipitalis, &c., are found in Kumaun. Stragglers from the lower Bengal and Indo-Malayan forms, such as Eurystomus orientalis, Prarismus dalhousiae, &c., are found in the lower hills and sub-Himálayan tracts; while many of the species inhabiting the plains of Northern India extend into the Dúns and outer ranges.

1 This list of the birds found in the Himálayan between the Káli and the Tons has been kindly prepared by Captain G. Marshall, R.M.
But little has as yet been recorded of natural history researches in this tract, and further observations would probably greatly extend the list of birds now given. Probably some fifty more of the eastern forms among the vultures, eagles, owls, kingfishers, hornbills, piculetas, barbets, cuckoos, sunbirds, tinkerbirds, wood-shrikes, minivets, flycatchers, wrens, shortwings, ant thrushes, passerine birds, bulbul, chats, warblers, pipits, hilltits, &c., will be found to extend into Kumaun. In the Dáns Megalurus palustris, Chastornis striatus, several Locustellas, Burnnesia gracilis, Acridotheris ginginianus, Porsana marueta; Rallus striatus and Rallus indicus may almost certainly be found, though their occurrence has not as yet been recorded. Similarly, on the northern limits, Grandala calicolor; Acciptor altaicus, A. strophius, A. rubeculoides; Pica bottonensis, Pyrrhocorax alpinus; and Tetragonallus tibetanus, though not yet recorded, will probably be found; several species of Dumetica and Proparus viniceps have been found both east and west of this tract, but not as yet within its limits. A large number of the birds included in this list among the harriers, reedwarblers, rubythroats, warblers, willow-wrens, wagtails, pipits, pigeons, quail, snipe, sandpipers, and others, are regular migrants, to be found in spring and autumn, and probably other birds of these classes will be found from time to time; and many of the permanent residents, which pass the summer in the higher ranges, are found in winter in the glens and warm valleys.

**A V E S.**

(Nota.—The numbers prefixed are those of Jerdon’s “Birds of India”; for birds not included in Jerdon’s book the number of the most nearly allied species is given, with the addition of “bis,” “ter,” &c., as the case may be. The references in brackets following the English names are to detailed descriptions of the species).

1. Vultur monachus, the great brown vulture (Jerdon I., 6). 5,000 to 10,000 feet; rare.
2. Otogyps caurus, the black king vulture (Jerdon I., 7). Common up to about 5,000 feet.
3. (ter). Gyps himalayensis, the griffon vulture (S. F. VII., 323). From 4,000 to 10,000 feet; common.
4. Gyps indicus, the long-billed vulture (S. F. VII., 165). In the Dáns and sub-Himalayan tracts.
5. Gyps bengalensis, the white-backed vulture (Jerdou I., 10) Common up to about 5,000 feet.
6. Neophron galingianus, the white scavenger vulture (Jerdon I., 13). Common up to 8,000 feet.
7. Gyps badder tus barbatus, the Lammergeyer, or bearded vulture. (Jerdon I., 18), 5,000 to 10,000 feet.
8. Falco peregrinus, the peregrine falcon (Jerdon I., 21). In the Dûn, rare; a cold weather migrant.
9. Falco peregrinator, the shâhin falcon (Jerdon I., 28). From 3,000 to 10,000 feet; a permanent resident.
10. Falco jugger, the lagger, falcon (Jerdon I., 30). The Dûn, Kumaun, at low elevations; rare.
11. Falco subbuteo, the hobby (Jerdon I., 33). A cold-weather visitant; rare at all elevations.
12. Falco severus, the Indian hobby (Jerdon I., 34). Kumaun and East Garhwal; at low elevations; rare.
13. Falco chiquera; the red-headed merlin (Jerdon I., 36). The Dûn and warm valleys; not uncommon.
14. Cerchneis tinnunculus, the kestrel (Jerdon I., 38). Common at all elevations in winter; breeds at 5,000 feet.
15. (bis) Cerchneis amurensis, the eastern red-footed kestrel (S. F. II., 51). Rare.
16. Microhierax caerulescens, the white-naped pigmy falcon (Jerdon I., 49). Kumaun; 4,000 feet. Rare.
17. Accipiter nisus, the sparrowhawk (Jerdon I., 51). Common at all elevations; breeds at 5,000 to 10,000.
18. Accipiter virgatus, the Beesra sparrowhawk (Jerdon I., 52). Rare.
19. Aquila chrysaetos, the golden eagle (Jerdon I., 55). Rare; at great elevations near the snows.
20. Aquila moghlinik, the imperial eagle (S. F. I., 290). The Dûn in the cold weather; rare.
21. Aquila clanga, the spotted eagle (Jerdon I., 52). The Dûn; permanent resident; not uncommon.
22. Aquila vindhyana, the Indian tawny eagle (Jerdon I., 60). The Dûn; permanent resident; not uncommon.
23. Aquila bastata, the long-legged eagle (Jerdon I., 63). The Dûn; permanent resident; not uncommon.
24. Hieraetus pennatus, the booted eagle (Jerdon I., 63). In the Dûn and warm valleys; very rare.
25. Neopus melaliensis, the black eagle (Jerdon I., 65). 5,000 to 10,000 feet; rare.
27. Limmatus caligatus, the changeable hawk-eagle (Jerdon I., 70). The Dûn and warm valleys;
36. *Limmactus nipalensis*, the Nepal hawk-eagle (*Jerdon I., 78*). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; rare.
37. *Circus gallicus*, the short-toed eagle (*Jerdon I., 76*). The Düns and warm valleys; rare.
38. *Spilornis cheela*, the crested-serpent eagle (*Jerdon I., 77*). The Düns and lower hills; not uncommon.
41. *Halieetus leucocephalus*, the ring-tailed fishing eagle (*Jerdon I., 80*). The Düns only.
42. *Buteo ferox*, the long legged buzzard (*Jerdon I., 88*). The Düns in winter; not very common.
43. *Buteo leucocephalus*, the upland buzzard (*Jerdon I., 90*). At great elevations; extremely rare.
44. *Buto plumpipes*, the harrier buzzard (*Jerdon I., 91*). Not uncommon from 5,000 to 8,000 feet.
45. *Butastur taurus*, the white-eyed buzzard (*Jerdon I., 91*). The Düns only; rather rare.
46. *Circus cyaneus*, the bon harrier (*Jerdon I., 95*). The lower hills in winter only; rare.
47. *Circus ferreus*, the pale harrier (*Jerdon I., 96*). The Düns; common in winter only.
48. *Circus cinereus*, Montague's harrier (*Jerdon I., 97*). The Düns and lower hills, in winter only.
49. *Circus melanoleucos*, the pied harrier (*Jerdon I., 98*). The Düns and lower hills in winter only; very rare.
50. *Circus erinnyus*, the marsh harrier (*Jerdon I., 99*). The Düns only; common in winter.
51. *Halieetus indicus*, the brahminy kite (*Jerdon I., 101*). The Düns; only permanent; not common.
52. *Milvus affinis*, the common pariah kite (*Jerdon I., 104*). Common up to 7,000 feet.
53. *Milvus guevinda*, the larger Indian kite (*Humc's rough notes, I p. 326*). Not uncommon at all elevations.
55. *Elanus caeruleus*, the black-winged kite (*Jerdon I., 112*). The Düns and warm valleys.
56. *Streptopelia leucura*, the grass owl (*Jerdon I., 118*). The Düns and outer hills; not uncommon.
57. *Syringa newentii*, the Nepal brown wood owl (*Jerdon I., 122*). About 5,000 to 8,000 feet; rare.
58. *Syringa ocellatum*, the mottled wood owl (*Jerdon I., 125*). The Düns and warm valleys.
66. Syrniuniviscum, the Himalayan wood owl (Jerdon I., 124). 5,000 feet and upwards; rare.
67. Asio otus, the long-eared owl (Jerdon I., 125). At all elevations in the winter; rare.
68. Asio sepiotinus, the short-eared owl (Jerdon I., 126). At all elevations in the winter; rare.
69. Bubo bengalensis, the rock horned owl (Jerdon I., 128). The Düns and warm valleys only.
70. Bubo coromandus, the dusky horned owl (Jerdon I., 130). The Düns and warm valleys.
72. Ketupa ceylonensis, the brown fish owl (Jerdon I., 133). The Düns and warm valleys.
74. Scops pennatus, the Indian scops owl (Jerdon I., 136). At moderate elevations; not common.
75. (bis) Scops surnia, the Indian red scops owl (Jerdon I., 137). At moderate elevations; not common.
74. (ter) Scops aculeophalus, the bare-footed scops owl (S. F. VII., 352). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; common.
75. Scops lettia, the Nepal scops owl (Jerdon I., 139). Kumaun only; 5,000 feet; rare.
77. Glaucomidium radiatum, the jungle owlet (Jerdon I., 143). The Düns; common.
78. Glaucomidium ceculoides, the large barred owlet (Jerdon I., 145). The lower hills up to 6,000 feet.
80. Glaucomidium brodiei, the collared pigmy owlet (Jerdon I., 146). From 4,000 to 10,000 feet; tolerably common.
81. Ninox lugubris, the dusky hawk owl (Jerdon I., 147, in p. S. F. IV., 285). The Düns and warm valleys; very rare.
82. Hirundo rustica, the common swallow (Jerdon I., 157). Not uncommon at 5,000 to 10,000 feet.
84. Hirundo flilefem, the wire-tailed swallow (Jerdon I., 159). The Düns only; common.
85. (bis). Hirundo nipalensis, the Himalayan mosque swallow (S. F. V. 262). Common up to 8,000 feet.
88. Hirundo fluviola, the Indian cliff swallow (Jerdon I., 161). The Düns only; very local.
89. Cotyle sinensis, the Chinese sand martin (Jerdon I., 164). The Düns only; common.
91. Ptigonoargne rupestris, the crag martin (Jerdon I., 166). From 7,000 to 10,000 feet; rare.
93. Chelidon kashmiriensis, the Kashmir martin (Jerdon I., 167). From 7,000 to 10,000 feet; not common.
98. Cypselus melba, the alpine swift (Jerdon I., 175). Common at 2,000 to 9,000 feet.
99. Cypselus apus, the European swift (Jerdon I., 177). At 6,000 to 10,000 feet; very rare.
100. Cypselus affinis, the common Indian swift (Jerdon I., 177). Very common up to 8,000 feet.
102. Collocalia unicolor, the Indian swiftlet (Jerdon I., 182). At 5,000 to 9,000 feet; not uncommon.
104. Dendrochelidon coronata, the Indian crested swift (Jerdon I., 185). The Dúns only; very rare.
107. Caprimulgus indicus. The jungle nightjar (Jerdon I., 192). Up to about 4,000 feet; not common.
109. Caprimulgus albumotus, the large Bengal nightjar (Jerdon L, 194). Up to about 4,000 feet; common.
112. Caprimulgus asiaticus, the common Indian nightjar (Jerdon L, 197). Up to 6,000 feet; not common.
114. Caprimulgus monticolus, Franklin's nightjar (Jerdon I., 199). The Dúns and up to 5,000 feet; common.
117. Merops viridiss, the common bee-eater (Jerdon I., 208). The Dúns only; very common.
118. Merops philippensis, the blue-tailed bee-eater (Jerdon I., 207). The Dúns and warm valleys; local.
119. Merops swainsonii, the chestnut-headed bee-eater (Jerdon L, 208; S. F. II. 163). The Dúns; local.
122. Nyctiornis athertoni, the blue-ruffed bee-eater (Jerdon I., 211). The Dúns; local.
123. Coracias indica, the common roller (Jerdon L, 214). The Dúns; common.
125. Coracias garrula, the European roller (Jerdon I., 218). The Bhagirati valley; a very rare straggler.
126. Eurystomus orientalis, the broad-billed roller (Jerdon I., 219). Kumaun Bhábar; very rare.
127. Pelargopsis gurial, the Indian stork-billed kingfisher (Jerdon I., 223). The Dúns; rare.
129. Halcyon smyrnensis, the white-breasted kingfisher (Jerdon I., 224). The Dúns; common.
134. Alcedo bengalensis, the little Indian kingfisher (Jerdon L, 230). Common along the big rivers.
136. Ceryle rudis, the pied kingfisher (Jerdon I., 232). The Dúns only; common.
137. Ceryle guttala, the large-created pied kingfisher (Jerdon L, 334). The Dúns and warm valleys.
138. Psarisomus dalhousiae, the yellow-throated broad-bill (Jerdon I., 236). From 3,000 to 8,000 feet.
140. Dichoceros cavatus, the great hornbill (Jerdon L, 249). The Dúns and sub-Himalayan forests.
144. *Hydrocissa affinis*, the Dehra Dun hornbill (Jerdon I., 247). The Dúns only; not uncommon.

144. *Ocyxera birostris*, the common grey hornbill (Jerdon I., 248). The Dúns only.

147. *Palmornis nipalensis*, the northern rose-barred paroquet (S. F. I., 335, and II., 10). The Dúns only; common.

148. *Palmornis torquatus*, the rose-winged paroquet (Jerdon I., 257). The Dúns and warm valleys; common.

149. *Palmornis purpureus*, the rose-headed paroquet (S. F. II., 15). The Dúns and warm valleys; common.

150. *Palmornis schisticeps*, the slaty-headed paroquet (Jerdon I., 261). From 4,000 to 6,000 feet; common.

152. *Palmornis javanicus*, the red-breasted paroquet (Jerdon I., 262). In the warm valleys; not common.

154. *Picus himalayensis*, the Himalayan pied woodpecker (Jerdon I., 269). From 5,000 to 10,000 feet.

157. *Picus nacei*, the Indian spotted woodpecker. (Jerdon I., 272). From the Dúns to 6,000 feet.

159. *Picus bruneifrons*, the brown-fronted woodpecker (Jerdon I., 273). The Dúns to 6,000 feet.

160. *Picus mahattensis*, the yellow-fronted woodpecker (Jerdon I., 274). The Dúns only.

161. *Hypopicus hypothyrsus*, the rufous-bellied pied woodpecker (Jerdon I., 278). From 4,000 to 6,000 feet.

163. *Yungipicus pygmaeus*, the Himalayan pigmy woodpecker (Jerdon I., 277). From 2,000 to 5,000 feet.

164. *Yungipicus nanus*, the southern pigmy woodpecker (Jerdon I., 278). The Dúns only.

166. *Chrysocolaptes sultaneus*, the golden-backed woodpecker (Jerdon I., 281). From 3,000 to 9,000 feet; rare.

168. *Muelleripicus pulverulentus*, the large slaty woodpecker (Jerdon I., 284). The Dúns only; very rare.

170. *Gecinus squamatus*, the scaly-bellied green woodpecker (Jerdon I., 286). From 4,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

171. *Gecinus striolatus*, the lesser Indian green woodpecker (Jerdon I., 287). The Dúns only; rare.

172. *Gecinus occipitalis*, the black-naped green woodpecker (Jerdon I., 287). From 4,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

173. *Chrysophlegma favinucha*, the large yellow-naped woodpecker (Jerdon I., 289). From 2,000 to 6,000 feet.

174. *Chrysophlegma chlorolophus*, the lesser yellow-naped woodpecker (Jerdon I., 289). The Dúns and warm valleys; rare.

178. *Micropternis phoeceps*, the Bengal rufous woodpecker (Jerdon I., 294). The Dúns and warm valleys; rare.

180. *Brochymyrmus aurantius*, the common goldback woodpecker (Jerdon I., 295). The Dúns only; very common.
183. Tiga shoria, the large three-toed woodpecker (Jerdon I., 298). The Dáns and warm valleys; rare.

184. Vivia inominata, the speckled piculet (Jerdon I., 300). From 2,000 to 5,000 feet; not uncommon.

185. Yunx torquilla, the wryneck (Jerdon I., 303). The Dáns only; not uncommon.

186. Megalaima marshallorum, the Marshall’s barbet (Jerdon I., 308). From 4,000 to 6,000 feet; common.

187. Megalaima hodgsoni, Hodgson’s green barbet (Jerdon I., 309). The warm valleys; common.

188. Megalaima caniceps, Franklin’s green barbet (Jerdon I., 310). The Sewalka and Bhatar only.

189. Megalaima atrata, the blue-throated barbet (Jerdon I., 315). The Dáns only; common.

190. Cuculus canorus, the common cuckoo (Jerdon I., 322). A summer migrant.

191. Cuculus striatus, the Himalayan cuckoo (Jerdon I., 323). Common from 3,000 to 7,000 feet.

192. Cuculus poliocephalus, the hoary-headed cuckoo (Jerdon I., 324). Common up to 6,000 feet.

193. Cuculus micropterus, the Indian cuckoo (Jerdon I., 326). Common up to about 6,000 feet.

194. Hierococcyx varius, the common hawk-cuckoo, (Jerdon I., 329). The Dáns only; common.

195. Hierococcyx sparverioides, the large hawk-cuckoo (Jerdon I., 331). From 5,000 to 5,000 feet; common.

196. Cacomantis passerinus, the Indian plaintive cuckoo (Jerdon I., 333). The Dáns and warm valleys; rare.

197. Surmiculus lugubris, the Drongo cuckoo (Jerdon I., 338). The Dáns and warm valleys; rare.

198. Chrysococcyx maculatus, the emerald cuckoo, (Jerdon I., 338, S. F. VI., 161). From 3,000 to 5,000 feet; rare.

199. Coccytes jacobinus, the pied-crested cuckoo (Jerdon I., 339). Up to 4,000 feet; common in the rains.

200. Eudynamis honorata, the koel (Jerdon I., 343). The Dáns only; common in the hot weather.

201. Centrococcyx rufipennis, the common coucal (Jerdon I., 348). The Dáns only.

202. Taccocua sirke, the Bengal sirkeer (Jerdon I., 358). The Dáns only.

203. Æthopyga miles, the Himálayan red honey-sucker (Jerdon I., 361). The warm valleys only.

204. Æthopyga gouldiae, the purple-tailed red honey-sucker (Jerdon I., 364). The warm valleys only.

205. Æthopyga igniiceps, the fire-tailed red honey-sucker (Jerdon I., 365). The warm valleys only.
229. *Ethopyga nipalensis*, the maroon-backed honey-sucker (Jerdon I., 364). From 2,000 to 6,000 feet.

230. *Ethopyga horsfieldii*, the green-backed honey-sucker (Jerdon I., 367). The warm valleys only.

231. *Ethopyga saturata*, the black-breasted honey-sucker (Jerdon I., 367). From 2,000 to 6,000 feet.

234. *Cinnyris salaticus*, the purple honey-sucker (Jerdon I., 370). Up to 2,000 feet; common.

235. *Cinnyris lotenia*, the large purple honey-sucker (Jerdon I., 371). The Dehra Dün; a rare straggler.

238. *Dicræum erythrorhynchos*, Tickell’s flower-pecker (Jerdon I., 374). The Düns only; not common.

240. *Piprisoma agile*, the thick-billed flower-pecker (Jerdon I., 376). The Düns and warm valleys.

241. *Myzornis ignicapillus*, the fire-breasted flower-pecker (Jerdon I., 377). Kamaun only; very rare.

243. *Certhia himalayana*, the Himalayan tree-creeper (Jerdon I., 380). From 4,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

246. *Salpornis spilonota*, the spotted grey-creeper (Jerdon I., 382). The Düns only; rare.


248. *Sitta himalayensis*, the white-tailed nuthatch (Jerdon I., 385). From 5,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

250. *Sitta castaneoventris*; the chestnut-bellied nuthatch (Jerdon I., 386). The Düns only.

251. *Sitta cinnamomeovenus*; the cinnamon-bellied nuthatch (Jerdon I., 387). From 2,000 to 4,000 feet.

253. *Dendrophila frontalis*, the velvet-fronted blue nuthatch (Jerdon I., 388). From 3,000 to 5,000 feet.


255. *Upupa ceylonensis*, the Indian hoopoe (Jerdon I., 392). The Düns and warm valleys; common.

256. *Lanius lahtora*, the Indian grey shrike (Jerdon I., 400). The Düns only; rare.

257. *Lanius erythropus*, the rufous-backed shrike (Jerdon I., 402). Up to 4,000 feet; common.


258. *Lanius tepperonotus*, the grey-backed shrike (Jerdon I., 403). From 2,000 to 4,000 feet; common.

259. *Lanius nigriceps*, the black-headed shrike (Jerdon I., 404). From 2,000 to 5,000 feet; rare.

260. *Lanius vittatus*, the bay-backed shrike (Jerdon I., 405). The Düns and warm valleys.

261. *Lanius cristatus*, the brown shrike (Jerdon I., 406). In the cold weather only; not common.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

265. Tephrodornis pondiceriana, the common woodshrike (Jerdon I., 410). The Düns only.

267. (bis) Himipus capitallis, the Himalayan pied shrike (S. I., I. 403). The Düns and up to 5,000 feet; rare.

268. Volucivora sykesii, the black-headed cuckoo shrike (Jerdon I., 414). The Düns and warm valleys; rare.

269. Volucivora melanochlora, the dark grey cuckoo shrike (Jerdon I., 416). Up to 7,000 feet; not common.

270. Grausius macel, the large cuckoo shrike (Jerdon I., 417). The Düns only; rare.

271. Pericrocotus speciosus, the large minivet (Jerdon I., 419). Up to 8,000 feet; not uncommon.

272. Pericrocotus brevirostris, the short-billed minivet (Jerdon I., 421). Up to 8,000 feet; common.

273. Pericrocotus roseus, the rosy minivet (Jerdon I., 422). The Düns and warm valleys.

274. Pericrocotus peregrinus, the small minivet (Jerdon I., 423). The Düns only; common.

275. Buchanga alta, the common drongo-shrike (Jerdon I., 437). Up to 4,000 feet; common.

276. Dicrurus annectans, the crow-billed drongo (Jerdon I., 436). In the warm valleys; rare.

277. Buchanga longicaudata, the long-tailed drongo (Jerdon I., 440). From 4,000 to 7,000 feet; common.

278. Buchanga caeruleiceps, the white-bellied drongo (Jerdon I., 442). The Düns and warm valleys; rare.

279. Chelida senex, the bronzed drongo (Jerdon I., 439). In the warm valleys; very rare.

280. Discreurus grandis, the large racket-tailed drongo (Jerdon I., 438). In the warm valleys; rare.

281. Chelida hottentotta, the hair-crested drongo (Jerdon I., 439). In the warm valleys; rare.

282. Arthus fuscus, the ash swallow skrike (Jerdon I., 441). From 3,000 to 5,000 feet; common.

283. Muscipula paradisi, the paradise flycatcher (Jerdon I., 445). In the Düns and warm valleys; common.

284. Myiagra aurea, the black-naped blue flycatcher (Jerdon I., 450). In the warm valleys; very rare.

285. Leucophaea albicollis, the white-throated fantail (Jerdon I., 461). From 2,000 to 5,000 feet; common.

286. Leucophaea aureola, the white-browed fantail (Jerdon I., 452). The Düns only; common.

287. Chelidonura hypoxantha, the yellow-bellied fantail (Jerdon I., 453). The warm valleys; rare.

288. Calicicaea ceylonensis, the grey-headed flycatcher (Jerdon I., 455). Up to 8,000 feet; very common.
HIMALAYAN DISTRICTS

296. Hemichelidon albiceps, the sooty flycatcher (Jerdon I., 458). From 6,000 to 10,000 feet; common.

297. Alsophonus latirostris, the southern brown flycatcher (Jerdon I., 459). From 3,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

298. Stopora melanops, the verditer flycatcher (Jerdon I., 463). From 4,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

299. Cyornis rubeculoideus, the blue-throated redbreast (Jerdon I., 466). Up to 8,000 feet; not common.

300. Muscicapula supercilialis, the white-browed blue flycatcher (Jerdon I., 470). Up to 8,000 feet; common.

301. Niltava sundara, the rufous-bellied fairy bluechat (Jerdon I., 473). Up to 8,000 feet; common.

302. Siphia strophias, the orange gorgetted flycatcher (Jerdon I., 479). From 4,000 to 8,000 feet; very rare.

303. Siphia leucooicanura, the slaty flycatcher (Jerdon I., 479). From 5,000 to 7,000 feet; rare.

304. (bis). Erythrosterena parva, the white-tailed robin flycatcher (Jerdon I., 481. S. F. V., 471). The Đüns; common.

305. (ter.) Erythrosterena hyperythra, the rufous-bellied robin flycatcher (S. F. V., 471). The Đüns; rare.

306. Erythrosterena maculata, the little pied flycatcher (Jerdon I., 483). From 3,000 to 6,000 feet; rare.

307. Trogodytes nipalensis, the Nepal wren (Jerdon I., 491). From 4,000 to 10,000 feet; rare.

308. Myiophonous temminckii, the yellow-bellied whistling thrush (Jerdon I., 500). Common up to 8,000 feet.

309. Pitta brachyura, the yellow-breasted ground thrush (Jerdon I., 503). Not rare up to 8,000 feet.

310. Cinclus asiaticus, the brown water ouzel (Jerdon I., 506). Common up to 5,000 feet.

311. Zoothera monticola, the large brown thrush (Jerdon I., 509). Rare, 6,000 to 8,000 feet.

312. Cyanocinclus cyanus, the blue rock thrush (Jerdon I., 511). In the Đüns and low hills in the cold weather.

313. Petrophila erythraster, the chestnut-bellied thrush (Jerdon I. 514). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

314. Petrophila cinclorhyncha, the blue-headed chat thrush (Jerdon I., 515). 3,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

315. Geocichla citrina, the orange-headed ground thrush (Jerdon I., 517). Up to 5,000 feet; not common.

316. Geocichla unicolor, the dusky ground thrush (Jerdon I., 519). Up to 8,000 feet; common.

317. Turdulus wardii, Ward’s pied-blackbird (Jerdon I., 520). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

318. Geocichla dissimilis, the variable pied-blackbird (Jerdon I., 521). 7,000 feet; very rare.
361. *Merula boulboul*, the grey-winged blackbird (Jerdon I., 525). Up to 8,000 feet; common.
362. *Merula albocineta*, the white-collared ouzel (Jerdon I., 524). 6,000 to 8,000 feet; not rare.
363. *Merula castanea*, the grey-headed ouzel (Jerdon I., 526). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; rare.
366. *Turdus viscivorus*, the missel thrush (Jerdon I., 531). 5,000 to 10,000 feet; not common.
371. *Oreocincia dauma*, the small-billed mountain thrush (Jerdon I., 533). Up to 8,000 feet; common.
382. *Grammatuptila striata*, the striated jay thrush (Jerdon II., 11). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; not common.
395. *Pyctorhia eioeneis*, the yellow-eyed babbler (Jerdon II., 11). Up to 3,000 feet; common.
403. *Pomatorhinus leucogaster*, Gould’s scimitar babbler (Jerdon II., 30). The Dūns and warm valleys; rare.
404. *Pomatorhinus erythrogenys*, the rusty-cheeked scimitar babbler (Jerdon II., 31). 3,000 to 6,000 feet; common.
407. *Garrulax leucolophus*, the white-throated laughing thrush (Jerdon II., 35). The Dūns and warm valleys.
411. *Garrulax albogularis*, the white-throated laughing thrush (Jerdon II., 38). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; common.
415. *Trochalopteron erythrocephalum*, the red-headed laughing thrush (Jerdon II., 43). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; common.
418. *Trochalopteron variegatum*, the variegated laughing thrush (Jerdon II., 45). 2,000 to 5,000 feet; rare.
421. *Trochalopteron rufogularis*, the rufous-chinned laughing thrush (Jerdon II., 47). 2,000 to 5,000 feet; rare.
425. *Trochalopteron lineatum*, the streaked laughing thrush (Jerdon II., 50). 4,000 to 8,000 feet; very common.
427. *Actinodura egertouii*, the rufous bar-wing (Jerdon II., 52). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; rare.
429. *Sibia capistrata*, the black-headed sibia (Jerdon II., 54). 4,000 to 8,000 feet; very common.
432. *Malacocircus terricolor*, the Bengal babbler (Jerdon II., 59). The Dūns only.
436. *Arya malcolmi*, the large grey babbler (Jerdon II., 64). The Dūns only.
438. *Chatarrhena cauliata*, the striated bush-babbler (Jerdon II., 67). The Dūns only.
444. Hyptipetes parrolden, the Himalayan black bulbul (Jerdon II., 77). 3,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

447. Hypsipetes macleaudi, the rufous-bellied bulbul (Jerdon II., 79). From 3,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

450. Rubigula flaviventris, the black-crested yellow bulbul (Jerdon II., 81). 3,000 to 8,000 feet; rare.

453. Otocompsa leucogenys, the white-checked crested bulbul (Jerdon II., 83). Up to 8,000 feet; common.

456. Pycnonotus pygmaeus, the common Bengal bulbul (Jerdon II., 93). Up to 7,000 feet; common.

459. Pycnonotus hemorrheus, the common Madras bulbul (Jerdon II., 94). The Düns only.

462. Phyllornis aurifrons, the gold-fronted green bulbul (Jerdon II., 99). The Düns and warm valleys.

465. Phyllornis hardwickii, the blue-winged green bulbul (Jerdon II., 100). Up to 6,000 feet; not rare.

468. Iora typhia, the white-winged green bulbul (Jerdon II., 103). The Düns and warm valleys.

470. Oriolus kundoo, the Indian golden oriole (Jerdon II., 107). Up to 4,000 feet; common.

471. Oriolus indicus, the black-naped Indian oriole (Jerdon II., 109). The Düns only; rare.

472. Oriolus melanoccephalus, the black-headed oriole (Jerdon II., 110). The Düns and warm valleys.

474. Oriolus trailii, the maroon oriole (Jerdon II., 112). Kumaon only; rare.

475. Copsychus saularis, the magpie robin (Jerdon II., 114). Up to 4,000 feet; common.

476. Kittlicula macroura, the shama (Jerdon II., 116). In the Düns only; very rare.

477. Myiornis leucura, the white-tailed blue-chat (Jerdon II., 118). 6,000 to 9,000 feet; very rare.

480. Thamnobia cambaiensis, the brown-backed Indian robin (Jerdon II., 122). The Düns only; common.

481. Pratincola caprata, the white-winged black robin (Jerdon II., 123). Up to 5,000 feet; common.

483. I raticola indicus, the Indian bush-chat (Jerdon II., 124). Up to 5,000 feet; common.

486. Pratincola ferreus, the dark-grey bush-chat (Jerdon II., 127). Up to 6,000 feet; common.

497. Ruticilla rufigravis, the Indian redstart (Jerdon II., 137). The Düns and warm valleys.

498. Ruticilla hodgsoni, Hodgson's redstart (Jerdon II., 138). Near the snows; rare.

499. Ruticilla erythogastra, the white-winged redstart (Jerdon II., 139). Near the snows; rare.

533. Ruticilla frontalis, the blue-fronted redstart (Jerdon II., 141). Near the snows; common.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES. 61

504. Ruticilla caruleocephala, the blue-headed redstart (Jerdon II., 141). In the higher valleys; common.

505. Rhynchorhina flegiinosa, the plumbeous water-robin (Jerdon II., 142). Up to the snow level; common.

506. Chamaeannornis leucocephalus, the white-capped redstart (Jerdon II., 143). Up to the snow level; common.

507. Larvivora superciliaris, the blue woodchat (Jerdon II., 145). In valleys, 3,000 to 6,000 feet.

508. Isanthis cyanura, the white-breasted blue woodchat (Jerdon II., 146). From 4,000 to 8,000 feet.

509. Calliope karm-tchatkennis, the common ruby-throat (Jerdon II., 150). The Duns in the cold weather.

510. Calliope pectoralis, the white-tailed ruby-throat (Jerdon II., 151). In the elevated valleys.

511. Cyanecula suergica, the Indian blue-throat (Jerdon II., 152). In the Duns in winter.

512. Acrocephalus sternorhina, the large red-warbler (Jerdon II., 154). In the Duns in winter.

513. Acrocephalus dumetorum, the lesser red-warbler (Jerdon II., 155). The valleys and lower hills.

514. Acrocephalus agricola, the paddy-field warbler (Jerdon II., 156). The valleys and lower hills.

515. (bis.) Horornias pallidus, the pale hill-warbler (S. F. III., 241). From 4,000 to 8,000 feet; rare.

516. Orthotomus autoris, the Indian tailor-bird (Jerdon II., 165). The Duns and warm valleys.

517. Prinia stewarti, Stewart's wren-warbler (Jerdon II., 171). The Duns only; common.

518. Prinia gracilis, Franklin's wren-warbler (Jerdon II., 172). Common at moderate elevations.

519. Prinia cinereo-capilla, Hodgson's wren-warbler (Jerdon II., 173). The Duns and lower hills.

520. Prinia hodgsoni, the Malabar wren-warbler (Jerdon II., 176) Probably identical with No. 536.

521. Cisticola cursitans, the rufous grass-warbler (Jerdon II., 174). The Duns only; rare.

522. Drymornia inornata, the common wren-warbler (Jerdon II., 178). The Duns only; common.

523. (bis) Drymornia rufescens, the great rufous wren warbler (S. F. I., 437). The Duns only; rare.

524. Suya crinigera, the brown mountain wren-warbler (Jerdon II., 183). At 8,000 to 2,000 feet.

525. Suya striigularis, the black-breasted wren-warbler (Jerdon II., 184). From 4,000 to 6,000 feet; rare.

526. Franklinina buchananii, the rufous-fronted wren-warbler (Jerdon II., 186). The Duns only; rare.
553. Hypolais rama, Sykes' warbler (Jerdon II., 189). The Duns only; not common.

554. Phylloscopus tristis, the brown tree-warbler (Jerdon II., 190). The Duns in the cold weather.

555. Phylloscopus magnirostris, the large-billed tree-warbler (Jerdon II., 191). Not uncommon.

556. Phylloscopus nitidus, the bright-green tree-warbler (Jerdon II., 193). Not common.

557. Phylloscopus viridanus, the greenish tree-warbler (Jerdon II., 193). Common in the cold weather.

558. (bis.) Phylloscopus tytleri, Tytler's tree-warbler (S. F. III., 243N) Kumaun only; rare.

559. Phylloscopus affinis, Tickell's tree-warbler (Jerdon II., 194). In the cold weather, not common.

560. Phylloscopus indicus, the olivaceous tree-warbler (Jerdon II., 194). In the cold weather; rare

561. Reguloides occipitalls, the large crowned warbler (Jerdon II., 196) Dehra Dun; very rare.

562. (bis.) Reguloides humilii, Brook's tree-warbler (S. F. VII., 131). In the Duns only; common in winter.

563. Reguloides prorregulus, the yellow-rumped warbler (Jerdon II., 197). Not uncommon.

564. Reguloides viridipennis, the green-winged warbler (Jerdon II., 198). Not uncommon.

565. Calicepeta burkii, the black-browed warbler (Jerdon II., 199). In the higher valleys; rare.

566. Abornis schisticeps, the black-eared warbler (Jerdon II., 201). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

567. Abornis albosphercilars, the white-browed warbler (Jerdon II., 202). Very common

568. Regulus himalayensis, the Himalayan fire-crest (Jerdon II., 208) 8,000 to 10,000 feet; rare.

569. Sylvia affinis, the allied grey warbler (Jerdon II., 209). The Duns only in the cold weather.

570. Henicorhina maculatus, the spotted forktail (Jerdon II., 212). Up to 6,000 feet; common.

571. Henicorhina schistaceus, the slaty-backed forktail (Jerdon II., 214). Kumaun only; rare.

572. Henicorhina souleri, the short-tailed forktail (Jerdon II., 214). 2,000 to 6,000 feet; common.

573. Motacilla madrastensensis, the pied wagtail (Jerdon II., 217). The Duns only; common.

574. (bis) Motacilla hodgsoni, Hodgson's pied wagtail (S. F. I., 26). Up to 10,000 feet; not common.

575. Motacilla personata, the black-faced wagtail (Jerdon II., 218). The Duns only in the winter.
692. Calobates melanops, the grey and yellow wagtail (Jerdon II., 220). Up to 10,000 feet; common.

693. Buddates cinereocapilla, the grey-capped field wagtail (Jerdon II., 222; S.F. VI., 363). The Duns only.

694. (bis.) Buddates melanochrysa, the black-headed field wagtail (S. F. VI., 363). The Duns only.

695. (err.) Buddates flavus, the yellow wagtail (S. F. VI., 363). The Duns only; common.

696. Buddates calcara, the black and yellow wagtail (S. F. VII., 401). Up to 3,000 feet; not common.

697. (bis.) Buddates citreolus, the grey-headed yellow wagtail (S. F. VII., 401). The Duns only.

698. Anthus maculatus, the Indian tree-pipit (Jerdon II., 228). Up to 3,000 feet; not rare.

699. Anthus arbores, the tree pipit (Jerdon II., 229). In the Duns in the cold weather.

700. Corydalla rufina, the Indian titlark (Jerdon II., 229). The Duns and warm valleys.

701. Agrodroma cordi, the brown rock-pipit (Jerdon II., 226). Up to 3,000 feet; not common.

702. Anthus rosaceus, the vinous-throated pipit (Jerdon II., 237). 3,000 to 12,000 feet; common.

703. Heterura sylvana, the upland pipit (Jerdon II., 230). 3,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

704. Cochoa purpurea, the purple thrush-tit (Jerdon II., 243). 3,000 to 8,000 feet; rare.

705. Cochoa viridis, the green thrush-tit (Jerdon II., 243). 3,000 to 8,000 feet; rare.

706. Pteruthius erythropterus, the red-winged shrike-tit (Jerdon II., 245). 4,000 to 8,000 feet; rare.

707. Leiopix xutea, the red-billed hill-tit (Jerdon II., 250). Up to 8,000 feet; not uncommon.

708. Siva strigula, the stripe-throated hill-tit (Jerdon II., 252). 5,000 to 9,000 feet; not common.

709. Siva cyanouroptera, the blue-winged hill-tit (Jerdon II., 263). Kumaon 7,000 feet; rare.

710. Ixulus flavicollis, yellow-naped flowerpecker (Jerdon II., 263). 4,000 to 3,000 feet; not rare.

711. Yuhina occipitalis, the slatey-headed hill-tit (Jerdon II., 301). Kumaon, 8,000 feet; rare.

712. Zosterops palpebrosus, the white-eyed tit (Jerdon II., 265). Common up to 7,000 feet.

713. Sylviparus modestus, the yellow-browed flowerpecker (Jerdon II., 267). 4,000 to 6,000 feet; not common.

714. Egithalassus erythrocephalus, the red-headed tit (Jerdon II., 270). 4,000 to 8,000 feet; very common.
633. Lophophanes melanolophus, the crested black-tit (Jerdon II., 273). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; common.
640. Lophus phasianus rufomachilis, the Simla black-tit (Jerdon II., 274). 9,000 to 12,000 feet; not rare.
644. Parus monticolus, the green-backed tit (Jerdon II., 277). 4,000 to 8,000 feet; very common.
645. Parus nipalensis, the Indian grey-tit, (Jerdon II., 276; S.F. VII., 230N). Up to 7,000 feet, not common.
647. Machilolophus xanthogenys, the yellow-cheeked tit (Jerdon II., 279). 4,000 to 8,000 feet; not very common.
650. Corvus tibetanus, the Tibet raven (Jerdon II., 294). At great elevations; rare.
660. Corvus culminatus, the Indian corbie (Jerdon II., 295). The Dúns only; common.
661. Corvus intermedius, the blackhill crow (Jerdon II., 297). 4,000 to 9,000 feet; common.
663. Garrulus bipecularis, the Himalayan jay (Jerdon II., 297). 5,000 to 8,000 feet; common.
670. Garrulus lanceolatus, the black-throated jay (Jerdon II., 280). 4,000 to 8,000 feet; very common.
671. Urocissa occipitallis, the red-billed blue magpie (Jerdon II., 309). 2,000 to 5,000 feet; common.
673. Cissa chinensis, the green jay (Jerdon II., 312). In Kumaon only; up to 7,000 feet; rare.
674. Dendrocitta rufa, the common Indian magpie (Jerdon II., 314). The Dúns only; common.
676. Dendrocitta himalayensis, the Himalayan magpie (Jerdon II., 316). Up to 5,000 feet; common.
679. Pregillus himalayanus, the Himalayan chough (Jerdon II., 319). At high elevations; rare.
681. Sturnus vulgaris, the common starling (Jerdon II., 321). The Dúns in winter only; rare.
683. Sturnopastor contra, the pied starling (Jerdon II., 323). The Dúns only; common.
684. Acridotheres tristis, the common mynah (Jerdon II., 325). Up to 7,000 feet; common.
686. Acridotheres fuscus, the jungle mynah (Jerdon II., 327). Up to 7,800 feet; common.
687. Sturnia pagodarum, the Brahminy mynah (Jerdon II., 329). The Dúns only; not common.
688. Sturnia malabarica, the grey-headed mynah (Jerdon II., 330). The lower hills; rare.
690. Pastor roseus, the rose-cloured starling (Jerdon II., 288). The Dūns only; common.
691. Saraglossa apioloptera, the spotted-winged stare (Jerdon II., 238). Up to 4,000 feet; common.
692. Enalbus intermedius, the Nepal hill mynah (Jerdon II., 239). The Kumao bhābar; rare.
693. Ploucus philippinus, the common weaver-bird (Jerdon II., 343; S. F. VI. 399). The Dūns; common.
694. (bis) Ploucus megarrhynochus, the great billed weaver-bird (S. F III., 408), Kumao bhābar; rare.
695. Ploucus manyar, the striped weaver-bird (Jerdon II., 348). The Dūns only; common.
696. Munia rubronigra, the chestnut-bellied munia (Jerdon II., 350). The Dūns only; rare.
697. Munia punctulata, the spotted munia (Jerdon II., 354). Up to 4,000 feet; not uncommon.
698. Munia acuticaua, the Himalayan munia (Jerdon II., 354). Up to 5,000 feet; not common.
699. Munia malabarica, the plain brown munia (Jerdon II., 357). The Dūns only; common.
700. Estrelda amandava, the red wax bill (Jerdon II., 359). The Dūns to warm valleys; rare.
701. Passer indicus, the Indian house-sparrow (Jerdon II., 362). Up to 7,000 feet; very common.
702. Passer cinnamomeus, the cinnamon-headed sparrow (Jerdon II., 365). 4,000 to 7,000 feet; common.
703. Passer montanus, the mountain sparrow (Jerdon II., 366). From 3,000 to 7,000 feet; rare.
704. Gymnoris navicollis, the yellow-throated sparrow (Jerdon II., 368). Up to 4,000 feet; common.
705. Emberiza stracheyi, the white-necked bunting (Jerdon II., 372). From 5,000 to 10,000 feet; rare.
706. Emberiza buttoni, the grey-necked bunting (Jerdon II., 373). Bhagirathi valley; rare.
707. Emberiza facata, the greyheaded bunting (Jerdon II., 375). Kālsī on the Jumna; not rare.
708. Emberiza pusilla, the dwarf bunting (Jerdon II., 376). Inserted on Jerdon's authority.
709. Melophas melanicterus, the crested black bunting (Jerdon II., 381). The Dūns and warm valleys.
710. Hesperiphona icteriodes, the black and yellow grosbeak (Jerdon II., 384), Garhwaī, near the snows.
711. Hesperiphona affinis, the allied grosbeak (Jerdon II., 385). Kumao, near the snows.
712. Mycerobas melanoxanthus, the spotted winged grosbeak (Jerdon II., 384). Dehra Dūn, up to 10,000 feet; rare.
728. Mycerobas camipes, the white-winged grossbeak (Jerdon II, 387). Kumaon, near the snows; rare.

729. Pyrrhula erythrocephala, the red-headed bullfinch (Jerdon II, 389). 6,000 to 10,000 feet; rare.

730. Carpodacus erythrinus, the common rosefinch (Jerdon II, 388). Up to 10,000 feet; not rare.

731. Propasser rhodopeplus, the spotted-winged rosefinch (Jerdon II, 400). Mussoorie; rare.

732. Propasser rhodochlamys, the red-mantled rosefinch (Jerdon II, 401). Garhwal; rare.

733. Propasser pulcherrimus, the beautiful rosefinch (Jerdon II, 409). Not rare.

734. Propasser ambiguus, Wilson's rosefinch (S. F. II., 326). Garhwal 6,000 to 10,000 feet.

735. Callacanthus burtoni, the red-browed finch (Jerdon II, 407). The interior of Garhwal; rare.

736. Carduelis caniceps, the Himālayan goldfinch (Jerdon II, 408). 8,000 to 10,000 feet; common.

737. Hypacanthis spinoides, the Himālayan si-kin (Jerdon II, 409). 4,000 to 9,000 feet; not common.

738. Metoponia pusilla, the gold-headed finch (Jerdon II, 410). Common in the interior of Garhwal.

739. Fringilla montifringilla, the mountain finch (Jerdon II, 412). Mussoorie (late Hutton); doubtful.

740. (bis) Fringilla sordida, the Himālayan larkfinch (S. F. I., 41). In the interior of Garhwal.

741. Mirafra assamica, the Bengal bushlark (Jerdon II, 416). In the Düns; very local.

742. (bis) Mirafra immaculata, the mountain bushlark (S. F. T., 41). Near Chakrāta (Marshall); rare.

743. Mirafra erythroptera, the red-winged bushlark (Jerdon II, 418). In the Düns only; not common.

744. Pyrrhula grisea, the black-bellied finch lark (Jerdon II, 424). In the Düns only; common.

745. Calandrella brachydactyla, the short-toed lark (Jerdon II, 426). The Düns only, in winter; rare.

746. Otocoris penicillata, the horned lark (Jerdon II, 429). In the interior of Kumaon.

747. Alauda dulcivox, the Himālayan skylark (Jerdon II, 433; S. F. I. 39). At all elevations; not common.

748. Alauda gargula, the Indian skylark (Jerdon II, 434). The Düns only; rare.

749. Crocopus phænicopterus, the Bengal green pigeon (Jerdon III, 447). The Düns only; not common.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

773. Crocopus chliorigaster, the southern green pigeon (Jerdon III., 469). The Dúns only; not common.

778. Sphenocercus sphenurus, the kokia green pigeon (Jerdon III., 459). 4,000 to 8,000 feet; common.

778. (bis.) Sphenocercus minor, the lesser kokia (S. F. III., 355). In the warm valleys of Garhwal.

783. Alsocomus hodgoni, the speckled wood pigeon (Jerdon III., 463). Interior of Kumaon and Garhwal; rare.

784. Ps. ambus casiotis, the Himálayan cushat (Jerdon III., 464). Interior of Kumaon and Garhwal; rare.

787. Palumbus evermanni, the Indian stock pigeon (Jerdon III., 467). The Dúns only, in winter; rare.

788. Columba intermedia, the Indian rock pigeon (Jerdon III., 469). The Dúns only; common.

789. Columba rupestris, the blue hill pigeon (Jerdon III., 470). Rare; probably migratory.

790. Columba leuconota, the white-bellied pigeon (Jerdon III., 471). Near the snows.

799. Turtur pulchra, the ashy turtle dove (Jerdon III., 476; S. F. VI., 421). 5,000 to 10,000 feet; common.

799. Turtur cambariensis, the brown turtle dove (Jerdon III., 478). The Dúns and lower hills; common.

799. Turtur suratensis, the spotted dove (Jerdon III., 479). Up to 6,000 feet; common.

799. Turtur risoria, the common ring dove (Jerdon III., 481). Up to 4,000 feet; common.

799. Turtur humilis, the red turtle dove (Jerdon III., 482). The Dúns and warm valleys; rare.

799. Chalcophapa indica, the bronze-winged dove (Jerdon III., 484). Up to 4,000 feet; not common.

802. Pterocles exustus, the common sandgrouse (Jerdon III., 502). The Dúns only; rare.

809. (bis.) Syrrhaptes tibetanus, the Tibetan sandgrouse (S. F. VII., 423). On the northern borders.

803. Pavo cristatus, the common peacock (Jerdon III., 506). The Dúns only; common.

804. Lophophorus impeyanus, the monal (Jerdon III., 510). From 8,000 to 12,000 feet; not uncommon.

805. Ceriornis satyra, the Sikkim horned pheasant (Jerdon III., 516). From 9,000 feet to snow line.

806. Pucrasia macrolopha, the koklás pheasant (Jerdon III., 534). 6,000 to 10,000 feet; not rare.

809. Phasianus wallachii, the chir pheasant (Jerdon III., 537). 5,000 to 10,000 feet; scarce.

810. Euplocornus albochristatus, the white-crested kalij pheasant (Jerdon III., 532). Up to 4,000 feet; common.
812. Gallus ferrugineus, the red jungle fowl (Jerdon III., 539). The Düns and warm valleys.

814. Tetraogallus himalayensis, the Himalayan snowcock (Jerdon III., 549). At great elevations.

817. Lerwa nivicola, the snow partridge (Jerdon III., 585). Near the snow line.

818. Francolinus vulgaris, the black partridge (Jerdon III., 558). Up to 5,000 feet; common.

820. Caccabir chukor, the chukor (Jerdon III., 566). 6,000 to 9,000 feet; not common.

822. Ortygornis ponticeriana, the grey partridge (Jerdon III., 569). In the Düns only; common.

823. Ortygornis gularis, the kyah partridge (Jerdon III., 572). Kumaon Tarai; rare.

824. (bis) Perdix hodgsoniae, Mrs. Hodgson's partridge (S. F. VII., 432). Above 17,000 feet; very rare.

826. Perdix asiatica, the jungle bush-quail (Jerdon III., 581). The Düns and warm valleys.

827. Coturnix communis, the corn quail (Jerdon III., 586). Up to 4,000 feet; common.

828. Coturnix coromandelica, the rain quail (Jerdon III., 588). The Düns only; rare.

831. Excaliatoria chinensis, the blue-throated quail (Jerdon III., 591). The Düns only; rare.

832. Turnix taigoor, the black-breasted bustard quail (Jerdon III., 595). The Düns; common.

834. Turnix joudera, the larger button quail (Jerdon III., 599). Kumaon; lower hills.

835. Turnix dussumieri, the button quail (Jerdon III., 600). The Dehra Düns only; not common.

838. Syphætides bengalensis, the florikin (Jerdon III., 616). The Düns only; not rare.

839. Syphætides aurita, the lesser florikin (Jerdon III., 619). The Düns only; rare.

843. Glareola lactea, the small swallow plover (Jerdon III., 632). The Düns only; not common.

848. Egalititis curonica, the Indian ringed plover (Jerdon III., 640). The Düns only; rare.

852. Chettusia gregaria, the black-sided lapwing (Jerdon III., 644). Rare; migratory.

853. Chettusia leucura, the white-tailed lapwing (Jerdon III., 646). The Düns; rare; migratory.
Lobivanelus indicus, the red wattled lapwing (Jerdon III., 648). Up to 4,000 feet; common.

Sarciophorus bilobus, the yellow wattled lapwing (Jerdon III., 649). The Düns; a rare straggler.

Hoplopterus ventralis, the spur-winged lapwing (Jerdon III., 650). By the big rivers.

Esacus recurvirostris, the great stone-plover (Jerdon III., 652). The Düns; a rare straggler.

Cédicenemus crepitans, the stone-plover (Jerdon III., 654). The Düns only; not common.

Grus leucogeranus, the large white crane (Jerdon III., 663). Migrating; a rare straggler.

Grus cinerea, the common crane (Jerdon III., 664). An occasional cold-weather migrant.

Anthropoides virgo, the demoiselle crane (Jerdon III., 665). An occasional cold-weather migrant.

Scolopax rusticola, the woodcock (Jerdon III., 670). Up to 12,000 feet; not common.

Gallinago nemoricola, the wood snipe (Jerdon III., 672). The Düns; not common.

Gallinago solitaria, the Himalayan solitary snipe (Jerdon III., 673). Up to 12,000 feet; rare.

Gallinago scolopacinus, the common snipe (Jerdon III., 674). The Düns; common in winter.

Gallinago gallinula, the jack snipe (Jerdon III., 675). The Düns; common in winter.

Rhychnœa bengalensis, the painted snipe (Jerdon III., 677). The Düns only; not rare.

Ibidorhynchus struthersii, the red-billed curlew (Jerdon III., 685). In the interior; rare.

Macétes pugnax, the ruff (Jerdon III., 687). The Düns only; in the winter.

Tringa minutâ, the little stint (Jerdon III., 690). In the Düns in winter; occasionally.

Tringa temminckii, the white tailed stint (Jerdon III., 691). In the Düns, in winter; occasionally.

Actitis glareola, the spotted sandpiper (Jerdon III., 697). In the Düns in winter; occasionally.

Actitis ochropus, the green sandpiper (Jerdon III., 698). An occasional migrant.

Actitis hypoleucus, the common sandpiper (Jerdon III., 699). Along the shores of rivers.

Totanus glutis, the greenshanks (Jerdon III., 700). An occasional migrant.

Totanus stagnatilis, the little greenshanks (Jerdon III., 701). A rare migrant.
896. Totanus fuscus, the spotted redshanks (Jerdon III., 702). A rare migrant.
897. Totanus calidris, the redshanks (Jerdon III., 702). A rare migrant.
898. Himantopus candidus, the stilt (Jerdon III., 704). A rare migrant in the Düns.
900. Metopidius indicus, the bronze-winged jacana (Jerdon III., 708). The Kumaun Tarai and Düns.
901. Hydrophasianus chirurgus, the pheasant-tailed jacana (Jerdon III., 709). The Düns and warm valleys.
903. Fulica atra, the baldcoot (Jerdon III., 715). The Düns and warm valleys.
905. Gallinula chloropus, the water-hen (Jerdon III., 718). Up to 6,000 feet; common.
907. Erythra phoenicura, the white-breasted water-hen (Jerdon III., 720). In the Düns; common.
908. Porzana akool, the brown rail (Jerdon III., 722). The Düns; rather rare.
910. Porzana baillonii, Baillon’s crake (Jerdon III., 723). Up to 5,000 feet; not common.
911. Porzana fusca, the ruddy rail (Jerdon III., 724). Bhim Tál; rare.
916. Leptoptilus javanicus, the hair-crested stork (Jerdon III., 732). The Düns only; rare.
917. My Machines australis, the black-necked stork (Jerdon III., 734). The Düns only; rare.
918. Ciconia nigra, the black stork (Jerdon III., 735). The Düns only; rare.
919. Ciconia alba, the white stork (Jerdon III., 736). The Düns only; rare.
920. Ciconia episcopa, the white-necked stork (Jerdon III., 737). The Düns only; rare.
923. Ardea cinerea, the blue heron (Jerdon III., 741). The Düns and lower hills; rare.
924. Ardea purpurea, the purple heron (Jerdon III., 743). The Düns only; rare.
925. Herodias alba, the large egret (Jerdon III., 744). The Düns only; rare.
926. Herodias intermedia, the smaller egret (Jerdon III., 746). The Düns only.
927. Herodias garzetta, the little egret (Jerdon III., 746). The Düns only; rare.
929. Buphus coromandus, the cattle egret (Jerdon III., 749). The Düns only.
930. Ardeola grayi, the pond heron (Jerdon III., 751). The Düns only; common.
931. Batorides javanica, the little green heron (Jerdon III., 752). The Düns only.
933. Ardetta cinnamomea, the chestnut bittern (Jerdon III., 766). Bham Tal; common.
936. Botaurus stellaris, the bittern (Jerdon III., 767) The Düns only; rare.
937. Nycticorax griseus, the night heron (Jerdon III., 768). The Düns and warm valleys; rare.
938. Tantalus leucocephalus, the pelican ibis (Jerdon III., 769). The Düns only; rare.
941. Threskiornis melanocephalus, the white ibis (Jerdon III., 768). The Düns only; rare.
942. Geronticus papillosus, the black ibis (Jerdon III., 769). The Düns only; rare.
945. Anser cinererus, the grayleg goose (Jerdon III., 779). Migratory; not common.
948. Anser indicus, the barred-headed goose (Jerdon III., 782). An occasional migrant.
950. Sarkidiornis melanotus, the black-backed goose (Jerdon III., 785). The Düns only.
951. Nettapus coromandelianus, the cotton teal (Jerdon III., 786). The Düns only.
952. Dendrocygna javanica, the whistling teal (Jerdon III., 789). The Düns only.
953. Dendrocygna fulva, the large whistling teal (Jerdon III., 790). A straggler from the east.
954. Casarca rutila, the ruddy sheldrake (Jerdon III., 791) An occasional migrant.
955. Spatula clypeata, the shoveller (Jerdon III., 796). A cold weather migrant.
958. Anas boschas, the mallard (Jerdon III., 798). An occasional migrant.
959. Anas poecilorhyncha, the spotted-billed duck (Jerdon III., 799). The Düns only.
961. Chaulelasmus streperus, the gadwall (Jerdon III., 800). An occasional migrant.
962. Dafila acuta, the pin-tailed duck (Jerdon III., 803). An occasional migrant.
964. Querquedula crecca, the common teal (Jerdon III., 806). A regular migrant.
965. Querquedula circa, the blue-winged teal (Jerdon III., 807). A regular migrant.
967. Branta rufina, the red-crested pochard (Jerdon III., 811). An occasional migrant.
968. Fuligula ferina, the red-headed pochard (Jerdon III., 812). A rare migrant.
969. Fuligula nyroca, the white-eyed duck (Jerdon III., 813). An occasional migrant.
Himalayan Districts

972. Mergus merganser, the merganser (Jerdon III., 817). On the large rivers; common.
974. Podiceps cristatus, the crested grebe (Jerdon III., 891). A rare straggler from the east.
975. Podiceps minor, the little grebe (Jerdon III., 892). Up to 4,000 feet; common.
985. Sterna seea, the large river tern (Jerdon III., 838). The Düns only; rare.
987. Sterna javanica, the black-bellied tern (Jerdon III., 840). The Düns only; not common.
1003. Pelecanus javanicus, the lesser white pelican (Jerdon III., 867). An occasional migrant.
1004. Pelecanus philippensis, the grey pelican (Jerdon III., 868). An occasional migrant.
1005. Graculus carbo, the large cormorant (Jerdon III., 861). On the large rivers; common.
1007. Graculus javanicus, the little cormorant (Jerdon III., 863). The Düns only; not rare.
1008. Plotus melanogaster, the Indian snake-bird (Jerdon III., 865). The Düns only.

References.


Hodgson’s papers.

The bearded vulture of the Himalaya. Ibid., IV., 454.
On the red-billed Erolia. Ibid., IV., 458, 701.
A new species of Columba. V., 122.
A new genus of Meropidae. V., 360.
On a new piscatory genus of the Strigine family. V., 363.
A new genus of Picidae and new species of Sitta. V., 778.
New species of Hirundinidae. V., 779.
Three new genera of Thrushes. VI., 101.
Three new species of Woodpecker. VI., 104.
A new genus of Insectorial birds. VI., 110.
On some new genera of Raptorese. VI., 361.
New species of Indian snipe. VI., 489.
A new species of pheasant from Tibet. VII., 863.
A new genus of the fissirostral tribe. VIII., 35.
New species of Meruline birds. VIII., 37.
On the cuckoo tribe. VIII., 136.
New form of Glaucocephalus or rular crow. X., 856.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES. 78

Catalogue of Nepalese birds presented to the Asiatic Society, Calcutta. XII. 301: XXIV., 672.

On the Leiotrichsane birds of the Sub-Himalaya. XIII., 933.

A new Perdicine bird from Tibet. XXV., 165.


Blyth's papers.

A list of these will be found in the extra number of Vol. XLIV., Part II., of the Journal of the Asiatic Society, Calcutta, 1875.


On certain eagles, Ibid., 145. On Indian Certhiana, Ibid., 255. Supplemental notes, Ibid. XLIII. ii. 239. List of birds observed near Naini Tal and Almura, Ibid. V. N. S., 43.

McMaster, A.—Notes on the birds of Nágpur, J. A. S. Ben XL., ii., 207.

Stoliczka.—Ornithological observations in the Satlaj valley. Ibid., XXXVII., li., 1. A contribution to Malayan ornithology. Ibid., XXXIX., ii , 277. On the birds and mammals of Kachh. Ibid., XLI., ii., 211.


REPTILES.

Reptiles are vertebrate animals that breathe by lungs and are cold-blooded and for the most part oviparous. They include frogs, toads, lizards, chameleons, salamanders, tortoises, turtles and serpents and are very widely and commonly distributed throughout India. When Dr. Günther wrote his great work (1864) on Indian reptiles, 282 species of snakes were recorded from India including British Burma, of which 79 species were venomous, but of the latter 44 were marine snakes (Hydrophidae) and of the remainder 17 were arboreal species,
reducing the venomous terrestrial snakes to 18, of which only six are at all common. Theobald in his "Catalogue of the reptiles of British India," published in 1876, omits the marine snakes and describes 188 species, of which only 33 are venomous. The following list only includes species actually collected by Dr. Watson in Kumaon and of the 23 recorded, eight are venomous, a proportion not found in the plains of India. A reference is given under each species to Theobald's work, where a description will be found.

REPTILIA.

Order Sauria or Land Lizards.

Group Leptoglossae.

Varanus Dracaena, Linn.: common water lizard, attains to four feet in length, brownish olive colour, dotted with black scales: common near rivers. Th. 38.

Mocoa himalayana, Günth.: four inches long, of which tail is half: colour above greenish olive, with a few interrupted series of dark and whitish dots; a dark lateral band from nose through eyes, margined above with white: common. Th. 57.

Mocoa sacra, Stol.: body 1·37, tail 2 inches: colour light bronze brown, with a few dark brown spots accompanied by one or two indistinct pale spots scattered on head and body: very common. Th. 57.

Group Pachyglossae.

Hemidactylus maculatus, D. et B.: length 5½ inches: colour brownish olive or dark brown above, with darker spots, bands or streaks: occurs at low levels. Th. 75.

Gymnodactylus Lawderanus, Stol.: length about 4 inches: colour greenish brown, densely marbled and spotted with dark brown: rare, occurs in Almora. Th. 81.

Sitana pondiceriana, Cuv.: about 5½ inches, fawn-coloured with rhomboidal dark spots on the back and a pale yellowish streak from below the eye through the ear to the loins: frequent. Th. 102.

Calotes versicolor, Daud.: the blood-sucker; grows 14 to 16 inches; in summer, the males have the body red, head and neck yellowish picked out with red: very common up to 4,000 feet. Th. 109.
Stellio tuberculatus, Gray: body 5 and tail 8½ inches: colour dark olive: very common up to 5,000 feet. Th. 116.

Stellio melanurus, Blyth: body 3·7 and tail 7·7 inches: colour olive grey: somewhat rare. Th. 117.

Stellio Dayanus, Stol.: body 6 and tail 12 inches: colour in adults blackish: found in the Bhábar. Th. 117.

Order OPHIDIA or Snakes.

Group 1.—*Harmless colubrine snakes*.

*Typhlops bothriorhynchus*, Günth.: grows to 11 inches; brown above and below or with the terminal half of scales slightly paler: occurs in Bhábar. Th. 122.

*Typhlops tenuicollis*, Peters: colour olive, browner above, yellowish below: Bhábar. Th. 123.

*Typhlops porrectus*, Stol.: grows to 11 inches: colour above pale chocolate or leaden brown above shading into paler below: Bhábar. Th. 124.

*Simotes Russellii*, Daud.: grows to 27 inches: colour brownish olive with three dark arrow-shaped bands on the head very distinct and body crossed with about twenty white-edged black bars: belly yellow: very common on grassy slopes. Th. 150.

*Simotes punctulatus*, Günth.: grows to 36 inches: colour brown either crossed by numerous straight light, black edged bands, about two scales broad or crossed by irregular lines formed by the black edges of some scales or with some twenty-two pairs of pale black-edged spots down the back, more or less confluent: rare. Th. 152.


*Ablabes Rappii*, Günth.: grows to 23 inches: colour uniform dark bronze brown or blackish above, whitish below: common. Th. 154.

*Ablabes collaris*, Gray: grows to 32 inches: colour brown above, white below with black dots; a black collar yellow margined behind on the nape sometimes with a number of black dots: common. Th. 156.

*Composoma semifasciatum*, Blyth: colour above pale olive grey transversely dark barred and spotted; a horse-shoe mark with the
ends directed backwards on the occipitals; a pale, elongate, lateral ocellus on each occipital: belly whitish or with a slight dusky tinge: common. Th. 164.

*Compsosoma Hodgsonii*, Günth.: grows to $63\frac{1}{2}$ inches: colour uniform brownish olive: skin and margin of some scales black; lower parts yellowish: common. Th. 166.

*Ptyas mucosus*, Linn.: the rat-snake or *dháman* of the plains; grows to 91 inches; colour light brownish olive; scales with dusky margins producing a reticulated appearance on the hind part of the body and the pointed tail: very common. This with *S. Russellii* comprise nineteen-twentieths of all the snakes killed in the hills. Th. 168.

*Tropidonotus platyceps*, Blyth: grows to 30 inches: colour in males above, dark brown, with a long elliptical mark on the neck and two rows of small blackish spots along the back anteriorly: below yellowish finely mottled with dusky green and a distinct blackish band on each side: a coral red band along the ends of the ventrals: common on ground under trees. Th. 174.

*Psammophis condanarus*, Merr.: grows to 40 inches: colour buff or yellowish: isabelline brown with a dark stripe, two broad scales down either side of the back from head to tail and a broader dark stripe on either side of the belly which is yellowish: common. Th. 187.

*Lycodon striatus*, Shaw: brown or black barred with yellow, the bars being broken up on the sides and a bright yellow collar on the neck: grows to about 20 inches; frequent. Th. 199.

*Python molurus*, Linn.: *ajgar*, *charáo* in Kumaun; grows to about 30 feet, but specimens over 20 feet are rare; have seen one of 25 feet killed in the Eastern Dán of Dehra; coloration like the *Daboia*, but several shields on the head and scales in 65 rows round the middle of the body: common up to 5,000 feet: seen in Bhebar, at Ukhimath and below Túngnáth. Th. 206.

Group 2.—*Venomous colubrine snakes*.

*Naja tripudians*, Merr.: cobra, known as *kobra*, *nág*, *kála-samp*, *phanoala*; grows to 70 inches and is very common in the hills. Neck dilatable into a hood; scales smooth in 15 rows on the body,
but more numerous on the neck: nostril between two shields. Colour very variable from pale yellowish to pale and dark brown and black. The spectacle marks on the hood also vary in development and are sometimes replaced by a pale oval eye-shaped mark with a dark centre. Th. 208.

*Naja Elaps*, Schl.: the *ashuriya* of the plains; grows up to 200 inches, has been identified from Pithoragarh and Kālahūngi and occurs also in the eastern Bhābar. It is difficult to distinguish between young specimens and the cobra; they are, however, of a pure jet black. The adult female is olive brown with paler cross bands deeply edged with black: beneath white mottled with black about the tail; throat yellow. Th. 209.

_Callophis MacClellandii_, Reinh.: grows to about 30 inches and is rare in Kumaon. Body and tail reddish brown with generally a black vertebral line from the nape to the tip of the tail: head and neck black, with a yellow bar behind the eyes; belly yellowish with black cross bands or quadrangular spots. Sometimes the belly bars are alternately short and long, giving the appearance of a chain of supra-abdominal spots. Tail black ringed or sometimes without rings and belly only spotted and sometimes the vertebral line is absent and the body encircled with black rings. Th. 214.

_Bungarus cœruleus_, Schn.: the *karait* of the plains and here frequent in the valleys. Colour above deep lustrous blue-black uniform or streaked and reticulated with white; below white; grows to 54 inches. Compared with the cobra it is a sluggish snake and does not possess a hood but like most snakes, however, it has the power, when irritated of compressing laterally the anterior six inches of its body. Th. 215.

**Group 3.—Venomous viperine snakes.**

_Daboia Russellii_, Shaw: grows to 54 inches and is common in the hills. Colour above greyish or reddish brown with three rows of blackish-brown annular ocelli each surrounded by an inner white and an outer black ring down the back and sides: the vertebral series ovate, the others circular and sometimes with supplementary ocelli of small size interspersed below between the others. A broad arrow mark on the head formed by two pale lines from the snout over the eyes to the temporal region. Rostral and labials yellowish
with brown margins. Belly yellowish or marbled with brown. Th. 217.

Group 4.—Venomous pitted vipers.

*Trimesurus carinatus*, Gray: colour above uniform grass green paler below or whitish; tail yellowish or rusty; grows to 37 inches. This is one of the handsomest of the arboreal species and is frequent in the hills, Siwaliks and Bhábar. It is easily recognised by its head being much thicker than its neck or body. Th. 221.

*Trimesurus monticolola*, Gray: colour in males blackish ash, in females and young pale brown. Two rows of square black spots along the back, alternately placed or confluent; sides black or brown spotted; a yellow or white streak from the eye to the neck with a Y-like mark on the neck; belly densely marbled brown; grows to 21 inches; rare, occurs in valleys. Th. 220.

*Halys himalayanus*, Günth.: colour dark brown, indistinctly spotted with darker spots transverse, edged with black; belly black, marbled with yellowish; a blackish band from the eye to the gape; grows to 25 inches; very common above 10,000 feet; found on Binsar. Th. 225.

**References.**


*Nicholson, E.*—Indian snakes Madras, 1874.


OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.


FISHERS.

Fishes form the fourth division of the Vertebratae. Like the mammals, birds and reptiles, they possess a vertebra, but they are cold-blooded and breathe by means of gills. The body may be divided into the head, trunk and tail and is provided with fins which according to their position are called pectoral, ventral, anal, caudal, adipose, and dorsal fins. For the fishes of India we fortunately possess Day's great work which will enable the local student at once to distinguish his captures. The following list is extracted from Dr. Day's articles on the "Geographical distribution of Indian fresh-water fishes" and gives a reference to the description of each species in his 'Fishes of India.' There are sixteen families comprising eighty-seven genera of fresh-water fishes found in India and Burma. Of these two only are common to Africa and India only (not being Malayan) both being likewise Palæarctic: 32 extend to the islands of the Malayan archipelago and 12 are common to the Indian, African and Malayan regions, of which six are likewise Palæarctic. Further, if the 369 species comprised in the Indian genera be taken, two only are African and not Malayan, but they are also Palæarctic: 27 are common to India and the Malayan archipelago and two to India, Africa and the Malayan region. In the Himālaya there are two great classes, the Tartarian fauna from the Palæarctic regions and the Hindustan forms and amongst the latter, the hill Barbels have a well-marked distinct position. Altogether the Himālayan region contains recorded representatives of some eighteen genera, but much still remains to be done by local workers in accurately recording the distribution of species. Every one knows the bewildering mass of vernacular names for fishes that obtain in every district, but a careful study of Day will enable the naturalist with a fresh specimen.

before him to determine the names of the following amongst others that are said to occur in the Kumaun Division:—selo, baldyan, kalonji, gulyál, gadhúla, nái, bain, gadera, bakulo, kanaluwa, kotuwa, jydbu, pharkato, mingaro, unero, bhagtera, sanero, damaruwa, aro, balsulo, dudhilo, gauru, bhegi, saulya, kano, gálar, káli-karnál, kargato, paparuwa, chilaluwa and the dry-fish known as ashiála.

Some of these fishes are found in shallow pools near the sources of the great rivers and such are provided with a transverse inferior mouth and a sucker behind the lower jaw with which they attach themselves to the rocks in order to resist the force of the current. The cold in winter in these elevated regions is intense and in the southern tract abutting on the plains the waters are ever warm. In the Tarái, the Bhucksas and the Thárus catch fish chiefly for their own consumption and in the hills the Doms are the principal fishermen. All classes in the hills except a few Brahmans and Baniyas eat fish at all times. No sustained and systematic efforts have ever been made to protect fish from poachers and the wanton destruction of fry and mature fish goes on almost unchecked. In the tract along the foot of the hills between the Sárda and the Gangés, nets with meshes $\frac{3}{4}$" are used and the great fishing season takes place in the cold weather. In the hills spearing fish by torch-light is sometimes resorted to and in Garhwhál they are often snared in nooses made of white horse-hair which are attached to a line stretched across a river and near each group of nooses, a brightly-coloured flower or piece of cloth is fastened. The line is kept in its position by a leaden weight and the curious fish attracted by the novel object presented to them come swimming around it and are easily entangled in the nooses.

The Superintendent of Dehra Dún reported on the state of fish-conservancy in his district in the following terms and there is reason to believe that what was written in 1871 is true of 1881:—

"Breeding fish are destroyed in great numbers and the small fry are also largely captured. The former are taken in the commencement of the rains in every conceivable manner. At that time, they run up small streams and are then killed with sticks, are caught in nets, in baskets, by hooks fastened on lines and in many other ways. Small fry are taken at the end of the rains in baskets placed in fields at the outlets for irrigation-water and in the cold-weather
they are captured wholesale in small-meshed nets. From the month of March up to the beginning of the rains, streams are dammed and turned. In the districts along the foot of the hills the mountain torrents, when they burst from the hills, have three or four different beds, all of which are full during the rains, but afterwards only one. One year the stream is in one of these beds and another year in another. The poachers choose a spot where the stream and an old bed are in close proximity and both have good pools in them. They then fix nets right across the stream about a mile, or more, below this spot: first, nets with large meshes, and then nets with smaller meshes which are kept in position by heavy stones placed on their lower edge and floats above. When the nets are all ready the operators dam up the stream, and open a water-way into the old bed, so that the force of the water soon cuts a deep way for itself, and then the late bed of the stream is left dry, except in the deep holes. All fish that try to escape down are stopped by the nets. The poachers then take away all the fish they want, and leave the rest to perish gradually as the pools dry up. Small fry may sometimes be seen lying dead, six and eight inches deep, in these holes. The poachers, in a day or two, go through the same process somewhere else lower down, and after a month or so when the fish have become accustomed to the new bed, they commence at the top again, and return the stream into its late bed, catching all the fish in the new bed. This is one of the most deadly modes of poaching, but, in addition to this process during the same period, the poachers are in the habit of using nets of very small meshes, with which they catch the young fry of the larger kinds of fish where damming the stream is impracticable."

Some improvement has of late been effected in Dehra Dun with the co-operation of the landholders by limiting the size of the mesh in common use to one and a half inch between knot and knot; by prohibiting the sale of young fry in the markets and by establishing a close season during the first two months of the rains, but it is found that something more than private influence is required to check the wasteful use of this great food resource. In the hills some action should be taken to protect the mahásar. This fish so good for food and sport commences to run up the smaller streams

1 See further Day's official report on Indian fisheries.
about the end of March or beginning of April, and in June-July large specimens weighing ten to fifteen pounds may be seen in little streams not more than a few yards wide. These are all heavy with spawn and fall easy victims to the poacher. Where the streams narrow and run between rocks, the Doms fasten a series of strings with sharp strong barbed hooks every three inches to the rocks on each side and in this way secure a vast number of the larger fish. In the hills also the poisoning of pools with various vegetable drugs is a common practice and could easily be discouraged. The portions of plants more commonly used for this purpose are the bark of Zanthoxylon hostile, Wall., the timur and tejbal of Kumaon, common throughout the hills: the fruit of Casearia tomentosa, Roxb., the chila of the Siwalik tract and Anagallis arvensis, Linn., the jonkhamdra and jaighani of Kumaon, of which the whole plant triturated in used to poison fish or to expel leeches from the nostrils hence its vernacular name. It is plausibly stated that fish are not such a common article of food as to need conservation, but it is precisely for this reason that they should be protected. Fish are universally eaten by the casteless classes that form the majority of the population and who are also the first to suffer in times of scarcity. It is not so necessary to protect the food-resources of the rich and powerful as to conserve those which might be made available for the poor labouring man and his family when famine is abroad. I would, therefore, strongly urge the prohibition of poaching and the introduction of a close season for the carp tribe: in fact the introduction of Ross' Dün rules by legislative enactment.

**PISCES.**

**ORDER—PHYSOSTOMI.**

**Family—SILURIDÆ.**


*Amblyceps Mangoi*, Buch. Day, 490. Procured from Kangra and Darjiling and found in the upper Jamna.

*Bagarius Yarrellii*, Buch. Day, 495. The gatuch found near Hardwárr and called the fresh-water shark. It attains a length of six feet or more.


Glyptosternum Botia, Buch. Day, 497. A mountain stream species found in the upper Jumna.

Glyptosternum pectinopterum, Day, 497. Found in the Himalaya from Kangra to Darjiling.


Family.—Cyprinidae. Carps.

Homaloptera maculata, Gray. Day, 525. Found in the Himalaya, also in the Wynád and Bhawání rivers, Madras.


Oreinus sinuatus, Heckel. Day, 529. Occurs in the rivers within the hills and attaches itself by a sucker to the rocks and boulders and thus resists the action of the current. The species of this genus with Schizopygopsis, Schizotorax, Ptycobarbus, and Diptychus are strictly residents of the hilly regions of the Himalaya, though a few descend to the plains. The genus Oreinus extends from Afgánistán along the Himalaya to the frontiers of China. They also descend a short distance into the rivers of the plains and are absent from the level plateaus on the summit of the Himalaya.

Oreinus Richardsonii, Gray. Day, 530. This is the so-called mountain-trout of Kumaon, of which a figure is given by McClelland in J. A. S., Ben., IV., 39.

Oreinus plagiotomus, Heckel. Day, 530. This species occurs throughout the Himalaya from Afgánistán to Bhután.

Schizopygopsis Stoliczka, Steind. Day, 531. Found in the cold waters of the Himalaya about the source of the Indus, Tibet;
where the rivers are snow-fed and many of them never reach the sea.

**Schizothorax progastus**, McClell. Day, 532. The *dindwa* of these Provinces: occurs from the head-waters of the Ganges eastwards.


**Labeo diplostomus**, Heckel. Day, 540. The *maheli* of Hardwár occurs in the Himalayan rivers from the Panjáb to Asám, including the rivers at their bases.

**Labeo dyocheilus**, M'Clell. Day, 540. The *buvála* of these Provinces: occurs in the same localities as the preceding.

**Labeo Pangusia**, Buch. Day, 541. Occurs throughout the Himalayan range and descends to the delta of the Ganges.


**Cirrhina Latia**, Buch. Day, 548. Occurs along the Himalaya in the hill rivers.

**Barbus chilinoides**, M'Clell Day, 563. Occurs throughout the Himalaya as far east as Asám and descends into the Ganges.

**Barbus Tor**, Buch. Day, 564. Occurs throughout the hill rivers: the *maháser* of fishermen.


**Apidoparia Jaya**, Buch. Day, 585. The *pahrwua* of Hardwár: occurs also at Rájpur on the Jumna.

**Barilius Vagra**, Buch. Day, 589. Con. mon in the rivers of the Himalayan and sub-Himalayan ranges. The fishes of the genus Barilius prefer rapid streams and frequently ascend the rivers of the hills.

Barilius Bendelisis, Buch. Day, 590. Found in the Himalayan rivers and also in the plains (except Sind and the Malabar coast) and Ceylon.

Danio æquipinnatus, M'Clell. Day, 596. Hitherto received only from the Himalayan rivers eastward of Nepál.

Danio Dangila, Buch. Day, 596. Procured in the hills near Darjiling and in the Ganges delta.


Botia Geoto, Buch. Day, 606. Found from Sind through the Panjáb and Himalaya to Asám.


Leptocephalichthys Guntea, Buch. Day, 609. From the Panjáb to Asám, including several of the Himalayan rivers.

Nemacheilus rupicola, M'Clell. Day, 616. Occurs in the rivers of the upper Himalaya and (?) Tibet at 16,000 feet above the level of the sea.


Nemacheilus Stoliczkae, Steind. Day, 620. Taken in the Indus near Leh and in the Yárkand river.

Nemacheilus gracilis, Day. Day, 621. Taken in the headwaters of the Indus.
REFERENCES.


Jordan—Fishes of Southern India. J. L. S., Mad., XV., 139, 302.


Blyth.—Fishes of Burma, Ibid., XXIX., 138: Cartilaginous fishes of Bengal, Ibid., XXIX., 88: Fishes obtained near Calcutta, Ibid., XXVII., 287.

Beevan—Indian fresh-water fishes. London, 1876.

Day.—The Fishes of India, being a natural history of the fishes known to inhabit the seas and fresh-waters of India, Burma and Ceylon. London, 1876-78. This work supersedes all that have gone before.
CHAPTER XI.
ZOOLOGY (Invertebrata).

CONTENTS.


MOLLUSCA.

The section of this order found in the Himalayas is confined to land and fresh-water shells. No special work on the hill species has yet been written, but they are incidentally noticed in the catalogues quoted amongst the references at foot. The animals of this class possess a head furnished with organs of touch and vision and sometimes of hearing. Some live on land, but most live in water and little has yet been done to describe the animals themselves apart from their shells. My thanks are due to Mr. W. Theobald for placing his lists at my disposal. I have again to repeat that these lists are neither exhaustive nor up to the present state of science, but are merely suggestive notes which will aid those who desire thoroughly to investigate the local fauna.

Class GASTEROPODA.

Family Melaniidae.

Melania, Lam.—scabra, Müll. C. I. t. 73; f. 1-7: tuberculata, Müll. C. I. t. 74; f. 1-4.

Family Ampullaridae.

Ampullaria, Lam.—globosa, Swain.; C. I., t. 113; f. 3-5.

Family Viviparidae.

Vivipara, Lam.—bengalensis, Lam.; C. I. t. 76. f. 8-10: dissimiulis, Müll.; C. I., t. 100; f. 3, 4.

Family Rissoidae.

Bithynia, Lam.—cerameopoma, Benson; C. I. t. 38. f. 1, 4: pulchella, Benson; C. I. t. 38; f. 5, 6.

Family Zonitidae

Macrochlamys, Benson.—chloropla, Benson; C. I. t. 32; f. 1, 4, glauca, Benson; C. I. t. 63; f. 10: indica, Benson; C. I. t. 87; 1, 10: splendens, Hutton; C. I. t. 51; f. 7, 10: nuda, Pf. C. I. t. 31; f. 7, 10: vesicula, Benson; C. I. t. 63; f. 4-6: ornatissima, Benson; C. I. t. 60; f. 4: planiuscula, Benson; C. I. t. 32; f. 7, 10: prona

Sitala, Adams.—Bullula, Hutton; C. I. t. 61; f. 2, 3: Nana, Hutton; C. I. t. 61; f. 7-9: radicicola, Benson; C. I. t. 62; f. 10.

Kaliella, W. Blanf.—barakporensis, Pf.; C. I. t. 87; f. 7: fastigiata, Hutton; C. I. t. 16; f. 5.

Hemiplecta, Albers.—monticola, Hutton; C. I. t. 52; f. 3.

Arnophanta, Desno.—cyclocrema, Benson; C. I. t., 28; f. 10.

Helicarion, Ferussac.—monticola, Benson; Pf. Mon. II., 497: scutella, Benson; C. I. t. 66; f. 1, 4: cassida, Hutton; J. A. S. Bene., VII., 214; Flemingii, Pf.; C. I. t. 66; f. 5, 6: ovatus, H. Blanf.; J. A. S. Ben. 1871, ii., 44.

Family Heliacida: Snails.

Fruticola, Hildreth.—Huttoni, Pf.

Vallonia, Risso.—humilis, Hutton; C. I. t. 61; f. 4-6.

Peronæus, Albers.—oënopictus, Hutton.

Napaæus, Albers.—arcuatus, Hutton; C. I. t., 20; f. 2, 7: Boy-ssianus, Benson; C. I. t. 22; f. 6: ceratinus, Benson; C. I. t. 80; f. 2: cælebs, Benson; C. I. t. 80; f. 1: fallaciosus, Stol.; kunawa-rensis, Hutton; C. I. t. 19; f. 3: pretiosus, Cantor; C. I. t. 23; f. 7: rufistrigatus, Benson; C. I. t. 20; f. 4: t. 23, f. 10: segregatus, Benson; C. I. t. 80; f. 10: Smithii, Benson; C. I. t. 20; f. 6: vibex, Hutton; C. I. t. 20; f., 5: t. 23, f. 2.

Opeas, Albers.—gracilis, Hutton; Pf. ii., 157: latebricola, Ben-son; C. I. t. 79, f. 7.

Glessula, Albers.—balanus, Benson; Gl. in Sc. I. t. 8, f. 12: iota, Benson; leptospira, Benson; C. I. t. 35, f. 2?

Cylindrus, Fitz.—insulares, Eh.; C. I. t. 22, f. 10.

Pupa, Drapar.—eurina, Benson; C. I. t. 101, f. 10: orcula, Benson; C. I. t. 87; f. 1, 4: plicidens, Benson; C. I. t. 100; f. 8: tutula, Benson; Conch. Icon, 625, t. 84.
Sucoinea, Draper.—Bensoni, Pf.; C. I. t., 67; f. 9: indica, Pf., C. I. t. 67, f. 1, 4.

Clausilia, Draper.—cylindrica, Gray; C. I. t. 24, f. 4.

Ennea, Adams.—bicolor, Hutton; C. I. t. 100, f. 6.

Order Limnophila.

Family Auriculida.


Coelostele, Benson—scalaris, Benson; An. Mag. N. H., 1864, p. 130.

Family Limnidae—Pond-shells.

Limnae, Lam.; acuminata, Lam.; C. I. t. 69; f. 8, 9: luteola, Lam.; C. I. t. 70, f. 5, 6.


Ancylus, Geoff.—verraca, Ben.; C. I. t. 81, f. 2, 3.

Order Ectophthalma.

Family Cyclophoridae.

Cyclophorus, Montfort—exul, Benson; C. I. t. 47; f. 7.

Alyceus, Gray—strangulatus, Hutton; C. I. t. 93; f. 2, 3.

Family Diplommatinidae.


Class Pelecypoda.

Order Veneracea.

Family Cyrenidae.

Corbicula, Megerle—occidens, Benson; C. I. t. 138; f. 8, 9.

Order Bivalvia.

Family Unionidae.

Unio, *Philipsson*—*marginalis*, Lam.; C. I. t. 43, f. 2; t. 44, f. 3: *corrugatus*, Mull.; C. I. t. 45, f. 2-5: *caeruleus*, Lea; C. I. t. 12; f. 3.

References.

Hanley, S. and Theobald, W.— *Conchologia Indica*, Illustrations of the land and fresh-water shells of British India, London, 1876. Referred to as C. I. in the list above.

Theobald, W. Catalogue of the land and fresh-water shells of British India. Calcutta, 1876.


There are also several very interesting papers in the *Journal of the Asiatic Society*, Calcutta, on Indian shells by Messrs. Theobald, W. Blanford and G. Nevill.

**ARACHNIDA—Mites, Scorpions, Spiders.**

The Arachnida form a class of the great sub-kingdom Articulata, which also includes the Annelidae, Crustacea, Myriapoda and Insecta. They have no proper metamorphosis, though during the several moultings that some pass through, structural changes take place, which approach in character the incomplete metamorphosis of certain orders of insects. In the Arachnida, the head and the thorax are soldered together in one piece known as the cephalo-thorax, and to the lower surface of this, as a rule, the legs are attached. The head is furnished with a pair of jaws called maxillae and the mandibles of insects are represented by *falcis*, organs intended for seizing and compressing the insects or other substances on which the arachnids prey. There is also a part of variable form representing the *labium* in insects and in many a *ligula* or tongue. In some, these different portions are soldered together to form a sucking apparatus. Nearly every species possesses simple eyes varying in number from two to twelve and of first importance amongst the spiders in the most received system of classification. The abdomen is joined to the thorax by its entire breadth or by a pedicel and is either unsegmented or segmented. It is sometimes, as in the scorpions, prolonged into a segmented tail or in others into a button or a more or less hair-like appendage or is furnished with spinners and spinnerets. Arachnids are either
oviparous or ovo-viviparous. They are distributed into the following orders:

I. — Acarida, mites.
II. — Pycnogonidea, marine parasites.
III. — Phalangidea, Harvest-men: includes the family Phalangides.
IV. — Solpugidea: contains the family Galeodidae.
V. — Scorpionidea, scorpions: contains the families Pseudoscorpiones, Androctonoides, Pandinoidea.
VI. — Thelyphonidea: contains the families Thelyphonides and Phrynides.
VII. — Araneidea, spiders: contains some thirty-two families and some 260 genera.

The Acaridea comprise mites of all kinds and are common under the bark of trees, in the ground, in water and on decomposing animal and vegetable matter. They include the Indian itch insect (Sarcoptes indica) and the mites of cheese and sugar and are frequently found as parasites. The Pycnogonidea are marine parasites, of which an Indian species (P. Kroeyeri) has lately been described by Mr. Wood-Mason. The Phalangidea live on the young of other spiders, certain Acaridea and small insects. The Solpugidea comprise certain spider-like animals which differ from the true spiders in several structural details. To this order belongs the Galeodes fatalis, Herbst (= vorax, Hutton), of which the late Captain Hutton has left us an interesting account. He tells us that it was his custom during the rainy season to spread a sheet on the ground any fine evening and placing a lamp near it, to collect the numerous insects that assembled. One evening two or three of these spiders made their appearance and no sooner did a moth or beetle alight than they snapped it up and devoured it. He secured one and placed it in a vessel, the bottom of which was well supplied with earth which had been hardened by pouring water on it and then allowing it to dry. The Galeodes soon began to dig a hole and in a very short time succeeded in making itself a subterranean retreat in which it usually resided, seldom coming out beyond the mouth of its den. It proceeded to dig out the earth at first with its strong jaws, cutting it away in a circle, and having thus loosened the soil.
it gathered it together into a heap with its anterior palpi and threw it out behind as a dog does in scratching a hole. When it had by this means succeeded in excavating a hole sufficiently large first to enter, instead of throwing out the loose earth as at first, it gathered a quantity together and surrounding or embracing it with the anterior palpi, shoved the load by main force before it up to the mouth of the cave and then returned for more. Having completed its task, it remained for a few days stationary and then refused to feed. It proved to be a female and deposited its ova, which appeared to be of about the size of a somewhat large mustard-seed and of a whitish hue. These hatched in about a fortnight and the young in about three weeks cast their first skin, when the jaws and palpi became a deep brown. They now commenced to move about, but at the first sight of danger invariably fled for refuge to their mother, who was able to distinguish between them and insects given to her as food. She was always ready for food, consuming at a single effort a lizard three inches long exclusive of the tail and being able to destroy a young bird and the young of a musk rat introduced to her den: but these she did not eat. One has been known to kill and eat a good sized scorpion. The usual size of an adult specimen is 2.5”—2.9” long and the body or abdomen is about the size of a thrush’s egg. When in motion the body is elevated from the ground and the two pairs of palpi or feelers are erected, ready for a seizure. The head is armed with two toothed chelae or double jaws, somewhat like the fore-arms of a scorpion, one pair of which are advanced to hold the prey whilst the other cut it. The jaws thus alternately advance and cut until the victim is sawn in two.

The Scorpionidea or scorpions are too well known to require description. They vary in size from the little book scorpion (Chelifer) hardly quarter of an inch in length to the great black scorpion measuring six inches. In parts of the country there are persons who profess to be able to take any scorpion in their hands with impunity and at several Musalmán shrines in the North-Western Provinces scorpions are esteemed sacred. The family Thelyphonides of the order Thelyphonidea comprises a remarkable homogeneous group of which India possesses a fair number of examples. Last of all come the Araneidea or true spiders, varying in size from

almost microscopic animals to the great Mygale which is said to prey (?) upon birds. There is no doubt but that in the Arachnidae we have a class of animals regarding which the Indian naturalist can afford considerable aid to science, for there is practically nothing known regarding its species in Upper India. The geographical range of some spiders is very great; Artema convexa is found in Pernambuco in South America, in equatorial Africa and in Meerut, and Gasteracantha frontata is found in Africa and India. Hence, as observed by Stoliczka, we may reasonably expect to find in Western India a great number of species identical with those of Arabia and Egypt; in southern India many referable to Ceylon species and nearly allied to those of the Mauritius and in the Burmese region others identical with or akin to the spiders of the Indian archipelago. To the west an admixture of African types and to the east a mingling of Malayan types will be found to prevail as in the Vertebrata. He adds:—'It is really remarkable that in examining a collection of spiders from our Eastern frontier, together with another made in Western India, often scarcely a single species will be found to be identical to both parts. Bengal has a strong admixture of Malayan types and several species are common to it, Burma and Assam. The Western Himalaya possess in the Arachnoid fauna a prominently European character, as their general climate would lead us to expect, and the Eastern Himalaya probably contains some Chinese or Malayan types. It is strange that not only dislike but a real enmity and ill-feeling against Arachnids appears to have taken hold of men's minds. No doubt the few species which secrete a poisonous fluid in special glands and through its use occasionally become dangerous are the source of much of this ill-feeling in India. They are, on the whole, certainly harmless and as regards usefulness are scarcely surpassed by any other class of animals. They live wholly on insects and destroy a very large number of those which often do much damage to both animal and vegetable life. Their instinct also is very highly developed and shows itself not only in the way in which they obtain their living but in their exposition of the art of weaving. Their whole life is passed in carrying out arrangements for their support that presuppose a considerable amount of thought and deliberation.' Spiders should be preserved in spirits of wine. The colours are, however, so fleeting that the collector should at the
time of capture note the colour as well as the habits of the species, 
whether terrestrial or aquatic; whether it secures its prey by 
running after it, jumping on it or by lying in wait for it in 
natural or artificial cells; whether it has a fixed home, and if so, 
whether the reticulations of the web are close or in open geometrical 
order. All these matters are aids for the correct identification of 

**ARACHNIDA.**

**III.—PHALANGIDAE.**

Family Phalangides.

Gagrella, *Stol.*—atrata (Cal.), signata (As.), *Stol.*: (Acanthotonotus) 
niger *Koch*: (Phalangium) monocanthum, *Herbst*.

**IV.—SOLPUGIDA.**

Family Galeodiades.

(Mad.) *Gerv.*: orientalis (W. Ben.), *Stol*.

**V.—SCORPIONIDEA.**

Family Pseudo-scorpiones.

Chelifer, *Leach.*—cancroides (N. I.), *Linn*.

Family Androctonoides.

Buthus, *Leach.*—afer (N. I.), megacephalus, Caesar, *Koch*: spinifer, 
*Ehr*.

Family Pandinoides.


**VI.—THELYPHONIDEA.**

Family Thelyphonides.

Thelyphonus, *Latr.*—angustus [=proscorpio, *Latr.*], (Ben.), *Lucas*; 
indicus, scabrinus, assamensis [=rufimanus, *Lucas*?], Beddomei (W. Ben.), *Stol.*: cau-
datus (Ben. Mad.), *Linn*.

Family Phrynides.

Phrynus, *Oliv.*—Whitei (Ben.), *Gerv.*: marginemaculatus, nigrimanus, *Koch*. 
VII.—Araneidea.

Family Lycosidae.


Dolomedes, *Latr.*—longimanus (Cal.), *Stol.*

Family Sphasides.


Family Salticidae.

Salticus, *Latr.*—biguttatus (N. I.), candidus (N. 1.), *Black.*

Family Thomisidae.


Family Drassidae.

Gnaphosa, *Latr.*—Harpax (Bom.), *Camb.*


Cheiracanthium, *Koch.*—ornatum, insigne, vorax, indicum, (Bom.), *Cambridge.*

Clubiona, *Latr.*—flicata, drassodes (Bom.), *Camb.*

Family Agelenides.


Family Dictynides.

Eresus, *Walck.*—tibialis (Mad.), *Camb.*

Family Scytodidae.

Scytodes, *Latr.*—propinqua (Cal.), *Stol.*

Family Pholcidae.


Family Therididae.


Argyrodes, *Sim.*—fassifrous, procrastinans (Bom.), *Camb.*
Family Epetrides.

Epeïra, Walck.—chrysogaster, malabariensis, Walck.: stellata, (Cal.), mammillaris (As.), braminica (Cal.), hirsutula (Cal.), Stol.

Tetragnatha, Walck.—bengalensis, Walck.: iridescens (Cal.), Stol.: decorata, Black: culta, argentata, Camb.

Nephila, Leach.—angustata (Cal. As.), cicatrosa (Cal.), Stol.: ornata, Black.

Meta, Keyser.—gracilis (Cal.), Stol.

Family Gasteracanthides.

Gasteracantha, Latr.—arcuata, Walck.: Helva, frontalis, Black: canningensis (Cal.), Stol.

References.


Thorell.—On the classification of Scorpions. An. Mag., N. H., 4th Ser., XVII., I.


Stoliczka.—Indian Arachnoides, J. A. S. Ben., XXXVIII., II., 201: XLII., II., 126.


INSECTA—Insects.

There is no class of animals on which more has been written than insects and none of which the Indian species are so little known to the general public. Whether we regard the position of insects in nature from a purely scientific point of view or their uses in the arts and the influence exercised by them over the products of nature most valuable to man from an economic stand-point, the importance of a correct knowledge of their life-history and habits is equally established.
The study of the local insect fauna of the Himalayan districts of the North-Western Provinces is in itself especially to be desired; for the Káli river is not only a political barrier, but also a great natural boundary separating the species proper to the eastern Himalaya and related to the great Malayan fauna from those that belong to the western range with their Palaearctic and African affinities. Moreover, between the swamps of the Taráí on the south and the snowy range there are examples of diverse forms of climate, each with its corresponding flora and fauna. In places, the naturalist may ascend direct from a river bed bearing vegetation common to it and the tropics to the region of perpetual snow with its northern flora. Hence we find along the foot of the hills and far up the deeper valleys an abundance of forms of insect life typical of more tropical climes and well beyond their natural limits. They betray their southern origin in their dwarfed size and soon give place to other types fulfilling the same functions under a different and more suitable form. In addition to this mingling of northern and southern forms there is also an affinity in many genera with the corresponding genera found in Europe and northern Asia and there are several species even identical with those found in Europe, so that we have within a comparatively small field, examples of the fauna of the principal nature-divisions of the old world and a rare opportunity for contributing to the knowledge of the geographical distribution of animals.

It is not, however, to the purely scientific value of a study of the insect fauna of the Kumaon hills that I would call attention, but to the practical uses to which knowledge thus gained may be applied in the every day affairs of life. Apart from the pleasure and profit derived from a properly directed examination of insect phenomena, all really useful work in the same field must possess a systematic basis if for no other reason than that thus alone the observer can communicate the results of his labour to others. The apparently hard names used by entomologists to distinguish species are merely so many tickets to show the place of the insect named in the general scheme of creation and with the place, its affinities and often its habits. It would be impossible to give here a description of every insect, but I have, in the following pages, briefly described the several orders and recorded the principal families and genera belonging to them found.
in India. The materials at my disposal have not allowed me, except in the case of the diurnal Lepidoptera, to separate those found in Kumaon from those only found in other parts of India; but the lists, which are practically the first of their kind for most orders, will aid the student materially by showing what may be looked for. To the forester especially the study of entomology is a necessity, to enable him to prevent the destruction not only of the living trees and young plants in his nurseries but of the timber stored in his depôts. The tea-planter will successfully combat the attacks of the beetle larva that eats the roots of his plants and the 'red spider' that lives on its leaves if he studies their habits. The weevils of wheat, grain, peas, rice, maize and the blight insects that attack the same crops have hitherto had no attention bestowed on them, nor have the insects injurious to domestic animals and human beings been studied with the care to which they are entitled. The economy of the lac insect is not generally known and the life-history of the various species of honey-bee has been but imperfectly investigated. He who shall discover means whereby the injuries caused by white-ants can be prevented and the discomforts due to the attacks of mosquitoes and cattle-flies can be mitigated will have deserved well of his country and indeed of the whole human race.

Both the Greek (entoma) and Latin (insecta) name for the class denote notched animals. Insects have, as a rule, wings and breathe by means of air-tubes which ramify throughout the internal organs. The body is made up of three parts, the head, thorax and abdomen. On the head the oral or buccal apparatus, eyes and antennæ may be distinguished. The oral apparatus consists of six parts, of which four are in pairs and move transversely, whilst two, the upper lip (labrum) and the under lip (labium), move up and down. Of those which move transversely one pair forms the upper jaws or mandibles and the other lower jaws or maxillæ, to the latter of which as well as to the under lip, palpi or feelers are attached. The eyes are either simple or compound. The simple eyes are called ocelli and may be seen behind the larger eyes in bees and wasps, and the compound eyes are large enough, as in the case of dragon-flies, to appear to meet and are composed of six-sided facets often numbering many thousands in a single insect. The antennæ are moveable, jointed
threads attached to the head usually close to the eyes. In masticating insects, like beetles and locusts, the organs of the head are as described, but in sucking insects like butterflies and bugs there are several modifications. The lower jaws in butterflies are converted into a trunk or tongue and the jaws in bugs appear in the form of a rostrum or beak. The thorax in all insects consists of three pieces, the prothorax, mesothorax and metathorax. In four-winged insects one pair of wings are attached to the middle segment and one to the posterior segment, and in two-winged insects the wings are attached to the mesothorax. The majority of insects have six legs, one pair being attached to the lower surface of each segment of the thorax. The legs are divided into the haunch (coxa), trochanter, thigh (femur), shank (tibia) and tarsi or feet, which last consists of several joints varying in different families. As a rule, insects possess wings in the perfect state, but each of the orders contain some apterous forms like the female glowworm and the worker ants and all undergo a metamorphosis more or less complete. From the egg, the larva state is reached, from that the pupa state and then the imago or perfect insect appears. In the beetles, butterflies and flies, the larva differs more from the perfect insect than in the grass-hoppers and bugs, but in all, the larva stage is marked by the entire absence of wings, the pupa stage by the possession of rudimentary wings and the imago stage by perfect wings. There is a marvellous adaptation of the larva to its surroundings, so that many are alike in form of which the perfect insects may belong not only to different families of the same order, but to different orders. The grubs of the flesh-eating Diptera, of the gall-insects belonging to the order Hymenoptera and of the weevils of the order Coleoptera are all of the same description, fat, fleshy, legless, accustomed to live amid their food. Similarly those larvae which live on fresh vegetable juices and those which live on the inner sap of trees closely resemble other larvae of similar habits whose ultimate form places them in different orders. The changes too from the larva to the pupa stage are not always abrupt and well-marked. In many cases they are numerous, each adapted to some change in the life-history of the insect and its surroundings and are so far apparently independent of the ultimate change to the imago stage. These may be called adaptational changes and are accompanied by slight developmental
modifications which gradually bring the pupa state to that of the imago without such sudden alterations in form as are seen in some orders and without any marked cessation of activity. The life-history of any of the grasshoppers compared with that of a butterfly will illustrate this fact. Where great developmental changes take place in the pupa state there is a period of quiescence and a considerable shortening of the time within which the change is effected. The duration of life in one stage has much apparent connection with the length of time passed in others. Where the larva state continues for some years as in the case of many beetles, the perfect insect lives but a short time in comparison with others where the change occurs sooner. Some moths and flies live but a few hours, others many months and some species of ants for several years.

Enough has been said in the way of introduction, and I shall now proceed to give a list of the Indian species of each order. The names are taken from all the recognised authorities that I have been able to consult, but it is to be clearly understood that these lists are not to be considered exhaustive or to contain the latest arrangements and terminology of each order. They are the essence of notes made from time to time and are intended to serve as an indication of the families, genera and species that they may be looked for. It is not yet time for any one to undertake a systematic survey of the hitherto known Indian insects, except perhaps the diurnal Lepidoptera, since they comprise a number of species which have been described by writers who have held very different systematic views and who have in many instances given very misleading or imperfect descriptions. The only course left open to those who desire to place the study of our magnificent insect fauna on a better footing is to endeavour to complete the lists of described species and elucidate their synonymy and then survey each order, family and genus in detail, and correct the errors that have been made. I need not say that this is a work which can only be done by many competent labourers working together and taking up section by section and is utterly beyond the power of one.

Insects are distributed amongst the following orders:—


1 The plan adopted for recording 'locality' will be found at page 3.
Orthoptera—locusts, &c. Lepidoptera, butterflies, moths. Strepsiptera, certain parasites.


References.

Kirby and Spence.—Introduction to Entomology. London, 1822.
Duncan.—Transformations of Insects. London (no date).

All the above are practical works, sadly out of date, but containing much that is invaluable. The following are picture books comprising notices of many Indian insects:


COLEOPTERA—Beetles.

The order Coleoptera (sheath-winged) comprises those insects commonly known as beetles. They vary much in form, but all pass through a complete metamorphosis, the larva, pupa and imago stages. The perfect insect is composed of three parts, the head, trunk and abdomen. The head possesses a mouth formed for mastication and furnished with an upper lip (labrum), a lower lip (labium), a pair of mandibles and a pair of maxillae. The labium is composed of two parts, the mentum or chin and the ligula or tongue, and is also furnished with a pair of palpi or feelers, appendages which are also attached to the maxillae (i in figure). Where there are a pair of palpi on each maxilla, the exterior pair never consist of more than four joints, whilst those of the under lip have seldom more than three joints. The head is further furnished with antennæ and eyes (j in figure). The antennæ though varying in form and structure not only in different genera but often in the sexes of the same genus usually have ten or eleven articulations. They are inserted in the anterior portion of the head, a little in front of or below the eyes. The eyes are two in
number and compound and are either entire or divided into two by a horny septum. The thorax is divided into three parts, the prothorax, mesothorax and metathorax. The wings are four in number, of which the anterior pair (elytra: g in figure) are hard and leathery and not used for flight. The posterior pair of wings are membranous and when at rest lie folded closely together beneath the anterior pair. In some species the membranous wings are apparently wanting and, in such cases, the coriaceous pair are soldered together along their inner edge and are immovable. The legs are attached to the lower surface of the thorax, one pair to each division. The elytra are attached to the upper surface of the mesothorax and the membranous wings to the upper surface of the metathorax, a small triangular piece at the base of the elytra is known as the scutellum (h in figure) and is made up of several parts mostly soldered together. The legs are composed of five pieces, a, the haunch or coxa: b, the trochanter; c, the femur or thigh; d, the tibia or shank; e, the tarsus or foot, and f the claw, as shown in the following illustration:—

Fig. 1.
The parts of the mouth are the maxillae (Fig. 2 a), labium (Fig. 2 b), mandibles (Fig. 3 b) and labrum (Fig. 3 a) shown below:

![Fig. 2.](image)

![Fig. 3.](image)

There are several systems of classification, but the one most commonly received bases the broad divisions primarily on the number of joints in the tarsi or feet, and secondly on the habits of the insect or the structure of the antennæ. This system has the disadvantage of bringing together families naturally widely separate and of removing from their natural groups, families closely affined, but on the whole it is the most convenient of all that have been proposed. In the following list, Lacordaire's terminology and arrangements have been followed and his corrections have been observed. The following prospectus of the greater divisions may be accepted:

I. Pentamera—five joints in each tarsus.

1. *Geodephaga*—predaceous land beetles: includes the Cicindelidæ and Carabinae.

2. *Hydrodephaga*—carnivorous water-beetles: includes the Dytiscidæ and Gyrinidæ.


4. *Necrophaga*—scavengers: includes the Paussidæ, Silphidæ, Nitidulidæ, Trogositidæ, Colydiidæ, Cucujidæ and Dermestidæ.
5. **Brachelytra**—short elytra: includes the Staphylinidae.

6. **Clavicornes**—clubbed antennae: includes the Histeridae.

7. **Lamellicornes**—leaved antennae: includes the Lucanidae, Copridae, Aphodiidae, Orphniidae, Hybosoridae, Geotrupidae, Passalidae, Melolonthidae, Rutelidae, Dynastidae, Cetoniidae.

8. **Serricornes**—elongate filiform antennae: includes the Buprestidæ, Eucnemidæ, Elateridæ, Malacodermidæ, Ptiniidæ and Cleridæ.

II. **Heteromera**—posterior pair of tarsi, 4-jointed, rest 5-jointed.

1. **Trachelia**—head triangular and connected with the thorax by a neck: includes the Lagridæ, Pedilidæ, Anthicidæ, Pyrochroidæ, Mordellidæ, Rhyprophoridae, Meloidæ.

2. **Atrachelia**—having no distinct neck; includes the Tenebrionidæ, Cistelidæ.

III. **Pseudo-tetramera**—apparently 4-jointed throughout.

1. **Rynchophora**—having a beak or rostrum like the weevils: includes the Bruchidæ, Curculionidæ.

2. **Longicornæ**—having long horns or antennæ: includes the Prionidæ, Cerambycidae, Lamiidæ.

3. **Phytophaga**—having neither the beak of the first or the long antennæ of the second group: includes the Crioceridæ, Gallerucidæ, Cassididæ, Chrysomelidæ.

IV. **Pseudo-trimera**—apparently 3-jointed.

This section includes a single group comprising the Coccinellidæ, Erotylidae, &c.

A good authority estimates the number of known species of beetles at 70,000, and these are probably not more than half the total number in existence.

Before proceeding with the list we shall briefly note the principal families that have been recorded from India in the same order as that given above. The first of the Pentamerous group is the family Cicindelidæ or tiger-beetles, which are well represented in India by the species of the genus Cicindela. They are remarkable
for their bright metallic colours and active habits and frequent dry sandy soils. Their larvæ inhabit holes in the earth, the entrance to which is closed by the insect’s head as it lies in wait for its prey. They are very voracious and quarrelsome and undergo the change to the pupa state in their cells. A species of Collyris is common in the highlands near Mhow. The next family comprises the Carabidæ which are especially numerous in species and individuals in India. The species of the genus Brachinus belonging to this family are remarkable for secreting in the abdomen a caustic liquor of an exceedingly penetrating odour which they discharge when alarmed and which produces a detonating sound whence their vulgar name ‘Bombardier-beetles’ is derived. A similar phenomenon has been observed amongst the Indian Paussidæ. The beetles of the genus Calosoma are of a bright rich colour, but most of the family are clad in black or sober brown. Siagona and other genera are found in the nests of white-ants and Casonia is very common in Central India. The entire family conceal themselves in the earth under stones or the bark of trees and are known as ground-beetles. The section Hydrodephaga includes the predacious water-beetles which have the body oval and somewhat depressed in form and the posterior four legs adapted for swimming. They pass the first and the last stage of their existence in placid water and are very voracious in their habits, attacking even the small fry of fish. They breathe by means of tracheæ, and for this purpose they rise to the surface of the water and admit the air beneath their wing-cases. In the dusk of the evening they change their quarters from one jheel or marsh to another. The Gyrinidæ or whirligigs differ from the Dytiscidæ or diving-beetles in having the antennæ short or stout and so attached to the head as to resemble ears. The Philhydrida have not been closely examined in India. They are amphibious in their habits and are found on the banks of stagnant pools where they live on decaying animal and vegetable matter.

The Necrophaga or scavengers include the Paussidæ, which are well represented in upper India. Like the beetles of the genus Brachinus they have the power, on being alarmed, to emit from the last section of the abdomen a very acrid liquid having an acid reaction which when it
comes in contact with the air turns into smoke with a considerable explosion. Captain Boyes has given an account\(^1\) of this phenomenon in some species (\(P. \) Fichtelii and others) captured by him near Benares and Almora. The \(Silphidae\) or shield-beetles are the sexton-beetles of India and are well known from their habits of excavating the earth below the dead body of a bird, rat or other small animal which they afterwards cover with loose soil and so secure it to provide food for their larvae. They have been seen to completely bury the body of a crow in a few hours and are found all over the plains. The females lay their eggs in the dead body and when the larvae appear, their food is around them. The perfect insects frequently emit a fetid odour and when alarmed discharge a thick and dark-coloured liquid from their bodies. The \(Nitidulidae\) are also found in carrion, but many species occur on flowers, in fungi and beneath the bark of trees. The \(Trogositidae\) are found in the larva state in grain and the \(Cucujidae\) live beneath the bark of trees. The \(Dermentes lardarius\) or bacon-beetle of Europe has been found in Nepál and derives its English name from its fondness for lard, but it does not disdain to feed on skins. It is a minute insect with a long body and 10-jointed antennæ and with the bases of the elytra fawn-coloured and marked with three dark spots.

The great family \(Staphylinidae\) belongs to the section \(Brachelytra\) so called because the wing-cases do not cover the whole of the upper surface of the abdomen, and in consequence the skin of the upper surface where exposed is firm and coriaceous contrary to the general rule. The terminal segment of the abdomen is furnished with two vesicles which are protruded at will and emit an acrid and sometimes fetid vapour. They feed principally on decaying vegetable matter, fungi and rotten timber and do no injury to living trees. Many of them are of minute size and difficult to collect and identify. The \(Histeridae\) form a section of the \(Clavicornes\) or beetles possessing clubbed antennæ and with the \(Byrrhidae\) or pill-beetles are distinguished by their habit of rolling themselves into the form of a pill and feigning death when alarmed. They feed on decaying vegetable matter, the dung of herbivorous animals and rotten wood. The larvae have the same habits and are distinguished by a scaly head

\(^1\) J. A. S. Ben., XII., 421.
of a reddish brown colour and a yellowish white, smooth, soft, thin body.

The Lamellicornes comprise a vast assemblage of beetles which prey chiefly on living vegetable tissues. The antennae usually end in a club or mass consisting of three joints expanded in the form of thinnish plates or leaves disposed in various ways. Some have the appearance of the spokes of a fan, others the leaves of a book or the teeth of a comb or a series of funnels placed above and within each other. The larvae are furnished with six feet, strong mandibles and are divided into twelve segments. They often remain in the larval stage for several years and protect themselves by a cocoon before entering on the pupa state. They comprise amongst them some of the most common and determined enemies of the forester. The great stag-beetle (Lucanus) must be familiar to all visitors to our hill-stations where they are found dead in all the forest-walks about the middle of the rains, having survived only to fulfil their duty in propagating their species. There is hardly one in ten of the oak trees around the settlement at Naini Tal that is not infested by their larvae who remain in that state for at least two or three years. The males are distinguished from the females by the abnormally developed mandibles, somewhat resembling the antlers of a stag and hence their name. The larvae, as already described, are furnished with powerful jaws with which they gnaw the wood into a kind of dust. From this they form cells in the wood in which they undergo the change into the pupa state. Each bores deeply into the tree; cutting channels for itself parallel to the length of the stem up and down. These channels are connected by cross chambers one with another and a portion of the refuse is ejected from the orifice forming the entrance and always shows the presence of the insect within. The Lamellicornes are at the same time the most brilliantly coloured of all the Indian insects. L. multidensatus is of a most beautiful metallic chestnut colour all over its body, and L. Gasella is the type of a section in which the thorax is black and the prominent colour of the elytra is a deep nutty brown. The Lucanidae are common throughout the hills, but do not appear to be found in the plains.

The Ateuchus sacer, or sacred scarabæus of Egypt, belongs to the family Copridae, of which there are numerous representatives in India.
A. sanctus of India is in form and colour much the same as the Egyptian sacred beetle. The members of this family are called dung-beetles from the female laying her eggs in a small pellet of dung which she then with the assistance of the male rolls about and pats until it assumes a spherical form. She next excavates a hole in the ground and having rolled the dung-pellet containing her egg into it, carefully covers up the orifice and there the young undergo their metamorphosis. The genus Onthophagus contains some beautiful species of a small size and brilliant colour, and Boyes has noted that he has taken one species (O. igneus) only in the bodies of dead snakes. The females of the family Aphodiidae are not so careful about the future of their young, but simply lay their eggs in the dung that is to form the food of their larvae. The Orphnidae affect sandy places and the Geotrupidae are always found near dung. The females of the latter group burrow through the droppings into the ground and there deposit some of the dung and on it an egg, then another layer of dung and an egg until the chamber is filled. The larvae are oval, fleshy, legless maggots and feed on the dung provided for them. Stoliczka notes that no species of the Passalidae is as yet known from the Himalaya west of Nepál or from any part of Central India or the Panjáb.

The Melolonthidae comprise many beetles for the most part of a brown or sober colour that live on vegetable substances through the whole of their existence. In many species the larvae remain in that state for three or four years and the perfect insects exist only for a week or two and perish so soon as the female has placed her eggs in a place of safety. The female selects for this purpose a spot near the foot of a tree and there digs a hole and lays her eggs. The larvae are soft, elongated, of a dirty white or yellowish colour, provided with six short scaly feet, five-jointed antennae and a scaly head. During the hot weather they devour greedily all vegetable substances near them, and so soon as the winter commences they descend into the earth again and hibernate. In Dehra Dún their ravages were successfully combated by digging up the soil around each plant and collecting the beetles in baskets destroy them by boiling water. This plan soon cleared the plantation of the pest. The magnificent Euchirus belongs to this family and has been taken in the Kúlí valley. The upper side of the body is of a
brilliant metallic green, tinged with copper and strongly punctured: the elytra are nearly black, with a brassy tinge and with numerous bright fulvous spots of irregular form which are so disposed as to form four or five longitudinal lines on each wing-cover. The rhinoceros beetle (E. Hardwickii) found near Almora belongs to the Dynastidae as well as the genus Oryctes which affects the decaying trunks of the date-palm. To the Rose-beetles belongs the beautiful Jumna Roylei of Royle’s ‘Himálaya’ found near Mussoorie. It feeds on the flowers and tender tissues of plants and is amongst the most remarkable of the forms found in the local fauna.

To the Serricornes belong the magnificent metallic beetles known as Buprestidae. Nothing can exceed the beauty of their appearance, green and gold adorned with rubies, emeralds and diamonds as they flash about in the sun. Their elytra are used for ornamenting dresses and sell for about two rupees per mille. The Buprestidae pass their larval state in the heart of timber trees and must be reckoned amongst the enemies of the forester. The larva of one species after maturity bores into felled logs of sal to the depth of from two to three inches, forming a diamond-shaped orifice and in such numbers as to make the timber useless afterwards. It undergoes its change to the pupa state in the timber and there remains until the metamorphosis is complete. Mr. Thompson has found a khair tree (A. Catechu) killed by this insect which also attacks the sal (S. robusta) and mango. A small Buprestis of a shining olive colour with yellowish-white spots is frequently found in the timber of the Finus longisfolia and when numerous, its larva render a log quite unfit for beams as their borings are frequently to a great depth. The mode usually adopted to protect felled timber from the attacks of these insects is to remove the bark as soon after the log is felled as possible and if already infested to immerse the log in water for a few days. The perfect insect deposits her eggs in the bark and when they have hatched, the larva make their way into the timber. The removal of the bark renders the log unfit for the purpose of hatching eggs and if the larva have already settled in the heartwood, they perish by immersion in water from want of air. Westwood has figured the beautiful specimen of the Eucnemidæ recorded
in the list under that family. It is of a violet blue colour and typically represents the sub-division of the Serricornes known as Sieracisi which are characterised by the solid form of the body and by the middle portion of the thorax being elongated and advanced so far as below the mouth. The mesothorax is further usually marked by a groove on each side in which the short antennæ are lodged. The Elateridae or springers are well represented in the hills where the brilliant metallic green elytra of Campsosternus Stephensii are collected for embroidery. The family Malacodermindae includes the genus Lampyrus, in which the species called jaganu in the vernacular emits a phosphorescent light from the lower segments of the abdomen.

The brilliant blue Necrobia violacea belonging to the family Cle-ridae is found in Europe as well as in India and is a carrion feeder. The beetles of the family Ptinidae are remarkable for their persistence in feigning death when alarmed, so that even when maimed and roasted at a fire they do not stir a limb. The genus Anobium which furnishes the death-tick belongs to this family and gives us several representatives amongst the wood-borers in India. In Europe we have also Scolytus destructor which makes its burrows in the bark of the elm and Tomicus typographus which marks the fir and pine.

In India the representatives of all three genera are known commonly under the name gūn, of which species attack and bore into all felled timber and bambus and even into the hard heartwood of the hill oak and filled oaken casks of beer and water. The white wood of the sāl (Shorea robusta) suffers much from the same insects and frequently rafters made of immature sāl saplings fall to pieces from their attacks and pine beams are so completely hollowed out that nothing but the shell remains. Another species allied
to *Anobium* bores pine logs to the depth of a foot, but only when
the bark is left on them after being felled. Another attacks the
bambu, and there are few bambus of any age without the fine holes
made by these small insects for entrance to their feeding ground.
Cheroots, books and furniture are equally liable to their attacks, and
even the painted Bareilly-made and Dehli-made furniture fall to
pieces, pierced and eaten by numerous minute beetles of this
family.

The larvae of *Anobium* are short and soft and are provided with
six feet and a hard scaly head and the mouth is furnished with two
very strong jaws by which it pierces the hardest wood. The larvae
of *Bostrichus* (*Apate*), another lignivorous genus, are usually curved
into an arch composed of twelve distinct rings and provided with
scaly feet. They also possess a scaly head and are furnished with
strong, gnawing jaws. They undergo the transition to the pupa and
perfect state in the wood and only leave it to perpetuate their race.
The dust seen at the mouth of and around the holes that mark the
presence of these insects is simply the substance of the wood passed
out by them in the form of excrement. As they all breathe by
*tracheae*, the simple and only plan for getting rid of them is to
immerse the wood infected in water for a sufficient time to drown
them.

The section Trachelia of Heteromerous beetles includes many
vegetable feeders most of which are minute insects very difficult to identify. Amongst
the *Meloidae* or oil-beetles, which are so named from their possess-
ing the power of discharging an oily fluid from their legs, we
have the several genera to which belong beetles with vesicating
properties known generically as Spanish flies. *Mylabris cichorii*,
Fabr. is common in the south of Europe and India and is officinal
in the Indian Pharmacopoeia. In upper India we have *Meloe trian-thema*, *Cantharis* (*Lytta*) *gigas* and *violacea*, and in Madras,
*Mylabris pustulata* and *puncta*, besides other species in other Pro-
vinces. Larvae of the genus *Cantharis* are said to be parasitical
on the bodies of the Hymenoptera and Diptera. The beetles of
the section *Atrachelia* are distinguished by the absence of a
neck and include the large number arranged under the family
*Tenebrionidae*. Nearly all are terrestrial in their habits and dwell
on the ground under stones, in sandy places or in dark parts of buildings and in old walls. They are usually of a black or ashen colour and from this derive their name. _Blaps_ distinguished by its square and slightly convex thorax frequents the store-room and the genus _Tenebrio_ furnishes the meal-worm of the flour bin.

The beetles comprising the section _Pseudo-tetramera_ possess apparently only four joints in each tarsus, but in most cases there are in reality five joints. They include the great tribes of weevils (_Rhyncophora_) and long-horns (_Longicorncs_), both of which are so destructive to all forms of vegetation living and dead. The _Rhyncophora_ have the front of the head elongated into a rostrum or snout and attack living trees and plants, grain and timber. To this tribe belongs the _Bruchus pisi_ or pea-grub, which deposits its eggs in the tender germ where they are hatched and eventually the pupa stage is reached and the perfect insect departs through a minute hole in the mature pea. The Indian representative, if not identical, has similar habits and attacks peas, beans and gram and the seeds of the timber trees of the same family. A species of this family, very

![Rhynchites Bacchus](image)

common in our forests, has exactly the same habit. This insect lays its eggs in the flower of the _sāl_ and there they hatch and the larva grows with the flower and feeds on the fruit until it is time for it to undergo the change into the pupa state. It then gnaws off the fruit from the stalk and falls with the fruit to the ground, where it eats its way out and buries itself a few inches in the earth to become a pupa and then a perfect insect. Each seed-pod of the _sāl_ often contains two or four larvae of this species. Amongst the
Longicorns we have the *Calandra granaria* which feeds upon wheat, barley (maize), and the like and *Calandra oryza*, the weevil of rice.

*Calandra oryza.*

Both are the makers of the fine holes found in the grains that they attack. The corn-beetle is about an eighth of an inch in length and of a reddish brown colour. The female deposits her eggs on the corn after it has been stored and the larvae bore into the grain and feed on the flour. They undergo their change into the pupa state within the grain and emerge a perfect insect ready to commence the cycle of change afresh. Kiln-drying the grain appears to be the only effective method for getting rid of it.

The long-horns are also known as *Capricornes* or goat-horned from the length and form of their antennae. *Longicornes.*

Their larvae look like stout, elongated white worms and the segments of their bodies are much alike in all. All the segments are a little swollen; the first, however, is the largest and is covered above and below with a leathery plate. They have rudimentary antennae. These larvae live in the trunks and branches of trees and in the cellular structure of some herbaceous plants. Since they never come to the light, they are colourless and have soft integuments, but as they feed upon the wood out of which they form galleries they have very strong jaws and a very stout head. As they do not want to walk much in their galleries they have no legs except in a very rudimentary form; their swollen segments enabling them to climb. This history of the peculiar structure of these larvae presents striking analogies with that of the wood-eating larvae of the Lepidoptera and Hymenoptera and the existence of similar adaptations in very different insects in order to enable them to live under the same conditions of existence is

1 *Duncan. Transf. Ins., 325.*
The strength of the jaws, too, differs according to the density of the tissues of the plant on which the insects live. The abdomen of the female in certain genera is provided with an ovipositor by which she can place her eggs through the crevices of the bark of trees in the interior where they hatch and the larvae find their proper food. The larvae make a cocoon by joining together fragments of wood and bits of vegetable matter with their saliva and within it undergo their transformation into nymphs. A species of *Lamia* attacks the *Acacia*, and it is believed¹ that one of the *Prionidas* furnishes the white-grub of the tea-shrub. The perfect insect makes an incision at the root of a tea bush and there deposits her eggs and the larva as soon as it is hatched bores into the heart of the stem. It then either hollows out the stem upwards or descends to the tap root first and then moves upwards. In either case the bush dies whilst the larva turns into a pupa in the ground below. As a rule these insects attack plants in which the healthy flow of sap has been interrupted by injury either from the hoe or fire. Similarly the species of *Cerambyx* that attacks the *sál* in log only does so when the bark is allowed to remain on it and the living tree only in parts where it has been injured and partial decay has set in. The grubs of this family are known under the vernacular name *makora* in the sub-montane tract and Rohilkhand and are found in the catechu, *tán*, *siu*, *riúni*, mango, pine and even other trees of which the sap possesses a penetrating odour. *Sál* saplings suffer

¹ Thompson.
from another species of _Longicornes_ of which the larva cuts a way for itself in the young soft stem from the root to the highest point it can reach and destroys the young tree. Young trees affected by this grub can be recognized by the heaps of excrementitious matter looking like saw-dust that are expelled by the insect from the aperture forming the opening to its burrow. A minute species does considerable damage to the outer tissues of the wood, beneath the bark in the heart. The _sầnul_ (Bombax malabaricum), _sàngna_ (Moringa pterygosperma) and _sàngra_ (Erythrina suberosa) are subject to the ravages of another species of the _Lamiidas_ of which _Monochamus Roylui_ is a good example. The larva of this insect is very large and Mr. Thompson collected from one log of _sàngna_, forty-three perfect beetles, about a dozen larvae and five or six pupae though the log was not above six feet in length and thirty inches in girth. The _bhaínsh_ (Salix tetrasperma), _dhák_ (Butea frondosa), _jhíngan_ (Odina Wodier) and the cotton-tree are infested by another species of the same family which forms a solid cocoon of a substance resembling lime some sixteenth of an inch in thickness. Enough has been written to show the economical importance of a study of these insects.

The sub-division _Phytophaga_ comprises those pseudo-tetrmerous beetles that have neither a rostrum nor long antennae. They are further distributed into the _Eupoda_ including the _Sagraida_ and _Criocerida_ and the _Cyclida_ containing the _Hispidæ_, _Cassididae_, _Galerucidae_, _Eumolpidae_, _Chrysomelidae_ and _Erotylidae_. The _Sagraida_ are distinguished by the development of the thighs and some of them are most conspicuous for the brilliant colour of their elytra. The _Criocerida_ are small insects remarkable for their handsome form and in some species for their bright colours. Their larvae have soft bodies and protect themselves by covering two-thirds of the upper portions of their bodies with excrementitious matter which in colour and appearance closely resemble the vegetable tissues on which they feed. This they are enabled to do by the position of the anal vent which is placed on the side of the back a little removed from the extremity of the abdomen, so that the excrements are expelled in a line with the body. The larvae of the _Hispidæ_ have a similar habit, and allied to them are the
Cassididae or tortoise beetles, so called from the thorax being more or less semi-circular and covering the head. The last segment of the abdomen of the larvae is furnished with a fork which receives the excrementitious matter designed to cover and protect the soft upper portion of the body. The Chrysomelidae or golden beetles are also leaf-eating insects, many of which are adorned with the most brilliant metallic colours. Their larvae are provided with the two-pronged fork for the fixation of the covering of stercoraceous matter as in the preceding family. To this family belongs the notorious potato-beetle of Colorado (*Doraphora decemlineata*) and to the Galerucidae, the *Haltica nemorum* or turnip fly.

To the last great group having three joints in each tarsus belong the Coccinellidae or lady-birds which are the same in form in India as in Europe. They are amongst the most useful scavengers of the flower garden, their larvae living for the most part on the Aphides or plant lice. They have the power of discharging from the joints of their limbs a yellow fluid which has a disagreeable, penetrating odour. The Endomychidae are chiefly found on fungi in forests and damp places and are numerous in individuals.¹

¹To the student I would recommend Lacordaire's *Coleoptères* with continuation, 12 vols., Paris, 1854-76, as the most comprehensive, most recent and careful of all the works on beetles. From a study of it and the references given in the foot-notes, he will be able to find out for himself where to look for information. I have endeavoured to give some hints in this respect in the references at foot of the list of each family, but it would be beyond the scope of the present work to do more. There is no royal road to the study of Entomology and, as regards Indian insects, the difficulties are very great and are considerably enhanced by the action of writers who think that they advance the interests of science by altering names on some pretence or another and only succeed in disheartening those who are anxious to aid them. Namegrubbing, altering and restoring is that part of the work which is of the least possible practical or mental value. The following works will also be found useful:—


Observationes nonnullae in Coleoptera Indicis Orientalis by Perty, Munich, 1831.

Annulata Javanica by MacLeay and Horsfield. London, 1848.


OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

COLEOPTERA.—Bee tes.

I.—Pentamera: five-jointed.

A.—GEODEPHAGA.

Family Cicindelidae—Tiger-beetles.


(Abrosceelis) tenuipes, upison, longipes, Hope.

(Catoptria) speculifera, Guér.

(Ænictomorpha) analis, Fabr.

Tetracha, West.—euphratica (Cen. I.), Oliv.

Apteroessa, Hope.—gossa (Mad.), Fabr.

Tricondyla, Latr.—connata (=aptera Dej.), Lam.

Collyris, Fabr.—attenuata (Kash.), Redt.: ruficornis flavitarsis, Brullé: maculicollis, Chaud.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. class. Ins. I. 47. 1839.

Family Carabidae—Ground-beetles

Omophron, Latr.—vittatum, pictum, Wied.: maculosum, Chaud.

Nebria, Latr.—Xanthacra (Him.), Chaud.

Carabus, Linn.—lithariophorus (Mus.), Boysii (N. I.), Tatum: Wallichii (As.), Hope: caslimiricus (Kash.), Redt.

Calosoma, Web.—nigrum (As.), Parry: chinense, Kirby: indicum, orientale (Bom.). Hope.

Hexagonia, Kirby—terminata, Kirby.

Trigonodactyla, Dej.—cephalotes, Dej.: proxima, Lap.

Casmonia, Latr.—bimaculata (Kash.), Redt.: fusciennis, Chaud.

Ophionea, Esch.—cyanocephala (Ben.), Fabr.

Drypta, Fabr.—cronipes, Wied.: pallipes, virgata, amabilis, Chaud.: mandibularis, Lap.

Galerita, Fabr.—attelaboides, Fabr.

Omphra, Leach—hirtus, Fabr.: pilosus, stratus, Klug: complanata, Reichs.

Pheropsophus, Sol.—quadripustulatus, stenoderus, amoenus, lisseoderus, lineifrons, Chaud.

Brachinus, Web.—pictus (Bom.), Hope: Girioneri, Eyd.: figuratus, Chaud.

Mastax, Fisch.—histrio, Fabr.: pulchellus, Dej.: longipalpis, Wied.

Calleida, Dej.—Boysii, (N. I.), Chaud.

Cymindis, Latr.—quadrirnaculata (Kash.), Redt.: stigmula, Chaud.

Metabletus, Sch.—obscuroguttatus (—spilotus, Dej.), (Him.), Daft.

Lionychus, Wis.—holosericeus (N. I.), Chaud.

Lebias, Latr.—princeps, Boysii, basalis, Chaud.: stra, Lap. brunnnea, longithorax, Wied.

Promecoptera, Dej.—marginalis (Ben.), Wied.

Tetragonoderus, Dej.—trifasciatus, discopunctatus, Chaud.
Masoreus, Zieg.—orientalis, opaculus, sericenus, pleuronec tus, Dej.
Plochionus, Dej.—nigrolineatus (Ben.), Chaud.
Cata scopus, Kirby.—nitidulus, Lap. Withillii, Hope: elegans, Chaud.

Siagona, Latr.—pubescens (Ben.), Chaud.
Luperca, Lap.—lævigatus (Dec.), Fabr.
Anthia, Web.—orientalis, Hope.
Scapterus, Dej.—Guerinii, Dej.

Clivina, Latr.—memnonia, lobata, Dej.: assamensis, indica, striata, extensicoloris, melanaria, bengalensis, sphi ppista, Putz.


Diaphorosophus, Chaud.—Mellyi (Ben.), Chaud.: concinnus (Ben.), Laf.

Rhopalopalpus, Laf.—pæciloideus (N. I.), Laf.

Chlaenius, Bon.—porcatus, Gory: neelgheriensis, Guér.: janthinus (Kash.), Redt.: flavofemoratus, Lap.: nepalensis, Sykesii (Bom.), Hope.

Hololeius, Laf.—nitidulus, Dej.

Oodes, Bon.—vivens, Wied.: sulcatus, Esch.

Badister, Clairv.—thoracicus, rubidicollis, 5-pustulatus, Wied.

Idiomorphus, Chaud.—Guerinii (N. I.), Chaud.

Pachytrachelus, Chaud.—cribriceps (N. I.), Chaud.

Barysomus, Dej.—Gyllenhalii, semivittatus, Dej.

Harpalus, Latr.—quadriricollis (Kash.), Redt.

Anoplogenias, Chaud.—disco phorus (N. I.), Chaud.

Trigonotoma, Dej.—viridicollis, planicollis, Dej.

Ecooptogenius, Chaud.—maestus (N. I.), Chaud.

Cata dromus, Mach.—tenebrioides, Oliv.

Feronia, Latr.—nepalensis, Hope.

Strigia, Brullé—maxillaris, Brullé.
Sphodrus, Clairv.—indus (Him.), Chaud.
Calathus, Bon.—angustatus (Kash.), Redt.
Euleptus, Klug.—oederus (Him.), Chaud.
Dicranoncus, Chaud.—femoralis (Him.), Chaud.
Callistus, Bon.—coarctatus (N. I.), Laf.
Lasiocera, Dej.—orientalis (N. I.), Chaud.
Bembidium, Latr.—indicum (Him.), Chaud.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins. I., 57, 1839.

Lacordaire.—Spéc. Gén I., 34, 1854. Indian species; Chaudoir, Bull. de
Moscow, 1842-52: Wiedemann Mag. Zool. I., 2, 69; II. 58, 60:
454.

B.—HYDRODEPHAGA.

Family Dytiscidae—Diving-beetles.

Hyphydus, Illig.—lyratus, Swartz.
Hydroporus, Clairv.—quadricostatus (Bom.), Aubé.
Hydrocanthus, Say.—luctuosus, Aubé.
Laccophilus, Leach.—parvulus (Bom.), flexuosus (Mad.), Aubé.
Colymetes, Clairv.—lineatus (Kash.), Redt.
Cybister, Curtis.—limbatus (As.) Fabr.: Guerinii (Nep.), ben-
galensis, indicus, Dejeanii (Mad.), posticus, bisignatus, Aubé: tripunctatus, Oliv.:
comptus, pauperculus, White: bimaculatus (Nep.) Hope: rugulosus (Kash.), Redt.

Hydaticus, Leach.—vittatus, Fabr.: festivus, Ill.: Fabricii,
Macl.: signatipennis, Dejeanii (Mad.)
Aubé.

References.

Erichson.—Genera Dytiscorum. Berlin, 1832.
Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins. I., 95, 1839.
White.—Nomenclature of the Hydrocanthari in the British Museum, 1847.
Lacordaire.—Spéc. Gén., I., 403, 1854.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

Family Gyrinidae—Whirligigs.
Gyrinus, Geoff.—nitidulus, Fabr.: indicus, Aubé.
Orectochilus, Esch.—gangeticus, Wied.: semivestitus (Ben.), Guér.: specularis, Aubé.
Dineutus, Macr.—australia, spinosus (Mad. Nep.), Fabr.: subspinosus, Klug: Comma, Thun.: ciliatus, Forsk.: indicus (Nep.), unidentatus, Aubé.

References.
Lacordaire.—Spéc. Gén., I., 433, and as in preceding.

C.—PHILHYDRIDA.

Family Hydrophilidae—Water-lovers.
Hydrophilus, Geoff.—olivaceus (Mad.), Fabr.: viridiollis (Kash.), cashmiriensis (Kash.), Redt.
Sternocophus, Solier.—ruipes (As.) Fabr.

Family Hydrobiidae.

Family Sphaeridiidae.
Cyclonotum, Erichs.—orbiculare, abdominalis, Fabr.: capense, Dej.

References.
Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins. L., 111, 1859.

D.—NECROPHAGA.

Family Paussidae.
Cerapterus, Sweder.—latipes (Ben.), Swed.
Ceratoderus, West.—bifasciatus (Morad.), Kollar.
Merismoderus, West.—Bensoni (N.-W. P.), West.
Platyrhopalus, West.—denticornis (N.-W. P.) Donor: angustus (Mus.); unicolor; acutidens (Nep.); Mellii (Mad.); suturalis (Mhow); aplustrifer (Ben.) West.: Westwoodii (Ben.), Saund.: intermedius (N. L.), Benson.
HIMALayan DISTRICTS

Paussus, Linn.—pilicornis (Mus.) ; thoracicus (N. I.) ; Fichteli (Ben. Him.), Donov. : nanceras (Him.), phloio-ophorus (Mus.) ; Baconis (N. I.), Benson : tibialis (Ben.) ; Hearseyanus (Bennares) ; Hardwickii (Almora) ; Saundersii (N. I.) ; Boysii (Mhow) ; denticulatus (N. I.) ; cognatus (Ben.) ; fulvus ; Stevensianus (N. I.) ; politus (N. I.) ; rufitarsis (N. I.), Jerdoni, West.

References.


Family Silphidae—Shield-beetles.

Silpha, Linn.—osculans (= Diamesus osculans, Hope), (Ben.), Vigors : chloroptera (= tetraspilota, Hope) (Bom.), Lap. : ioptera (Kash.), Redt.

Apatetica, West.—lebioides (Him.), West.

Catops, Paykull—vestitus (N. I.), Murray.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins. I. 135, 1839 : Cab. Or. Ent. t. 41.

Lacordaire.—Spéc. Général., ii., 192, 1854.

Family Nitidulidae.

Carpophilus, Leach.—obsoletus, Erichs.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. Class. I., 140, 1839.


Murray.—Monograph of the Nitidulidae. 1864.

Family Trogositidae.

Alindria, Erichs.—orientalis (Kash.), Redt.

Melambia, Erichs.—crenicollis (Ben.), Guér.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. Class. I., 145, 1839.

Lacordaire.—Spéc. Général., ii., 332, 1854.

Family Colydiidae.

Meryx, Latr.—rugosa, Latreille.

References.

Lacordaire.—Spéc. Général., ii., 352, 1854.
Family *Cuujidae*.

_Hectarthurum, New._—bistriatum, _Lop._ : heros, rufipesnis, _Fabr._: brevifossum, _New._; depressum, _Smith._

*Ancistria, Erich._—cylindrical, _West._

*Cuujus, Fabr._—bicolor (Nep.), _Smith._

*Laemophilus, Dej._—sanguinolentus (Nep.) _Hope._ : concolor, _obsoletus, Smith._

References.

_Westwood._—Mod. Class. Ins. I. 161, 1839: Cab. Or. Ent. t. 41.

_Smith, F._—List of the *Cuujidae* in the British Museum, 1851.

_Lacordaire._—Spéc. Gén. II., 300, 1854.

Family *Dermestidae*.

*Dermestes, Linn._—lardarius (bacon-beetle, Nepal), _Linn._: cadaverinus, _Fabr._

_E._—**BRACHELYTRA**.

Family *Staphylinidae*.

*Myrmedonia, Erich._—ochraceus (Him.), _Hope._

*Tachinus, Graven._—melanarius (Ben.), _Erich._

*Platyprosopus, Mann._—tamulus (Mad.), _fuliginosus (Bea.) Erich._

*Palestrinus, Erich._—Sykesii, mutillarius (Ben.), _Erich._

*Caranistes, Erich._—*Westermanii* (Ben.), _Erich._

*Staphylinus, Linn._—cinctus (Kash.), _Redt._

References.


_Lacordaire._—Spéc. Gén. II. 17, 1854.

_F._—**CLAVICORNES**.

Family *Histeridae*—Mimic-beetles.

*Platysoma, Leach._—atrum (Ben.), _Er._

*Hister, Linn._—bipustulatus, _Fabr._: orientalis, _Payk._: distortus, _Ill._: punctulatus, bengalensis, _Wied._: melanarius, pullatus, coracinus, _avola, lutarium, Er._ parallelus (Kash.), _Redt._

*Notodoma, de Mars._—globatum (Mad.), _Mara._
Cypturus, *Erich.*—*senscens* (Ben.), *Erich.*


References.

*Westwood.*—Mod. Class., Ins., I. 181, 1839.


G.—LAMELLICORNES.

Family *Lucanidae*—Stag-beetles.

*Lucanus, Fabr.*—lunifer [=Lama, Burm.: var. *ξ* = villosus, *Hope*], (Him.); Cantori (As.); Forsteri, (As.); MacClellandii (As.); Buddha (As.); Brahminus (As.); Rafflesii (As.); Mearesii [*♀* = nigripes, *Hope*], (As.); Parryi [*♀* = serricollis, *Hope*], (As.); Baladeva (As.); platycephalus (As.); *Hope*: Gazella [*♀* = Delesserti, Guér. and *ξ* = Cuvera, Prinsepii, Burmeisteri (Mad.), castanopterus (Nep.), *Hope*], (Nep.), *Fabr.*: multidentatus (As.), inquinatus, Jenkinsii (As.), strigiceps (Him.), *West.*: bicolor (Nep.), *Oliv.*: carinatus (*ξ* = alces *Oliv.*: var. *ξ* = dux, *West.*; camelus, *Oliv.*), Linn.

*Dorcus, MacL.*—nepalensis [var. *ξ* = similis, *Hope*; Chevrolatii, *Chenu*; Parryi, *Hope*], (Nep.); Rafflesii (As.); MacLeayii: Spenceii, (As.): bulbosus (As.); bengalensis; curvidens, (As.); paralelous; Eschschtoltzii; lineato-punctatus Blanchardi (As.); Tityus (As.); astacoides; (As.); foveatus (As.); Westermannii (As.); de Hahni (As.); punctilabris (As.); omissus (As.); *Hope*: Giraffa [var. *ξ* = Downesii; Confucius, *Hope*]: Saiga [*ξ* = Reichii, *Hope*; *♀* = vitulus, *Hope*], (As.), *Olivier*: bucephalus [*ξ* = Briareus, *Hope*; *♀* = rugifrons, *Hope*], (As.); bubalus, (As.); *Perty*: cribriceps (molossus, *Hope*), Chevrot.: malabaricus, *West*.

Figulus, *MacL.*—confusus (Him.), *West.*
References.


Lacordaire.—Spéc. Gén. III. 4, 1856.


Family Copridæ—Dung-beetles.

Ateuchus, Weber.—sanctus (Mad.) Fabr.: gangeticus, Brahminus, Lap.: convalescens, costatus, Wied.: devotus (Kash.) Redt.

Sisyphus, Latr.—neglectus, Gory: histus, Weid.: cashmiriensis, Redt.

Gymnopleurus, Ill.—miliaris, cyaneus (Mad.) Leei, Kœnigii (Mad.) granulatus, Hellwigii (Mad.) sinuatus, Fabr.: mundus, exanthema, Wied.: opacus (Kash.) Redt.: Dejeanii, capicola, sumptuosus, indicus, impressus, Lap.

Copris, Geoff.—Sæbes (Mad.), nanus (Mad.), Mídas, capucinus, Bucephalus, orientalis, fricatory, Fabr.: 6-dentata (Kash.), Sacoutala (Kash.), Redt.

Onthophagus, Latr.—Pithecius, seniculus (Mad.), metallicus, pardalis, Pírmal, pygmæus (Mad.), parvulus, Catta (Mad.), bifasciatus (Mad.), dromodarius, 4-dentatus, tarandus, unifasciatus (Mad.), Bonausus, pallipes, Corvus, Ibex, nuchidens (Mad.), Tragus (As.), Antilope, fuscopunctatus, Dama, vitulus, Mopsus, spinifex (Mad.), æneus (Mad.), centricornis (Mad.), unicornis (Mad.), furculus, 4-cornis (Mad.), lævigatus, politus (Mad.), aterrimus pusillus, Fabr.: erectus obtusus, 3-cornis, punctulatus, divisus, ænescens, ramosus, tricerus, lamina, trituber, bicuspis, setosus, hircus, troglodyta, luteipennis, Wied.: igneus, Vigors: suturatus, Germ.: Elliotti (Mad.), imperator, tigrini, Lap.: phanæoides (Him.), Hope: difficilis, Le Gu.: Brama (Kash.), angulatus (Kash.), excavatus (Kash.), Redt.
Oniticellus, Zieg.—Rhadamistus (Mad.) femoratus, cinctus (As.), Fabr.: Diadema, pictus, niger, Wied.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. Class. I., 203, 1839.

Family Aphodiidae.

Aphodius, Ill.—sorex, elongatus, analis, obsoletus, maestus, marginellus (Mad.), atricapillus, impudicus, Fabr.: elegans, All.: diadema, cornutus, discus, rufopustulatus, Wied.: hirtipes (Kash.), gon-agricus (Kash.), Redt.: irregularis (Him.), Hope.

Chatopisthes, West.—fulvus (Him. Cen. I.), West.

Chiron, MacL.—sulcithorax, Perty: digitatus, Fabr.: assamensis, Hope.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins., I., 207, 1839.

Family Orphnidae.

Orphnus, MacL.—bicolor, Fabr.: mysorensis, picinus (Ben.), impressus (Cen. I.), nanus (Cen. I.), West.

Ochodes, Meg.—chrysomelinus, Fabr.: lutescens, pictus, West.

References.


Family Hybosoridae.

Hybosorus, MacL.—orientalis, Hope: Roei, West.

Phaeochrous, Lap.—emarginatus, Lap.: dubius, indicus, West.

References.

Family Geotrupidae—Dor-beetles.

Athyreus, Mac-Leay.—orientalis, Lap.: frontalis (As.), Parry.

Bolboceras, Kirby.—Cyclops (As. Cen. I.) Fabr.: sulcicollis, impressus, Wied.: grandis, Calanus (Bom.), indicus (Cen. I), Hope: ferrugineus, car- enicollis, Lap.: Laportei [= ferrugineus, Lap.], Westwoodii [= furcicollis, West.], Hald.: laevicollis; lateralis (Bom.); capita- tatus (As.); inequalis; bicarinatus; dor- salis; nigriceps; transversalis, West.

Geotrupes, Latr.—orientalis (Him.), Hope.

References.


Family Passalidae.

Ceracupes, Kaup—Austeni (As.), Stol.

Tæniocerus, Kaup—bicuspis (As.), Kaup.

Pleuraarius, Kaup—brachyphyllus (Nil.), Stol.

Leptaulax, Kaup—dentatus, bicolor (As.), Fabr.

Aceraius, Kaup—grandis (As.), Burm.: emarginatus (As.). Fabr.

Basili anus, Kaup—cancr us (As. Nep.), Perch.: neelgheriensis (Nil.), Guér.: Cantoris (As.), Hope: indic us (Nil.), assamensis, Stol.

Passalus, Fabr.—fronticornis (Tib.), West.

References.

Percheron.—Monographie des Passalides, Paris, 1835.


Stoliczka.—On Indian Passalidae. J. A. S. Bon. XLII., ii., 149, 1873.

Family Melolonthidae—Cockchafers.

Serica, MacL.—mutabilis (Mad.), Fabr.: marmorata, umbrina, indica, iridescens, rufocuprea, costigera, ferrugata, brevis, granuligera (Ben.), Blanch.: immutabilis, Schön.: marginella, bimaculata, Hope: ferruginea (Kash.), Redt.
Apolonia, Kirby—rauca (Mad.), ferruginea (Ben.), Fabr.
Ancylonycha, Blanch.—serrata (Mad.), Fabr.: sculpticollis, puberina, longipennis. (Ben.), Reynaudii, Perrottetii, consanguinea, Blanch.: mucida, Schön.:

Schizonycha, Erichs.—ruficollis (Mad.) Fabr.: fuscescens, xanthodera (Ben), Blanch.: cylindrica, Schön.: cribricollis (Kash.), Redt.

Brahmina, Blanch.—Calva (Ben.), comata (Ben.), Blanch.
Anoxia, Lap.—indiana (N. I.), Blanch.
Leucopholis, Blanch.—candida, Oliv.: lepidophora, niveosquamosa, Blanch.

Lepidiota, Hope—bimaculata (= Griffithii, Hope), Saund.: punctatipennis, sticticoptera, rugosipennis, luctuosa, impluviata, Blanch.

Euchirus, Kirby—Mac Leayii (Nep. As.), Hope.: longimanus, Oliv.: Parryi (Darj.), G. Gray.

References.


Family Rutelidae.

Rhinyptia, Dej.—indica, Burm.

Dinorhina, Lac.—orientis, New.

Anomala, Köppe—fraterna (var. pallida, Oliv.), communis, Burm.: dorsalis (Mad.), elata (Mad.), Fabr.: pallidicollis, pallida, rugipennis, bengalensis, testacea, fulgens, striolata, ignicollis, lineatopennis, Duvaucelii, elegans, fulviventra, Blanch.: strigata, Lap.: variocolor, Schön.: ypsilon, Wied.

Euchlora, Mac L.—Dussumieri, cribrata, obsoleta, malabariensis, xanthoptera, Blanch.: grandis, MacLeayana, perplexa, de Hahnii, dimidiata, sulcata, Cantori, aureola, Hope: vittata (Kash.), Redt.
Mimela, Kirby—Leii, Swed.: MacLeayana, Vigors: concolor, heterochropus, pectoralis, fulgidivittata, Blanch: splendens, aurontias, Horsfieldii, chrysoprasis, bicolor, similis, princeps, decipiens, pyroscelis, glabra, Passerinii (Him.), xanthorina, Hope: sapphirina (As.), Parry.

Popilla, Latr.—nitida, cyanea [=concolor, Lap.; var.=berryllina, Hope], minuta, marginicollis, cupricollis [var. formosa, smaragdula, sutural, Hope], virescens, Hope: regina [=splendida, Guér.], nasuta, acuta, rugicollis, mutans, fimbrista, chlorion, Adams, complanata, lucida, difficilis, varia (As.), gemma (As.) Newman: sulcata (Kash.), truncata (Kash.), cashmiriensis, Redt.

Peperonota, West.—Harringtonii (Him.), West.
Parastasia, West.—rufopicta (As.), West.
Didrepanephorus, Wood M.—bifalcifer (As.), Wood-M.
Adorets, Lap.—Boops, Wied.: caliginosus, Burm.: concolor Duvancellei, latifrons, ovalis, pallens, limbatus, Blanch: femoralis, Duf.

Heterophthalmus, Blanch.—ocularis, Blanch.

References.


Family Dynastidae.

Peltonotus, Burm.—morio, Burm.
Horonotus, Burm.—Dædalus, (♂ =xanthus, Oliv.; ♀ = diadema, Oliv.), Fabr.
Phyllognathus, Esch.—Dyonisus (Mad.), Fabr.
Oryctes, Ill.—Rhinoceros, Linn.
Trichogomphus, Burm.—lunicollis, Burm.: Bronchus, Hbst.
Dichodontus, Burm.—coronatus, Burm.
Eupatorus, *Burm.*—Hardwickei (Nep.), Cantori (As.), *Hope.*

Chaloosoma, *Hope.*—Atlas (Him.), Lim.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins. l. 191: Cab. Or. Ent. t. 12.


Family Cetoniidae—Rose-beetles.

Narycius, *Dup.*—opalus (Mad.), *Du pont.*


Diconocephalus, *Hope.*—Wallichii (Nep.), *Hope.*


Heterorhina, *West.*—A (Trigonophorus, *Hope*)—Delessertii (Him.), *Guer.*: gracilipes (Him.), Saundersii (Him.), *West.*: Hardwickei [=nepalensis, *West*], (Him.), *Hope.*


D (DICeros, *G.* et *P.*)—bicornis (As.), *Latr.*: ornata (Mad.), *Burm.*

E (Mystroceros, *Burm.*)—dives, *West.*
Cibeteria, Burm.—guttifera, hilaris (N. I.), spuria, Burm.: con-
finis (N. I.), flavonotata, G. et P.: modesta (Ben.), flavopicta (Ben.), Blasch.: Heareana (Ben.), West.: Klugii (N. I.), spilota (N. I.),
Hope: ducalis (As.): Hoffmeisteri (N. I.),
White: pumila (Ben.), Schm.: corallea, Herbst.

Agestrata, Esch.—chinensis [♀ = Withillii (Bom.), and ♂ = Ge-
gates (Mad.), Hope], Fabr.

Macronota, Wied.—dives [penicillata, Hope; Mearesii, Parry],
(Mad., N. I.); flavomaculata (Mad.); malaba-
riensis (Mad.); elongata (Cal.), replendens
(Ben.), G. et P.: vittigera (Mad.), tetraspilota
(Mad. Púna), stictica (Mya.), Hope: alboguttata
(N. I.), Parry: picta, Guér.: 5-lineata, Hoff.

Bombodes, West.—ursus (Him.), West.

Euryoma, Burm.—viridiobscura (N. I.), Bealise (Ben.), G. et P.:
tricolor, Oliv.: versicolor (N. I.); albopuno-
tata, Fabr.: marginicollis [=Horsfieldii,
Hope; torquata, Fabr.] (Nep. As.), Gory:
bivittata (Tib.), Burm.: Gravenhorstii, Hope:
aurulenta, White.

Anoplochilus, Mac L.—castanopterus (Bom.) Burm.: terrasus,
G. et P.: brunneocupreus, cænusus, argen-
tiferus, West.

Anatoma, Burm.—flavoguttata [stillata, New.] (Him. Bom.); al-
bloguttata (Dec.) Burm.

Chiloloba, Burm.—acuta (Ben.), Wied.

Cetonia, Fabr.—Dalmani (Nep.); ignipes (Nep.); regalis (Bom.);
squamipennis; Burm.: difformis (Ben.); mac-
culata (N. I.), mixta (Ben.), Fabr.: cupripes,
Wied.: alboguttata [Saundersii, Bain.] (In.),
Vigors: flavoguttata (Kash.), Redt.: neglecta
(Nep.), Hope.

Anthracophora, Burm.—atromaculata, Fabr.: Bohemanii, West.:
gracilis (Mad.), White.
Macroma, G. et P.—melanopus [nigripennis, Hope], (As),
Schaum : xanthorhina [bicolor, G. et P.],
(Nep.), Hope.

Centrognathus, Guér.—lugubris, Fabr.

Spilophorus, Schaum.—maculatus [cretoso, Hope], (Púna),
Gory.

Cænochilus, Schaum.—platyrhinus, Sch. : Campbelli (N. I.),
brunneus (N. I.), Saund. : glabrus, West.

Valgus, Scriba.—pygmæus, G. et P. : pictus (Nep.), argillaceus
(Mad.), Hope : podicalis, penicillus, Blanch.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins. I. 221 : Arc. Ent. I. 5, 113, 129 and t. 1, 19,
26-36, 43-46. Cab. Or. Ent. t. 17. Trans. Ent Soc. IV.

White.—Cetomades of the British Museum, 1847.


H.—SERRICORNES.

Family Buprestidae—Metallic-beetles.


Julodis, Esch.—Whithillii, Hope.

Catoxantha. Sol. — bicolor (As.), Fabr. : giganteus (Mad.), Sch. :
cuprascens, (Mad.), Water.

Chrysochroa, Sol.—ignita, Linn. : ocellata, Fabr. : mutabilis,
Oliv. : Edwardsii (As.), Plutus, Hope : assimensis, Guér. : caroli (Mad.), Perr. : Rajah (Bom.), chinensis (As.), pectinicornis (Mad.),

Chalcophora, Sol.—elegans, Fabr. : Blanchardi (Bom.), eximia,
sumptuosa, Sonneratii, smaragdula, aurifera,
Lap. et G.
Latipalpis, Sol.—fastuosa (Nep. Mad.), Fabr.
Pascilonotha, Esch.—gentilis, Lap.: hilaris, White.
Buprestis, Linn.—10–spilota (Nep.), Hope.
Cinyra, Lap.—auricollis, Lap.
Castralia, Lap.—bimaculata, Oliv.
Ptosima, Sol.—amabilis, Lap.
Acmæoderæ, Esch.—aurifera (Dec.), Lap.
Sphenoptera, Sol.—ænea (Mad.) Fabr.
Belionota, Esch.—scutellaris, Fabr.
Coræbus, Lap.—Smeei (Mad.), Lap.: hastanus (Ben.), Sch.: nigropictus, Lap.
Discoderes, Chevr.—fasciatum, Guér.: grisator, Lap.
Agrilus, Curtis.—armatus, Fabr.: cashmiriensis, Redt.
Trachys, Fabr.—indica, Hope.

References.
Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins., I. 223.
Lacordaire.—Spéc. Gén. IV., 1, 1857.
White, A.—Nomenclature of Buprestidæ in the British Museum, 1846.

Family Eucnemidæ.

Galbella, West.—violacea, West.

Reference.
Lacordaire.—Spéc. Gén. IV. 95: Cab. Or. Ent. t. 41.

Family Elateridæ—Springing-beetles.

Agrypnus, Esch.—fusciptæ, luridus (Mad.), Fabr.
Lacon, Germ.—muticus, Herbst: brachychæptus (Kash.), Redt.
Alaus, Esch.—mæreæ, sculptus (As.), West.: irroratus (As.), Parry.

Campsoesternus, Latr.—Delessertii (Nil.), Guér.: violatus (Ben.), foveolatus (Mad.), Germ.: Cantorii (As.), Wilsoni (Mad.), Duponti (Mad.), Stephensii (Nep.), amaragdinus (Mad.), Hope: Dohrnii (As.), West.

Oxynopterus, Hope.—Audouini, Hope.
Pectocera, Hope.—Mellii (Simla), Cantorii (As.), Hope.
Pachyderes, Latr.—ruficollis (Ben.), Guér.
Elatér, Linn.—cyanopterus (Garhwál), Hope.
Cardiophorus, Erch.—vicinus (Kash.), consentaneus (Kash., Redt.)
Penia, Lap.—Eschscholtzii (Nep.), Hope.
Corymbites, Latr.—fuscipennis (Ben.), Blanch.: viridis, Germ.
Plectrosternus, Lac.—rufus, Latr.

References.
Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins. I. 225 : Cab. Or. Ent. t.35.

Family Lycidae.

Macrolycus, Waterh.—Bowringii (All.), Waterhouse.
Calochromus, Guérin.—orbatus (As.), rugatus (All.), ruber (All.), tarsalis (In.), Waterh. : apicalis (Nep.), Hope.

Lycostomus, Motsch.—similis (In.), Hope : modestus (As.), ambiguous (As.), singularis (Mad.), striatus (In.), thoracicus (In.), Waterh. : analis (In.), Dalm.

Plateros, Bourg.—fuscipennis (As.), carbonarius (In.), Waterh.

Xylobanus, Waterh.—foveatus (In.), Waterh.

Metriorrhynchus, Guér.—sericans (In.), Waterh. : lineatus (N.I.), Hope.

Conderis, Waterh.—major (N. I.), Waterh.

References.
Waterhouse.—Types of Coleoptera British Museum, 1879.

Family Malacodermidae.

Lyropæus, Water.—biguttatus (Mal.), Water.
Ditoneces, Walk.—obscurus (Mal.), Water.
Lamprigera, Motsch.—nepalensis (Ben.), Hope.
Lampyris, Geoff.—marginella (Ben.), Hope.
Luciola, Lap.—vittata, Lap.

Tylocerus, Dalm.—bimaculatus (Mus.), Hope.
Telephorus, Schaeff.—mélanocephala (Ben.), Fabr. : nepalensis, Hope : cœruleomaculata (Kash.), Redt.
Selasia, *Lap.*—decipiens (Ben.), *Guér.*
Eugensis, *West.*—palpator (Cal.), *West.*
Dodecatoma, *West.*—bicolor (Dec.), *West.*
Agalochrus, *Erichs.*—leptus (Ben.), *Fabr.*
Prionocerus, *Perty.*—cœruleipennis, *Perty.*

References.
Westwood.—*Mod. Class. Ins. I.* 261, 1839.

Family *Ptinidae.*


References.

Family *Cleridae.*

Opilus, *Latr.*—subfasciatus (Ben.), castaneipennis (Ben.), unicolor, *White.*
Tillicera, *Spin.*—mutillaceolor (N. I.), *White.*
Stigmatium, *Gray.*—rufiventris (As.), *West.*
Tenerus, *Lap.*—signaticollis (Cen. In.), *Lap.*
Opetiopalpus, *Spin.*—obesus (N. I.), *White.*

References.
Westwood.—*Mod. Class. Ins. I.* 261, 1839.
White, A.—*List of the Clerids in the British Museum,* 1848.
II.—HETEROMERA.

A.—TRACHELIA.

Family Lagriidae.

Lagria, Fabr.—aurea (Kash.), variabilis (Kash.), bicolor (Kash.), Redt.

Family Pedilidae.

Macratria, New.—Helferi, concolor, nigella (Ben.), De la Ferte.

Family Anticiidae.


Leptaleus, De la Ferte—delicatulus, De la F.

Mecynotarsus, De la Ferte—nanus (Ben.), nigrozonatus, fragi-lis, De la F.

Octhenomus, Schm.—indicus, De la F.

Family Pyrochroidae.

Pyrochroa, Geoff.—longa, Perry.

Family Mordellidae.

Mordella, Linn.—tricolor, Wied.

Family Rhipiphoridae.

Emenadia, Lap.—bipunctatus [=apicalis, Hope] (Garhwal); pusillus, Fabr.

Family Meloidae—Oil-beetles.

Mylabris, Fabr.—Jacquemontii (Kash.), Redt.: pustulata, puncta (Mad.) Collas: indica, Fuss.: humeralis, proxima, orientalis, Dej. cichorii (In.), Fabr.

Cantharis, Geoff.—œaulea (Ben.), Leuck.: ruficollis, testacea, Fabr.: ruficeps, Ill.: rubriceps (Kash.), limba-ta (Kash.), Redt.: Actæon, Rouxi, ornata, picta, Lap.: nipalensis, assamensis, violacea, gigas, Dej.

Sybaris, Steph.—præustus (Kash.), tunicatus (Kash.), semivitta-tus (Kash.), Redt.

Zonitis, Fabr.—pallida, Fabr.

Onyctemis, Lap.—Sonnerati, Lap.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

References.
Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins., I., 286-308, 1859.

B—ATRACHELIA.

Family Tenebrionidae.

Microdera, Esch.—coromandelensis (Mad.), Solier.
Hyperops, Esch.—unicolor (Ben.), Herbst: indicus, striatopunctatus, Wied.: coromandelensis (Mad.), Solier.
Stenosida, Solier—tenuicollis, Solier.
Himatismus, Erichs.—fasciculatus, Fabr.
Blaps, Fabr.—orientalis (Ben.), spathulata (Ben.), punctatostrigata (Ben.), Solier.
Platynotus, Fabr.—striata (Mad.) excavata (Mad.) Fabr.: punctatipennis, Deyrollei, perforatus, Muls.
Pseudoblaps, Guér.—crenatus (Mad.) nigratus, Fabr.: Melii, ambiguus, parallelus, strigipennis, polinieri (Mad.), Muls.: javanus, Wied.: arcuatus, St. Farg.: Westermanni, Mann.

Scleron, Hope—latipes, Guér.
Opatrum, Fabr.—elongatum, Guér.
Bolitophagus, Ill.—elongatus, Perty.
Hemicera, Lap.—splendens, Wied.
Uloma, Meg.—orientalis, Lap.
Latheticus, Water.—oryzæ (Cal.), Water.
Toxicum, Latr.—quadricornis, Fabr.: Richesianum, Latr.
Cossyphus, Oliv.—depressus, Oliv.: Edwardsii, Lac.
Polposipus, Sol.—herculeanus (Ben.), Sol.
Lyprops, Hope—chrysophthalmus (Ben.), Hope: indicus (Ben.), Wied.

Scotæus, Hope—splendens (As.), Dej.
Strongylium, Kirby—rufipenne (Kash.), Redt.
Phymatosoma, Lap.—tuberculatum (Ben.), Lap.
Cyriogeton, Pascoe—insignis (As.), Pascoe.


**References.**

*Westwood.*—Mod. Class. Ins., i., 316. 1838.

*Lacordaire.—Spéc. Gén., V., i., 1859.


**Family Cistelidae.**

*Allecula, Fabr.*—fusiformis, elegans, *Walker.*

**References.**

*Westwood.*—Mod. Class. Ins., i., 309, 1839.

*Lacordaire.—Spéc. Gén., V., 490, 1859.

**III.—PSEUDO-TETRAMERA.**

**A.—RHYNCOPHORA.**

**Family Brenthisae.**

*Prophthalimus, Pasco.* sanguinalis, *Pasco.*

**Family Curculionidae—Weevils.**


*Cneorhinus, Scho.*—pictus (Kash.), lituratus, obscurus (Kash.), *Redt.*

*Catapionus, Scho.*—basilicus (N. I.), *Scho.*

*Atmetonychus, Scho.*—peregrinus (Ben.): inaequalis (Ben.), *Scho.*

*Piazzomias, Scho.*—acutipennis (Nil.); *Perottetii* (Nil.); prasinus (Nil.); *himalayanus, assamensis, Scho.*: globulicollis (Kash.); angustatus (Kash.), *Redt.*


*Polycleæs, Scho.*—parcus (Ben.), *Sch.*

*Hypomeces, Scho.*—rusticus, sparsus, curtus, *Sch.*: pollinosus (Kash.), *Redt.*

*Deræodus, Scho.*—denticolis, *Sch.*

*Crătopus, Scho.*—marmoreus, *Sch.*


*Episomus, Scho.*—indicus, *Sch.*

*Orias, Scho.*—crinitus (Kash.), *Redt.*

*Phyllobius, Germ.*—jucundus (Kash.), *Redt.*

*Macrocorynus, Scho.*—discoideus, *Oliv.*

*Drepanoderes, Water.*—viridifasciatus (N. I.), fuscus (N. I.), *Water.*
Arhines, *Scho.*—languidus (Ben.), *Scho.*
Cyphicerus, *Scho.*—9-lineatus (Ben.): passerinus (Ben.), *Oliv.*
Platytraobulus, *Scho.*—pistacinus (Ben.), *Sch.*
Amblyrhinus, *Scho.*—poricollis, *Sch.*
Acanthotraobulus, *Scho.*—ventricosus (Nll.), *Sch.*
Phytoscaphus, *Scho.*—nepalensis, inductus, chloroticus, limabundus, *Sch.*
Lirus, *Fabr.*—octoguttatus (Kash.); fasciatus (Kash.), *Redt.*
Peribleptus, *Scho.*—sculptus (Him.), *Sch.*
Paramecope, *Scho.*—farinosus, (Ben.), *Wied.*
Attelabus, *Linn.*—octomaculatus (Mad.), *Jekel.*: melanurus, bispinosus, discolor, *Sch.*
Dicranognathus, *Redt.*—nebulosus (Kash.), *Redt.*

References.

*Westwood.*—Mod. Class. 1. 324, 328, 1839.

*Schoenherr.*—Genera et species Curculionidum. Paris, 1833-45. This appeared in eight volumes and contains 7,147 species; there is a supplement to the last volume, and a second supplement was published at Stockholm in 1847 and illustrations by Imhoff and Labram of part at Basle, 1848-52.

*Pascoe.*—Descriptions of new species, chiefly Australian. An Mag. N. H. 4th Ser., Vol. 7 to 20: J. Linn. Soc. X. 434; XI. 164, 440; XII.
Family *Trictenotomidae*.

**Autocrates,** Thoms.—*mnea* (Him.), Parry.

**Trictenotoma,** Gray—Childreni (Him.), *West.*: Grayii (Mad.), Smith.

*References.*

*Westwood.*—*Cab. Or. Ent.* i. 28.

*Lacordaire.*—*Spéc. Gén.,* VIII., 1. 1869.

**B.—LONGICORNES.**

Family *Prionidae*.

**Cantharocnemis,** Serv.—Downesii (Ben.), Pascoe.

**Cyrtognathus,** Fall.—indicus (Var. Hugelii, Redt.), (As. Him. Kash.), Hope: Walkeri (N. I.), Water..: grannulosus, Thoms.

**Dorysthenes,** Vigors.—rostratus, Fabr.: montanus, Guér.

**Dissosternus,** Hope—Pertii (Dec.), Hope.

**Ancyloprotus,** White—bigibbosus (As.), White.

**Prionomma,** White—orientalis (Mad.), Oliv.

**Priotyrranus,** Thoms.—mordax (N. I.), White.

**Logœus,** Water—subopacus (Mad.), Waterhouse.

**Acanthophorus,** Serv.—serraticornis, Oliv.

**Opheltcs,** Thoms.—obesus; Thomson.

**Buralipton,** Thoms.—maculosum (Cal.), Thoms.

**Ægosoma,** Serv.—ornaticolle, tibiale (N. I.), *White*: lacertosum (As.), Pascoe.

**Megopis,** Serv.—costipennis (As.), White.

**Teledapus,** Pascoe—dorcadioedes (Mus.), Pascoe.

**Philus,** Saund.—globosicollis, Thoms.

**Cyrtonops,** White—punctipennis, White.

**Tragosoma,** Serv.—subcoriaceum (N. I.), Hope.

*References.*

*Westwood.*—*Mod. Class., Ins.* i., 359.


*Lacordaire.*—*Spéc. Gén.,* VIII., 16, 1869.

Family *Cerambycidae*.


Tetraonommatus, *Perroud*—filiformis (Mad.), *Per*.

Oplatocera, *White*—callidioides (N. I.), *White*.


Hesperophanes, *Muls.*—basalis (Him.), *White*.

Nyphasia, *Pascoe*—orientalis (As.), *White*.


Phyodexia, *Pascoe*—concinna (Mus.), *Pascoe*.


Erythrus, *White*—bicolor (N. I.); *West*: Westwoodii (Him.), *White*.

Coloborhon bus, *Thomas*—volutinus (As.), *Saund*.

Zonopterus, *Hope*—flavitasris (As.), *Hope*.

Pachyteria, *Serv.*—fasciata (As.) *Fabr.*: rubripennis (As.), *Hope*—dimidiata (As.), *West*.

Aphrodisium, *Thomas*—Cantori (As.), Griffithii (As.), *Hope*—Hardwickeanum (Nep.), *White*.


Leontium, *Thomas*—viride, caeruleipenne, thalassium, *Thomas*—prasinum (Mad.), *White*.

Polyzonius, *Lap.*—cinctus (N. I.), *Guér.*: tetraspilotus (As.), *Hope*—inermis, 4-maculatus (Mad.), *White*.

Eurybatus, *Dej.*: 10—punctatus (As.), *West*—lateritus (N. I.), *Hope*—hariolus (As.), *Dej.*: formosus, *Saund*.
Clyanthus, Thoms.—lituratus (Ben.), Lap.: albicinctus (Nep.),
Hope: maculicollis, Dalm.: 14-maculatus
(Nil.), maestus (Mad.), alboscutellatus (Nil.),
nepos, agnatus (Nil.), cognatus (As.), Chevrol.

Pialomerus, Chevrol.—angustus (gracilicornis, White), Chevrol.
Grammographus, Chevrol.—lineatus, Chevrol.

Ischnodora, Chevrol.—macra, Chevrol.

Rhaphuma, Pascoe.—glauca (Mad.), Fabr.: Wiedemanni, leu-
costellata, Hope: distinguenda, Per.: fallax,
5-notata, 6-notata, dimidiata, geniculata,
russicollis, 3-maculata, Chevrol.

Amauresthes, Chevrol.—fuliginosus (Tib.), subdepressus (As.),
arciferus, Chevrol.

Xylotrechus, Chevrol.—Smeei, vicinus (Dec.), ocellatus, Lap.:
subditus, quadripes (Kash.), aper (Nil.),
Chevrol.

Solethrus, New.—amænus (Mad.), Gory.

Plagityrthes, Motsch.—sumatreensis (Ben.), brahminus (Ben.),
bicinectus (N. I.), assimilis (Nep.), Hope:
Balyi, Pascoe.

Epodus, Chevrol.—humerosus, Chevrol.

Agiaophis, Thoms.—fasciata, Thoms.

Cyrtophorus, Le Conte—ventralis (Nil.), Chevrol.

Epipedocera, Chevrol.—Hardwickei (undulata, Hope), White:
zona (Nep.), affinis (Nil.), Chevrol.

Purpuricenus, Zieg.—montanus (Him.), White: sanguinolentus,
Oliv.

Typodryas, Thoms.—callichromoides (As.), Thoms.

Noemia, Pascoe—Stevensii, flavicornis, Pascoe.

Eurycephalus, Dej.—maxillosus, Oliv.

References.

Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins., I., 362. Cab. Or. Ent. t. 29.

White.—Cat. Col. British Museum, Pt. VII., 1853.

Ser., XV., 182.

Pascoe.—Longicornia Malaya. Trans. Ent. Soc., 3rd Ser., III.

Lacroix.—Spéc. Gén., VIII., 200 : IX., 1869.
Family Lamiae.

Acanodes, Pascoe—montanus (Darj.), Pascoe.
Dioxippe, Thoms.—costata (Nil.), Guérin.
Morimopsis, Thoms.—lacrymans, Thoms.
Epicedia, Thoms.—bigeminata, Thoms.
Archidice, Thoms.—quadrimaculata, Thoms.
Leproder, Thoms.—officinatus, Lac.
Morimus, White—inæqualis (Mad.), plagiatus (Mad.), Water: morionoides, White.
Euoplia, Hope—polyspila (As.), Swainsoni (As.), Hope.
Anoplophora, Hope—Stanleyi (As.), Hope.
Merges, Pascoe—marmoratus (Him.), Melly.
Epepeotes, Pascoe—punctulatus (Him.), West.: lusca, Fabr.
Monochamus, Meger.—Downesii (N. I.), Parryi, Roylii (Mus.), sulphurifer (As.), beryllinus (As.), Hope: Helenor, Nev.: guttatus (Him.), Guér.: Westwoodii (Him.), Melly: bifasciatus (Him.), West.: larvatus, Stephanus, melanostictus (N. I.), Fredericus (As.), officinatus (As.), sublineatus (As.), Brianus (Nep.), White: subgemmatus (As.), desperatus, griseipennis, Pascoe.

Myagrus, Pascoe—Hynesii (Bom.), Pascoe.
Echinoechema, Thoms.—ermatus (As.), White.
Mecotagus, Pascoe—tigrinus, Oliv.: Gnerinii (As.), White: tessellatus (As.), Guér.
Cyriocrates, Thoms.—Horsfieldii (As.), White.
Aristobia, Thoms.—reticulatus, Fabr.: fasciculata (Kash.), Redt.
Celostena, Thoms.—javana, plagiata, tessellata, White.
Peribasis, Thoms.—larvatus (As.), White.
Cycas, Pascoe—subgemmatus (As.), Thoms.
Pharsatia, Thoms.—gibbifer (Nil.), Guér.
Batocera, Lap.—Roylii [=princeps, Redt.], (Kash.), Hope: Chevrolatii, adelpha, Chlorinda, Titana, Thoms.
Apriona, Chevrol.—Germari (As.), Hope: Deyrollei (As.)
Kaup.

Orsidis, Pascoe—acanthocimoides, Pascoe.
Calloplophora, Thoms.—Solii (As.), Hope.
Gnoma, Fabr.—casnonoides, Thoms.
Agelasta, New.—bifasciana (As.), White.
Coptops, Serv.—leucostictica (As.), White: centurio, Pascoe.
Mispila, Thoms.—curvilinea, Pascoe.
Thysia, Thoms.—Wallichii (Him.), Hope.
Calothyrza, Thoms.—margaritifera (Him.), West.
Ithocritus, Lac.—ruber (As.), Hope.
Rhodopsis, Thoms.—pubera (As.), Thoms.
Olenocamptus, Chevrol.—dominus (As.), Thoms.
Machotypa, Thoms.—thoracica (As.), White.
Ælara, Thoms.—plagiata (As.), parallela (N. I.), delicatula (As.),
cylindraca (As.), White.
Saperda, Fabr.—bicolor (As.), West.
Camptocnema, Thoms.—lateralis (As.), White.
Lychrosis, Pascoe.—zebrina (As.), Pascoe.
Anaches, Pascoe—dorsalis, Pascoe.
Xynenon, Pascoe—Bondii, Pascoe.
Prionetopsis, Thoms.—balteata, Thoms.
Smermus, Lac.—Mniszechii, Lac.
Thermistis, Pascoe.—croceocincta, Saund.
Malloderma, Lac.—Pascoeï, Lac.
Glenea, New.—rubricollis (As.), Hope: sancta-mariae, indiana,
funerula, capriciosa, obsoletipunctata, obesa
(As.), argus, annulata (Him.), chalybeata
(As.), maculifera (As.), pulchella (As.),
spilota, Diana (As.), Peria, Conidia (Bom.),
Thoms.
Stibara, Hope—nigricornis, morbillosa, Fabr.: tetraspilota (As.),
trilineata (As.), Hope.
Nupserha, Thoms.—cosmopolita, bicolor, Thoms.
Asthathes, New.—violaceipennis (N. I.), Thoms.: divisa, Pascoe.
C.—PHYTOPHAGÆ.

Family Sagridæ.

Sagra, Fabr.—carbunculus (As.), Hope.

Temnaspis, Lac.—speciosus (N. I.), Downesii (N. I.), quinque-maculatus (N. I.), nigriceps (Nep.), Baly.

Family Crioceridae.

Lema, Fabr.—Downesii (Bom., Ben.), suturella (Ben.), Psycho (N. I.), glabricollis, Baly.

References.
Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins., I., 370.

Family Hispidæ.

Callispa, Baly—insignis (N. I.), dimidiatipennis (N. I.), vittata, Baly.

Amblispa, Baly—laeavigata (Mad., N. I.), Baly.

Botryonopa, Blanch.—sanguinea (N. I.), Guér.: Sheppardi (N. I.), Baly.

Estigmena, Hope—chinensis (Nep., N. I.), Hope: cribricollis (Mad.) Water.

Anisodera, Chevrol.—ferruginea (N. I.), Guér.: excavata (N. I.), Baly: cylindrica (Nep., N. I.), Hope.

Downesia, Baly—insignis (N. I.), Baly.

Javeta, Baly—pallida (Mad.), Baly.

Gonophora, Chevrol.—Saundersii (As.), Baly.

Hispa, Linn.—erinacea (Nep.), Fabr.

Reference.

Baly.—Catalogue of Hispidæ in the British Museum, 1858.
Family *Cassididae*—Tortoise-beetles.

Calopepla, *Boh.*—Leayana (Ben.), *Boh.*: Reicheana, Gutr.
Epistictia, *Boh.*—selecta (Bom.); viridimaculata (Nep.), *Boh.*


Prioptera, *Hope*—Westermannii (As.), *Mas.*: impustulata (As.), sexmaculata (As.), maculipennis (As.), decemstrijata, decemmaculata (Him.), pallidicornis; decemsignata (As.), *Boh.*

Aspidomorpha, *Hope*—miliaris (Mad.), St. Crucis (As.), dorsata, micans, *Fabr.*: amabilis, *Dej.*: orientalis, inuncta (Mad.): fusconotata: lobata (N. I.); calligera (Ben.); Egena (Ben.); indica (Ailmora); *Boh.*

Cassida, *Linn.*—clathrata, obscura, cruenta, *Fabr.*: livida, dispers, testacea, tricolor, *Herbst*: foveolata, 16-maculata, nigrovittata (Cal.): Moori, Syrtica, rugulosa, icterica (Almora), obtusata, conspurcata (Mad.), pallida (Mad.), pauxilla, exilis (Mad.), Delessertii, dorsonotata, nigriventris (Tib.), pudibunda, glabella (Nil.), pulvinata (Mad.), costata (Mad.), fuscosparsa (As.), *Boh.*: trilineata (Nep.), *Hope.*

Leucoptera, *Boh.*—14-notata, 26-notata (As.), 19-notata (As.), 13-punctata (As.), nepalensis (Nep.); philippinensis (Bom.), *Boh.*

Coptocycia, *Chevrol.*—sexnotata (Mad.) *Fabr.*: sexmaculata (Mad.), *Dej.*: circumdata, varians, *Herbst*.: ventralis (Nil.), bistriaculata (Mad.), bistri-notata (Ben.), 11-notata, 17-notata, bipunctipennis (Mad.), promiscua, 7-notata, ornata (Mad.), cribrosa, *Boh.*

References.

Westwood.—*Mod. Class. Ins.*, I., 376. 1839.

Family Galerucidae.

Hymeneis, **Clark**—trianquebarica (Mad.), **Fabr.**
Spharanora, **Clark**—flavicollis (N. L.), nigripennis (N. L), **Clark**.

Podontia, **Dalm.**—rufo-castanea, **Baly**.
Oedicerus, **Baly**—apicipennis, **Baly**.
Momma, **Baly**—purpurascens (Nep.), **Hope**.
Mepippus **Baly**—cornus (Nep.), **Hope**.
Xuthia, **Baly**—orientalis, **Baly**.
Antipa, **Baly**—picipes, Bretinghami, **Baly**: Bennetti (Nep.), **Hope**.

Mimastra, **Baly**—arcuata, **Ser.**

Hyphasia, **Har.**—nigricornis (N. L), Bevani (S. L), **Baly**.
Phygasia, **Baly**—dorsata (As.), **Baly**.

References.

Westwood.—*Mod. Class. Ins.*, I, 261


Family Eumolpidae.

Chrysochus, **Chevrol.**—asiaticus (N. L), **Redt.**
Eumolpus, **Latr.**—pyrophorus, (As.), **Parry**.
Nedostoma, **Motsch.**—Dormeri, Bevani, **Baly**.
Corynodes, **Hope**—gloriosus (N. L), **Baly**: cyanus (Mad.), **Hope**.

Eubrachis, **Chevrol.**—indica (Mus.), **Baly**.
Pachnephorus, **Redt.**—Bretinghami, **Baly**.
Pseudocolaspis, **Lap.**—longicollis (S. I.), **Baly**.

References.


Baly.—*J. Linn. Soc.*, XIV, 246.
Family *Chrysomelidae*—Golden-beetles.

*Chlamys*, *Knoch*—fulvipes, *Baly*.

*Colocposoma*, *Lap.*—Downesii, *Baly*.

*Chrysomela*, *Linn.*—Krishna, Bonvouloirii, Stevanusii, *Baly*:
Vishnu (Nep.) *Hope*.

*Ambrostoma*, *Motsch.*—Mabasa (Nep.), *Hope*.

*Crosita*, *Motsch.*—celestina (N. I.), *Baly*.

*Eumela*, *Baly*—cyanicollis, *Hope*.

Family *Halticinae*.

*Xanthocyla*, *Baly*—Chapuisii, *Baly*.

*Argopus*, *Fischer*—Haroldi, *Baly*.

*Paradibolia*, *Baly*—indica, *Baly*.

*Chaeotonema*, *Steph.*—cognata, squarrosa, Bretinghami, concinnipennis, basalis, *Baly*.

*Reference*.

*Westwood*—Mod. Class. Ins., I., 395.

Family *Eratylidae*.

*Languria*, *Latr.*—cyanea (Nep.), *Hope*.

**IV.—PSEUDO-TRIMERA**

Family *Endomychidae*—Fungus-beetles.

*Endomychus*, *Panzer*—bicolor, *Gorham*.


*Engonius*, *Gerst.*—signifer (N. I.), *Gorham*.


*Mycetina*, *Gerst.*—castanea, *Gerst*.

Family *Coccinellidae*—Lady-birds.


*Epilachna*, *Chevrol.*—28-punctata (Mad.), *Fabr.*: pubescens (N. I.), *Hope*.

*Chilocorus*, *Leach*—opponens (Mad.), *Walk*.

*Reference*.

*Westwood*—Mod. Class. Ins., I., 390.
ORTHOPTERA.

The order Orthoptera (straight-winged) comprises the insects commonly known as ear-wigs, cockroaches, crickets, praying-insects, leaf-insects, species or stick-insects, locusts and grasshoppers. The body is composed of a head, thorax and abdomen. The head is furnished with a mouth, antennae and eyes. The mouth consists of a labrum or upper lip, two mandibles, two maxillae, a labium or under lip and four palpi or feelers. The mandibles are armed with teeth suitable to the food on which the insect lives. In the carnivorous species these teeth resemble the canine teeth of the mammalia, and in the herbivorous species they resemble the incisive and molar teeth of mammals. The maxillae are furnished with 5-jointed palpi and a membranous piece vaulted above and covering the extremity of the maxillae. This piece is called the galea and is either cylindrical in shape or triangular or dilated and forms one of the bases of classification. The labial palpi are 3-jointed. The antennae are many-jointed and are inserted in front of the eyes, but sometimes below or between them. The true eyes occupy the side of the head and are compound and usually very large. There are also two to three simple eyes or ocelli, either perfect or sub-obsolete. The thorax is composed of three parts, of which the prothorax is the largest and the only one exposed. The wings are four in number, of which the elytra or anterior pair are sub-coriaceous, thin and flexible, and the posterior pair or true wings are for the most part membraneous, reticulated and longitudinally folded after the manner of a fan. In some cases the females and even both sexes are apterous, and in the ear-wigs the posterior wings are transversely folded as in the beetles. In many species the elytra of the males are rudimentary and a transparent, hard, neurated membrane covers a portion of the inner margin of the elytra and produces by friction upon each other the stridulating noise remarked in certain families of the order. A similar sound is produced in other families by rubbing the thighs of the posterior legs against the edges of the elytra. The abdomen consists of eight or nine segments furnished at the end with certain appendages. There are six legs provided with feet adapted for running or jumping. The metamorphosis is incomplete: that is, there is no such marked differences in form between the larva, pupa and
imago as obtains in the beetles. The larvae resemble the perfect insects, only they are much smaller and are without wings. After several moltings rudimentary wings appear, and this is supposed to mark the pupa state and again after several moltings the imago with perfect wings appears.

The broad division of the order is into (1) Curatoria, in which the feet are adapted for running; the elytra and wings are placed horizontally to the body and the females are not provided with an ovipositor: and (2) Saltatoria, in which the posterior pair of legs are specially adapted for leaping. In the first division must be included the anomalous family Forficulidae or ear-wigs, which many authors form into a separate order osculatant between the beetles and the true Orthoptera. The Indian species of this family have not received much attention at the hands of naturalists. The cockroaches are exceedingly numerous in individuals and are cosmopolitan in their habits, the small Blatta orientalis of Europe being originally a native of India. They have not been thoroughly examined in this country probably owing to a prejudice against them on account of their offensive odour. The Mantidae or praying insects are so called from the position of their fore-legs when lying in wait for their prey. They remain immovable in this attitude until a fly or other insect comes within their reach, when they quickly seize it and devour it. The Phasmidae or spectres resemble dried twigs and attain some of them to a considerable size; many new species have been figured by Mr. Wood-Mason in the Calcutta Journal. Amongst the Saltatoria, the locusts belong to the family Acrididae, and in Scelymena Harpago we have one that takes to the water and dives, the teliaceous appendages of the hind legs being well adapted for swimming. This is the first natatorial species of the order recorded and is found both in Bombay and in the upper provinces. The ravages of members of this family in India are too well known to need description. There are two forms of migratory locusts commonly met with. That with pink under-wings and brownish markings on the upper wings is apparently the C. Edwardsii of Westwood and occurs in swarms sufficient to break down the branches of trees on which they alight. Often for days together they pass over tracts of country in undiminished myriads, leaving whole square miles bare of all vegetation behind them. The colour of the under-
wings in this species varies from a very pale pink to a dark brown or maroon. The second and perhaps more common species in the North-Western Provinces has yellow under-wings and yellowish markings on the upper-wings. The larva of this species has the front of the head orange yellow, whilst the space behind and below the eyes is of a deep maroon and the posterior legs are of a bright yellow colour banded with black. Locusts have been found as far north as the passes leading into Tibet and are not uncommon permanent residents in the Bhābar, where there are also two or three species that occur in groups of many thousands, but are not so formidable as the two first mentioned. The female is not provided with an ovipositor and lays her eggs in some instances on the ground and in others on plants and attaches them by a gummy exudation produced at the same time. In some cases they are further protected by a frothy exudation which hardens by exposure. The eggs hatch in a few days and the larva are at once ready to satisfy their voracious appetite, which never appears to be satiated. To the Gryllidae belongs the curious mole-cricket Schisodactylus monstruosus to be found in its burrow in the sands of the banks of any of our great rivers. It is easily recognized by the spiny excrescences on its legs and the net-like wings curled up at the end. It appears to be exclusively carnivorous in its habits and is not very numerous in individuals. The following list is very meagre, considering all that has been written on the Orthoptera, but I must leave to others the task of completing it:

ORTHOPTERA.

I.—Cursoria.

Family Forficulidae—Ear-wigs.

Forficula, Linn.—auricularia (Cal.), Linn.

Blattariae.

Family Polyphagidae.

Polyphaga, Brullé—indica, Walker.

Family Panesthidae.

Panesthis, Serv.—plagiata, regalis (As.), Walker: motistruosa (Mad.), flavipennis (As.), Saussurii (As.), Wood-mason: transversa (As.), Burm.: sethiops (In.), Stoll: forceps (Mad.), Sauss.
Paranaphaeta, Watt.—limbata, Saussure.
Parahormetica, Watt.—bengalensis, Saussure.

Family Planeticina.

Planetica, Sauss.—phalangium, Saussure.

Family Panchloridae.

Punchlora, Burm.—surinamensis (In.), Sulz.: indica (In.), 
Fabr.; tenebrigera, occipitalis (Bom.), sub-
marginata (Bom.), Walker.

Family Corydidae.

Corydia, Serv.—Petiveriata, (Mad.), Linn.: Gueriniana, Serv.: 
plagiata, Walker: anacn, Watt.: ornata, 
Sauss.

Family Blattidae.

Phlebonotum, Sauss.—anomalum, Blas.: pallens (Mad.), 
Blanch.

Epilampra, Burm.—auriculata (Bom.), Watt.: cribrata (As.), 
blattoides, melanocoma, Sauss.: ampli-
pennis (As.), intacta (Bom.), characterosa, 
Walker.

Ellipsidium, Sauss.—laterale (As.), Walker.

Blatta, Linn.—bivittata (N. I.), Serv.: parvula, brevipes (Bom.), 
continua, lycoïdes, telephoroides (Bom.), 
subreticulata, figurata, annulifera, trans-
versalis, fasciceps, subfasciata, inexacta, 
subrotundata (all Bombay), ramifera 
(Nep.), submarginata (As.), Walker: cog-
nata, † ferruginea, Himalayica, Watt.: 
Luneli, Sauss.

Theganopteryx, Watt.—jucunda, indica (Bom.) Saussure.

Periplaneta, Burm.—americana (In.), Degeer: thoracica, 
æthiopicà, Serv.: ornata, Watt.: affinis, 
Sauss. ruficornis (Bom.). curta (Bom.), 
Walker.

Polyzosteria, Burm.—orientalis, Burm.: heterospila (Bom.), 
sexpustulata, (Bom.), Walker.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES. 183

Family Perispheæridæ.

Perisphæria, Burm.—alta (As.), Walker.
Blepharodera, Burm.—sericea, emortualis, Saussure.
Loboptera, Watt.—indica, Watt.

Family Mantidae—Praying insects.

Mantis, Linn.—simulacrum (Ben.), Fabr.: concinna, Perty:
metallica (As.), West.
Hestias, de Sauss.—Brunneriana, (As.), Sauss.: pictipes (Cen.
M.) inermis, (As.) Wood-Mason.

Charadodis, Serv.—squilla (In.), Saussure.
Empusa, Ill.—gongyloides (N. I.), Linn.
Fischeria, Sauss.—laticeps (Bom. Mad.), Wood-M.
Hierodula, Sauss.—birivia (Mad.), Stoll.
Æthalochoæa, Wood-M.—Ashmoliana (Ben.), West.
Campsothespis, Sauss.—anomala (Cal.), Wood-M.
Heterochœta, Sauss.—tricolor (Cal.), Wood-M.
Paradanuria, Wood-M.—orientalis (Mad.), Wood-M.
Schizocephæa, Serv.—(Didymocorpha) ensifera (Ben.), Wood-M.:
bicornis, Linn.

Family Phasmaidæ—Stick-insects.

Phyllium, Ill.—crurifolium, Serv.: Robertsonii (Nil.), Hope:
Scythe (As.): West.
Necroœa, West.—bimaculata (Mad.), Stoll.: annulata (Mad.),
Fabr.: affinis, punctata, marginata (Mal.),
Gray: Sipylus (As.), Pholidotus (As.), atri-
coxis, Casignetus (As.), Sparaxes, hilaris
(As.), maculicollis (As.), West.: Menaka
(As.), Wood-M.
Cyphocrania, Serv.—gigas, Linn. (var. = Empusa, Gray).
Creoxyœlus, Serv.—auritus, Fabr.
Xeroderus, Gray.—manicatus, Licht.
Lopaphus, West.—bootanicus (As.), Baucis (As.), West.
Heteropteryx, Gray—dilatata, Parkinson.
Phibalosoma, West.—serratipes (Mal.), Gray: Westwoodii (As.),
annamalayanum (Mad.), Wood-M.
Anophelepis, West.—despecta (As.), West.

Lonchodes, Gray.—luteoviridis [ =lacertinus, West], (As.); bicornutus ( ); semiarmatus ( ); virgens [ =sarmatosus, West] (As.); Porus; Stilp-nus (As.); Myrina (Mad.), West: brevipes (Mal.), geniculatus Gray: Austeni (As.); Westwoodii (Cal.); insignis (Sik.), Wood-M.

Bacteris, Latr.—Shiva (In.), West.

Menaka, Wood-M.—scabriuscula (As.), Wood-M.

Bacillus, Latr.—indicus, Gray: tranqusebaricus (Mad.); Beroë; Regulus; cuniculus (As.); Alauna (Mad.); Artemis (As.); Amathia (Mad.), West: lævi-gatus (As.); fuscolineatus (Panj.); Penthesi-lea (Bhutan), fuscillatus (Bhutan), Wood-M.

II.—Saltatoria.

Family Gryllidae.


Acheta, Fabr—monstrosa (N. I.), Drury.

Brachytrypus, Erichs—achatinus, Stoll.: terrificus (Mad.), signatipes (Bom.), ferreus (Mad., bisignatus, truculentus, Walker.

Gryllus, Linn—erythrocephalus (Ben.), melanocephalus (Ben.), Serv.: capensis, Oliv.: orientalis (Mad.), Fabr.: conscitus (Nep.), signifrons (N. I.), facialis (Bom.), humeralis (Bom.), ferri-collis (Bom.), angustulus (Bom.), lineiceps (Bom.), configuratus (Bom.), parviceps (Bom.), signipes (Bom.), Walker.

Nemobius, Serv.—indicus, vagus (Bom.), Walker.

Madasumma, Walker—ventralis (N. I.), Walker.

Eneoptera, Burm.—fascipes (N. I.), conscitus (Bom.), lateralis, (Bom.), alboatra (Bom.), Walker.

Meloiomorpha, Walker—cincticornis (Bom.), Walker.

Platydactylus, Brullé—transversus (As.), apertus (N. I.), pal-lidus (As.), Walker: marginipennis, Guér.
CEcanthus, Serv.—rufescens (Bom.), Serville.
Prophalangopsis, Walker—obscura, Walker.
Phalangopsis, Serv.—albicornis (N. I.), picticeps, Walker.
Ornebius, Guérin—nigripalpis (Mad.), Guér.
Platyblemnum, Serv.—lusitanicus, delectus (Ben.), Serv.

Family Locustidae.

Gryllacris, Serv.—plagista (As.), contracta, aliena (As.), scita, magniceps, trinotata (Bom.), collaris (As.), gracilis (Ben.), basalis (Bom.), Walker, signifera (Bom. As.), Stoll: amplipennis, (Mal.), gladiator (Mad.), Gerst.

Rhapidophora, Serv.—picea (As.), Serville.
Noia, Walker—testacea, Walker.
Decticus, Serv.—concinnus (Nep.), pallidus (N. I.), Walker.
Xiphidium, Serv.—posticum (As.), Walker.
Letana, Walker—linearis (N. I.), Walker.
Ladnia, Walker—punctipes (N. I.), Walker.
Saga, Charp.—indica, Herbst.
Conopepalus, Thaul.—interruptus (N. I.) strenuus (N. I.), varius (As.), Walker.

Megalodon, Brulle—ensifer Brulle.
Phaneroptera, Serv.—punctifera (As.), roseata (N. I.), privata (As.), insignis (As.), notabilis (As.), diversa (As.), nigrosparsa (Bom.), Walker, rufonotata (Bom.), Serv.

Ancylecha, Serv.—lunuligera (As.), Serville.
Steirodon, Serv.—unicolor, Stoll.
Tedla, Walker—sellata (As.), simplex Walker.

Pseudephyllus, Serv.—Titan (As.), White: femoratus, fenestratus, neriifolia (As.), Stoll: uninotatus (As.), oleifolius (Mad.), Serv.: assimilis (As.), venosus (As.), sicus (As. Mad.), concinnus (As.), signatus, sublituratus, Walker.

Aprion, Serv.—carinatum, porrectum (As.), strictum (Bom.), curviferum (Bom.), Walker.

Cymatomerar, Schaum—rugosa (In.), Linn.: viridivitta (Mal.), Walker.

Mecopoda, Serv.—elongata (As. N. I.), Linn.

Family Acrididae.

Truxalis, Fabr.—nasuta (N. I.), Linn.: unguiculata (N. I.), Ramb.

Pyrgomorpha, Fischer—crenulata (N. I.), Fabr. : bispinosa (S. I.), Walker.

Mesops, Serv.—filatus (N. I.), Walker.

Opomala, Serv.—laticornis (Bom. N. I.), Serv.: convergens, (N. I.), tarsalis, (As.) semipicta (S. I.), Walker.

Xiphooera, Latr.—fumida (S. I.), Walker.

Phymateus, Serv.—miliaris (Nep. N. I.), Linn.

Poeilocera, Serv.—picta (N. I.), Fabr. : punctiventris (Bom.), Serv.: ornata, Burm.

Teratodes, Brullé—monticollis (1n.), Gray.

Cyrtacanthacris, Serv.—flavicornis (As.), Fabr.: inficita (N. I.), Walker.

Acracidum, Geoff.—succinctum (N. I.), Linn.: flavescens (S. I.), Fabr.: pardalinum (S. I.), vinosum (N. I.), saturatum (S. I.), dorsale (S. I.), nitidulum (S. I.), Walker.

Apalacris, Walker—varicornis (N. I.), Walker.

Oxya, Serv.—velox (Mal.), Fabricius: furcifera (Bom.), Serv.

Heteracris, Walker—illustris (S. I.), elegans (N. I.), insignis (Ben.), ducalis (As.), apta (As.), varicornis (S. I.), Walker: alacris, Serv.

Caloptenus, Burm—insignis, glaucopsis (N. I.), liturifer (S. I.), erubescens(N.I.), scutifer (S. I.), dominans (As.), ferrugineus (N. I.), scaber (Ben.), nepalensis (Nep.), immunis (Bom.), pus-tulipennis (Bom.), Walker.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

Ofipoda, Charp. — flava (In.), Linn.: Edwardsii (In.), Hope: venusta (S. I.), crassa (N. I.), infulata, (N. I.), rotundata (N. I.), granulosa (Biluch.) Walker.

Stenobothrus, Fischer—mundus (Bom.), decius (Bom.), apicalis (Bom.), eperamoides (Bom.), turbatus, (Bom.), luteipea (Bom.), strigulatus (Bom.) simplex (Bom.), Walker.

Epacromia, Fischer—simulatrix (S. I.), aspera (N. I.), turpis, (N. I.), Walker.

Cerasis, Walker—nigriorornis (N. I.), Walker.

Chrotogonus, Serv.—trachypterus (Bom.), liasps (Bom.), oxypterus (Bom.), pallidus (Bom.), Blanchard.

Phyllochoreia, West—fenestrata (Ben.), Serv.: unicolor (Mal.), West.

Tettix, Fischer—munda (N. I.), umbrifera (Bom.), lineifera, (Bom.), vittifera (Bom.), dorsifera (Bom.), obliquifera (Bom.), nigricollis (Bom.), lineosa (Bom.), quadriplagiata (N. I.), balteata (S. I.). Walker.

Scelymena, Sauss.—Harpago (Bom. In.), uncinata, Serville. : contracta (Mad.), Walker.

References.


Brunner von Wattenwyl.—Nouveau système des Blattaires, 1868.


HEMIPTERA

The order Hemiptera (half-winged) comprises those insects commonly called cicadas, bugs, plant-lice and the lice that prey on animals. With the exception of the males of the gall-insects and a few others the metamorphosis is incomplete and the change from the larva to the pupa state, and thence to the imago state, is not so well marked as in other orders of insects. The body is composed of a head, thorax and abdomen. The head is furnished with a mouth, eyes and antennae. The oral apparatus is adapted for sucking and consists of three or four delicate pointed setae or threads enclosed in a case which is curved downwards or disposed along the breast between the bases of the legs. The case is tubular and jointed and the threads within represent the mandibles and maxillae of other insects. The labrum is present and in the shape of a ligula of triangular form protects the basal portion of the sucker and the labium is represented by the sheath, but palpi are wanting. The sucker is adapted only for extracting vegetable and animal matter in a fluid state and does not contain a sting, though the result of its application to the human body closely resembles the effect of the sting of other insects. The eyes are large and between them in many species there are 2-3 ocelli or simple eyes. The antennae are very short and small in many families and are usually 4-5 jointed and seldom more than 11-jointed. The thorax consists of three parts, and in some genera the prothorax becomes incorporated with the mesothorax and in others it resembles that of the beetles. The scutellum in some species is very minute and in others covers the entire abdomen. The elytra of a great portion of the insects of this order are for the most part coriaceous with the tips membranous and the under-wings are membranous throughout. There are six legs and there are never more, though there are often less than three joints in the tarsus or foot. The disagreeable odour so marked insects of this order is caused by a fluid which is expressed from a sac or gland at the will of the insect and escapes through two small apertures on the underside of the metathorax, near the insertion of the third pair of legs.

In figure A (after Westwood), Pentatoma rufipes is shown (1) about twice the natural length with the antennae and legs
truncated, and with the wings on one side extended; a represents the scutellum; b, the coriaceous portion of the elytra; and c, the base of the antennæ. In (2) we have the underside of the head and prothorax of the same insect, showing the elongated 4-jointed case or sucker (labium), the basal joint of which is partially covered by the elongated and triangular labrum (4) and at the apex are perceived the tips of the four enclosed setæ or hair-like processes representing the maxillæ and mandibles. In (3) we have the head of the same insect viewed laterally to show the lobes defending the base of the labium and the manner in which the latter is able to bend, with two of the enclosed setæ drawn out at the tip of the second joint and the tips of the other two seen at the end of the case. In (5) we have the dilated base of the four internal setæ as seen within the head on removing the clypeus or upper covering, and between the middle pair may be observed the pointed cartilaginous ligula or tongue, behind which is a small oval aperture which is the orifice of the pharynx.

Fig. A.

The Hemiptera are primarily distributed into two great suborders: (1) Hemiptera-Heteroptera, in which the elytra are coriaceous at the base and membranous at the apex (hemelytra) and the rostrum is frontal, rising from the anterior part of the head; and (2) Hemiptera-Homoptera, in which the substance of the wings is homogeneous throughout and the beak rises from the inferior part of the head and is inflected beneath the thorax between the bases of the legs.

The Heteroptera are further distributed into some seventy families arranged under two classes, the Gymnocerata in which the antennæ are visible and
the legs are not natatorial and the Cryptocerata in which the
antennæ are hidden and the legs are natatorial. They are all
provided with organs adapted for sucking the juices of plants or
animals and live either in water or breathe the free air, facts which
have also led to their distribution into Hydrocorisæ or water-bugs
and Geocorisæ or land-bugs. The first three families on the list live
on plants from which they extract the juices by means of the sucker
with which they are furnished. Many of them are of brilliant
colours, especially the genus Calleida, and all have the scutellum
abnormally developed. They are well represented in India, where
some are of a delicate green, others of a navy blue, others red,
brown and yellow beautifully varnished. A large red bug, of which
the female measures nearly two inches in length, is common on the
lahsora (Cordia Myxa) in the forests of the submontane tract. Cop-
tosoma cribrarium, procured at Allahabad, is of a deep brown, tuber-
cled or mottled and at first sight has the appearance of a beetle,
but its odour soon betrays its real affinity. In the family Pentato-
midaæ the scutellum does not cover the whole of the body. The
insects of this family are commonly known as wood-bugs, of which
the Indian species are often enriched with brilliant colours. Their
larvæ differ from the perfect insect only in the absence of wings
and the pupæ in having only rudimentary wings. In all states
they live on vegetable juices. The species of the genus Strachia
belonging to this family are found on various members of the cab-
bage tribe and with others are common pests in our gardens.
They can never be mistaken for other insects since almost all of
them exhale the disagreeable odour common to them with the bed-
bug (Cimex lectularius). In the Edessidaæ the body is very flat
with the margins notched, dilated and angular, and in the Coreidæ
there is no apparent neck and the head is trigonal and sunk in the
prothorax. The bugs of the latter family are said to feed on other
insects as well as on the juices of plants. Amongst the Lygaeidæ
mention may be made of L. grandis from Upper India. It is red
with two spots on the elytra and with the antennæ, tibia and tarsi
black. The Reduvidæ consist of certain minute species that prey
on other insects and even on the bed-bug. The Belostomatidæ and
Nepidæ are water-bugs, but this division requires much more care-
ful examination than it has hitherto had in India.
In the Hemiptera-Homoptera there are three sub-divisions, Cicadina, Phytophthires and Anoplura. To the first belong the families Stridulantia, Cercopidae, Jassidae and Fulgoridae: to the second the plant-lice; and to the third the lice that prey on animals. The terminology of the neuration in the Homoptera may be gathered from the following figure representing the fore-wing of a Cyclochilid belonging to the family Stridulantia.

**Fig. B.**

*Explanation.*—1, primitive; 2, front; 3 to 8, first to sixth discoidal cells: 9 to 16, first to eighth marginal areolets: a, b, c, d, e, first to fifth transverse veins.

The cicadas, lantern-flies and wax-insects belonging to the first divisions are amongst the most curious examples of insect life. The stridulation of the cicadas is a familiar sound to all in India and is at times so loud as to be almost deafening. It is produced in the males only and the apparatus is thus described by Wilson:

“When we examine the lateral base of the abdomen of a male cicada, we perceive two large scaly plates of a rounded figure, approaching that of a demi-oval, cut through its smaller axis; so that each plate presents a side which is rectilinear, while the remaining portion exhibits a rounded outline. It is by the straight side that each plate is fixed without articulation on the metathorax of which it forms a portion. When we lift up these plates we discover a cavity on each side of the abdomen divided into two principal chambers by a horny triangular septum. When viewed from the side of the abdomen, each cell presents anteriorly a white and plaited membrane, thin, light and as transparent as glass, called le miroir by Beaumur. If we open the mirror from above we perceive on each side of it another plaited membrane moved by a powerful muscle composed
of a great number of straight parallel fibres and arising from the horny septum. This latter membrane is the tympanum or drum on which the muscles act by contraction and relaxation, alternately tightening and restoring it to its original state. This is the true origin of the sound which in fact may be produced even after the death of the insect by jerking the muscle." The cicadæ live on shrubs and trees, of which they suck the juices. The female lays her eggs in holes which they form in the branches and which may be recognised by little irregularities formed by a portion of the wood which has been raised. The larvæ are white and have six legs and soon escape to the ground and burrow in it to live on the roots of plants. They then undergo the change to the pupa state, and after about a year appear as perfect insects. In the Fulgoridæ the antennæ are inserted immediately beneath the eyes and the head is dilated in front into a protuberance which is said, in the living insect, to emit a strong light. The Cercopidæ are remarkable for the frothy matter with which some species surround their larvæ, called cuckoo-spittle in England. At one time it was thought that in Flata limbata, found in Kumaon, we possessed an equivalent to the wax-yielding insect of China of which Sir G. Staunton and the Abbé Grossier have given an account, but Captain Hutton's researches show¹ that the deposit of the former is of a different character and does not possess the properties of the white-wax of China. Amongst the Phytophthires, the Psyllidæ are distinguished by their third pair of legs being formed for leaping. They are nourished by the juices of trees and various plants on which they live. The Aphidina include the plant-lice, which are furnished with two horn-like projections at the posterior extremity that exude a sugary, transparent liquor much affected by ants. These minute insects dwell together in societies and walk slowly and cannot leap, so that they fall an easy prey to the larvæ of the Neuropterus genus Hemerobius, to those of several species of Diptera, and especially to the grubs of the lady-birds.

In the third amily or Coccidæ there is at least one or two local species that deserve some further notice. Geoffroy attributed to a species of kermes the faculty of producing a sugary substance of a white colour resembling manna, and Captain Frederick gave an

¹J. A. S. Ben., XII., 898.
account of a manna-like substance called *gez* found in Persia, but was doubtful whether it was of vegetable or insect origin. Subsequently General Hardwicke described an insect under the name *Chermis manniifera*, obtained on a *Celastrus* at Pachmarhi in the Central Provinces, and which yielded a similar manna of a waxy nature. He described the insect as of about the size of the common bed-bug, of a flattened ovate form and with a rounded tail. The snout is longer than the thorax, inflected and pressed down between the legs: the antennae are 3-jointed and as long as the thorax; first joint minute, second clavate and much the largest, and third setaceous: legs long, formed for walking, tarsi 3-jointed, wings rudimentary: colour light brown. The substance produced by these insects appeared to project from the abdomen in the form of a tail or bunch of feathers like snow which gradually lengthened and fell on the leaves, where it caked and hardened like wax. The same insect has been recorded from Kumaon, where it is found on the *Elaeodendron Roxburghii*, the *debari* of the outer range and Siwalik tract. Mr. Thompson writes:—"It will be known by its clustering around the stem in large numbers conspicuous for the white downy appearance which the long filamentary processes issuing from its body give it. Some of these pretty creatures will remind one of a porcupine with all its quills bristling. They excrete a white substance of a sweet taste and which cakes on the leaves of the plant they affect." A similar phenomenon is observed in the lac-insect (*Coccus lacca*, Kerr), which yields the resin and lac-dye of commerce. We have its life-history in a series of observations made by Mr. Carter in Bombay in 1860 on certain specimens procured by him on the custard-apple tree (*Anona squamosa*). This insect is also found in the forests along the foot of the Kumaon hills and in the Düns, chiefly on the *dhāk* (*Butea frondosa*), *pipal* (*Ficus religiosa*) and other fig-trees. The first thing that struck Mr. Carter on looking at the surface of the resinous incrustation within which the insects were alive was the presence of a white kind of powder like that observed around the cochineal insects. This is concentrated here and there in little spots, and on being more closely examined will be seen to be chiefly confined to three bunches of curly, hair-like filaments which radiate from three

2 As. Res. XIV., 184; see also J. Linn. Soc., 1., 103, (zool.): III., 178.
Chrysocoris, Hüb.,-patricius (As.), Fabr.: grandis (As., Bur.),
Thunb.: purpureus (As.), Hope.

Lamprocoris, Stål.-Roylei (Nap., As.), Hope: spiniger (As.),
Dall.

Callidea, Dall.—Baro (As.), purpurea (Ben., Bom.), Fabr.: Stolii
(As., N. I.), Wolff: marginella (Bom.), ben-
galensis, Roylei, Hope: pulchella (As.),
Dall.: Stockenus, Linn.: fascialis (As.),
White: lateralis (As.), dilaticollis, Guérin.
histeroides (As.), scripta (As.), gibbula
(Panj.), contraria porphyricola, Walker.

Hotea, Serv.—curculionoides (As., Burm.), H.-S. nigrorufa,
diffusa, Walker.

Elvisura, Spinola—spinolæ, Signoret.

Sphaerocoris, Burm.—lateritius, Hope: rusticus (Mad.), Stoll.

Coeloglossa, Germ.—rubro-punctata, Guér.

Alphocoris, Germ.—lixioides (N. I.), Germ.

Family Asopidae.

Cazira, Serv.—verrucosa (In.), ulcerata, (Mad.), West.

Cecyrina, Walk.—platyrhinoides (As.), Walk.

Cantheconia, Serv.—furcillata (Bom., N. I.), Wolff: grisea (N. I.),
Dall.: tibialis (As.), binotata (As.), nigrivitta
(As.), Dist.

Picromerus, Serv.—spinidens (As.), Fabr.: obtusus (As.), nigrivi-
ta, (As.), Walk.: robustus (As.), Distant.

Family Podopidae.

Podops, Lap.—niger, Dall: spinifer, Hope: limosus, Walker.

Scotinophora, Voll.—lurida (As.), Burm.: obscura (As.), Dall.:
tarsalis (As.), Voll.

Aspidestrophus, Stål.—morii (As.), Stål.

Family Sciocoridae.

Sciocoris, Fall.—indicus (N. I.), Dall: gastricus, Thumb.: rufi-
cornis, Fabr.: lateralis, Ficb.

Laprius, Dist.—varicornis (N. I., As.), Dall.
Mecidea, *Dall.*—indica (Ben.), *Dall.*

Edrus, *Dall.*—ventralis (As.), *Dall.*

**Family Halydidae.**


Estopis, *Dist.*—terra (As.), *Dist.*

Erthesina, *Spin.*—acuminata (N. I.), *Dall.*: Fullo (As.), *Thunb.*

Dalpada, *Serv.*—oculata (As., Burm.), clavata (N. I., As.), *Fabr.*: nigricollis, varia (As., Burm.), affinis (N. I.), *Dall.*: versicolor (N. I., As.), *Sch.*: confusa (Marri), *Dist.*: bulbifera, tecta (As.), brevivitta (As.), *Walker.*

Agæus, *Dall.*—tessellatus, *Dall.*

Halys, *Fabr.*—dentata (Bom., N. I.), *Fabr.*

**Family Pentatomidae.**


Belopis, *Dist.*—unicolor (As.), *Dist.*


Ælia, *Fabr.*—glandulosa (N. I.), *Burm.*

Cratonotus, *Dist.*—coloratus (As.), *Dist.*

Hoplistodera, *Hope.*—virescens (N. I.), *Hope.*

Æschrus, *Dallas.*—obscurus (N. I.), *Dall.*

Axiagastus, *Dall.*—Rosmarus (As.), *Dall.*

Stollia, *Dist.*—guttigera (As.), *Thunb.*

Apines, *Dall.*—concinna (N. I.), *Dall.*


Palomena, *Dist.*—Reuteri (Marri), spinosa (N. I.), *Distant.*

Tolumnia, *Ellen.*—latipes (As.), *Dall.*

Halyomorpha, *Dist.*—picus (As.), *Fabr.*: scutellata (As., Bom.), *Dist.*

Cappæa, *Ellen.*—taprobanensis (As.), *Walk.*
small holes in each spot in the incrustation and are continuous with corresponding apertures in the insects from which the white filaments originally proceed. These filaments are shown to be the attenuated extremities of the tracheae or breathing arrangements of the insect, covered with a white powder which after impregnation increases so as to cover the whole of the branch occupied by the insects. This description shows that the so-called manna is produced by a Coccus closely allied to the lac-insect whose history we shall now record.

The young are oviparous and issue from the body of their parent about the beginning of July as an elliptical grub of a red colour, one-fortieth of an inch long and possessed of six legs, two antennae and two ocelli. The mouth is placed on the ventral surface at some distance from the anterior extremity and is in time furnished with setae or hairs and a proboscis by which it attaches itself to the bark of the tree on which it lives. It at once commences to grow in size and to secrete the resinous substance with which its entire body, except the anal orifice, is ultimately enveloped. By the middle of August, the distinction of the sexes is completed and the male becomes more highly developed and leaves an opening for exit, whilst the female remains enclosed in the resin. The males of the summer brood are possessed of antennae, of which the scapus is 2-jointed and the flagellum has seven joints; they have also four eyes and a caudal apparatus for impregnation: in the winter brood they are also furnished with wings. Impregnation takes place in the first week of September and the young brood appear swarming out of the anal orifice of the female at the end of the first week in December, when, again the same changes occur, resulting in a second brood in the first week of the following July. The red colouring matter appears first in the ovary of the female after impregnation in the shape of a large number of spherical globules and then in the young Coccus itself, and therefore the time when both colouring matter and resin will be at its maximum will be for the summer brood during June and for the winter brood during November. Propagation can be effected by transferring a stick encrusted with the resin just before the time of evolution and tying it to the tree on which it is desired to rear the brood.

1 An. Mag., N. H., 3rd Ser., VII., 1, 363 (plates).
In the following list I have added the locality 'Bur.' (Burma) to those species recently recorded from that country by Mr. Distant to show the wide geographical distribution of some species:

I.—HEMIPTERA—HETEROPTERA.

Family Plataaspidae.

Brachyplatys, Boisd.—siphoides (As.), Vahlii (As.), Fabr.: sub-benea (N. I.), Hope: radians (As.), Voll.: Burmeisteri (As.), Dist.: bistriga (Mad.), Walker.

Coptosoma, Lap.—cribrarium (N. I.), Fabr.: 12-punctatum, circumscriptum (N. I.), sphærum (N. I.), Germ.: nepalensis, parvulum, cicatricosum (N. I.), Dallas: xanthochlorum, integrum, Walker.

Plataispis, West.—nitens (N. I.), Dallas: nitida, hemisphaeric, Hope.

Family Cydnidae.

Æthus, Dall.—foveolus (N. I.), maurus (In.), pygmaeus, apicalis (N. I.), Dallas: indicus (N. I.), Hope: transversus, Burm.: brevipennis, Fabr.: Badius, Walker.

Stibaropus, Dall.—brunneus (N. I.), Dallas: testaccus, Walker.

Family Pachycordiz.

Cantao, Serv.—ocellatus (As.), Thtn.

Scutellera, Lam.—nobilis (In.), Fabr.: fasciata (Nep., As.);

Panzer.

Sophela, Walker.—spinigera, (As.), Dallas.

Brachyaulax, Dist.—oblonga (N. I., As.), Hope.

Pæcilocoris, Dall.—interruptus (Nep.), purpurascens (Nep.), Hardwickii (Nep., As.), Hope: Druæi (N. I., As.) Linn.: Childrenii (Nep.), White: obesus (N. I., As.), rufigenis (As.), obsoletus (N. I.), ornatus) (N. I.), pulcher (Mad.), Dall: anisospilus (As.), Walker.

*J. A. S. Ben., XLVII., ii., 37.
Chrysocoris, *Hubn.*—*patricius* (As.), *Fabr.*: *grandis* (As., Bur.), *Thumb.*: *purpureus* (As.), *Hope.*

*Lamprocoris, Stål.*—*Roylei* (Nep., As.), *Hope*: *spiniger* (As.), *Dall.*


*Hotea, Serv.*—*curculionoides* (As., Burm.), *H.-S. nigrorufa*, *diffusa*, *Walker.*

*Elvisura, Spinola*—*spinolae*, *Signoret.*

*Sphærocoris, Berm.*—*lateritius*, *Hope*: *rusticus* (Mad.), *Stoll.*

*Coeloglossa, Germ.*—*rubro-punctata*, *Guér.*

*Alphocoris, Germ.*—*lixioidees* (N. I.), *Germ.*

Family *Asopidae.*

*Cazira, Serv.*—*verrucosa* (In.), *ulcerata*, (Mad.), *West.*

*Cecyrina, Walk.*—*platyrhinoides* (As.), *Walk.*

*Cantheona, Serv.*—*furcillata* (Bom., N. I.), *Wolff*: *grisea* (N. I.), *Dall.*: *tibialis* (As.), *binotata* (As.), *nigrivitta* (As.), *Dist.*

*Picromerus, Serv.*—*spinidens* (As.), *Fabr.*: *obtusus* (As.), *nigrivitta*, (As.), *Walk.*: *robustus* (As.), *Distant.*

Family *Podopidae.*

*Podops, Lap.*—*niger*, *Dall.*: *spinifer*, *Hope*: *limosus*, *Walker.*

*Scotinophora, Voll.*—*lurida* (As.), *Burm.*: *obscura* (As.), *Dall.*: *tarsalis* (As.), *Voll.*

*Aspidestrophus, Stat.*—*morii* (As.), *Stål.*

Family *Sciocoridae.*

*Sciocoris, Fall.*—*indicus* (N. I.), *Dall*: *gastriicus*, *Thumb.*: *ruficornis*, *Fabr.*: *lateralis*, *Fieb.*

*Laprius, Dist.*—*varicornis* (N. I., As.), *Dall.*
Mecidea, *Dall.*—indica (Ben.), *Dall.*

Edrus, *Dall.*—ventralis (As.), *Dall.*

**Family Halydidae.**


Estopis, *Dist.*—terra (As.), *Dist.*

Erthesina, *Spin.*—acuminata (N. I.), *Dall.*: Fullo (As.), *Thunb.*

Dalpada, *Serv.*—oculata (As., Burm.), clavata (N. I., As.), *Fabr.*: nigricollis, varia (As., Burm.), affinis (N. I.), *Dall.*: versicolor (N. I., As.), *Sch.*: confusa (Marri), *Dist.*: bulbifera, tecta (As.), brevivitta (As.), *Walker.*

Agæus, *Dall.*—tessellatus, *Dall.*

Halys, *Fabr.*—dentata (Bom., N. I.), *Fabr.*

**Family Pentatomidae.**


Belopis, *Dist.*—unicolor (As.), *Dist.*


Ælia, *Fabr.*—glandulosa (N. I.), *Burm.*

Cratonotus, *Dist.*—coloratus (As.), *Dist.*

Hoplistodera, *Hope.*—virescens (N. I.), *Hope.*

Æschrus, *Dallas.*—obscurus (N. I.), *Dall.*

Axiagastus, *Dall.*—Rosmarus (As.), *Dall.*

Stollia, *Dist.*—guttigera (As.), *Thunb.*

Apines, *Dall.*—concinna (N. I.), *Dall.*


Palomena, *Dist.*—Reuteri (Marri), spinosa (N. I.), *Distant.*

Tolumnia, *Ellen.*—latipes (As.), *Dall.*

Halyomorpha, *Dist.*—picus (As.), *Fabr.*: scutellata (As., Bom.), *Dist.*

Cappaea, *Ellen.*—taprobanensis (As.), *Walk.*

*Bathyccelis, Serv.—indica* (N. I.), *Dall.*
*Catacanthus, Spin.—incarnatus* (In., Burm.), *Drury.*
*Plautia, Stål.—hmbriata* (As.), *Fabr.*
*Antestia, Stål.—anchora* (As., Burm.), *Thunb.: apicalis* (N. I.), *Dallas.*
*Nezara, Serv.—viridula* (As.), *Linn.: subsericeus* (N. I.), *Hope: humeralis* (As.), *Walk.*
*Prionochilus, Dist.—8-punctatus* (As.), *Dall.*
*Cuspicona, Dall.—plugiata* (N. I.), *Walker.*
*Menida, Dist.—flavovaria* (As.), *Dall.: distincta* (N. I.), *Dist.*
*Prionaca, Dall.—lata* (As., Burm.), *Dall.: exempta* (As.), *Walk.*
*Microdeuterus, Dall.—megacephalus* (N. I.), *Sch.*
*Diplostira, Dall.—valida* (As.), *Dall.*
*Rhynchocoris, West.—humeralis* (As.), *Thunb.: serratus* (Mad.), *Don.*
*Sastragala, Serv.—uniguttata* (As.), *Don.*
*Asyla, Walker—indicatrix, Walker.*

Family *Urostylidae.*

*Urochela, Dall.—bimaculata* (N. I.), *obscura, quadripunctata, Dall: discrepans, Walker.*

Urolabida, *West.*—tenem (As.), *Hope* : Grayii (As., Nep.), *White* : binotata (As.), *Walker.*

Family *Edessidae.*


*Eusthenes, Lap.*—cupleus (In.), *Hope* : robustus (As.), *Serv.* : Polyphemus (N. I.), *Stål.*

*Eurostus, Dall.*—grossipes (As.), *Dall.*


*Dalcantha, Serv.*—dilatata (As.), *Serv.* : inermipes (Panj.), *Stål* : regia, *Walker.*

*Cyclopelta, Serv.*—obscura (As., Burm.), *Serv.* : tartana (As.), *Stål.* : siccifolia (N. I.), *Dall.*


*Muscanda, Walker*—tostacea (As.), *Walker.*

Family *Phyllocephalide.*

*Placosternum, Serv.*—Taurus (As.), *Fabr.*

*Dalsira, Serv.*—glandulosa (As.), *Wolff.*


*Cressona, Dall.*—Valida. *Dall.*

*Atelides, Dall.*—centrolineatus (As.). *Dall.*

*Macrina, Serv.*—coccinea (As.), *Walk.* : dilatata (As.). *Dist.*

**Family Megymenidae.**

*Megymenum*, *Guhr.*—inarne (As., N. I.), *Sch.*

**Family Mictidae.**

*Brachytes*, *West.*—bicolor (Bom., N. I.), *West.*

*Dalader*, *Serv.*—acuticosta (As., N. I., Bur.), *Serv.*: planiventris (As.), *Hope*.


*Derepteryx*, *White*—Hardwickii (Nep., As.), Grayii (Nep., As.), *White*.

*Helcomeria*, *Sign.*—spinosa (As.), *Sign.*

*Prionolomia*, *Sign.*—fulvicornis (As.), *Fabr.*: biaugiata (As.), *Walk.*: gigas (As.), *Dist.*

*Anoplocnemis*, *Sign.*—phasiana (As.), *Fabr.*: compressa (N. I., As.), *Dall.*

*Mictis*, *Leach.*—nigricornis (As.), gallina (As., Bur.), *Dall.*: fasciata, albiditarsis (Nep.), *Hope*: dentipes. *Serv.*: umbilicata (As.), *Sch.*: nigrorufa (As.), ferrisera, amplectens, *Walk.*: tenebrosa (As., Bur.), heros (As.), pictor (As.), *Fabr.*: protracta, *Schaum*.

*Notobitus*, *Stål.*—Meleagris (As.), *Fabr.*: marginalis (As.), *Hope*: serripes (As.), *Dall.*: excellens (As.), *Dist.*

*Cloresmus*, *Stål.*—nepalensis (Nep., As.), *Hope*: brevicornis (As.), *Sch.*

*Physomerus*, *Burm.*—calcar (As., Bur.), grossipes, *Fabr.*: parvulus (N. I.), *Dall.*

**Family Homoeoceridae.**


*Ornytus*, *Dall.*—brevicornis (N. I.), *Dall.*
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

Family Anisoscelidae.

Serinetha, Spin.—augur (Bom., Ben., Bur.), abdominalis (Bom., Ben., Bur.), Fabr.: corniculata, Stál.

Lybas, Dall.—obscurus (As.), Dall.

Leptoglossus, Sign.—membranaceus (As.), Fabr.

Family Alydidae.

Euthetus, Dall.—pulchellus (N. I.), Dall.

Camtopus, Serv.—linearis (Bom.), pedestris (As., Bur.), Fabr.: ventralis (Bom.), Hope.

Family Stenocephalidae.

Leptocoris, Latr.—varicornis (In.), angustatus, Fabr.

Family Coreidae.

Metacanthus, Costa—pulchellus (N. I.), Dall.

Cletus, Stál.—calumniator (As.), hastatus (Mad.), Fabr.: punctulatus (As., N. I.), bipunctatus (N. I.), Hope: signatus (N. I.), pallescens inconspicuus conspicuus, Walker.

Ceratopachys, West.—viciinus (N. I.), variabilis (N. I.), Dall.

Cletomorpha, Stál.—denticulata (As.), Stál.

Clavigralla, Spin.—gibbosa (Bom.), Spin.

Acanthocoris, Serv.—scabrator (As., Bur.), Fabr.

Petalocnemis, Stál.—obscurus (As.), Dall.

Family Rhopalidae.

Rhopalus, Schill.—bengalensis, Dall.

Family Lygaëidae.

Bochrus, Stál.—foveatus (As.), Dist.

Lygæus, Fabr.—nigriceps (As.), maculatus (N. I.), bipunctatus, guttiger (N. I.), Dall.: militaris (N. I.), familiaris (As., Bom.), mendicus, Fabr.: pacificus, Boisd.: grandis, Gray: argentatus (As.), Stál: inæqualis (As.), semiruber, Walker.

Graptostethus, Sign.—servus (As.), Fabr.: 3-signatus (As.), 4-signatus (As.), Dist.
Arocatus, Spin. - pusillus, Dall. : pilosulus (Marri), Dist.
Beosus, Serv. - uniguttatus (As.), Thunb.
Lethæus, Dall. - sindicus (N. I.), Dall.
Aphanus, Lap. - indicus (N. I.), Dall.
Pachymerus, Serv. - sorridius (As., N. I.) Fabr. : anticus (As.), Walker.

Rhyparochromus, Curtis - pallens (N. I.), bengalensis, assimilis (Bom.), pallicornis, gutta (N. I.), Dall. : leucospilus (As.), semilucons (N. I.), anticus, Walker.

Ischnodemus, Fieb. - punctatus (N. I.), Walker.

Family Pyrrhocoridae.

Lohita, Serv. - grandis (As.; Bur.), Gray: longissima (As.), Stål.


Iphita, Stål. - limbata (As., Bur.), Stål.


Ectatops, Serv. - limbatus (As.), Serv. : lateralis (As.), distinctus (As.), de Vuill.
Melamphaus, Serv. - faber (As.), Fabr. : rubrocinctus (As.), Stål : femoratus (N. I.), Walker.
Pyrrhocoris, Fall. - vittiventris (As.), Walk. : grandis, Gray.

Family Phymatidæ.

Amblythyreus, West. - angustus (As.), quadratus, West.
Tingis, Fieb. - erosa, Walker.
Family *Brachyrhynchidae*.

*Brachyrhynchus*, *Lap.*—membranaceus (*As.*), *Fabr.*: orientalis (*In.*), *de Lap.*

*Crimia*, *Serv.*—rubescens, *Walker.*

Family *Holoptilidae*.

*Maotys*, *Serv.*—viverra, *Westwood.*

Family *Capsidae*.

*Phytocoris*, *Fall.*—Stoliczkanus (*Marri*), *Dist.*

*Calocoris*, *Stål.*—Stoliczkanus (*Marri*), *Dist.*


Family *Reduvidae*.

*Isyndus*, *Stål.*—heros (*As.*), *Fabr.*

*Endochus*, *Stål.*—famulus (*As.*), *Stål.*

*Euagoras*, *Burm.*—plagiatus (*As.*), *Bur.*, *Burm.*

*Syconus*, *Serv.*—collaris (*As.*), *Fabr.*

*Velinus*, *Stål.*—annulatus (*As.*), *Dist.*

*Cosmolestes*, *Dist.*—annulipes (*As.*), *Dist.*

*Reduvius*, *Fabr.*—marginellus (*As.*), *Fabr.*: nigricollis (*As.*),

*Dall.*: mendicus (*As.*), *Bur.*), costalis (*As.*),

*pulchribiventris* (*As.*), *Stål.*: *Reuteri* (*Sd.*),

*Dist.*: rivulosus (*As.*), perpusillus (*N. I.*),

*singularis*, *Walker.*

*Petalochirus*, *Burm.*—malayus, *Stål.*: *singularis*, *Walker.*

*Lophocephala*, *Lap.*—Guerini (*Bom.*), *Lap.*

*Opistoplatys*, *West.*—indicus, *Walker.*

Family *Ectrichodidae*.

*Vilius*, *Serv.*—melanopterus (*As.*), *Stål.*


*Ectrichotes*, *Sch.*—pilicornis (*As.*, *Mad.*), *Fabr.*
Family *Piratidae*.


*Lestomerus, Serv.*.—affinis (As.), *Serv.*.: flavipes (N. I.), diffinis, *Walker*.: sanctus, *Stoll*.

*Catamiarus, Serv.*.—brevipannis (In.), *Serv*.

*Androclus, Stål.*.—granulatus (As.), *Serv*.

Family *Acanthaspidae*.

*Sminthus, Stål.*.—fuscipennis (As.), marginellus, *Dist*.


*Pachynomus, Klug.*.—biguttatus, *Stål*.


Family *Stenopodidae*.

*Oncocephalus, Klug.*.—annulipes (As.), *Stål*.: naboides (Mad.), *Walker*.

*Stenopoda, deLap.*.—hastata (N. I.), *Walker*.

*Pygolampis, Germar.*.—unicolor (N. I.), concolor, *Walker*.

Family *Apiomeridae*.

*Sycanus, Serv.*.—collaris(In.), *Stoll*.: versicolor (Ben.), croceovittatus, *Dohrn*.: indagator, depressus, *Stål*.: pyrrhomelas, semimarginatus (As.), *Walker*.
Harpactor, _de Lap._—pulchriventris (N. I.), costalis, (Ben.), _Stål._ : obscurus (As.), nigricollis (As.), _Dall._ : fuscipes, _Stoll._

_Enagoras, Burm._—famulus, atrispinus, dichrous (As.), conspersus _Stål._
Family _Emesidae._

_Emessa, Fabr._—filum, _Fabr._
Family _Gerridae._

_Gerris, Latr._—fossarum, _Fabr._
_Ptilomera, Serv._—laticauda (As., Bur.), _Hard._
Family _Belostomatidae._

_Belostoma, Latr._—indica (As., Bur.), _Serv._
_Sphaerodema, Lap._—annulatum, _Fabr._
Family _Nepidae._

_Ranatra, Fabr._—elongata, filiformis, _Fabr._: macrophalma, _Walker._

_Lacotrephae, Stål._—ruber (As.), _Linn._: japonensis (As.), _Scott._: robustus (As.), _Stål._

References:

_Dallas._—List of specimens of Hemipterous insects in the British Museum.
Pt. I., 1851: Pt. II., 1852.

_Dohrn._—Catalogue of the Hemiptera, 1859.
_Saunders._—, _Trans. Ent. Soc._, 1875, p. 117, 215:

1876, 513.


**II.**—HEMIPTERA-HOMOPTERA.

I.—_Cicadina._
Family—_Stridulantia._—_Cicadas._

_Polyneura, West._—ducalis (Nep.), _West._

_Platyleura, Serv._—phalænoides (In.), _Sphinx_ (N. I.), cervina (N. I.), straminea (N. I.), interna, _Walk._
andamana, _Dist._

_Oxypleura, Serv._—sanguiflua (N. I.), basialba (N. I.), _Bufo, Walk._
Tacua, **Serv.**—speciosa, *Ill.*
Tozena, **Serv.**—melanoptera (As., N. I.), *White:* Mearesiana (Him.),
West.: splendida (As.), albata (N. I.), *Dist.*
Huechys, **Serv.**—phalæmata (As., N. I., Bur.), splendidula (As., N. I.), *Fabr.:* 8-notata (A.), West.: transversa, *Walk.*
Gæana, **Serv.**—sulphurea [= pulchella, *West.], (N. I.), *Hope:* dives (As.), *West.*
Mogannia, **Serv.**—illustrata (N. I.), **Serv.**: recta, obliqua, Locusta, lacteipennis (N. I.), quadrmaculata (N. I.), Terpsichore, *Walk.*
Dundubia, **Serv.**—obteota (N. I.), *Fabr.:* vaginata (As.), **Serv.**:
cinctimanus (As.), ramifera (As.), vibrans (As.), microdon (N. I.), lateralis (As.), Urania, Nicomache (N. I.), tigrina (Mad.), maculipes (N. I.), Samia (N. I.), varians (As.), saturata (As.), singularis, linearis (As.), *Walk.:* Radha (Mad.), Tripurasura (As.), *Distant.*
Cosmopsaltria, *Distant*—Pomponia, Tibicen, *Stål:* Sita (Bom.),
Durga (As.), Kama (Darj.), Madhava (A's.),
Aurungzebe (Bom.), *Distant.*
Cicada, *Linn.*—subtincta (As.), Aræa (N. I.), acorata (N. I.), sub-
vitta (N. I.), xantes (N. I.), *Walk.:* apica-
lis (N. I.), *Germ.*: hemiptera, maculicollis (Ben.), *Guér.*: imperatoria (Nep.), *West.*
Fidicina, **Serv.**—vicina (As.), **Sign.**: recta (As.), corvus (As.),
immaculata (Ben.), *Walk.*
Family *Cercopidae.*
Cercopis, **Serv.**—nigripennis (As. N. I.), *Fabr.:* signifera (As.),
lucens (As.), pallida, dorsalis (N. I.), dor-
simacula (N. Ben.), undata (As.), dorsivitt-
ta (N. I.), humeralis (As.), costalis (Mad.),
hilaris (Mad.), basiclava (N. I.), egens (As.), pudens (N. I.), dubitabilis (N. I.),
rotundata (N. I.), amplicollis (N. I.); deci-
sa (Darj.), *Walk.:* bispecularis (N. I.),
White: Strongii, *West.*
Cosmascarta, Stål—borealis (As.), andamana, Moorei (As.), Distant.

Phymatostetha, Stål—binotata (Sadiya), Distant.

Tomaspis, Serv.—(Monophora) trimacula, (Sphenorhina) contigua (N. I.), intermedia (N. I.), proxima (N. I.), approximans (N. I.), Walk.

Ptyelus, Serv.—nebulosus, Fabr.: costalis (N. I.), conifer, quadriridens (N. I.), guttifer (N. B.), sexvittatus (N. I.), punctus (N. B.), subfasciatus (N. I.), Walk.

Aphrophora, Germ.—sigillifera (N. I.), Walk.

Family Jassidae

Oxyrhachis, Germ—tarandus (N. I.), subjecta, unicolor, rudis (N. B.), Walk.

Hypsaulchenia, Germ.—Hardwickii (N. B.), Fairm.

Centrotus, Fabr.—flexuosus scutellaris, Fabr.: Dama, Germ.: Gazella, Hoff.: assamensis, Fairm.: reponens (N. B.), substitutus (N. B.), pilosus (N. I.), Walk.: Paria (N. B.), Lef.

Penthimia, Germ.—orientalis (N. I.), compacta (N. I.), Walk.

Ledra, Fabr.—aurita, Fabr.: dorsalis (As.), dilatata, plana, scutellata, fornicata (N. I.), carinata (N. B.), punctata (Mad.), chlorocephalus (N. I.), culobata, lineata (N. I.), punctifera (Darj.), obligens (N. I.), Walk.

Epicelines, Serv.—planata, Serv.

Tettigonia, Germ.—opponens (N. I.), extrema (N. I.), bella (N. I.), jactans (N. I.) Walk.: ferruginea (As.), Fabr.: rubromaculata (Nep.), Pavo (Ben.), quadrilineata (Nil.), semicircularis (Mad.), unimaculata (Cal.), Sign.

Jassus, Fabr.—(Cælidia) indica (N. I.), Walk.

23
Family *Fulgoridae*.

*Laternaria, Linn.*—*Curtipora* (As.), *cardinalis* (Nep.), *Butler*.

*Fulgora, Linn.*—(Hotentin) *candelaria* (As.), *Linn.*: *maculata*, *Oliv.*: *guttulata* (In.), *virescens* (As.), *viridirostris* (As.), *Spinolae* (Mad., As.), *clavata* (As. N. I.), *geminata* (Him.), *West.*: Delessertii (Mad.), subocellata [var. oculatus, *West*], (Mad.), *Guér.*: *pyrorhinch*a, (Nep.) *Donov.*: *ponderosa* (As.), *Stál.* brevirostris (As.) *Butler*: andamaensis, *Distant*.

*Pyrops, Serv.*—punctata (As. Nep.), *Spin.*: *guttulata* (As.), *vivescens* (As.), *West.*: perpusilla (N. B.), *Walk*.

*Cyrene, West.*—fusiformis (As.), *Walk*.

*Aphana, Guér.*—festiva, *Fabr.*: atomaria (N. I.), *Burm.*: amabilis (As.), *Hope*: Saundersii, imperialis (As.), *White*: Caja (As.), submaculata (As.), basirufa (As.), Io (N. I.), albiglos (Mad.), dives (Mad.), delectabilis (N. I.), lectissima (N. I.), placabilis, verisamor (As.), *Walk.*: sanguinipes (As.), *Stál*.

*Episcius, Spin.*—Guerinii, *Spin*.

*Polydictya, Guér.*—basalis (As.), *Guér.*: tricolor (Mad., N. I.), *Walk*.

*Lystra, Fabr.*—dimidiata (As.), punicea (As.), *Hope*: Westwoodii (As.), *Parry*.

*Eurybrachys, Guér.*—Lepelletieri (Ben.), *Guér.*: spinosa, *Burm.*: insignis (Mad.), *West.*: æruginosa (N. I.), pulverosa (As.), reversa (As.), *Hope.*: decora (As.), punctifera (Mad.), tricolor (N. I.), subfasciata (N. I.), *Walk*.

*Dichoptera, Spin.*—hyalinata (Ben.), *Fabr*.

*Dictyophora, Germ.*—graminea, *Fabr.*: lineata (Ben.), pallida (Ben.), *Donov.*: indiana, despecta (Mad.), nigrimacula (N. I.), albivitta (N. B.), pallida (N. I.), leptorhina, *Walk*.

*Cixius, Latr.*—flavisigna (N. I.), *Mæander, Walk*.
Helicoptera, Serv.—indica (Mad.), simbría (As.), ferruginea, Walk.
Derbe, Fabr.—mæsta (N. I.), carnosa (N. I.), West.
Elasmoscelis, Spin.—fuscofasciata (As.), Stål.
Issus, Fabr.—pectinipennis (Ben.), Guér.: apicalis (N. I.), Walk.
Flata, Fabr.—limbata (N. I.), Fabr.: marginella (As.), Oliv.: bombycoides (Mad.), Guér.: intacta (As.), completa (As.), tenella, Walk.
Pochazia, Serv.—obscura, Guér.: guttifera (As.), interrupta (Mad.), simulans (N. I.), Walk.
Flatoïdes, Guér.—orientis, truncatus (N. I.), Walk.
Colobesthes, Serv.—coromandelica, Spin.: conspersa (As.), Walk.
Pæcilloptera, Latr.—truncata (N. B.), Linn.: ferrugata, Fabr.: dentifrons, Guér.: comma (As.), lactifera (N. I.), ocellata (Mad.), Antica, intacta (Panj.), lutescens (N. I.), Walk.: Maria (As.), tricolor (As.), White: vidua (As.), Stål.

II.—PHYTOPHTHIRES.
Family Psyllidae.
Psylla, Först.—basalis (N. I.), Walk.
Family.—APHIDINA: plant-lice, apparently not examined.
Family Coccidae.
Coccus, Linn.—Lacca (In.), Kerr: cacti (In.), Linn.
Ceroplastes, Gray.—ceriferus (Mad.), Fabr.
Monophlebus, Leach.—atripennis, Klug: Leachi (Mad.), Saundersii (S. In.), West.

III.—ANOPLURA—Lice.
References.
Westwood.—Mod. Class. Ins. II., 414, 1839: Arc. Ent. t. 6. 24, 25, 51, 57:
Cab. Or. Ent. t. 3, 36. Trans. Linn. Soc. XVIII. 133 (Fulgora), XIX., 1 (Derbe)
An. Mag. N. H. n. s. IX., 118.
Dessy.—Anoplura Britannica, 1841.
Butler.—P. Z. S. 1874, p. 97.
The order Neuroptera [nerve-winged] includes those insects commonly known as white-ants, May-flies, dragon-flies, scorpion-flies and ant-lions. “Of all the Linnaean orders,” writes Mr. Kirby, “this appears to consist of the most discordant tribes: so that it seems next to impossible to construct a definition that will include them all, unless indeed that a varied metamorphosis is its essential character: or, to speak more largely, variety itself seems the characteristic of the insects composing it in every state, and there is scarcely a common distinctive character in their perfect state upon detecting which in any individual you may exclaim—this is a neuropterous insect.” The insects of this order may, however, be distinguished from the Orthoptera and Hemiptera by the homogeneous texture of their wings; from the Hymenoptera by their oral arrangements; from the Lepidoptera by the absence of scales on the wings, and from the Diptera by the possession of four wings. The wings are membranous and transparent and are marked with nervures so arranged as to resemble fine network. The mouth is formed for bruising the food on which the insects live and is never adapted for sucking the juices of plants or animals. The abdomen does not possess a sting and is rarely furnished with an ovipositor. The antennæ are many-jointed and hair-like, and the eyes are simple. The thorax is composed of three segments closely united together and the abdomen is attached to the thorax by its whole breadth. The insects of this order are usually divided into four classes—(1) Pseudo-neuroptera; (2) Odonata; (3) Planipennia; and (4) Phryganina, the last of which forms in some systems a separate order under the name Trichoptera. To the first class belong the Termitina or white-ants, of which no description is necessary to residents in India. They comprise males, females, and neuters, and live in societies and are omnivorous eaters in all states. In the Ephemerina or May-flies the mouth is entirely membranous or very short, and the posterior wings are sometimes wanting. They live in the perfect state seldom more than twenty-four hours. The Odonata include the great family of dragon-flies of which the larvae and nymphs are aquatic. The Planipennia include the scorpion-flies in which the head is prolonged or narrowed in the form of a proboscis; the ant-lions in which the
head is not so prolonged and the aphis-lions somewhat similar to the preceding. Though the ant-lions in their perfect state approach in form the dragon-flies, they differ much in the character of their metamorphosis. The Myrmeleons undergo a complete metamorphosis and their larvae are terrestrial in their habits and of a short stout and thick form. They usually construct a cocoon when about to undergo the change to the pupa state in which they are for the most part quiescent. In the perfect insects, the wings have fewer nervures than the dragon-flies, their eyes also are smaller and the antennæ are many-jointed. The mandibles are sharp and the maxillæ and lower lips have palpi attached to them. The female dragon-fly lays her eggs on the water in which the young larvae are hatched and also undergo the change to the pupa state. In both states they are very active and breathe through the intestine which admits water and with it air mechanically suspended which is taken up by the tracheæ of the intestines. Although they can only walk slowly, they manage to elude their enemies by expelling the water in their intestine with such violence as to carry them a considerable distance. The genus Hemerobius are miniature ant-lions and prey on the Aphides in the same manner that the Myrmeleons prey on ants and other insects. The scorpion-flies have a long proboscis and are in the habit of erecting the last segments of the abdomen somewhat in the manner of a scorpion. The caddis-flies in the larvae state form tubes of all sorts of substances within which they move about. Some of the sections of this order have been fairly worked, but very much more remains to be done.

NEUROPTERA.

I.—PSEUDO-NEUROPTERA.

Family Termitina—White-ants.

Termes, Linn.—obesus (In.), Mauritianus, Ramb.: taprobanes, Walk.: ferruginosus, Latr.: brunneus, fatalis, Hagen.

Family Embidina.

Embia, Latr.—Latreillei (Bom.), Ramb.

Oligotoma, West.—Sauundersii (Ben.), West.
Family Perlina.

Perla, Geoff.—suffusa (Nep.), Walk.: Duvauceli, Pictet.

Isagonus, New.—infuscus (N. I.), New.

Family Ephemera—May-flies.

Polymitarcyis, Eaton—indicus (N. I., Bom.), Pictet.
Palingenia, West.—lata (As.), Walk.

Ephemera, Linn.—immaculata, Eaton: exspunctans, Walker:

Batis, Leach: debilis, Walker.

II.—ODONATA.

Agrionina.—Water nymphs.

Calopteryx, Leach.— gracilis (Bom.), Ramb.: smaragdina, basilaris, De Selys: sinensis, Linn.: ciliata (As.), Fabr.

Euphæa, De Selys.—dispar, Ramb.: lestoides, indica, De Selys: splendidæ Hagen.

Rhinocypha, Ramb.—trimaculata, unimaculata, trifaciata, quadrimalculata De Selys: bisignata, Hagen: fenestrella, Ramb.: lineatus, Burm.

Lestes, Leach.—viridula (Bom.), platystyla, Ramb.

Argia, Ramb.—quadrimalculata (Bom.), gomphoides (Mad.), Ramb.

Agrion, Fabr.—decorum (Bom.), microcephalum (Bom.), cerinum (Bom.), Ramb.

Gomphina.

Dioctatomma, Charp.—rapax (Bom.), Ramb.

Æschninina.

Anax, Leach.—immaculifrons, Ramb.

Libellulina.—Dragon-flies.

Zyxomma, Ramb.—petiolatum (Bom.), Ramb.

Neurothemis, Brauer.—Sophronia (Mal.), fulvia (Mal.), Drury: palliata, Ramb.

Acisoma, Ramb.—panorpoides (Ben.), Ramb.
Libellula, Linn.—stylata (Bom.), geminata (Bom.), intermedia, (Bom.), festiva (Bom.), Caesia (Bom.), truncatula (Bom.), trivialis (Bom.), obscura, Ramb.: Tikarga (Mad.), equestris (Bom.), lineata, Braminea, contaminata (Mal.), Fabr.: variegata, Linn.: Sabina (Bom.) Drury.

III.—PLANIPENNIA.

Family Sialina.

Hermes, Gray.—maculipennis (Mad.), Gray.

Chauliodes, Latr.—simplex (As.), Walk.: subfasciatus (As.), West.: pusillus, M'Lach.

Neuromus, Ramb.—infectus (Darj.), montanus (Sik.), fenestralis (Darj.), latratus (As.), intimus, M'Lach.: testaceus (As.); albipennis (Nep.), Walk.

Family Hemerobina—Ant-lions, aphia-lions.

Rapesma, M'Lach.—viridipennis, Walk.

Mantispa, Ill.—nodosa (As.), quadrituberculata (N. I.) lineolata (Nep.), indica (Nep.), West.: rufescens (Mad.), Latr.: Cora (Mad.), New.

Osmylus, Latr.—conspersus, tuberculatus, Walk.

Chrysopa, Leach.—infecta (Mad.), New.: candida, Fabr.

Palpares, Hagen—patiens (N. I.), infimus (N. I.), Walker: pars-dus (N. I.); zebratus (N. I.);

Macronemurus, Hagen—nefandus (N. I.), Walker.

Stenares, Hagen—improbus (N. I.), Walker.

Formicaleo, Hagen—audax (Nep.), verendu (N. I.), vesanus (N. I.), minax (N. I.), pugnax (N. I.), dirus (N. I.), truculentus (N. I.), Tappa (Nep.), Walker.

Acanthaclisi, Hagen—inclusa (N. I.), Walker.

Creagris, Hagen—perfidus (N. I.), Walker.

Glenurus, Hagen—infestus (N. I.), tacitus, Walker.

Myrmecaelurus, Hagen—acerbus (N. I.), implexus (N. I.), Walker.
Tomateres, *Hagen*—*pardalis* (Mad.), *Fabr*.: *astutus* (N. I.),
*Walker.*
Helioomitus, *M'Lach.*—*insimulans* (N. I.), *inmotus* (N. I.),
dicax (N. I.), *verbosus* (N. Ben.), *profanus* (N. I.), *Walker.*
Ogcoaster, *West.*—*tessellata*, segmentator (N. I.), *West.*
Acheron, *Lef.*—*longus* (Ben.), *Walker.*
Hybris, *Lef.*—*angulata* (As.), *Westwood.*
Ascalaphodes, *M'Lach.*—*canifrons*, *West.*

Family *Panorpina*—Scorpion-flies.
Panorpa, *Linn.*—Charpentieri (In.), *Burm.*: *appendiculata* (Mad.), *West.*: *furcata* (Nep.), *Hard.*

Family *Nematopterina.*
Nematoptera, *Burm.*—*filipennis* (Cen. In.), *West.*

**IV.**—**Phryganina.**

Family *Hydropsychina*—Caddis-flies.
Hydropsyche, *Pict.*—*hyalina*, *Pict.*: *multifaria* (Mad.), *Walk.*

Family *Leptocerina.*
Setodes, *Rambur.*—*argentifera*, *M'Lach.*
Leptocerus, *Leach*—*indicus* (N. Ben.), *Walk.*

References.


Walker.—Catalogue of the Neuropterous insects in the British Museum, I. (1852-3-6).


**LEPIDOPTERA**

The order Lepidoptera (scale-winged) comprises those insects so well known under the names butterflies and moths. In this order the metamorphosis is complete and the change to the pupa and imago states is well marked. The body comprises the head, thorax and abdomen. The head is furnished with a suctorial apparatus, eyes and antennæ. The mouth consists of filaments or threads united together to form a trunk or tube representing the maxillæ of other insects and adapted for sucking the juices on which the perfect insect lives. The base of the trunk is protected by two palpi corresponding to the labial palpi of other insects and the maxillary palpi are small and sub-obscleate in many species. The labrum also is small, conical or subulate, and the labium is composed of a single piece, flat and triangular. The mandibles are very small and rudimentary and are in some species sub-obscleate. The true eyes are compound, but occasionally there are two ocelli between them. The antennæ vary much in form in different groups. In the diurnal tribes they terminate in a knob, hence the name Rhopalocera (knob-horned): in the crepuscular groups they are usually fusiform, and in the nocturnal they are thread-like or hair-like and assume various forms, hence the name Heterocera. In the last group some are pectinated like the teeth of a comb; others are plumose like a tuft of feathers; and others again are branched. The three segments of the thorax are in appearance one and carry on the upper side the organs of flight and on the under side the legs. The abdomen is attached to the thorax by only a portion of its breadth and is not furnished with either a sting or an ovipositor. The scales which bear the colouring matter are attached to the framework of the wings by a stalk or pedicel and are laid on somewhat like the tiles on a roof. In form the scales are usually
rounded towards the pedicel and truncated at the outer edge with a toothed border. Amongst the diurnal Lepidoptera, the wings in repose are usually folded perpendicularly, and amongst the crepuscular and nocturnal groups the wings are folded horizontally. The legs are six in number and the tarsi are five-jointed and have a pair of hooks at the end. The first pair of legs are in many species rudimentary and of no apparent use, except perhaps to clean the front of the head and the trunk. The caterpillars or larvae possess twelve segments or articulations which are furnished beneath on the anterior segments with three short scaly legs, terminating in a cushion surrounded by hooks and on the posterior segments with from four to ten false legs. These larvae feed on vegetable substances and before the transformation into the imago state change to a pupa or chrysalis, in which the limbs, thorax and abdomen of the imago may be seen. The corneous envelope of the chrysalis varies much in form. In *Danais chrysippus* it is of a grass-green or pink colour adorned with small spots of gold and is attached by a pedicel to its food plant. Other species form cocoons and others again bury themselves in the earth. The senses of touch, sight, hearing and smell are strongly developed, and the squeak of *Acherontia* when captured, though produced only by the air escaping from two cavities in the abdomen, may be likened to the fifth sense.

It is not so necessary to discuss the basis of classification, as the different families are sufficiently distinguished in the works quoted in the 'References' at foot. The great families of which representatives are found in the Kumaon Himalaya are the *Nymphalidae, Lemoniidae, Lycanidae, Papilionidae* and *Hesperidae*. The *Nymphalidae* are numerous both in genera and species and many are distinguished by the strength of their wings and their steady, swift flight. The Purple Emperor and the Fritillaries of British collectors belong to this family. For the most part, the insect in the pupa state is attached by a pedicel and has not the support of the slight skein of thread passed round the body which is noticed in other families. The fore-legs also are imperfect and unfitted for walking. In the *Lemoniidae* the chrysalis is attached by a slender thread across the body. They are chiefly natives of tropical America, and in these hills but four genera have been captured by me,
of which, moreover, there are few species. The Lycaenidae are numerous in genera and species and include the Blues, Coppers and Hair-streaks of the British collectors. In this family the chrysalis is attached by the tail and girt by a silk thread across the body. The Papilionidae include the true Papilionidae or swallow-tails and the Pieridae or whites. The former are always known by the apparently four-branched nervule and the spur on the anterior tibiae. The pupa is braced or sub-folliculate and varies much in form. It never has the head pointed as in the Pieridae. In India the latter family hardly bears out its English name: some, like P. Nabellica, are nearly black; others are blue, or are adorned with red, crimson, chrome, yellow or orange colours. The Hesperidae or skippers are very numerous in species and individuals. The pupa is attached by the tail and is supported by a skein of thread around the body. This family is also marked by the possession of a pair of spurs on the middle of the hind tibiae, and in India many species are adorned with bright colours.

The differentiation of the genera is chiefly based on the form of the legs and the form and neuration of the wings.\(^1\) A clear appreciation of the position and nomenclature of the neuration of the wings is essential to the understanding of any description of the diurnal Lepidoptera. It would, however, lead us too far away to enter into this subject here or to discuss the interesting anatomy and transformations of this order. We have not the materials for estimating exactly the number of species of Lepidoptera found in India, but in a large collection from Bengal examined in 1865, the Rhopalocera numbered 409 species and the Heterocera 1,207 species. The single collection of the late Mr. W. S. Atkinson, examined in 1880, added 650 new species of Heterocera; and if we take the numerous additions made by other collectors and the species recorded by others, we have about 900 species of Rhopalocera and about 2,500 species of Heterocera, chiefly from the Bengal Presidency. The Heterocera of the north-west Himálaya have hardly been worked and no good list yet exists for this group. In the following lists the Rhopalocera represent, with few exceptions, actual captures in the tract between the Tons and the Súrda, the Düns and Bhábar by

\(^1\) Heinemann's description of the terminology of the Lepidoptera in Smithsonian Contributions to Knowledge, IV., M. C., 1869, is accurate and concise.
myself or others. The list of *Heterocera* contains also a number of typical species captured in Darjiling, Calcutta and western Asám, and sent me by the late Mr. W. S. Atkinson as an aid in determining species. It is to be regretted that my notes do not enable me to separate these from the species actually recorded from Upper India. This list can therefore only be taken as a record of species that may or may not occur in the tract for which the *Rhopalocera* list shows actual captures.

The *Heterocera* include both the crepuscular and nocturnal groups, and the list gives the families recorded as occurring in the Bengal Presidency. At the foot of the list of each family the genera are noticed which, though found in India, have not yet, with few exceptions, been identified as occurring in Upper India. The tribe Sphinges or Hawk-moths affords numerous examples. They are easily recognized by their prismatic or fusiform antennæ, which are usually thickest in the middle and are terminated by a little flake of scales. They fly with great force and swiftness, so that it is most difficult to capture them uninjured, and are named from a supposed resemblance in the position usually assumed by the caterpillar to the attitude of the phinx. They pass their pupa stage in the ground. The tribe Bombyces is also very well represented in India, but the space at our disposal will not allow us to note the very interesting families comprised in it, except the *Bombycida*, which from its economic value and the efforts now being made to localise sericulture in the Dehra Dún demands and deserves considerable attention. We shall first reproduce the late Captain Hutton’s valuable note on the family which is but little known, and coming from a practical naturalist such as he was should have wider circulation. We shall then describe the different experiments that have been undertaken to ascertain whether silk culture can be made a profitable practical industry like indigo and tea.

*Notes on the Bombycida, as at present known to us, by Captain Thomas Hutton.*

*Bombyx Mori*, Linnaeus.—The largest of the domesticated Chinese Bombyces, originally from China, about north latitude 39° to 34°. Also in Japan.

1 Dated 26th July, 1871. So far as I am aware nothing has been discovered to invalidate the statements here made, and these ‘Notes’ may still be taken as a summary of our scientific knowledge of the silk-producing moths of India.
This has been cultivated in Europe, especially in France and Italy, as well as in Syria, Egypt, Persia, Bukhárn, Afghanistan, Kashmir, in one or two localities of the Northern Panjáb, near the hills, and thrives well at Mussoooree, everywhere feeding upon various species of mulberry and everywhere an annual, only except at Mussoooree, where I can obtain two crops. This is the worm that lately failed in France after centuries of domestication. It occurs nowhere in the lowland Gangetic provinces, but its name is assigned, in ignorance, to all the under-mentioned species. This species has been introduced into Australia, where it is said to thrive well, although Dr. Wallace of Colchester has lately informed me that Australian eggs do not hatch so kindly and regularly in England as English-bred eggs; instead of coming forth in a swarm, they appear daily in small quantities only. This I attribute to the high temperature of Australia having acted injuriously upon the constitution, which is debilitated. The best silk of all is produced by this species, and readily sells, with good reeling, at 25 shillings per pound. Mr. Cope sold some at that rate which he produced in the Panjáb; and that reared at Mussoooree fetched the same price. A splendid silk is produced by crossing this species upon the smaller monthly worm known in Bengal as the desi, but the crossing requires great attention, and the cut-turn after all may not be worth the trouble, for, unless very closely watched and attended to, the worms will invariably revert to annuals. Silk—golden yellow when in health.

2. *Bombyx tector*, Hutton.—This species is cultivated sparingly in several parts of India, but its constitution is thoroughly worn-out, and it ought to be sent to a hill climate. At Mussoooree it thrives well, and although, like the last, an annual everywhere else, here it yields a second or autumnal crop also. It was originally brought from China, near Nankin, in north latitude 32°, but is fast fading away from Bengal. It is cultivated in France and Italy and in China, as well as in Bengal, and in those countries generally produces a pure white silk; in Italy there are more white than yellow cocoons, but in France more yellow than white; this is dependent upon climate, as is well shown at Mussoooree, where worms introduced from Bengal produce white cocoons for the first crop, but almost all yellow in the second crop. The worm being northern is impatient of heat and suffers accordingly in constitution; the silk in consequence becoming white, which, as I have elsewhere pointed out, is generally a sign of loss of constitution, not only among silk-worms, but among animals still higher in the scale of nature; the natural colour of the worm of *B. Mori* is nearly black-brindle, whereas the worms under domestication are of a sickly creamy white. So, then, the climate of France, being more temperate than that of Italy, produces more yellow than white cocoons. This species is often termed the Milanese or Italian stock, and in Bengal is known as the *bara púta*, because its cocoon is larger than those of the so-called *desi* worms or polyvoltines. It is cultivated in Assám and, according to Dr. Roylo, is there and elsewhere called "Pat major," although it is invariably confounded with *B. Mori*, than which it is at least an inch smaller, though in other respects closely resembling it. The cocoons are of a different texture with more fios. The silk varies in price from 18 to 22 shillings per pound. Unless it be very soon transferred to the hills, this species will certainly die out; here I could insure its life without difficulty.
3. *Bombyx Crass*, Hutton.—This is the largest of the monthly worms, and in Bengal passes under the native name of the Madræl or Nisiri, and is as usual confounded by Europeans with *B. Mori*, although the one passes as an annual, and the other as a monthly worm. The silk is good, of a golden yellow, and the worms thrive best in a temperate climate; in Aâm (spud Roylo) it is known as “Pat minor.” This species is cultivated in several parts of India, and thrives well at Mussooree. It is to be particularly remarked, however, that none of the Chinese species, whether annual or monthly, have hitherto succeeded in the North-Western Provinces; Dr Roylo long since remarking that all the Old Company’s flatures did not extend higher up the country than about 2° of north latitude, owing to the dry hot nature of the North-Western climates.

4. *Bombyx fortunatus*, Hutton.—Known to the Bengalis as the dasi worm and, like the others, digustified by Europeans with the name of *B. Mori*. Silk—golden yellow, distributed over Bengal and other parts of Southern India; but people know so little of the distinguishing characters of species, that it becomes very difficult to say what species is alluded to in magistrates’ reports, unless the native name is mentioned. This also is one of the polyvoltines. A sure mark of distinction between the worm of this species and that of any of the others exists in the fact that when near maturity it becomes of a dull leaden blue color. This species thrives best in the cold weather. It is very small, but yields a good cocoons, although the returns of silk are said to be uncertain; there are no dark worms observable among them. The worm is figured in the second part of my paper “On the Beversion and Restoration of the Silkworm.”

5. *Bombyx sinensis*, Hutton.—This is known as the “Sina” of Bengal, but, like the others, it originally came from China; it is very prolific, and even at Mussooree goes on yielding crop after crop up to the middle of December. The cocoons vary in colour, some being white and others yellow, while others even have a beautiful faint greenish hue. These changes clearly show that the health of the worm is becoming impaired. There is a peculiarity about these also which may enable the tyro to distinguish them from any of the others: while all the other species hatch slowly during the morning, from six to twelve o’clock, the Sin worms come forth all in a batch, and continue hatching all day and all night.

6. *Bombyx arracanensis*, Hutton.—This I have only once been able to procure and the worms died off soon after hatching. The cocoon is said to be larger than those of the Bengal monthlies, but very little beyond the fact of its existence appears to be known. As the species is supposed to have been introduced from Burma, it may probably turn out to be the same as that which was lately reported to exist in Burma.

7. *Bombyx*—?—I have heard of a species which in Central India is said to yield three crops of silk in the year, and that as soon as they are hatched the worms are placed out upon mulberry trees and left there until they spin the cocoon. Some of the cocoons were kindly sent to me, but were so crushed in transit that they were destroyed; the cocoons were small, but the silk was good, of a pale colour and something like that of *B. fortunatus*. The following, with the
exception of *B. Huttoni*, are little known. Mr. F. Moore wishes to place them in a separate genus under the name of "Theophila," one of his chief characters being the rows of spines on the larvae; I object, however, to the establishment of this genus, because, in truth, we know little or nothing about them, and as to the spines, two species only are as yet known to possess them; nevertheless, they certainly do not stand properly under the genus *Bombyx*, but we must wait yet awhile in order to ascertain whether all can be included in the same genus. (*B. Horsfieldii* (Moore) is a native of Java.)

8. *Theophila Huttoni*, Westwood. Cab. Or Ent. t. 12 f 4. —This is a wild mountain species, feeding on the indigenous mulberry of Simla, Mussooree and Almora. I first discovered it at Simla in 1837, and afterwards in great abundance at Mussooree. In some years they swarm to such an extent that by the end of May, the worms of the first, or spring brood, have thoroughly denuded even large forest trees, not leaving a single leaf. In this predicament they quit the tree in search of another, which they generally find near at hand, and which is then soon thickly covered with cocoons spun in the leaves; but if, unfortunately, they fail to find a tree at hand, the whole brood perishes, the most forward worms spinning cocoons among shrubs and grass. The trees thus denuded, instead of dying, are in another month once more in fall leaf, as if nothing had happened. *T. Huttoni* is a strong and hardy species, yielding a beautiful soft, whitish silk; and although the worm is too intractable and wandering to be treated in the usual manner in the house, yet I am by no means sure that it cannot be turned to good account by collecting the cocoons from the trees, as was evidently done in the outset by the Chinese with respect to *B. Mori*.

9. *Theophila bengalensis*, Hutton.—If the species discovered some years ago in Bengal by my friend Mr. A. Grote is correctly figured in my paper No. 2, just alluded to, then that sent to me from Chota Nagpur in 1869, by Mr. King, must be distinct, for it is in all respects as to shape, colouring, markings, &c., a perfect miniature of *B. Huttoni*; that it is distinct, however, is shown in the smaller size both of larva and imago, as well as in its being a polyvoltine instead of a bivoltine like *B. Huttoni*. In Chota Nagpur the food was the leaf of *Artocarpus Lakoocha*, upon which tree likewise Mr. Grote found his specimens; but as the latter gentleman was in the habit of employing an accurate native delineator of insects, I much doubt any error occurring in the figure kindly supplied by him to me, and therefore am inclined to regard Mr. King’s species as distinct from Mr. Grote’s, and would term the Chota Nagpur insect *Bombyx* (Theophila) *affinis*, (nob.) in reference to the remarkable affinity to *B. Huttoni*, in all its stages.

10. *B. affinis*, Hutton.—When the young worms hatched at Mussooree from eggs and cocoons were sent from Chota Nagpur, I had no leaves of *Artocarpus* within some miles and was sadly puzzled to feed the worms; I tried, without success, the leaves of wild fig trees, *Ficus venosa*, *Morus nigra*, *Morus cinerea*, *M. multicaulis*, *M. cucullata*, *M. serrata* (wild), but all to no purpose, and I had almost made up my mind to lose the species, when it suddenly occurred to me to try the leaves of *M. indica*. With these I succeeded, the young worms riddling the hard, coarse leaf into a perfect sieve in a few minutes. Like *B.
**Huttoni**, in the two first stages they were dreadfully troublesome, wandering down from the branches and spreading all over the table, but as they grew larger they became more tractable and remained tolerably quiet, eventually spinning their cocoons in the leaf like *B. Huttoni*.

When the moths appeared, there was equal difficulty in getting them to pair, and then even many of them laid no eggs; those that did so deposited them in batches and then covered them over thickly with the brush or tuft of hair at the end of the abdomen; thus the eggs of *B. Huttoni* are pale straw colour, glued to the trunk or branches of the tree, and quite naked, whereas those of *B. affinis* are of an orange colour and covered with dark hair. This renders it difficult to detect them on the bark, and the covering is probably used as a non-conductor of heat. The eggs of *B. Huttoni* are scattered along the under side of the small branches or over the bark of the trunk, whereas those of *B. affinis* are placed in patches or groups, and none of the eggs that remain without a coating of hair ever produce worms. I obtained four broods, the last being reared on the trees of *M. nigrum* in the open air. I am sorry to add that none survived the winter, although the cocoons were kept in a room with a fire; thus, after all my trouble, I lost the species. The silk resembles that of *B. Huttoni*, and is equally good, although from the smaller size of the cocoons there is less of it. Mr. Grote kindly sent me a specimen of his moth which, so far as I can remember, was whitish and very much smaller than that of *B. affinis*.

11. *Theophila subnotatus*, Walker, Proc. Lin. Soc. III., 186 (1859).—Nothing more is known of this species than is contained in Mr. Walker’s description of the moth, and that it was procured from Singapore by Mr. R. A. Wallace; neither the larva nor its food is mentioned. Whether this be a true *Theophila* or not we cannot tell. (*T. mandarina*, Moore, is a native of Chekiang, China.)

12. *Theophila Sherwilli*, Moore.—This is closely allied to *B. Huttoni*, but the larva is unknown; all that has been ascertained is that the specimen was obtained from a collection made by the late Major J. L. Sherwill, but whether captured in the plains or at Darjiling no one knows. People who have often collected at Darjiling assure me they never saw the species there; hence I incline to regard it as a lowlander, feeding on *Ariocarpus* perhaps. All that Moore says of it is that it is “allied to *B. Huttoni* and differs from it in being somewhat larger, and of a grayer colour, the fore-wing having the apical patch, fuliginous instead of black, and it has only a single transverse discal streak (instead of the two as in *B. Huttoni*). A most prominent character is that the abdomen is tipped with black, as well as having the dark waistband.”

13. *Ocinara religiosa*, Helfer, J. A. S. Ben., VI., 4.—Although this stands as a *Bombyx*, the entire description as given by Dr. Helfer applies rather to a species of *Ocinara*. It is called the Jori silk-worm by Helfer, and the Deo-muga silk-worm by Mr. Hugon. It is said to occur in Assam and Silhet, but I have failed to elicit information from those localities. Bombyces are far less erratic than the allied genera of *Theophila* and *Ocinara*, and if indigenous in any district, there they will remain year after year, sometimes in greater, sometimes in lesser, numbers; but *Theophila* and *Ocinara* are both inconstant; plentiful one year, absent altogether the next, and with the latter sometimes for two or three
years. Hence Grote for four or five years lost sight of *Theophrastus bengalensis*—and no one seems to have seen Helfer's *B. religiosa* since the time of its discovery.

14. *Ocinara Lida* Moore. (O. Moorei, Hutton) Cat. Lep., E. I. C. Mus., II., 381.—This species is found at Mussoorie, where it feeds upon the leaves of *Ficus venosa*, the larva being very like that of a *Geometra*, and spinning a small white cocoon on the leaf or against a stone beneath the tree. It is too small to be serviceable. I named it after Mr. F. Moore, but he tells me it is the same as the Javanese *O. Lida*. It is a multivoltine. It feeds on the wild fig also. (*O. diaphana*, Moore, also occurs in the Khasi hills.)

15. *Ocinara lactea*, Hutton.—This also occurs at Mussoorie, feeding on *Ficus venosa* and spins a curious little cocoon of a yellow colour within the leaf; over the cocoon is laid a net-work of yellow silk, too small to be of use. It has several broods during the summer. The larva is smooth, whereas that of the preceding is hairy. (*O. dilecta*, Walker, is a native of Java.)

16. *Ocinara Commata*, Hutton.—The moth of this is white, with a dark comma-shaped mark on the disc of the upper wings; hence the name. It occurs both in the Dnnd and at about 5,500 feet of elevation below Mussoorie.

17. *Trilocia varia*, Moore. Cat. Lep. E. I. C. Mus., II., 382.—Is a small species found in Kanara; and again by Mr. Grote in Calcutta. As a silk-yielder it is of no value. For further remarks on these species, consult the second part of my paper "On the Reversion and Restoration of the Silkworm." (J. Agri.-Hort. Cat., 1864, Trans. Ent. Soc.)

18. *Cricula trifenestrata*, Helfer.—This handsome and curious species is found in various parts of India, sometimes in such numbers in the larva state as to become a perfectly destructive pest; it defaces the mango trees of every leaf, destroys the foliage of the cashew-nut, and is even said to attack the tea plants. It occurs in Burma, Assam, Maulmain, and Chota Nagpur in Central India. The cocoons are formed in clusters, so closely interwoven that they cannot be separated for reeling, which, indeed, their very texture prohibits; they are therefore carded, but are not much used; the cocoons are very irritating, from a number of minute bristly hairs from the caterpillars. I am inclined to think there are two species now standing under this name; as some cocoons are very much reticulated, while those from other localities are far more closely-woven and scarcely reticulated at all. This will never prove productive as a silk-yielder, unless the cocoons can be reduced to a gummy pulp and used for some other purposes (*C. drepanoides*, Moore, occurs in Sikkim.)

19. *Anthera Mylitia* Drury.—This handsome species is distributed all over India from Burma to Bombay; but it has to be observed that there are in this wide range several distinct species included under the name. To separate these effectually must be the work of time, and until it is done, there can be no really good Tusseh silk produced. That several of those species are capable of producing a very valuable article of commerce is an undoubted fact, and from its cheapness and durability it would be a boon to that class of the British population which cannot afford to indulge in expensive silks. At present the native method is this: At the season when the cocoons
have been formed, the jungles swarm with them, and men sally forth to pluck them from the trees. These jungles, however, contain several distinct species, a thing of which the natives are profoundly ignorant; these cocoons are all promiscuously huddled together placed in hackeries, and carted off to the dealers. They are then sorted according to size, thickness, colour, &c., and named accordingly as a kind of trade mark, but without any reference to species. The cocoons selected for reeling are treated in the roughest manner and all kinds spun off together; those that are kept for breeding are allowed to eat out of the cocoon, as it is termed, and to interbreed, still without reference to species; and as this has been going on from time immemorial, of course the species have become blended into a most confusing cross-breed. Hence it results that if a dozen cocoons are taken at random, no two moths will resemble each other.

This system of crossing is not confined to the Tusseh group. I have detected it more than once in what were termed Japan worms imported direct from that island; indeed, I have not only detected the cross, but I have succeeded in separating the species which composed it; in one instance. I found B. Mori crossed with B. sinensis, and on another occasion B. textor and B. sinensis. In the case of domesticated species there is no great difficulty to contend with, but with regard to the wild species the thing is very different, and, in short, I can scarcely yet say that I see my way at all clearly. In the Lehra Dún and extending up the hill side to about 4,500 feet, perhaps more, we have two species of Tusseh, one of which is also found in Central India; what the other is I am not yet prepared to say. Here, however, we have no artificial crossing, so that our species may be regarded as types. The difficult is to get the sexes of two moths showing marks of relationship to come forth at the same time, so as to obtain a brood and compare the larvae with others. To trust to the reports of the unscientific would only add to the confusion. A gentleman residing in one of these silk districts kindly furnished me with cocoons of what he declared to be distinct species, and furnished me with voluminous notes, but neither the one nor the other furnish the slightest data upon which I can work or depend; that a cross exists I can see, but my correspondent is not able to enter into my views and wishes.

20. Antheraea nublens, Hutton.—This is one of the species that has been crossed upon A. Paphia, and it seems to be not uncommon throughout Central India. It is a well-marked species, and as specimens have been sent to England. The silk would probably rival that of A. Paphia.

21. Antheraea.—I refrain from naming this until I can obtain more specimens; it is found in Central India and in the Dehra Dún. It is quite distinct from either of the foregoing.

22. Antheraea Pernyi, Guér. Mén.—This species was discovered in Manchuria, to the north of China, where it feeds on the oak. According to Mr. Atkinson he has captured two specimens of what he declares to be this species at Darjiling; these flew to a light placed out in the evening, but nothing further was ascertained. The great difference between the climates of Darjiling and Manchuria calls especial attention to this discovery, and leads one to wonder that the species has not been detected at Mussooree and Simla, both farther to
23. *Antheræa Yamamai*, Guér. Mén.—This is a Japan species and is well thought of both in England and in France, where great efforts have been made to introduce it, but as yet with very indifferent success. Last year I received an ounce of these eggs direct from Japan, and found them to thrive admirably on our hill oak; unfortunately my means were not adequate to the undertaking, as gauze covers were found to be indispensable in order to ward off the attacks of insects, such as bugs, the larvae of *Coccinelle*, spiders, &c. However, the experiment was suddenly cut short in one night when the worms were in the fourth stage, by the incursion from below of a swarm of large black ants which carried off every one. The species however is well worth another trial.

21. *Antheræa assana*, Helfer.—This is the *Muga* or *Musa* worm of Assám which produces a very excellent silk, which, if well reeled by skilful hands, instead of being carded, would be extremely valuable. I have found this species in the Dehra Dún feeding upon a tree known to the natives as "Kirki," but I only procured one male and have not since seen another.

22. *Antheræa Perrotetti*, Guér Men.—Said to occur at Pondicherry, but although I long ago applied to the late M. Perrotet, he could not procure a specimen of it, although he sent *Antheræa Paphia* (vera) and *Actias Selene*. I am half inclined to regard it as a mere variety of *A. Paphia*.

23. *Antheræa Helferi*, Moore.—Is found at Darjiling, the cocoon resembling that of the common Tusseh.

24. *Antheræa Frithii*, Moore.—Is another Darjiling species, of which we know no more than of the last.

25. *Antheræa Roylei*, Moore.—Is common at Simla, Mussoores, Almora, and, I think, Darjiling. It feeds upon the common hill oak, spinning a large but thin cocoon between three or four leaves. I found it at Simla in the winter of 1836 by following a flock of tomtits, one of which, after a time, began tapping so loudly that I hastened to the spot and found the little fellow hard at work on the outer cocoon, from which I drove him off and pocketed the prize. The outer coating is very strong, and I do not think it could be reeled; but within this case is the true cocoon, of an oval form and yielding a good silk. The worms are easily reared, and sometimes give two or three crops, but this is when treated in the house. The males will couple with *Antheræa Paphia*, but the produce never comes to anything.

26. *Antheræa*—This is a species occurring near Bombay and discovered by the Messrs. Robertson of the Civil Service, who regard it as allied to *A. Yamamai* of Japan. From the rough sketch of the cocoon sent me it certainly appears to differ from *A. Paphia*, though I do not think it can possibly be *A. Yamamai*. (*A. Messannah**, Moore, occurs in Assám and *A. andamana*, Moore, in the Andamans).

27. *Antheræa*—Nothing is known of this species, except that I possess a well-formed (probably male) cocoon of about the size of one of the *B. Mori*; the peculiarity exists in there being no vestige of a pedicle or safety rope, the cocoon being equally perfect at both ends. Unfortunately the label has been lost, and I have not the least recollection of where it came from or who
sent it, although I incline to think it came from Madras. I am particularly anxious to obtain living specimens of this, which is not only an undescribed species, but promises to be a valuable silk-spinner. These remarks will serve to show how much scientific work yet remains to be done in this single genus of *Anthera*.

28. *Attacus Atlas*, Linn.—This is the largest of the real silk-spinners. Is common at 5,600 feet at Mussooree and in the Dehra Don; it is found also in some of the deep warm gulls of the outer hills. It is also common at Hâwal-bâgh near Almora, where the larva feeds almost exclusively upon the ‘Kilmora’ bush or *Berberis asiatica*; while at Mussooree it will not touch that plant, but feeds exclusively upon the large milky leaves of *Exocarps insignis*. The worm is perhaps more easily reared than any other of the wild *Bombyceidae*, producing a very large and well-stuffed cocoon of a grey colour and somewhat difficult to unwind; a strong ley of potash appears to be the best solvent. The species is also abundant in Cachâr, Silhet, and is found also at Akyâb, in Arrakan, as well as in China.

29. *Attacus Edwardsii*, White (P. Z. S., 1859).—This species was discovered at Darjiling and is much darker in colour than the other, and rather smaller in size, but nothing seems to be known of its food and silk.

30. *Attacus Cynthia*, Drury (Ms. II., t. 6 f 2).—Abundant at Mussooree, feeding on various wild plants; common in China, where it feeds on *Ailanthus glandulosa*; found in Assám, Cachâr, Sâgar. Although it is commonly reported to be under cultivation in different places (vide Co’onel Agnew’s Assam Report), yet such is not the case, the *Attacus ricini* being in India invariably mistaken for it. Indeed until a few years ago, when I pointed out the fact, *Attacus Cynthia* was not known to occur in India, the other species passing under that name, as the silk-worms did under that of B. Mori. *Attacus Cynthia* has been imported into France and England and reared out in the open air on trees of *Ailanthus glandulosa*; it has likewise succeeded to some extent in Australia, and I believe they have it also at the Cape of Good Hope. There are difficulties attending the reeling of the silk as there is with all the *Attaci*, but nevertheless the French have succeeded in turning out some very good silk pieces. In England it is not quite so highly thought of as it once was. In Australia Mr. C. Brady has produced silk from it.

31. *Attacus ricini*, Jones (Trans. Linn. Soc., 1804, p. 42).—This is the worm that produces the silk known to the natives as the Arindi silk (from arand, the vernacular name of the castor-oil plant); it is easily reared and feeds on the castor-oil plant, *Ricinus communis*. The silk is obtained by carding. The chief places of cultivation are Assâm, Rangpur, and Dinâipur, in Eastern Bengal, not at Dinapur, as stated in one of Dr. Bennett’s reports. It is also cultivated in smaller quantities in other places. The Mekire to the eastward possess a very fine kind with white silk. *Attacus ricini* thrives well at Mussooree, and has been introduced into France, Algeria, Malta and other places.

32. *Attacus Guerini*, Moore.—Is known only from a few specimens of the moth in some museum in England, and I am induced to regard it as no more than an ill-fed specimen of *A. ricini*. I have failed to procure it from any part of the
country, though I have seen an approach to it in ill-fed specimens of the former in my own trays. This underfeeding or semi-starvation is well exemplified in some very Lilliputian specimens of *Actias Selene*, received from a gentleman who reared it at Serampur, near Calcutta, where he only supplied the worms with food twice a day; the moths are only a quarter of the natural size. (*Attacus adhemar*, Hübner, occurs in Silhet: *A. canningi*, Hutton, in the N.-W. Himalaya: *A. lunula*, Walker, in Silhet: *A. obscureus*, Butler, in cachár).

33. *Actias Selene*, Hübner.—Very common in a wild state at Mussoorie, where it feeds on the wild cherry, wild pear, walnut, *Cedrela paniculata*, (?) *Coriaria nepalensis*, and several other forest trees and shrubs. It occurs also at Almora, Darjiling, Assám, Cachér, Ságar, and at Serampur, near Calcutta. Mr. C. Turnbull failed to reel silk from the cocoons sent down from this, but it has been reeled, though there is not much of it.

34. *Actias Manas*, Doubleday.—Occurs at Darjiling and is a very large species, but nothing has been recorded of its habits, food, or produce.

35. *Actias Leta*, Doubleday.—Is another Darjiling species, the economy of which has yet to be ascertained. (*Actias sinensis*, Walker, occurs in N. China, and *A. ignescens*, Moore, in the Andamans).

36. *Saturnia pyreorum*, Boisduval.—Occurs at Darjiling and in Cachár, but nothing more is known of it.

37. *Saturnia Groeci*, Moore (P. Z. S., 1869).—Has been found at Darjiling and one or two specimens have been captured at Mussoorie; but collectors of moths make no inquiries as to economy, and for all practical purposes the species might as well remain unknown. I am inclined to think that the larva feeds on the wild pear tree (*Pyrus variolosa*).

38. *Saturnia Lindia*, Moore.—Of this nothing more is known than that it occurred in a collection made by the late Captain J. L. Sherwill, and is supposed to be from Darjiling or its neighbourhood. It is allied to *Saturnia Groeci*.

39. *Saturnia Cidosa*, Moore.—From Captain J. L. Sherwill's collection also, and from North-Eastern India, but we have no information regarding it. From its being closely allied to *Saturnia pyreorum*, I should be inclined to suppose it an inhabitant of Darjiling or Cachár.

40. *Neoria Huttoni*, Moore.—Found by myself at Mussoorie at about 6,500 feet of elevation, feeding on the wild pear tree. The larvae are to be found in April. The cocoon is an open net-work, and would produce no silk.

41. *Caligula Simla*, Westwood.—Occurs at Simla, Mussoorie, and in Kumaon, feeding on the walnut, *Salix babylonica*, wild pear tree, &c.; but the cocoon is a mere coarse open net-work, through which the pupa is visible, and yields no silk.

42. *Rinacea Thibetica*, Westwood.—Occurs at Mussoorie, where I have taken it on *Andromeda ovalifolia*, wild pear, and common quince. It occurs also in Kumaon, but the specific name is a misnomer, the insect never approaching
Tibet. Specimens were taken out of a collection made in Kumasi, and because the collector travelled into Tibet it was ridiculously enough called a Tibetan collection, and the species named accordingly. The cocoon is a coarse open net-work, through which the larva is visible, but there is no available silk.

43. *Loesa Katinka*, Westwood.—A very beautiful yellow moth discovered originally in Assam, occurring also, according to my ideas, at Mussoorie. Mr. Moore, however, considers mine as distinct. I am not quite satisfied that the cocoon will not yield silk, but there is very little of it.

44. *Loesa sivalica*, Hutton.—Closely allied to the last, and found at Mussoorie at about 5,600 feet and lower. It will probably yield a small quantity of silk.

45. *Loesa Miranda*, Atkinson.—Found by him at Darjiling; a good and handsome species, but nothing more is recorded of it.

46. *Loesa sikkimensis*, Atkinson.—A very beautiful species found by Mr. Atkinson at Darjiling. It may be known from the others by the smaller size, and by the wings being clouded with maroon. Of its economy nothing is known. Three or four other species of this family occur in Darjiling and Sikkhet, but beyond their existence nothing is recorded.


Those species which, like *Actias Selene* and *Antherea Paphe*, weave strong compact cocoons, perfectly closed at both ends, are furnished on each shoulder with a hard wing spar for the purpose of separating the fibres when the moth is ready to come forth; it may be heard grating against the silk and the point may often be seen protruding. It is common to the genera *Actias* and *Antherea* and was discovered by myself. In *Attacus*, *Neoria*, and *Loesa* the upper end of the cocoon is left open, the fibres pointing forward, closely arranged, like the fine wires of a mouse-trap. No spine is needed in these genera. In *Bombyx* and others, although the cocoons are entire, the silk is loosely woven, and the fibres, being moistened by an acid from the mouth, are then easily separated by the claws on the fore-feet of the moths.

This is about the state and extent of our knowledge of the *Bombycidae* of India: that there are many other species yet to be discovered no naturalist will think of denying. Nature is the book through which the Almighty teaches man to look from earth to heaven, and as His works and knowledge are boundless, so has this beautifully illustrated book no end.

1 There are two valuable papers published in the J. Agri-Hort. Soc. Cal. by Captain Hutton in 1864: (1) "On the reversion and Restoration of the Silkworm, Part I., and (II.) Part II., with distinctive characters of silk-producing Bombycidae;" both these are too long for reproduction here.
The following communication regarding certain experiments made by Captain Hutton\(^1\) with the Japan silk-worm also deserve reproduction here.

He writes that he received the eggs in the beginning of March, when they were just beginning to hatch. This process went on very irregularly for many days, showing that the worms were not in a healthy state. He goes on to say:

"When first hatched the worms had the head and prolegs shining jet black, the anterior segment ashy white, and the rest of the body as usual covered with small tufts of short hair of a pale brown. After the second moult the worm had a good deal of the appearance of the little China monthly worm (\textit{B. sinensis}) known in Bengal as the 'Stna or China,' the markings and smallness of the worm being in some instances quite those of that species, while others of the same age appeared much larger and very much resembled the worms of \textit{B. Mori} or \textit{B. textor}, being of a sickly white with the usual semilunar spots on the back. Like the worms of \textit{B. sinensis}, however, they grew very slowly until the last stage, when the increase in size was rapid and the worms bore all the appearance of a \textit{bara pala} or a dwarf, \textit{B. Mori} being at maturity about 0\textfrac{1}{2} inches long, which is the size to which \textit{B. textor} attains at Mussooriee. For a long time I was sorely puzzled to make out what the worm could be, for the variety in the marking of different individuals was so great and so often changing at the time of moultng that I began to think the worm must be distinct from any known species, until suddenly the mists of doubt were entirely dispelled by the appearance of a black worm in all respects identical with those of my reverted \textit{B. Mori}. From that moment I began to see my way, and when at length on the 2nd of May, just 26 days after hatching, the worms began to spin their cocoons it was perfectly evident that the worm, about which the French have gone mad, and the silk-cultivating world has made such a fuss, is nothing more than a hybrid or cross between the true sickly \textit{B. Mori} and the little monthly \textit{B. sinensis} or 'Stna.'

According to the labels attached to the wooden tubes in which the eggs arrived one hatch should have produced 'white' cocoons, and the other 'green;' yet both have spun them of the same size and shape, and all are of a pale sulphur yellow, except that of the solitary black worm, which is decidedly as to size and colour an under-sized specimen of \textit{B. Mori} of Kashmir and China. The moths, which came out on the 19th May, are miniatures of the pale unhealthy specimens of \textit{B. Mori}, being ashy white with a faint transverse brown line on the upper wing. I have preserved some of the eggs wherewith to carry on my observations, and ascertain whether eventually the cross will wear out as in other instances, and the worms revert to the annual \textit{B. Mori}. Further than this I do not consider the worm worth cultivating as the uncrossed races from which it is derived are to the full as good or even better in every respect, for the \textit{B. Mori} can only be deteriorated by such a cross. I have long known these cocoons, having received specimens both from Mr. Moore of the E. I. Museum and from M. Guérin-Méneville with a request to mention to what species they belonged; I decided that they were the produce of \textit{B. sinensis}, but without any idea then that the worm had been
crossed. In the colour and size of these cocoons we recognise the influence of the small polyvoltine *B. sinensis*, and in the shape and texture the influence of *Bombyx Mori*. As to the univoltine-polyvoltine character of the worms, all will depend upon climate, and the degree of influence exercised over individual worms or moths by the species from which they spring, and no purchaser of eggs in Japan, China or elsewhere can ever be certain that he has secured a batch of either univoltine, bivoltine or polyvoltine worms, because all experiments hitherto tried in the crossing of the various species of silkworms have invariably shown that there is always a strong tendency to revert to the strongest and healthiest species. I found this to be the case in my own experiments in crossing *B. Mori* of Kashmir with *B. Crasi*, the *Nistri* of Bengal. A cross between a univoltine and a polyvoltine species will produce eggs some of which will be polyvoltine for a time, others will be bi- or tri-voltine, but the majority (unless in a hot climate) will revert at once to univoltines or annuals. Climate or temperature, as I long since remarked, will influence the colour of the cocoons, and this is shown in the fact that instead of 'white' and 'green' cocoons my Japanese worms have all produced sulphur yellow cocoons.

**SERICULTURE.**

In 1856, Captain Hutton brought to the notice of Government the existence of several species of silk-producing moths in Mussooree and the Dehra Dún, and suggested that steps should be taken to ascertain whether they would submit to domestication like the silk-moth (*Bombyx Mori*) of China. His proposals were accepted, and in 1858 a grant was made to carry them out. In 1859, Captain Hutton reported that the wild mulberry tree was unfitted by slowness of growth for extended operations and that the quick-growing Chinese plant was not attractive to the *Bombyx Huttoni*, the subject of his experiment. Further, that the worms of this species, were irreclaimably wild even when crossed with other species and therefore that the experiment had failed both as regards the insect and the tree. He showed, however, that the climate was admirably adapted for sericulture and advocated further attempts with other silk-producing moths and other trees. The grant was, however, withdrawn and sericultural experiments were left to individual effort for some time. In 1850, the Chinese mulberry (*Morus chinensis*) was introduced by Dr. Jameson, and subsequently propagated in the Dún, where it thrrove luxuriantly, as well as a variety known as *M. multicaulis*, both of which are eminently suited for silk-worm breeding. The latter is said to be a variety of *M. alba* though,
according to Mr. Duthie, it now varies much from the great shrub described under that name.

In 1867, Captain Murray commenced a series of experiments with seed imported from Bengal and obtained good returns in quality and quantity. In the meantime the Government gardens had distributed cuttings and plants of the better kinds of mulberries to all who desired to propagate them, but nothing of importance was undertaken and sericulture remained in the purely experimental stage in the hands of private individuals until 1874, when Mr. H. Ross commenced a plantation of mulberries on a large scale at Ambiwala in the Dun.

By the end of 1875 Mr. Ross had twenty acres of young trees not old enough to produce any leaf and 100 old trees fully grown. He procured silkworm seed from Japan and Kashmir, but during his absence the trees were allowed to die, and the seed was neglected. None of that procured from Kashmir hatched and not much of the Japan seed and altogether only about 48 lb. of cocoons were produced and about five to six ounces of seed, a good deal of which died from want of care. The proceedings of the year 1876-77 were equally unsatisfactory, and but little progress was made. The report for 1877-78 is another record of failure, but the carelessness and neglect which were marked features in the operations of the previous year are wanting on the present occasion. The experiment was throughout the year under the personal management of Mr. Ross, whose

1 Mr. Duthie writes:—"The plant (M. multicaulis) according to Bureau (De Candolle's Prodromus, Pt. XVII., p. 244) is given as one of the numerous varieties of M. alba. He mentions that it is cultivated in S. China, where it is considered to be the best kind for rearing silkworms. I suspect, however, that the M. multicaulis of N. India, whatever may have been its origin, is a very different plant to the one known under this name both in Europe and China. M. Bureau describes the leaves of the Chinese plant as being very large, and gives, as a synonym, M. chinensis, a variety which was introduced by Dr. Jameson from China many years ago. The leaves of the latter are certainly very different in appearance from those of the variety known in the Dun as M. multicaulis, which has small thin leaves. It also differs in its behaviour under cultivation. The M. multicaulis of the Dun will grow easily in any kind of soil, whereas the M. chinensis requires a great deal of care. The effect of cultivation and climate on the many varieties of mulberry which have been grown, either for the production of fruit or for the supply of leaves as silkworm food, have added very greatly to the difficulties of botanical discrimination. This is more or less the case with all such plants whose cultivation has extended from very early periods. The characters of the original become in time obliterated or mingled with those of the several varieties which have been produced from the indigenous species. M. multicaulis was in leaf on the 17th January (1880), just a fortnight before any other kind in the garden."
attention to the conduct of the experiment and interest in its success was undoubted. Nevertheless, both worms and eggs failed in an unaccountable manner, the final outturn was very small, and a few villagers to whom worms were given succeeded in rearing much larger cocoons than any that were produced on the Government plantations. The records of the experiment had not been kept in sufficient detail and no data were available from which any lessons that could be relied upon for future guidance could be drawn. The eggs had been kept in Mussooree from May to January each year to prevent their hatching during the hot-weather and rains, when the climatic influences were unfavourable, and much was expected from the operations of 1878-79 to settle many of the questions of detail. The season was, however, an exceptionally unfavourable one. Mild weather, at the commencement of February caused the mulberry to shoot somewhat earlier than was customary and induced the growers to bring down the seed from Mussooree for hatching at an earlier date than usual. No sooner had the young caterpillars appeared than a succession of cold frosty days cut the mulberry shoots back and left the grubs with insufficient nourishment, resulting in small cocoons of inferior quality. The worm was not killed at once when the cocoon was fully formed, but was allowed to partly cut its way through before being destroyed; and even then no precautions were taken to dry the cocoons and the worm was allowed to decompose within and stain the fibre. Notwithstanding all these drawbacks, the report on the small quantity of silk produced was that it was superior to Bengal qualities and a valuable addition to the local supplies. The representative of a Bradford firm of silk merchants interested himself very much in these experiments, and in 1879-80 took over their supervision, the financial responsibility remaining with Government. The results were encouraging: over fourteen maunds of cocoons were brought in by private rearers, and though the quality was not first class, they gave promise of ultimate success. During 1880-81, the entire responsibility for the supervision remained in the same hands and arrangements were made for handing over the Government sericultural establishment and a considerable area for mulberry plantations. A scheme was also under consideration
for the establishment of mulberry plantations at intervals along the slopes of the Himalaya for the purpose of cottage-rearing. The great difficulty to be encountered is in the matter of seed, and this can only be overcome by prohibiting the rearing of seed by villagers, as the worms raised from this seed are invariably diseased and the silk suffers accordingly. It would appear that this precaution is necessary in other countries also. An expert writes (1880):—

"In every country without exception the disease has crept in where cottagers have been allowed to rear seed. The industry has been ruined by it in Asia Minor first, then in Europe (Italy, then France); and as each country's stock became effete and diseased, it had to import seed at great expense, and commenced a drain from another country, which in turn gave the fatal impulse to seed production in the new country with the usual result, that, in hastening to become rich rapidly, the people took to breeding from inferior cocoons, instead of following their old habits of careful selection, with the consequence of deterioration and then disease amongst their stock. Thus Italy commenced a drain from Japan long ago, and as Japan stock required renewing yearly in Italy (as it would not acclimatise, i.e., deteriorated yearly till it was of little or no use after the third year in Italy), this proved a constant drain and great source of revenue to Japan. Then came the failure in France, and once disease creeps in where the cottagers are allowed to breed and sell seed amongst themselves, it only takes about five years to ruin a country. Thus France became ruined so far as stock goes, and the industry is in a ruinous condition, as I saw last year when visiting the silk districts in the south of France. An increased drain came on Japan; the Japanese found greater profit in breeding seed—faults in which are so difficult to discover—to growing and reeling silk, which latter can be so much better judged on its merits. They got careless and greedy, and the usual result followed; they have now had the disease amongst them in Japan for I believe about six years, and the old confidence in Japanese seed is gone. Thus virtually all the seed markets are spoilt, as we know to our cost, as all our imported seed this past season was more or less diseased, and we have lost over Rs. 7,000 in bad seed, besides losing the season. To bring the importance of the question nearer home, the old indigenous Panjáb cocoon is excellent. Mr. Halsey, as an experiment, imported a few Italian eggs into the Panjáb some six or seven years ago, till when the disease was unknown. These Italian eggs brought the disease, and now the indigenous race is ruined, and has failed four years running. We have over Rs. 5,000 out in advances this year to rearers in the Panjáb unworked off owing to the failure again this year. There is more in this still, as the natives will not throw away their old seed; and if we give them new good seed, they will keep the two together and spread the disease amongst our new stock, and ruin us with yearly importing expenses, did we not keep a special rearing establishment out here, or else have plantations of our own in the Panjáb, on which we could keep some check on the seed used."
The only measures for preventing the rearing and distribution of cottage-reared seed that have yet been proposed are that clauses should be entered in the contract with the rearers that they should, under a penalty, bring in all the green seed-cocoons to the central stations to be destroyed there, and that they should rear no other seed than that distributed to them. The future of the silk industry is now in good hands, and so far as skill, experience and capital can conduce to arriving at success, the conditions exist. There can be no doubt that it would not repay a European to conduct the rearing process himself, but it will give the weaker members of the agricultural classes full and remunerative employment, and the European will find his place in supervising the cottage operations, supplying seed, collecting, sorting and disposing of the produce and increasing and tending the mulberry plantations.

The tribes Noctues, Pseudo-deltoides, Deltoides, Pyrales, Geometres, Crambices, Tortrices and Tineines are all represented in the Himalaya. The last three tribes have been but imperfectly worked and the microlepidoptera of India may be said to be almost unknown to science. For beauty of colouring and for economic study the Tineines yield to none. As observed by a distinguished naturalist, “the wings frequently combine with extreme beauty of colouring the most brilliant little stripes and masses of shining silver and burnished gold which under the microscope exhibit a most radiant richness. This lustrous aspect of many species is but a poor recompense for the injury which we receive from many more while in the larva state. These clothe themselves at our expense in the warmest woollen garments which they traverse in all directions, leaving behind a gnawed and well-worn path so thin and bare as to yield to the slightest pressure. They also destroy furs, hair, feathers and many other articles of domestic economy and are the exterminating pests of zoological museums.” The sugar-cane is attacked by a borer in the Mauritius and West Indies identified as the caterpillar of Phalaena saccharalis, Fabr. (= Diatrea sacchari, Guilding) and the same or an allied species occurs in Rohilkhand. Our grain is also liable to great damages from moths, and in the Bombay Presidency the cotton suffers from the ravages of a small species (Depressaria gossypiella) which deposits its eggs in the germen at the time of flowering and the larva feeds on the cotton seeds until the pod is
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES. 205

ready to burst, a little previous to which it opens a round hole in the side of the pod through which it descends to the ground, and burrows into it about an inch, and there assumes the pupa state. The perfect insect is dark fuscous brown, the head and thorax somewhat lighter in colour: fore-wings with an undefined round blackish spot on the disk a little above the centre of a fascia of the same colour, crossing the wings a little above the apex, which itself is black: under-wings silvery grey, darker towards the hinder margin. The only way to arrest its ravages is to dig the soil slightly around the roots of the plant and either collect it to the depth of an inch and burn it or collect the pupae and burn them or apply a caustic solution of lime. Space and time do not allow us to note the many species useful to man or destructive of man's labours, and we hope that the day is not far distant when some of the many labourers in this field of Natural History will give us a series of manuals fitted for the systematist and the economical observer. Every county in England has an almost complete list, but there is not even an attempt at one yet for any order of the insect fauna of India.

References.

Papillons exotiques, &c., by P. Cramer, with supplement by Stoll, Utrecht, 1775-82. In Latin and Dutch, with coloured plates, and giving the type of many Indian species.

Catalogus systematicus ad Cramerum, by H. Verloren. Traj. ad Rhen. 1837.


The Lepidopterous insects of Nepál, by Dr. Gray. London, 1846.

The genera of the diurnal Lepidoptera, comprising their generic characters, a notice of their habits and transformations, and a catalogue of the species of each genus, by E. Doubleday and J. O. Westwood. London, 1846-52.
Kollar’s list of Lepidopterous insects in Hügel’s Kaschmir, 1844.


A list of the same collected in the Bengal Presidency by Mr. A. E. Russell, B.C.S., Mr. W. S. Atkinson, and Captain J. Lind Sherwill, by the same. Ibid. December, 1865, and January and May, 1867, p. 44, 61.

Description of new Lepidopterous insects from the collection of the late W. S. Atkinson, by Hawtison and Moore Calcutta, 1879-82.

The following amongst others contain descriptions of Indian species:—


Lang.—Ent. Month. Mag. IV. 247 and 1868, p. 36.

Wood Mason and de Nicéville.—J. A. S., Ben., XLVII. ii. 175: L. ii. et seq.


Types of Lepidoptera-Heterocera in the British Museum, pts. 1—5, 1881.

Handbook of Indian Silks at South Kensington, by Wardle, 1891.

**LEPIDOPTERA.**

**Rhopalocera.**

A = submontane tract including Tarai, Bhabar, and Dúna.

B = outer Himalaya.

C = upper valleys towards and beyond the snows.

Family *Nymphalidae.*


Parantica, Moore—Aglea, A B, Cramer.
Euplesia, Fabr.—Core, Cramer, á: vermiculata, Butler, B:
Deione, West., B: Phænareta, Schall., B, rare: splendidens, Butler, Káli Kumaon, B.
Zophoessa, Westwood.—Yama, Moore, B.
Melanitis, Fabricius.—Jeda, Linn.: Banksia, Fabr.: Aswa,
Bela, Moore, A, B: Constantia, Cramer, B.
Neope, Butler.—Pulaha, B., Moore.
Lethe, Hübner—Europa, Fabr., B: Dyrta, Felder, B: Rohria,
Fabr, B: Verma, Kollar, B: Sidonis, Hewson, B: Hyrania, Kollar, B: Visrava,
Moore, B.
Orinoma, Gray.—Damaris, Gray: wooded lowlands.
Erebia, Dalm.—Kalinda, B, C, Moore.
Callerebia, Butler—Scanda, Annada, Nirmala, B, C, Moore:
hybrida, B, Butler.
Rhaphicera, Butler—satricus, Doub. et Hew., wooded hills beyond Almora.
Satyrus, Latr.—Mærula, Felder, C, rare: Schakra, Kollar, B:
Menava, Moore, C, rare.
Epinephile, Hübner—pulchella (=Neoza, Lang), C: pulchra,
Felder, C: Davendra, C; Cheena, C, Moore: goolmurga, Maiza, rare, Baspa valley, Lang.
Aulocera, Butler.—Saraswati, B, in rains; Padma, B, in rains,
Kollar: Brahminus, Blanchard, B, common:
Weranga, Lang, C, rare: Baldiva, Moore, C: Hübneri, Felder, C.
Calysisme, Moore.—Drusia, Cramer, B: Blasius, A, B; Perseus, B, Fabr.; Visala, B, Moore.
Orsotriœna, Wallengren.—Mandata, A, B; Runeke, B, Moore:
Medus, B., Fabr.
Samanta, Moore.—Nicotia, Hew., A, B: Nala, Felder, B:
Lepcha, B, Moore.


Pareba, *Doubl.*—Vesta, *Fabricius,* A.

Telchinia, *Doubl.*—Viola, *Fabricius,* A.

Messaras, *Drury.*—erymanthis, *Drury,* A, B.


Junonia, *Hübner.*—Lemônia, A; Orythia, A; Asterie, A; Al mana, A; *Linn.*: Hierta, *Fabr.,* A: all occasionally in low valleys in hills before rains.


Pseudergolis, *Felder.*—Wedah (Hara), *Kollar,* B, common in rains.


Cyrestis, *Boisduval.*—Thyodamus, *Boisd.*, B, common, June:


Euripus, *Westwood.*—Halitherses, *Dou. et Hew.*, B : consimilis,
*West.*, B, rare.

Parthenos, *Habner.*—Gambrisius, *Fabr.*, B, rare ?


Daraxa, *Doubl.*, rare.


Neptis, *Fabr.*—Manas, B ; Ananta, B, rains ; Emodes, B, rare ;
Narayana, B ; Zaida, B ; Amba, B ; Vikasi, B ; Soma, B ; Ophiura, B ; Nandina,
A, B ; Aceris, A, B ; Jumba, B, C ; Astola,
B ; Mahendra, B ; Cartica, B, *Moore* :
Magadha, *Felder*, B, C.

Athyama, *West.*—Leucothoe, *Linn.*, A, rare ; B, common : Nepte,
*Cramer*, B, Káli valley : opalina, *Kollar*, B :
Bahula, B, rare ; Cama, B ; Mahesa, B ;
Asura, B, rare ; *Moore* : Inara, *Do. et Hew* ,
B, rare : selenophora, B ; Sankara, B, C,
rare, *Kollar*.

Euthalia, *Habner.*—Lubentina, *Cramer*, B, rare, Káli valley :
Doubledayii, *Gray*, B : Sahadeva, B, rare ;
Durga, B, not common ; Garuda, B, rare ;
Jahnu, B, rare ; Kesava, B, rare ; *Moore* :
Lepidea, *Butler*, B, rare : Appiades, *Men* ,
B, rare, Káli : Somadeva, *Felder*, rare : all are rare and difficult to capture.

B : Namouna, *Doubleday*, B, rare.


**Family Lemoniidae.**


**Family Lycænidae.**


The following are not distributed:—


*Thecla, Fabricius.*—Deria, Moore, B, upper Garhwál.

*Zephyrus, Dalm.*—Syla, Kollar, B: Odata, B, C; Ataxus, B; Duma, B; Katura, B; Hewitson: icanus, B, Moore.

*Aphnæus, Hübner.*—Ictis, Hewitson, A: Vulcanus, Fabricius, B.

*Ilerda, Doubleday.*—Iamu, B, rare; Sena, B, very common; Kollar: Androcles, Dou. et Hew., B: Oda, B; Brahma, B; Moore.

*Camena, Hewitson.*—Ctesia, Hewitson, B.

*Iolaus, Hübner.*—Longinus, B; Cippus, B; Fabricius: Cotys, Hewitson, B, rare and doubtful.

*Sithon, Hübner.*—Lisias, B, rare; Jafra, B, *Fabr.*: Milonia, B, common; Melisa, B, Hewitson: Jangula, Horsfield, B: Acte, B, rare; Onyx, B; Ravata, B; Moore: last three obtained in a soldier's box, doubtful.

*Myrina, Fabr.*—Atymnus, Cramer: B, October in Dún.

*Deudorix, Hewitson.*—Perse, Hewitson, B: Nissa, Kollar, B; Mæcenas, Fabricius (?).

*Arhopala Hew.*—Centaurus, amantes, Hew.

*Amblypodia, Horsfield.*—Diardi (?), Hewitson: quercetorum, B; Ganesa, B; Moore: Rama, Kollar, B; dodonæa, B, Moore.

Family *Papilionidae.*

*Nychitona, Butler.*—Xipha, Fabricius, A: Medusa, Cramer (?).


Family *Hesperida.*

Badamia, *Moore—exclamationis, Fabricius, A, B.*

Ismene, *Swain.—œdipoea, B, Swain.*

Chaoaspe, *Moore—Benjaminii, B, Guér.-Mén.*


Astictopterus, *Felder.—Nicocles, A, Moore.*

Isotoinon, *Moore.—masuriensis, B, Moore.*

Thanaos, *Moore.—stigmata, B, Moore.*

Chapra, *Moore.—Agna, B, Moore.*


Ampittia, *Moore.—Maro, A, Fabricius.*

Halpe, *Moore.—radiana, B, Moore.*

Taractocera, *Butler.—Sagara, A, rare; Danna, B, Moore.*


Tagiades, *Hüblner.—Menaka, A, B, common; Gopala, B, rare; Bhagava, A, rare; Dasahara, A, B, common; Ravi, A, Moore: Atticus, B, Fabr.*

Udaspes, *Moore.—Folus, A, B, common, Cramer.*

Plesioneura, *Felder.*—Dan, *Fabricius,* B: Putra, A, B; Chamunda, A, B; Ambareesa, A, B; Pulomaya, A, B; Dhanada, A, B; *Moore:* leucocerca, *Kollar,* B.


Pyrgus.—Galba, A, *Fabr.*

**II.—HETEROCERA.**

**Tribe—Sphingidae.**

Family *Sphingidae.*


Deilephila, Ochs.—lathyrus, Walk.: livornica, Esper.: Robertsi, Butler.

Daphnis, Hübner—minima, Butler: Bhaga, Moer.: Nerii, Linn.
Philampelus, Harris.—Naga, Moore.


Mimas, Hübner.—decolor, Walker.


Langia, Moore—zenzeroides, khasiana, Moore.

Triptogon, Bremer.—Dyras, indicum, Walker: decoratum, Moore: cristatum, gigas, albicans, silhetensia, oriens, massurensis, fuscescens, spectabilis, fiorale, Butler.

Daphnusa, Walker—porphyria, Butler.


Cypa, Walker—incongruens, Butler.


Acherontia, Hübner.—Styx, West.: morta, Hübner.

Protoparce, Burm.—orientalis (convolvuli, Moore), Butler.

Pseudosphynx, Burm.—nyctiphanes, inexacta, Fo., Walker.

Diludia, Grote—grandis, melanomer' rubescens, vates, tranquillarlis, Butler.

Apocalypsis, Butler—velox, Butler.

Hyloicus, Hübner.—asiaticus, uniformis, Butler.

Nephele, Hübner—hespera, Fabr.

Calymnia, Walker.—Panopus, Cramer.

Tribe—BOMBYCES.

Family Ageriidae.

Sphecia, Hübner—repanda, contracta, Walker.

The following genera found in Bengal also belong to this family:—
Aegeria, Fabr.; Lonyra, Walker; Pramila, Trilochana, Moore; Sciapteron, Staudinger.

Family Zygaenidae.
Zygæna, Fabr.—caschmiensis, Kollar: Asoka, Moore.
Procris, Fabr.—stipata, Walker.


To this family belong the genera:—Northia, Eressa, Phacusa, Walker; Notioptera, Butler.

Family Agaristidae.
Aegocera, Latr.—Venulia, Cramer: bimacula, Walker.


Niksea, Moore—longipennis, Walker.

Nyctalemon, Dalman.—Patroclus, Linnaeus.

Vithora, Moore—indrasana, Moore.

The genera Phægorista, Cleosiris, Boisd., Sendyra, Stretch., belong to this family.

Family Chalcosiidae.

Phalauna, Walker—polymena, Linn.

Phanda, Walker—flamman, Walker.

Nepe, Walker.—Perdica, Walker.


Thymora, Walker.—Zaida, Walker.

Pterotheysanus, Walker—laticilia, Walker.

Epicopeia, Westwood.—Polydora, Philenora, Westwood.

Histia, Hübner—papilionaria, Guérin: fiabellicornis, Fabr.
Cyclosia, Hübner—sanguiflua papilionaris, Drury: Panthons, Cramer; Midama, Boisduval.

Erasmia, Hope—pulchella, Hope.

Campylotes, Westwood—histrionicus, West.: Atkinsoni, Moore.


Chatamia, Moore—flavescens, Walker: nigrescens, Moore: tricolor, Butler.

Milleria, Schaff.—metallica, gemina, fuliginosa, Walker.


Trypanophora, Kollar—semihyalina, Kollar.

Soritina, Walker—leptalina, Kollar.

Chelura, Hope—bifasciata, Hope: glacialis, Moore.


The following genera also belong to this family:—Philopator, Atossa, Boradia, Arachotia, Cadphisea, Cancerkes, Codane, Moore: Epyrgis, Schaff.: Scaptesyle, Herpa, Pintia, Laurion, Betina, Walker: Amesiæ, West.

Family Nyctemeridae.


Leptosoma, Boisd.—latistriga, Walker.

The genera Pitusila Arbudas, Moore: Zonosoma, Trypheromera, Butler, also belong to this family.

Family Euschemidae.

Euschema, Hübner—militaris, Lü. n.: Bellona, discalis, Walker.

Family Callidulidae.

Callidula, Hübner—Petavia, Cramer.

The following genera also belong to this family:—Herimba, Datanga, Moore.
Family Lithosiidae.

Pentacitrotus, Butler—vulneratus, Butler.
Doliche, Walker—gelida, Walker.
Cyana, Walker—detrita, Walker.
Miltochrista, Hübner—nubifascia, Walker: tessellata, mactans Butler.
Digama, Moore—hearseyana, simillis, Moore.
Tripura, Moore—prasena, Moore.
Sidyma, Walker—albifinis, Walker.
Lithosia, Fabr.—bivitta, nigripars, conformis, Walker: vava distorta, nigrifrons, Moore.
Manulea, Wall—calamaria, Moore.
Systropha, Hübner—auviflua, Moore.
Bizone, Walker.—Bianca, signa, peregrina, perornata, fasciculata, guttisera, puella, Walker: adita, bellissima, Moore: pallens, Butler.
Nudaria, Haw.—subcervina, margaritisera, Walker.
Utethesia, Hübner—pullchella, Linn.: venusta, Hubner: cruentata, Butler.

The following genera are also found in Bengal:—Calpenia, Moore: Eligma, Hübner: Macrobrochis, Schaff.: Paraona, Churinga, Vamuna, Mahavira, Korawa, Hesudra, Gloria, Moore: Chryseglia, Butler: Simareea, Tarika, Gandhara, Collita, Katha, Moore: Chryso-rabdia, Butler: Capissa, Dolgoma, Mithuna, Moore: Cossa Walker: Raughana, Moore: Tegulata, Walker: Nishada, Moore:

Family Arctiidae.


Alope, Walker—ocellifera, seminecta, Walker.

Phragmatobia, Stephens—exclamationis, Stephens.

Creatonotos, Hübner—interrupta, Linn.: rubricosta, Moore.


Spilosoma, Stephens—transiens, rhodophila, 4-ramosum, rubescens, suffusa, plagiata, Walker: quadriramosa, erythrozona, casigneta, Kollar: flavalis, sanguinalis, flavicor, similis, Moore.


Spilarctia, Butler—abdominalis, Moore: lacteata, jucunda, Nydia, confusa, Butler.

The following genera also belong to this family and are found in Bengal:—Glanycus, Diacrisia, Areas, Numenes, Alphæa, Amphissa, Alpenus, Icambosida, Anthena, Zana, Dinara, Agrisius, Amerila, Ammatho, Amsacta, Walker: Euchætes, Clemens: Phissana, Carbisa, Pomprana, Rajendra, Challa, Moore.

Family Lipariidae.

Epicopeia, West.—excisa, lidderdalii, maculata, caudata, Butler.

Orgyia, Ochs.—plana, bicolor, Walker.


Lælia, Stephens—circundata, delineata, Walker.
Penorn, Walker—venosa, Walker.


Cispia, Walker—plagiata, punctifascia, Walker.


Lymantria, Hübner—lineata, munda, superans, lunata, incerta, concolor, marginata, grandis, Walker.

Asætria, Hübner—sobrina, albo' unulata, Moore : cara, Butler.

Nagunda, Moore—semicincta, Walker.

Himala, Moore—argentæa, Walker.

Apona, Walker—cashmirensis, Kollar.

Examples of the following genera belonging to this family are found in India:—Arca, Repena, Lacida, Arestha, Antipha, Melia, Prococina, Pantana, Naxa, Odagra, Bazisa, Gazalina, Ricina, Soma, Enome, Somena, Pandala, Nisaga, Pseudomesa, Pida, Mandara, Genusa, Walker : Barygaza, Caragola, Harapa, Heracula, Mahoba, Daplasa, Cudrusia, Imaus, Locharna, Barhona, Selepa, Dura, Pegella, Moore : Chaerotrichæ, Felder : Olene, Porthetria, Psalis, Hübner : Jana, Boisducal : Leucoma, Porthesia, Stephens.

Family Notodontidae.

Cerura, Schrank.—liturata, Walker ; Prasana, Moore.

Cetola, Walker—dentata, Walker.

Ramesa, Walker—Tosta, Walker.

Heterocampa, Doubleday—argentifera, Moore.

Stauropus, Germar—sikkimensis, Moore : alternus, Walker.

Damata, Walker—longipennis, Walker.


Ichthyura, \textit{Hübner}—ferruginea, indica, \textit{Moore}.

Nioda, \textit{Walker}—fusiformis, \textit{Walker}.

Paravetta, \textit{Moore}—discinota, \textit{Moore}.

The following genera found in India belong to this family:—

Thiacidas, \textit{Mosara}, Cleapa, Gluphisia, Rosama, Thoea, Seta, Chi-
lena, Rilia, Nerice, Apela, Ptilomacra, Ceira, Pydna, Berita, Beara,
Cyphanta, Gargetta, Sybrida, Dudusa, \textit{Walker} : Menapia, Niganda,

Family \textit{Psychidae}.

The genera Perina, Eumeta, \textit{Walker}, Psyche, \textit{Fabr}., and Ko-
phene, \textit{Moore}, belong to this family in India.

Family \textit{Limacodidae}.

Scopelodes, \textit{Westwood}—unicolor, venosa, \textit{Walker}.

Notada, \textit{Walker}—basalis, rufescens, \textit{Walker}.

Miresa, \textit{Walker}—albipuncta, \textit{Schäffer} : castaneipars, \textit{Moore} : gut-
tifera, decedens, inornata, \textit{Walker}.

Nyssia, \textit{Walker}—herbifera, latifascia, \textit{Walker}.


The following genera also belong to this family:—Messata, Mo-
nema, Susica, Contheyla, Narosa, Neprapa, Setora, Belippa, \textit{Walker} : Limacodes, \textit{Latreille}.

Family \textit{Lasiocampidae}.

Lasiocampa, \textit{Schrank}—Aonyta, \textit{Cramer} : trifascia, vittata, sub-
strigosa, decisa, \textit{Walker} : Bhira, \textit{Moore}.

Radhica, \textit{Moore}—flavovittata, \textit{Moore}.


Dreata, Walker—Hades, Walker.
Tagora, Walker—glaucescens, undulosa, Patula, pallida, Walker.
Amydona, Walker—basalis, Prasana, varia, Walker.
Gangarides, Moore—rosea, Walker: Dharma, Moore.
Trabala, Walker—Vishnu, Lefebre: Mahananda, Moore.

The following genera also belong to this family:—Oeona, Mustilia, Suana, Andracca, Apha, Ganisa, Walker: Estigena, Murlida, Mahanta, Chatra, Arguda, Bharretta, Taragama, Alompra, Moore: Odonestis, German: Eutricha, Metanastria, Habner: Jana, Schaff: Sphinxognatha, Ferel: Paeilocampa, Trichiura, Clisiocampa, Stephens: Pachyjana, Leptojana, Butler.

Family Bombycidae.
Bombyx, Fabr.—Huttoni, Westwood, cultivated at Mussooree by Captain Hutton: textor, Crosis, fortunatus, sinensis, affinis, Hutton: Mori, Linn.
Ocinara, Walker—lactea, Comma, Hutton: Lida, diaphana, Moore.
Theophila, Walker—bengalensis, Hutton, Huttoni, west.: Sher-willii, Moore: religiosa, Helfer.

Family Drepanulidae.
Drepana, Schrank.—bira, Patrana, Moore.
Cania, Walker—sericea; Walker.
Apona, Walker—pallida, Walker.
The genera Cifuna and Arna, Walker, also belong to this family.

Family Saturniidae.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.


Anthera, *Hübner*—Mylitta, *Drury*: Roylei, Frithii, mesan-
Assam, *Helfer*.


Saturnia, *Schrank*.—Anna, *Atkinson*: Iole, *West*.: Grotei; Lin-
dia, Cidosa, *Moore*.


sikkima, *Moore*.

Rinaca *Walker*—Zuleika, *Hope*—extensa, *Butler*: Thibeta,
*West*.

Family *Cosidae*.


Zenzeræ, *Latr.*—Mineus, Asylas, *Cræmer*—indica, Schaff.: sig-
nata, pusilla, conferta, *Walker*: multistrigata, 
*Moore*.

to this family.

Family *Hepialidae*.


**Tribe—Noctues.**

Family *Cynamatophoridae*.


Risoba, *Moore*—obstructa, repugnans, *Walker*: prominens, liter-
ata, basalis, vialis, confluentes, *Moore*.


The genera Habrosyne, Palimpsestis, *Hübner*, Kerala, Saronaga,
Pitrasa, Tycracona, Sydiva, *Moore*, also belong to this family.

Family *Bryophilidae*.

Bryophila, *Treitschke*—albistigma, literata, nilgiria, mediana,
modesta, *Moore*.
Family *Bombycidae*.


The genera *Gauréna, Walker*, and *Triæna, Hübner*, belong to this family.

Family *Leucaniidae*.


*Axylia, Hübner*—renalis, fasciata, irrorata, albivena, *Moore*.

*Leucophlebia, Westwood*—lineata, *Westwood*.

*Tympánistes, Moore*—testacea, *Moore*.

*Auchmis, Hübner*—sikkimensis, *Moore*.

The genera *Eschæta, Walker*, *Aletia, Hübner*, *Borolia, Moore*, *Simyra, Ochs.*, *Sesamia, Guénée*, also belong to this family.

Family *Glottulidae*.


*Glottula, Guénée*—dominica, *Cramer*.

*Calymera, Moore*—picta, *Moore*.

Family *Gortyniidae*.

*Gortyna, Ochs.*—cuprea, *Moore*.

*Hydræcia, Guénée*—naxiaoides, khasiana, *Moore*.

Family *Xylophasidæ*.


*Spodoptera, Guénée*—nubes, cilium, *Guénée*. 
Prodenia, Guéné—retina, ciligera, Guéné: infecta, subterminalis, declinata, insignata, glaucistriga, Walker.

Chiripha, Walker—involuta, Walker.

The genera Dipterygia, Calagrimma, Neuria, Guéné: Rhizogramma, Led.: Sasunaga, Karuna, Moore: Thalpophila, Habner, also belong to this family.

Family Episemiidae.

Heliophorus, Boisduval—dissectus, Walker.

Family Apamiidae.

Apamea, Ochs.—cuprina, pannosa, latifasciata, mucronata, stri-gidiosa, basalis, nubila, sikkima, denticulosa, obliquiorbis, Moore.

Mamestra, Ochs.—nigrocuprea, suffusa, culta, decorata, Moore: Stoliczka, Felder: infausta, albiflexura, Walker.

Perigea, Guéné—tricycla, Guéné.

The genera Prospalta and Ilattia, Walker: Luperina, Boisd.: Pachætra, Dup.: Celasna, Steph.: Motama, ehandata, Moore, belong to this family.

Family Caradrididae.


Amyna, Guéné—selenampha, Guéné.

Agrotis, Ochs.—aversa, correcta, basiclavis, intracta, Walker: quadrisigna, costigera, junctura, modesta, fraterna, placida, Moore.

Spælutis, Boisd.—indiana, Guéné: undulans, Moore.

Ochropleura, Habner—venalis, spilota, Moore: flammatras, Guéné.

The genera Triphæna, Graphiphora, Ochs.: Epilecta, Megasema, Ochropleura, Habner: Tiracola, Dadica, Moore: Hermonassa, Walker: Acosmetia, Stephens, also belong to this family and are found in Bengal.
Family Orthosiidae.


Xanthia, Guénée—rufoflava, Walker.

Dabarita, Walker—subtilis, Walker.

Cirrædia, Guénée—variolosa, Walker.

The genera Ranaja, Dimya, Moore, and Tæniocampa, Guénée, belong to this family.

Family Cosmiidae.

Cosmia, Ochs.—hypenoides, Moore.

Ipimorpha, Hübner—divisa, Moore.

Family Hadenidae.

Polia, Guénée—Stevensii, Guénée.

Agriopis, Boisd.—discalis, lepida, Moore.

Eupléxia, Stephens striatovirens, discisignata, Moore: distorta, Stephens.

Eurois, Hübner—crassipennis, repagnans, Walker.

Hadena, Treit.—niveiplaga, auriplena, Walker: albinota, albidisc, auroviridis, adjuncta, siderifera, Moore.


To the same family belong the following genera:—Phlogophora, Ochs.: Trigonophora, Hübner: Sarbanissa, Walker: Chesupa, Nikara, Hyada, Chutapha, Appaia, Moore. Dianthecia, Boisd.: He-ecaters, Guén.

Family Xylinidae.


Family Hæmerosiidae.

Aphusia, Walker—speiplena, Walker.

Family Acontiidae.

Xanthodes, Guénée—intersepta, stramen, transversa, Guénée: innocens, imparata, impellens, Walker.

Canna, Walker—pulchripicta, Walker.


The genera Naranga, Hiccoda, *Moore*, belong to this family.

Family *Heliothis*.  


Family *Anthophilidae*.  


The genus Leptosia, *Guénée*, belongs to this family.

Family *Eratriidae*.  


Family *Eriopidae*.  

The genera Pbnlga, Methora, Cotanda, Lugana, Moore, and Ægilia, Walker, belong to this family

Family—*Eurhipidae*.

Penicillaria, Guéné—nugatrix, Guéné.
Anuga, Walker—constricta, Guéné : lunulata, Moore.

The genera Chlumetia, Walker, and Eutelia, Hübner, belong to this family.

Family *Placodiidae*

The genus Placodes, Boisduval, of this family is found in India.

Family *Plusiidae*.

Abrostola, Ochs.—subapicalis, Walker : anophioides, Moore.

Euchalcia, Hübner, belongs to this family.

Plusiodonta, Guéné—chalytomoides, compressipalpis, Guéné : suripicta, Moore.

Family *Calpidae*.


Calpe, Treit.—ophideroides, minuticornis, Guéné : fasciata, Moore.

Culasta, Moore, belongs to this family.

Family *Hemiceridæ*.

Westermannia, Hübner—superba, Walker.

Family *Hybloeidae*.

Phycodes, Guéné—hirundinicornis, Guéné : tortricina, maculata, minor, Moore.

Hyblæa, Fabr.—puera, Cramer : firmamentum, constellata, Guéné.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

Family Gonopteridae.

Anomis, Hübner—guttanivis, Walker : fulvida, Guénée.
Gonotis, Guénée—latimargo, Walker : brunnea, Moore.
Targalla, Walker—infida, Walker.
The genera Rusicada, Ossonoba, Walker : Coarica, Falana, Moore, also belong to this family.

Family Amphipyridae.

Nænia, Stephens—cuprea, chalybeata, Moore.
Amphipyra, Ochs.—monolitha, Guénée : corvus, Matsch. : cupreipennis, Moore.
The genera Tambana, Mithila, Amrelia, Moore : Perinænia, Butler : Blenina, Walker, belong to this family.

Family Toxocampidae.

Plecoptera, Guénée—reflexa, Guénée.

Family Polydesmidae.

Pandesma, Guénée—Quenevadi, Anysa, Guénée.
Polydesma, *Boisd.*—boarmoides, scriptilis, otiosa, Guénée.

Family Homopteridae.

Alamis, Guénée—umbrina, albicincta, hypophæa, glaucinans, Guénée : spoliata, brevipalpis, optatura, continua, Walker.
The genera Bamra, Oromena, Donda, Moore, belong to this family.

Family Hypogrammidae.

Cyclodes, Guénée—Omma, Van der Haven.
Avatha, Walker—includens, Walker.
Prospalta, Walker—leucoespila, Walker.
Gadirtha, Walker—impingens, inexacta, Walker.

Family Catephidae.

Cocytodes, Guénée—œcula, granulata, Guénée: modesta, Van der Hauen.

Catephia, Guénée—linteola, Guénée.

Mellitopsis, Habner—tenebrosa, strigipennis, Moore.

The following genera belonging to this family are also represented:—Anophia, Erygia, Odontodes, Stictoptera, Guénée: Steiria, Gyrtona, Aucha, Walker: Zarima, Vapara, Sadaros, Moore.

Family Hypocalidae.

Hypocala, Guénée—rostrata, deflorata, Fabr.: efflorescens, subsatur, angulipalpis, Guénée.

Family Catocalidae.

Catocala, Ochs.—unicuba, concuba, prolifica, dotata, Walker: Nepcha, tapestrina, Moore.

Family Erebiidae.

Sypna, Guénée—albilinea, cælisparsa, omicronigera, Walker: plana, replicata, flocosa, brunnea, albo-vittata, pannosa, curvilinea, rectilinea, cyuni-vitta, Moore.

Tavia, Walker—substruens, punctosa, dubitaria, Walker: catocaloides, biocularis, Moore.

Anisoneura, Guénée—hypocyana, Guénée.

Oxyodes, Guénée—Clytia, Cramer.

Family Ommatophoridae.

Speiredonia, Habner—fiducia, Zamis (?), Stoll.
Patula, Guénée—Macrops, Linn.: Boopis, Guénée.

Argiva, Habner—hieroglyphica, Drury: caprimulga, Fabricius.


Ommalophora, Guénée, also belongs to this family.
Family Hypopyridae.


Hypopyra, Guénée—Shiva, ossigera, unistrigata, Guénée: vespertilio, Fabr.: restorans, Walker.

Hamodes, Guénée—aurantiaca, Guénée: marginata, Moore.

Entomogramma, Guénée—sautrix, Guénée.

The genus Beregra, Walker, also belongs to this family.

Family Bendiæ.

Hulodes, Guénée—Caranea, Cramer: Drylla, saturnioides, eriophora, Palumba, inangulata, Guénée.

Homaea, Guénée—Clathrum, Guénée.

Family Ophideridae.

Ophideres, Boisduval—plana, Walker.

Othreis, Hübner—fullonica, Linn.: Cajeta, ancilla, Cramer.

Adris, Moore—tyrannus, Guénée.

Mænas, Hübner—Salaminia, Cramer.

Rhytia, Hübner—Cocale, hypermnestra, Cramer.

Argadessa, Moore—materna, Linnaeus.

Phyllodes, Boisd.—ustulata, consobrina, Westwood: fasciata, Moore.

Potamophora, Guénée—Manlia, Cramer.

Lygniodes, Guénée—hypooleuca, Guénée: ciliata, Moore.

Family Ophiusidæ.

Sphingomorpha, Guénée—Chlorea, Cramer.


Cerbia, Walker—(Thria) fugitiva, Walker.

Ophisma, Guénée—gravata, torsilinea, lactabilis, Guénée: certior, contenta, attaccicola, Walker.

Artena, Walker—submira, Walker.


Fodina, *Guêné* : Dordura, Pasipeda *Moore* ; and Cotoza, *Walker*, also belong to this family.

Family *Euclidiidæ*.


Family *Remigiidæ*.


Tribe—*Pseudo-Deltoides*.

Family *Poaphilidæ*.


Family *Thermesiidæ*.


Other genera of this family are Mecodina, Capnodes, Hypernasia, Guénée: Ginæa, Mestleta, Singara, Fascellina, Walker: Durdara, Raparna, Sonagara, Hingula, Moore.

Family Focillidae.

Cultripalpa, Guénée—partita, Guénée: indistincta, trifasciata, Moore.

Other genera of this family represented in Bengal are Thyridospila, Guénée: Harmatelia Acharya, Moore: Phalacra, Egnasia, Saraca, Rhaesena, Walker.

Family Amphigonidae.
Lacera, Guénée—Capella, Guénée.
Amphigonia, Guénée—hepatizans, Guénée: comprimens, Walker.

Tribe—Deltoides.
Family Platylidiæ.

Family Hypenidae.
Dichronia, Guénée—orosialis, trigonalis, Guénée: quadralis, Walker.
Rhynchina, Guénée—pionealis, Guénée: angulifascia, Moore.
Hypena, Schrank.—o ductalis, narratalis, lacescalsis, ignotalis, lacertalis, masuralis, hæsalsis, abducalis, Walker: indicalis, Guénée: ochreipennis, tortuosa divaricata, mediana, ophiuousides, incurvata, cídarioides, externa flexuosa, gri-seipennis, lativitta, modesta, triangularis, oceatus, obsimilis, strigifascia, similata, umbrippennis, Moore.

The genera Talapa, Corocobara, Apanda, Harita, Mathura, Moore, also belong to this family.

Family Herminiidae.
Herminia, Latreille—robustalis, limbosalis, mistacalis, fractalis, Guénée: ochracealis, vialis, restricta, lineosa, duplexa, Moore.
Hydriilloides, Guéron—lentalis, Guéron.
Boeana, Walker—murinalis, renalis, picta, marginata, Moore.
The following genera also belong to this family:—Mastigophora, Poey: Echana, Locastra, Hipoepea, Lamura, Avitta, Aginna, Lamida, Walker: Madopa, Steph.: Zancognatha, Led.: Rivula, Guén.: Cepheus, Asthula, Pasira, Bibacta, Moore.

**Tribe—Pyrales.**

**Family Pyralidae.**

Agastya, Moore—hyblæoides; flavomaculata, Moore.
Glossina, Guéron—divitalis, Guéron.
Aglossa, Latreille—dimidialis, Guéron.
The genera Herculia, Stemmataphora, Walker, also belong to this family.

**Family Enychiidae.**

Pyrausta, Schrank.—absistalis, Walker.
The genera Rhodaria and Herbula, Guéron, also belong to this family.

**Family Asopidae.**

Syngamia, Guéron—octavialis, Walker.
Agathodes, Guéron—ostentalis, Geyer.
Lencinodes, Guéron—sigulalis, melanopalis, Guéron.
The following genera also belong to this family:—Desmia, Westwood: Ædiodes, Samea, Salbia, Asopia, Megaphysa, Isopteryx, Terrastia, Guéron: Daraba, Walker: Agrotera, Schrank: Chnaura, Lederer.

**Family Hydrocampidae.**

Oligostigma, Guéron—gibbosalis, crassicornalis, Guéron.
Cataclysta, Hübner—peribocalis, Walker: magnificalis, Hübner.
Paraponyx, Hübner—affinalis, linealis, Guéron.
Hydrocampus, Latreille—picalis, depunctalis, Guéron.
Family *Spilomelidæ*.

Lepyrodes, *Guénée—lepidalis, (Diaeemia?) geometralis, Walker*.
Phalangiodes, *Guénée—neptalis, Hübner*.
Zebronia, *Hübner—plutusalis, aurolinealis, lactiferalis, Walker*.
The genus Pycnarmen, *Lederer*, belongs to this family.

Family *Margarodidæ*.

Glyphodes, *Guénée—stolalis, bivitralis, diurnaljis, Guénée: acto-

rionalis, caesalis, univocalis, Walker*.
Margaronia, *Hübner—conchylalis, vertumnalis, Guénée: psitt-
tacalis, Hübner: leodicealis, marthesiusalis, phryneusalis, Walker*.
Pygospila, *Guénée—tyresalis, costiferalis, Guénée*.

The following genera of this family are also found in Bengal:—


Family *Botididæ*.

Astura, *Guénée—obrimisalis, Walker*.
Botyodes, *Guénée—asialis, Guénée*.
Botys, *Latreille—pectinicornalis, sabelialis, multilinealis, sellalis, Guénée: caldusalis, scinisalis, tullalis, calduc-
salis, caletoralis, iopasalis, moneususalis, illisalis, rutilalis, Õmealis, amytususalis, Walker*.

Ebulea, *Guénée—europealis, Walker*.

To this family also belong Scopula, *Schrank: Godara, Guénée: and Dyssallacta, Lederer*.

**Tribe—Geometrea.**

Family *Uaptorididæ*.

Chorodna, *Walker—erebusaria, muricolaria, rectata, Walker*. 

Dalima, Moore—apicata, schistacearia, Moore.
Cimicodes, Guénaé—castanearia, cruentaria, Moore.
Other genera are Euchera, Hübner: Chærodes, Guénaé: Lagyra, Auzea, Walker.

Family Ennomiidae.

Drepanodes, Guénaé—circulitaria, Walker: argentilinea, Moore.
Hyperythra, Guénaé—luteata, trilineata, Moore.
Eurymene, Dup.—inustaria, Moore.
Crocalis, Treit.—lentiginosaria, angularia, Moore.


Family Ænochromiidos.

Mergana, Walker—æquilinearia, restitutaria, Walker.
The genus Corotia, Moore, also belongs to this family.

Family Amphidasidæ.

The following genera belong to this family:—Amphidasys, Guénaé: Bazura, Walker.

Family Boarmiidae.

Cleora, Curtis—venustaria, Walker: funbriata, pannosaria, Moore.
Boarmia, Treitschke—alienaria, reparata, Walker: perspicuata, contiguata, Moore.
Tephreria, Boisduval—scriptaria, mucidaria, Walker: dentilineata, Moore.
Hypochroma, Guénaé—viridaria, varicoloraria, tenebrosaria, Moore.

The following genera also belong to this family:—Bargosa, Walker: Xandrames, Moore: Amblychia, Ophthalmodes, Elphos, Guénaé: Gnophos, Treitschke.
Family **Geometridae**.


**Thalassodes, Guénée**—cælataria, dissimulata, dissita, Walker: sinuata, Moore.

The following genera also belong to this family:—Thalera, Comibæna, Hübner: Berta, Walker: Loxochila Nemoria, Butler: Agathia, Guénée.

Family **Palyadiidae**.

The genus Eumelea, Duncan, belongs to this family.

Family **Ephyridae**.

**Anisodes, Guénée**—pluristriaria, Walker: sanguinaria, diffusaria, Moore.

Family **Acidaliidae**.

The following genera belong to this family and are found in Bengal:—Hyria, Stephens: Acidalia, Treitschke: Timandra, Duponchel: Drapetodes, Trygodes, Somatina, Argyris, Guénée.

Family **Microniidæ**.

**Micronia, Guénée**—fasciata, Cramer: gannata, Guénée: simpliciata, Moore.

The genera Myrteta, Walker, and Crosia, Guénée, also belong to this family.

Family **Caberidae**.

The genus Careva, Moore, belongs to this family.

Family **Macariidae**.

**Macaria, Curtis**—metagonaria, emersaria, permotaria, myandaria, Walker: eleonaria, Cramer

**Krananda, Moore**—semihyalina, Moore.

Family **Fidoniidae**.

**Osicerda, Walker**—alienata, Walker: trinotaria, Moore.

**Sterrha, Hübner**—sacraria, Linn.

The following genera also belong to this family:—Aspilotes, Treitschke: Zonia, Moore: Nobilia, Docirara, Marcals, Caprilis, Walker.
Family Zeremiidae.

The following genera belong to this family:—Rhyparia, Hübner: Peronia, Guénée; Nelcynda, Walker; Abraxas, Leach: Vindusara, Moore.

Family Larentiidae.

Larentia, Duponchel—erata, Moore: fissiferata, Walker.

The following genera also belong to this family:—Oporabia, Stephens: Eupithecia, Curtis: Sauris, Coremia, Guénée: Melanippe, Duponchel: Anticlea, Stephens: Arichauna, Gandarites, Moore.

Family Euboliidae.

The genus Anaitis, Duponchel, belongs to this family.

Tribe—Crambices.

Family Galleridæ.

Apsarasa, Moore—radians, Westwood.
The genus Toccotosida, Walker, also belongs to this family.

Family Crambidae.

Brihaspa, Moore—atrostigmella Moore.
The following genera also belong to this family:—Ramila, Moore: Crambus, Apurima, Acara, Eschata, Walker: Schænobius, Scirphophaga, Calamotrephe, Zeller.

Tribe—Tortrices.

Family Nycteolidae.

The following genera belong to this family:—Hylophila, Hübner: Tyana, Aphusia, Walker.

Family Tortricidæ.

Cerau, Walker—stipatana, onustana, Walker.
The genus Æmene, Walker, also belongs to this family.
Tribe—Tineina.

Family Tineidae.

Adela, Walker—gemmaella, griseella, Walsing.

To this family belongs the following genera:—Tinea, Stainton: Porsica, Alavona, Hapsifera, Walker.

Family Hyponomentidae.

Hyponomeuta, Zell.—lapidellus, Walsing.

Pssecadia, Zell.—ermineella, hockingella, Walsing.

To this family belongs the following genera:—Atteva, Walker: Anesychia, Hübner: Lampronia, Zeller.

Family Plutellidae.

To this family belongs the genus Cerestoma, Latreille.

Family Gelechiidae.

To this family belong the following genera:—Depressaria, Haw.; Binsitta, Walker: Parasia, Duponchel: Anarsia, Gelechia, Æcophora, Zeller: Butalis, Treit.

Family Gracillariidae.

To this family belong the following genera:—Gracillaria, Coris-cium, Oruix, Zeller.

Family Elachistidae.

To this family belong the following genera:—Cosmopterix, Hübner: Atkinsonia, Lozostoma, Stainton.

Family Lithocolletidae.

The genus Lithocolletis, Zeller, belongs to this family.

Family Lyonetiidae.

The genus Phyllocnistis, Zeller, belongs to this family.

HYMENOPTERA.

The order Hymenoptera (membrane joined-winged) comprises the insects commonly known as ants, bees, wasps, saw-flies and ichneumons, and is distinguished by the posterior wings being furnished with hooks by which they are joined on to the posterior margin of the fore-wings and thus become united for the purpose of flight. The Hymenoptera undergo a complete metamorphosis. The body is composed
of the usual three parts, head, thorax and abdomen. The head is furnished with a mouth, eyes and antennæ. The mouth is formed for mastication or prehension, except in the bees, in which a succental apparatus is developed. The mouth is furnished with mandibles, maxillæ and an upper and under lip and four palpi or feelers, two maxillary and two labial. The under jaws and under lip are generally long and narrow, fixed deep in the cavity of the head by lengthened muscles, somewhat tubular at their lower portion and often folded at their extremity and serving rather for the transmission of nutritive juices than for mastication properly so-called. The true eyes are compound, but in addition all are provided with three simple eyes or ocelli. The antennæ are usually thread-like or hair-like, but vary in form in the different families, and often in the individuals of different sexes in the same species. There are four membranous wings of homogeneous texture, and usually veined instead of reticulated. The posterior pair are usually smaller than the anterior pair, and all are, as a rule, transparent, though some species possess clouded or spotted wings. The thorax is divided into three segments, to which are attached the legs. The first segment is very short, and the two others are closely united. In one division the trochanters of the legs are attached to the femora by a single articulation, and in the other division by two joints. The tarsi or feet are five-jointed. The abdomen consists of 5-9 segments attached to the thorax either by its entire breadth (sessile) or by a slender stalk (pedicled). The female is furnished with an appendage called an ovipositor or egg-placer, which in some species, provided with a poison sac and gland, can be converted into a weapon of offence or defence. The larvae of the Hymenoptera resemble little worms: where the food is around them they are white, fat, legless grubs; but where, like the larvae of butterflies, they have to feed on leaves and the like, they develop thoracic or true legs and a number of false or abdominal legs adapted to their mode of life. Most of the larvae enclose themselves in a cocoon before they undergo the change into the pupa state. The apodal larvae feed on insects provided for them by their mother, who either carries the food to her young or lays her eggs in the larvae of some other species that supplies in its living body sufficient nourishment for her young. Amongst bees, the neuters act as nurses to the helpless young, and are careful,
accurate and patient attendants. The perfect insects of the order live, for the most part, on vegetable substances.

The insects of this order are distributed into two great divisions:

Classification.

1. Aculeata, in which the trochanter is attached to the femur by a single joint and the ovipositor is provided with a poison gland; (2) Terebrantia (Diptera) in which the trochanter is attached to the femur by a double articulation and the ovipositor is not used as a weapon of defence. This latter division is susceptible of a further separation into Securifera and Spiculifera, explained below. The distribution of the families will then be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I. ACULEATA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Heterogyna—social and solitary ants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Fossores—sand-wasps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Diploptera—true wasps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Anthophila—bees.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>II. TEREBRANTIA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Securifera, in which the abdomen is joined to the thorax by its entire width and the larvae have legs and live on vegetable juices and the ovipositor forms either a short-saw or exerted borer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Siricidae—borers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Spiculifera, in which the abdomen is joined to the thorax by a stalk, the larvae are legless and live on animal food (except some gall-insects).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Chalcididae—chiefly parasites on insects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Proctotrupidae—chiefly parasites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Evanidae—parasites on cockroaches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Braconidae—parasites on insects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. Ichneumonidae—parasites on insects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The number of known species has been estimated at 17,000, but the actual number in existence must be four times as great.
The structure of the wings and the nature and number of the nerves and of the cells or intermediate spaces and their ramifications has served as the basis of classification in the system of Jurine and may be briefly noticed. The wings have few nerves, and when they are present they proceed from the base or the costa towards the apex which they may or may not reach. The marginal and sub-marginal nerves are the more important and the discoidal and lanceolate cells. As observed by a writer on this subject, the arrangement of the nerves, though showing great diversity in form, is, within certain limits, remarkably constant. Their use in classification does not lead to the formation of artificial groups, for we find that the existence of a particular arrangement of the nerves in a hexaneopterous insect denotes the presence of other characters. The neurulation differs, however, in every family and even in the genera of the same family, and the terminology in general use may be gathered from the explanations attached to the following figures:

**FIG. A.**

*Explanation—Wing 1, marginal cells: 2, appendicular cell: 3 to 6, sub-marginal cells: 7 to 9, discoidal cells: 10, costal cell: 11, 12, humeral cells, and 13, lanceolate cell: a, 6, c, sub-marginal nerves: d, basal nerve: e, 6, recurrent nerves.*

![Diagram of wing nerves](image-url)
The numerous species of ants existing in India will well repay examination. The common black ant (F. compressa, Fabr.) of our gardens, with its numerous society and its army of wingless neuters, can be observed in almost every town. The red ant (F. onaragdina, Fabr.) of the mango groves is also easily found. It makes its nest far up in the branches from the living leaves by drawing them together and attaching them to each other by a fine web which is spun from the mouth of the workers. The red ants are the most fierce and quarrelsome of the whole tribe, and attack not only the black ants but also foreign colonies of their own species. In some parts they are used to get rid of colonies of wasps, and for this purpose a branch of the mango tree bearing a red ant's nest is carefully cut down and carried to the neighbourhood of the wasps' nest. The latter seem to be at once aware of their danger and fight desperately, but in the end they fall an easy prey to the red ant, who, not satisfied with its victory, attacks in its blind rage every living thing that approaches it, and in some species its bite is very severe. The bodies of the winged females of this species are of a fine apple-green colour. A minute brown species is often found near the foot of a pipal or nim tree where white ants have made their galleries, and if this protection be removed, the small ants soon enter in myriads and bring back between every two or three, a fat, struggling white ant, and if the operation be repeated often enough, the latter will cease to infest that particular tree. A rufous species (F. longopes, Jerd.) occupies holes in the ground in jungly tracts and frequently announces its presence to those who incautiously sit down near its haunts by inflicting a sharp stinging bite. Another species affecting similar localities is that happily named F. processionalis.
by Jerdon. It is sometimes to be seen forming dense columns many yards long in full march from one part of a forest to another. Dead beetles, drowned flies and other insects are all carried off by ants who sometimes make sad havoc, in a single night, in a collection of insects not properly protected. Close to the true ants come the Dorylidae, of which one species makes its nest in the floor or walls of houses and lives in societies, swarming at certain seasons. In the genus Myrmica, the ant is provided with a sting with which it can produce a troublesome swelling. The family Mutillidae, which is joined by most authors to the Formicidae, contains certain small brightly coloured solitary insects of which the females resemble the neuters of ants in being wingless. So far as is hitherto known they are found only as parasites on humble-bees.

The tribe Fossores, or diggers, comprise species resembling the ants as well as others having the appearance of true wasps and some peculiar to the tribe. They are carnivorous in their habits and excavate celled chambers in the ground and even in wood or walls in which to store up food for their larvae. The food consists of insects benumbed by the poison of their sting, and in this state of lethargy capable of living for months and furnishing the young fossor with its natural food, the living tissue of other insects. The sand-wasps, mason-wasps, and house-wasps belong to the same tribe. The true wasps are distinguished from the Fossores by having their wings disposed longitudinally when in repose, while the eyes are reniform and reach to or near to the base of the mandibles. Some are social in their habits and all are carnivorous. The false wasps (Odynerus) belong to this section as well as Eumenes. Amongst the true wasps (Vespidae) there are males, females and neuters or workers living in societies more or less permanent. Many of them construct their nests of papyraceous substances, and it is in one species of this tribe that Siebold discovered that the males originated by parthenogenesis from infecundated eggs. To the bees belong the humble-bee, carpenter-bee, mason-bee and the honey-bee, all of which live on vegetable substances. Chalicodoma semivestita builds exactly the same sort of ovate mud nest on walls as its European representative, and several species of Megachile have the same leaf-cutting habits as elsewhere. Of the carpenter-bee (Xylocopa) there are many examples, and three species known collectively as bhaunra
are common in the Kumaon forests, where they do much damage to timber. The larger of the three attacks the wood-work of buildings and the dead-wood of felled timber; whilst the brown species lives in colonies and bores into living trees where it constructs its six-celled abode. The third species is the smallest, but is also the most numerous and lives in societies and specially selects the *haldu* (*Adina cordifolia*) as its home. The *bhaonra* when enraged is, as noted by Moorcroft, a very formidable antagonist, and occasionally causes much suffering to men and cattle from its sting. The species of honey-bee are not numerous and the workers differ from each other very little in appearance. It is only when the two sexes and their workers are compared that specific distinctions can be well established. *A. dorsata* (Fabr.) suspends its comb from the branches of trees without any outward protection, and is one of the more common Indian species, but variable in appearance. In some places the male is reddish yellow with the upper portion of the thorax, the scape of the antennæ and the outside of the posterior tibiae and metatarsus black. In the workers the abdomen is yellow with the apex more or less dusky or only with the two basal segments yellowish red. *A. indica* (Fabr.) is, however, the more common and is somewhat smaller than the honey-bee of Europe. It is kept by the villagers in Kumaon in a hive made out of a log of wood and let into the wall of the owner's dwelling. The inner side is closed by a sliding door and the outer has a small opening to permit the entrance and exit of the bees. The bees are driven out by knocking on the inner side of the hive, and after they have flown the outer hole is stopped and the honey is removed, after which the bees are allowed to return. The honey of the Sor valley collected in this way is in high repute for its richness due to the groves of *Bassia butyracea*, on the flowers of which the bees feed. In many places the honey produced by wild bees is equally good, but in others it produces a sort of intoxication very distressing whilst it lasts. The Bhābar honey is therefore not much sought after unless collected by experienced and trustworthy hands.

The *Tenthredinidae* or saw-flies and *Siricidae* or borers are very numerous in species and individuals. The former are provided with a double saw with which the female pierces the leaves or bark of plants to secure a place for her eggs. The larvæ resemble those
of the Lepidoptera, the chief difference being that they have six or more pair of membranous legs, whilst the larvae of the butterfly have never more than five. One species frequently attacks the pine and destroys it by removing the leaves: another infests the rose and another the imported fruit-trees. The long ovipositor of the Sirex enables it to pierce deep down in the bark of the Coniferae in order to lay its eggs and provide a suitable place for its larvae.

The Chrysidae are small-bodied flies with a shining metallic lustre found as parasites on bees and wasps. The Cynipidae or gall-insects are those that cause galls on the leaves and branches of plants to serve as food and lodgings for its young. An instance may be seen on any of the poplar trees about Naini Tal and on breaking open the gall, the fat, legless grubs will be found in all stages of growth surrounded by a cottony white substance, the use of which is not known. The Chalcididae comprise an immense number of minute insects having brilliant metallic bodies of a green lustre and which are found as parasites on other insects or on corn. The Proctotrupidae are usually of a brown or red colour and are also parasites. The Eranidae are parasites on cockroaches, and the Ichneumonidae and Braconidae are found as parasites on all orders of insects.

HYMENOPTERA—Ants, bees, wasps.

1. ACULEATA.

Tribe—Heterogyna.

Family Formicidae.

Formica, Linn.—crinita (N. I.) Smith : compressa (In.), cineras-
cens (Mad.), cylindria, elongata (Mad.), conica (Mad.), ruficornis, gigas, abdominalis
(N. I.), carbonaria, Fabr. assimilis (Mad.), nana (Mys.), rufoglaucia (Mad.), phyllophila
(Mad.), stricta (Mal.), timida (Mal.), vagans (Mal.), velox (Mal.), longipes (Tell.) Jerdon :
ardens (Dec.), impetuosa (Bom.), callida (Dec.), lutea (N. I.), gibbosa (In.), Smith :
prismatica, sericea, quadrilatera (Mad.), Mayr.
Polyrhachis, *Smith.*—bihamatus, *Drury.* lacteipennis (N. I.),  
*Smith.* hastatus (In.), sexspinosus (In.), relu-
cens (Mad.), rastellatus, *Latre.* nidificans  
(Mal.), sylvicola (In.), *Jerdon.*  

Family *Odontomachidae,* *Mayr.*  
Drepanagnathus, *Smith.*—saltator (Mad.), *Jerdon.*  

Family *Poneridae.*  
Ponera, *Latre.*—sculpta (Mal.), stenocheilos (Mal.), procession-
alis (In.), affinis (Mal.), pumila (Mal.), *Jerdon.*  
scalprata (N. I.), iridipennis (N. I.), *Smith.*  
Family *Myrmicidae.*  
Myrmica, *Latre.*—vastator, humilis (Bom.), bidentata (Cal.),  
rugifrons, *Smith.* diffusa (In.), ceca (Mys.),  
tarda (Mal.), fodiens (Mal.) *Jerdon.* molesta,  
*Suy.*  
Myrmecina, *Curtis.*—pilicornis (Bom.), *Smith.*  
Myrmicaria, *Saund.*—brunnea, *Saund.* crinita (Mad.), *Smith.*  
Pseudomyrma, *Guér.*—minuta (Mad.), rufipes (Salei), rufo-
nigra (Mad.) nigra (Mad.), *Jerdon.* stratus  
(Bom.), levicaps, *Smith.*  
Crematogaster, *Lund.*—Kirbii (Mys.), *Sykes.*  
Atta, *St Farg.*—destructor (In.), domicola (Mad., Nellore), rufa  
(Mal.), dissimilis (Mal.), floricola (Mad.,  
Telli.), *Jerdon.* instabilis (N. I.), *Smith.*  
Pheidole, *West.*—providens (Poona), *Sykes.* malabarica (Mal.),  
diffusa (In.), diversa (Mys.), minor (Mad.),  
affinis (Mal.), quadrispinosa (Mal.), *Jerdon.*  
Family *Cryptoceridae.*  
Meranoplus, *Smith.*—bicolor (Mad., Cal.), *Guér.*  

Family *Dorylidae.*  
Dorylus, *Latre.*—labiatus (Dec., As.), longicornis (Ben.), *Shuck.*:  
orientalis (Ben.), *West.* hindostanus (Panj.),  
*Smith.*
Enictus, Shuck.—Ambiguus (Puna), Shuck.: pubescent (N. I.),
Smith: certus, West.
Family Thynnidae.

Iswara, West.—lutes, West.: fassita (Sind), Smith.
Family Mutilidae.

Methoca, Latr.—orientalis (N. I.), Smith.
Mutilia, Ltnn.—indica, Linn.: glabrata, nigripes, Fabr.: rugosa,
Oliv.: 6-maculata, Swed.: bengalensis, analis, rufogastra (Nep.), dimidiata, St. Farg.: antennata, argentipes, aurifrons, blanda, dives, diversa, indostana (Mad.), Miranda, nobilis (Mad.), optima, opulenta, pulchrina (Mad.), representans, reticulata, rufiventris, semiaura-
reta, aulica (N. I.), pusilla (N. I.), insneraria (N. I.), unifasciata (N. I.), reg a, Smith: indica, Linn.

Apterogyna, Latr.—mutilloides, Smith.

Tribe—Fossores.
Family Scoliidae.

Myzine, Latr.—dimidiata (Ben.), Guér.: anthracina, petiolata,
Madraspatana, fuscipennis, Smith.

Tipha, Fabr.—hirsuta (N. I.), rufipes (N. I.), rufo-femorata
(N. I.), Smith.

Scolia, Fabr.—4-pustulata (Mad.), rubiginosa Fabr.: caerulea,
St. Farg.: apicicornis, apicalis, Guér.: patricularis, Burm.: Iris, Klug.: erratica, instabilis, pulchra, specifica, vivida (Mad.), venusta, personata (As.), ignita (As.), nudata, fervida (Bom.), Smith: insignis, Saup.: bilun-
nata, (Nep.), splendida, nobilis, stizus (Mad.), Sauss.

Élis, Fabr.—litigiosa: rubromaculata, eximia, habrocoma, lactu-
osa, (As.), Smith; auricollis, parvula, St.
Farg.: marginella, Klug.: thoracica, annulata quadrifasciata grossa, Fabr.: asiatica, hir-
suta, Sauss.
Family *Pompilidae*.


*Priochnemis*, *Schiödte*—luscus (Mad.), *Fabr.*: peregrinus (Cal.), *Smith.*

*Agenia*, *Schiödte*—blanda, (Ben.), *Guér.*: tincta, caerulea, festinata, *Smith.*

*Pepis*, *Fabr.*—Dyoclene, *Smith.*

*Ferreola*, *St Farg.*—fenestrata (Mad.), *Smith.*

*Macromeris*, *St. Farg.*—splendida, violacea (As.), *St. Farg.*

*Mygnimia*, *Shuck.*—flava, *Drury* : flavicornis (Mad.), *Fabr.*: severa, *Drury* : audax (As.), fenestrata (As.), perplexa (Mad.), bellicosa (Ben.), savissima (Bom.), intermedi (N. I.), Atropos, *Smith.*

*Ceropales*, *Latr.*—flavo-picta, fuscipennis, ornata, *Smith.*

Family *Sphagnetidae*.

*Ammophila*, *Kirby.*—erythrocephala (Panj.), *Fabr.*: basalis (Panj.), nigripes (Mad.), lævigata (Mad., Bom.), dimidiata (In.), elegans (Panj.), atripes (Bom.), punctata (N. I.), vagabunda (N. I.), *Smith* : Smithii, *Baly.*


*Chlorion*, *Latr.*—lobatum, splendidum (N. I.), *Fabr.* : melasoma (Mad.), regale (Sind), *Smith* : seneum (Mad.), *Spin.*


*Harpactopus*, *Smith*—crudelis (Mad.), nivosus (N. I.), *Smith.*

*Parasphex*, *Smith*—fervens (Mad. Bom.), *Fabr.*

*Ampulex*, *Jurine*—compressa (Mal.), *Fabr.*

*Triogma*, *West*—caerulea (Mad., N. I.), *West.*
Family **Larridae**.

*Larrada, Leach.*—aurulenta (Mad.), maura (Mad.), *Fabr.*: simil-lima, conspicua, argyrea (N. I.), subtessellata, exilipes (N. I.), jaculator (N. I.), vestita (N. I.), *Smith.*


*Astata, Latr.*—orientalis, agilis, *Smith.*

*Pison, Spin.*—rugosus, *Smith.*

Family **Bembididae**.

*Bembex, Fabr.*—olivacea (Mad.), lunata (Mad.), *Fabr.*: trepanda, sulphurescens (Mad., Panj.), *Dahl.*

Family **Nyssonidae**.

*Larra, Klug.*—fasciata (Mad.), vesepiformis (Mad., Panj.), *Fabr.*: Delessertii (Mad.), *Guér.*: blandina, melanoxantha, mellea, nubilipennis, rufescens (Panj.), cornuta (Bom.), *Smith.*

*Nysson, Latr.*—basalis, *Smith.*

*Gorytes, Latr.*—pictus (Mad.), amatorlus, tricolor, *Smith.*

*Harpactus, Shuck.*—ornatus (N. I.), *Smith.*

Family **Crabronidae**.

*Trypoxylon, Latr.*—pileatum (Mad.), accumulator, *Smith.*

*Oxybelus, Latr.*—agilis, tridentatus, ruficornis, sabulosus, squamosus, *Smith.*


Family **Cerceridae**.

*Cerceris, Latr.*—interstincta (Mal.) *Fabr.*: flavo-picta (N. I.), hilaris (N. I.), instabilis, mastogaster (Mad.), orientalis (Mad.), vigilans (Mad.), fervens (N. I.), albopecta (Bom.), viscosus, Rufinodis, velox, *Smith*: bifasciatus, *Guér.*

*Philanthus, Fabr.*—pulcherrimus, sulphureus (N. I.), depredator, elegans (N. I.), *Smith.*
Tribe—Diploptera.
Family Eumenidae.

Eumenes, Latr.—cercinalis, conica, esuriens, Fabr.: flavopicta, Blanch.: affinisima, xanthura, Edwardsii (Bom.), Blanchardii (Mad.), exigua, indiana, brevirostrata, depressa, quadrispinosa, Sauss.

Montezuma, Sauss.—indica, Saussure.

Rhynchiurn, Sauss.—nitidulum, haemorrhoidale, brunneum (Ben.), carnaticum (Ben., Mad.), argentatum, Fabr.: bengalense, atrum, metallicum (Mad.), Mellyi, dichotomum, Sauss.

Odynerus, Latr.—Sichelii, punctus, punctatipennis, ovalis, diffinis, Sauss.: intricatus (Ben.), guttatus, Smith.

Family Vespidae.

Belonogaster, Sauss.—indicus, Sauss.

Icaria, Sauss.—marginata (Mad.), St. Farg.: aristocratica, formosa, artifex, picta, Sauss.: ferruginea (Mad.), Fabr.: pendula (Bareilly), variegata (Pum), Smith.


Vespa, Linn.—orientalis, Linn.: cincta (Mad.), affinis, analis, bicolor, Fabr.: velutina, St. Farg.: auraria (N. I.), obliteratora (N. I.), magnifica (Mus.), basalis, (Nep.), crabroniformis, ducalis, Smith: doryloides, Sauss.

Tribe—Anthophila.
Family Andrenidae.

Prosopis, Fabr.—mixta, Smith.

Sphecodes, Latr.—fuscipennis (N. I.), apicatus, Smith.

Nomia, Latr.—crassipes (Mad.), curvipes (Mad.), strigata, Fabr.: basalis, iridescens, Elliottii, (Cal., Mad.), oxybeloides (Him.), silhetica, capitata (N. I.), clypeata, servida (Dec.), combusta (Bom.), pilipes (N. I.), Buddha, sykesiana (Dec.), West.: aurifrons (As.), simillima (Cal.), scutellata (Cal.), thoracica (Cal.), antennata (Bom., Oudh), Smith.

*Cyathocora, Smith*—nodicornis (Cal.), *Smith.*

*Androna, Fabr.*—exagens, *Smith.*

Family *Apidae.*

*Lithurgus, Latr.*—stratus, *Smith.*

*Chalicodoma, St. Farg.*—semivestita, *Smith.*


*Crocissa, Jurine*—Histrio, *Fabr.*

*Ceratina, Latr.*—simillima, hieroglyphica (N. I.), *Smith : viridis, Guér.*

*Allophane, St. Farg.*—marginata, *Smith.*

*Nomada, Fabr.*—solitaria (N. I.), decorata (N. I.), adusta, *Smith : bipunctata, Fabr.*

*Caélionyx, Latr.*—ducalis, apicata (N. I.), capitata (N. I.), argentinfrons, basalis, cuneatus, confusus, *Smith.*

*Stelis, Panz.*—carbonaria (N. I.), *Smith.*

*Tetralonia, Spin.*—Duvaucelii (Ben.), *St. Farg.*: floralia, elegans, *Smith.*


*Xylocopa, Latr.*—ruficorinis, fenestrata (Ben.), cærulea, *Fabr.*: æstuans, *Linn.*: latipes, *Drury:* verticalis, iridipennis, viridipennis, ferruginea (Ben.), dissimiliis (Mad.), collaris (Ben.), Olivieri, orichalcea, (Ben.), auripennis, (Ben.), *St. Farg.*: lunata (Mad.), indica (Mad.), *Klug:* tenuiscapa (Mad., As.), *West.*: flavo-nigrescens (As.), basalis (N. I.), acutipennis (As.), provida, rufescens, ignita (Bom.), *Smith.*

*Trigona*, Jurine—vidua, *St. Farg.*


**Tribe—II.**—**DITROocha.**

A. — *Securifera.*

Family *Tenthredinidae.*

*Lophyrus*, Fabr.—pini (N.-W. P.), Linn.

*Hylotoma*, *Latr.*—albocincta (Nep.), xanthogaster (Nep.), lutea (N. I.), bipunctata, interstitialis (Darj.), simlaensis (Panj.), *Cameron*: janthina (Nep.), Klug.

*Athalia*, Leach.—spinarum, Fabr. : tibialis, Cameron.

*Monophadnus*, Smith—cærulescens (Nep.), bengalensis (Ben.), Cameron.

*Allantus*, Smith.—trochanteratus (N. I.), *Cam.*

*Pachyprotasis*, Hartig.—versicolor (N. I.), rapæ, albicincta (Him.), *Cam.*

*Macrophya*, Klug.—rotundiventris (N. I.), *Cam.*

*Tenthredo*, S. Str.—metallica (N. I.), clypeata (N. I.), xanthoptera (Nep.), indica (N. I.), latifasciata, simulans, *Cameron.*

*Dolerus*, Smith—rufocinctus, *Cameron.*

Family *Siricidae.*

*Tremex*, West.—smithii (N. I.), Cameron.

*Sirex*, Fabr.—xanthus (N. I.), Cameron.

B. — *Spiculifera.*

Family *Chalcididae.*

*Leucospis*, Fabr.—atra (Mad.), Fabr.

*Chalcis*, Fabr.—Amphissa (Nep.), Walk.

*Schizaspidia*, West.—furcifer (Ben.), West.
Family Chrysididae.

Stilbium, Spin.—splendidum, Fabr.
Hedychrum, Latr.—timidum, Dahl. : rugosum, Smith.
Parnopes, Latr.—viridis (Mad.), St. Fary.
Pyria, St. Fary.—oculata, Fabr.
Chrysis, Fabr.—oculata, amethystina, Fabr. : pubescens (Bom.),
Smith : dissimilis, Rechei, orientalis exulans,
Schiodtei, Dahl. : fuscipennis, Brulé.

Family Evaniidae.

Megischus, Br.—coronator, Fabr.
Stephanus, Jur.—indicus (Mad.), West.
Evania, Fabr.—laevigata, Latr. : antennatis, West.

Family Ichneumonidae.

Pimpla, Fabr.—bipartita, Br. : punctata, pedator, Fabr.
Ophion, Fabr.—univittatus, rufus (In.), Br.
Paniscus, Grav.—lineatus (Ben.), Br.
Cryptus, Fabr.—tricolor (Ben.), Br.
Joppa, Fabr.—rufa, Brulé.
Mesostenus, Grav.—marginatus (Ben.), geniculatus, ochropus,
Br.
Hemiteles, Grav.—tripartitus (Mad.), Br.

Family Braconidae.

Bracon, Fabr.—aculeator, femorator, Fabr. : laminator, Richei,
didymus, Br. : hindostanus, Brulé, Smith.
Vipio, Latr.—scutus, bicarinatus, Br.
Agathis, Latr.—flavipennis, maculipennis (Ben.), semifusca,
suffasciata, Br.

References.

St. Fargeau et Brulé.—Histoire Naturelle des Insectes Hyménoptères. (IV.

Westwood.—Mod. Class, Ins., II. 1839 : Arc. Ent., I. 43, (Dorylidae). II 66
(Sphégids) also Australian species of Mutillides and Thyannides. An. Mag. N. H.
M. z. II. 393 : VI. 87 : VII. 636.

Walker, F.—List of the specimens of Hymenopterous insects in the British
Mag. N. H. from 1838 pessim.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES. 255


Wood-Mason.—List of Burmese Hymenoptera, J. A. S. Ben. XLVII. ii. 167.


DIPTERA.

The order Diptera (two-winged) includes those insects commonly known as house-flies, crane-flies, gad-flies, bot-flies, gnats, and mosquitoes. The insect passes through the three stages of larva, pupa and imago. The body is composed of three parts, the head, thorax and abdomen. The plane of the head opposite the thorax is called the occiput, and that portion of it lying over the junction of the head, the nape (cervix). The part of the head between the antennae and the occiput is known as the front (frons) and the top of it the crown (vertex), the boundary between the front and the occiput being called the vertical margin. The middle of the front being often of a more membranaceous nature and sometimes differing in colour from its borders is called the frontal stripe. The frontal crescent is separated from the front by an arcuated impressed line called the frontal fissure. The anterior part of the head from the antennae to the mouth is called the face (facies). The head is furnished with a mouth, eyes and antennae. The oral parts destined for sucking consist of 2-6 hair-like pieces of a scaly texture, and are either enclosed in the upper groove of a sheath having the form of a proboscis and terminated by two lips or are covered by one or two unjointed scales that form the sheath. The oval parts in Diptera are analogous to and represent the jaws, lips and feelers of the mouths of other insects. The more noticeable of these parts are the labium or under lip and the palpi or feelers. The eyes are compound and are surrounded, as a rule, by a ring called the orbit. Where simple eyes
exist, they are never more than three in number and are placed on
the vertex, sometimes in a sharply-defined triangular space called
the ocellar triangle. The antennæ are placed on the front part of
the head: the two lower joints are called the scapus and the remain-
der the flagellum. They vary much in form and size in different
families. The thorax consists of three parts, though in appearance
there is only one. The first and last segments are very short. The
mesothorax bears the wings on its upper surface and these are two
in number, membranous, veined and mostly transparent, though
occasionally spotted. They lie, when at rest, longitudinally to the
body and have a pair of alulets at their base. A pair of balancers
(halteres) are attached to the last segment of the thorax and repre-
sent rudimentary hind-wings. The abdomen consists of 5-9appa-
rent segments and is frequently joined to the thorax by only a por-
tion of its breadth. In the females the abdomen usually terminates
in a point, but in those with fewer segments it terminates in a suc-
cession of small tubes which close up in the manner of a telescope.
There are six legs terminating in 5-jointed tarsi, of which the last
joint is furnished with two claws and two or three pulvilli or cushions
that enable the insect to walk on polished surfaces. The greater
number of the Diptera possess a bladder-like expansion (ingluvies) or
crop communicating with the esophagus by a tube. The larvae are
fat, white, legless grubs brought up in the food provided for them
from the time of their exit from the egg. They do not change their
skin until they undergo the change to the pupa state, and even then
the outer covering seems only to harden and form a case for them:
others prepare cocoons before the change. The wingless Nycteribiidae
and other apterous species belong to this order as well as the Pulici-
dae or fleas, which though apterous are in form and habits allied.

The neuration of the wings has been made use of in the classi-
fication of the Diptera in part by Fallen, but not to the extent that
has been observed in the Hymenoptera. The families of the order
are now distributed as follows:—

I.—ORTHORAPHA—pupa incomplete.

A.—Nemocera.—Diptera which have the antennæ filiform and
composed of more than six joints: palpi 4-5 jointed.
Includes all the families in the following list from the
Cecydomyidae to the Tipulidae.
B.—*Brachycera.*—Diptera which have the antennæ short and apparently only 3-jointed; the *scapus* normal and the first joint of the *flagellum* abnormally developed and converted into a sensorial organ: palpi 1-2 jointed. Includes all the families from the *Xylophagidae* to the *Dolichopodidae*.

**II.—CYCLOMORPHA.—Pupa coarctate.**

A.—*Proboscidea.*—Diptera furnished with a proboscis and whose larvæ have an *œsophageal* frame. Includes all the families from the *Syriphidae* to the *Diopsidae*.

B.—*Eproboscidea* (Pupipara).—Proboscis wanting, body coriaceous and no *œsophageal* frame.

**III.—SUCTORIA.**

Includes the family *Pulicidae*.

The neuration of the wings finds a common type in the wings of the *Muscidae*. The frame-work is formed by the longitudinal veins springing from the base which are united together by the transverse veins, the intervening diaphanous space being called cells or cellules.

The following figure (A) explains the terminology of the neuration in Diptera:

**Fig. A.**

*Explanation*—a. transverse shoulder-vein: b. auxiliary veins: c. to h. the first to sixth longitudinal veins: i. small or middle transverse vein: k. posterior transverse vein: l. posterior basal transverse vein: m. posterior a basal transverse vein: n. rudiment of the fourth trunk: o. auxiliary incision. A. B. C. first to third costal cells; D. marginal cell: E. submarginal cell: F. G. H. first to third posterior cells: I. discal cell: K. first or large basal cell: L. second basal cell or anterior small basal cell: M. third basal cell or posterior small basal cell: N. anal or auxiliary corner of the wing: O. alar appendage (*alula*).
Schiner informs us that in 1868 there were 20,800 species of Diptera described, and at present we may set down the known species as close on 30,000, of which a considerable number belong to India. Many of these insects, as remarked by Van der Hæven, are injurious to us by their puncture: others suck the blood of our domestic animals: some spoil our food by depositing their eggs on it, especially on flesh and cheese, where the larvae (maggots) are developed. There is, on the other hand, no single species of this order from which we immediately derive advantage, yet much good is afforded by them indirectly. Some feed on and remove carrion and putrescent matters, others live in and on the bodies of the larvae of more noxious insects. The Diptera live long in the larva state, and but few, except the domestic fly, have a prolonged existence in the perfect state. The mosquitos, gnats, sand-flies, black-flies, eye-flies, daddy long-legs, &c., so well known in India belong to the Nemecera group and abound in marshy districts, for their larvae live in the stagnant water of ponds.

The Cecidomyiidae comprise the gall-gnats, minute delicate species remarkable for long hairs on the wings which are easily rubbed off. The Mycetophilidae are called fungus-gnats, their larvae feeding in great numbers on the mushroom. The Simulium destinatum inflicts a short sharp bite and frequently attacks various animals. The larvae of the Bibionidae are found in the dung of cattle, and the perfect insect differs in the sexes of the same species. The Culicidae furnish the most formidable specimens of the gnat tribe, and the Tipulidae give us the Indian representatives of the daddy long-legs. To the Brachycera group belong the Xylophagidae or wood-eaters, and also the Stratiomyiidae, a family rich in various forms and well represented in India. The larvae of the insects of the latter family live in water, have a long flattened body covered by a coriaceous skin, divided into segments, of which the last three form a tail crowned by a radiated expansion of hairs. The skin dries up to form the pupa case, and the perfect insect emerges from an orifice made by it in the second ring. The Tabanidae or gad-flies are very common in the forests along the foot of the hills and also the bogs. The former pursue animals to suck their blood, and the latter in order to lay their eggs on the hair in places which are commonly licked by the animals. The eggs then descend through the mouth into the stomach, where they hatch, and larvae are produced, which,
after a certain time, pass out with the excrement to the ground, where the pupa stage is passed and a new generation of the bot-fly arises. The 

**after a**

**cortnin**

**time,**

**pass**

**out**

**with the excrement to**

**the**

**ground,**

**where the pupa stage**

**is**

**meed**

**and a**

**new**

**generation of the bot-fly**

**arises.**

**The**

**rndr~a**

**fly of Kulnaou**

**probably**

**belongs**

**to**

**thin**

&on.

**This insect hovers in the air for some time before alighting and then settles and attaches itself to the skin. Its bite is at first painless,**

**but after a time a troublesome itching is felt and a mark like a bruise arises which eventually forms a sore if not cared for. It is particularly the pest of the Sarju valley.**

**The Asilidae are largely represented in genera and species in India. The three basal cells are much prolonged and the third longitudinal vein is furcate and the third joint of the antennæ is simple. The insects of the genus Asilus are carnivorous and prey on other Diptera and Hymenoptera. The Bombylidae is another family exceedingly rich in Indian forms. To the Protopsidea belong the Syrphidae or Aphis-eaters, whose larvæ prey on plant-llice. The perfect insects are so spotted and banded with yellow as to resemble a young wasp and the larvæ are small slender worms of a pale green colour. The common house-fly and the flesh-fly and blue-bottle belong to the Muscidae. Their legless larvæ are well known. The bot-flies are large velvety flies which have very small antennæ and a rudimentary trunk. They take no nourishment in the perfect state, and though they make a loud buzzing noise are merely occupied in selecting a suitable place on which to lay their eggs. To the Euprotoboscidea belong certain small, parasitic, usually aperous flies that prey on the bodies of mammals, birds and insects, and include the sheep-louse or tick so common wherever the Bhotiys drive their flocks, and the bat-louse that especially abounds on the flying-fox. In the last section are placed the fleas which have a complete metamorphosis like the Diptera proper and are very common in the rains in every hill-station.**

**DIPTERA.**

**I.—ORTHORAPHA.**

**A.—Nemocera.**

**Family Cecydomyidæ—Gall-gnats.**

Cecidomyia, Meigen.—primaria (Mad.), Walk.

**Family Mycetophilidæ—Fungus-gnats.**

Mycetophila, Meigen.—bimaculata, Walk.
Family Simulidae.

Simulium, *Latr.—destinatum* (Mad.), *Walk.*

Family Bibionidae.

Bibis, *Geoff.—bicolor,* *Walk.*


Family Culicidae—Gnats.


Family Chironomidae.

Chironomus, *Meigen.—socius* (Ben.), *Walk.*

Macropema, *Meigen.—gibbosa,* *Wied.*

Family Tipulidae—Daddy long-legs: crane-flies.

Caloptera, *Guér.—nepalensis* (Nep.), *West.*

Tipula, *Linn.—praepotens* (Nep.), *Wied.: venusta* (As.), *fulvipennis* (Nep.), *reposita* (Nep.), *Walk.*

Pterocosmus, *Walk.—velutinus,* (Nep.), *Walk.*

Otenophora, *Meigen.—laeta* (N. I., Sind.), *Fabr.: xanthomelana,* *melanura* (Nep.), *Walk.*

B.—Brachycera.

Family Xylophagidae—Wood-gnats.

Xylophagus, *Meigen.—brunneus,* *Wied.*

Phycus, *Walk.—canescens,* *Walk.*

Family Stratiomyidae.

Beris, *Walk.—javana,* *Macq.*

Sargus, *Fabr.—gemmafer* (As.), *aurifer* (N. I.), *Walk.: metallinus* (Nep.), *Fabr.*

Chloromomyia, *Duncan—sapphirina,* *Walk.: flaviventris,* *affinis,* *Wied.*

Stratiomyia, *Geoff.—rubrithorax* (Ben.), *solennis,* *Macq.: viridana* (Ben.), *Wied.: minuta* (Mad.), *pusilla* (Mad.), *Fabr.*

Clitellaria, *Meigen.—heminopla,* *Wied.*

Biastes, *Walk.—indicus,* *Saund.*

Pachygaster, *Meigen.—rufitarsis,* *Macq.*
Family Tabanidae—Breeze-flies, gad-flies.
Chrysops, *Meigen.*—dispar, pellucidus, *Fabr.*: flaviventris (N. I.),
*Macq.*: fasciatus, *Wied.*: stimulans, *Saund.*:
ligatus, semicirculus, terminalis, *Walk.*
Tabanus, *Linn.*—indicus, striatus, rufiventris, *Fabr.*: basalis,
consanguineus (Mad.) Servillei, rubicundus,
*Macq.*: virgo, ardens, dorsilinea, orientalis,
rubidus, *Wied.*: inscitus, auriflamma, orientis,
tènebrosus (Mad.), internus, *Walk.*

Family Asilidae.

Dasytgon, *Fabr.*—apicalis, albonotatus (Ben.), nigricauda,
dorsalis, *Wied.*: scatophagoides, laphrides,
pulverifer, trimelas, imbutus, apiformis. Gar-
amas, *Vica* (As.), *Rhyphæ* (As.), polygnatus
(As.), Balbillus (Nep.), Ambryon (N. I.),
Aphrices (N. I.), Damias (N. I.), Echelus
(Nep.), Imbrex (Nep.), Libo, Otacilius,
Súra, Volcatus, *Walk.*

Laphria, *Meigen.*—hirtipes, *Fabr.*: senomera (Ben.), *gigas,
*Macq.*: bengalensis, *Wied.*: Elva (N. I.),
chrysotelus, elegans, *Walk.*

Cormansis, *Walk.*—halictides, (Ben.), *Walk.*
Laxencocera, *Macq.*—flavibarbis (Ben.), albibarbis (Ben.), *Macq.*
Trupanea, *Macq.*—flavibarbis (Mad.), varipes (Ben.), rufibarbis,
orientalis, fusca (Ben.), heteroptera (Mad.),
Duvaucellii (Ben.), Marcii, maculatus, *Macq.*:
hospes (Mad.), Westernmanii (Ben.), *Wied.*:
Calanus, sigillifera, telifera, contracta, Go-
bares, univentris, *Walk.*
Erax, Macq.—rufiventris, Macq.
Asilus, Innn.—bifidus (Mad.), annulatus, Fabr.: latus, Wied.: Philus (As.), Iamenes, Curatius, opulentus, penultimus, congruous, paterculus, praefiniens, Walk.: bengalensis, Duvauceli (Ben.), nudipes, trifarius (Mad.), flavicornis (Ben.), Macq.
Ommatius, Ill.—leucopagon, compeditus, auratus (Panj.), Wied., nanus, Walk.
Senoprosopus, Macq.—Diardii (Ben.), Macq.
Damas, Fabr.—planiceps, Fabr.: tibialis, Macq.: fusca, Walk.
Family Midasidae.
Midas, Fabr.—ruficornis, Wied.
Family Bombylidae.
Bombylius, Linn.—maculatus (Mad.), Fabr.: orientalis (N. I.), Macq.: ardens, Walk.
Anthrax, Scop.—Lar (Ben.), Fabr.: distigma, Wied.: Alexon, dives (As.), collaris (Mad.), basifascia (N. I.), Walk.
Family Therevidae.
Thereva, Latr.—cylindrica, Walker.
Family Cystidae.
Henops, Ill.—costalis, Walker.
Family Empidae.
Hilara, Meigen.—Bares, Walker.
Family Dolichopodidae.
Psilopus, Meigen.—Cupido, caelestis, Walker.

II.—CYCLORAPHA.
A.—Proboscidea.

Family Syrphidae—Aphis-eaters.
Microdon, Meigen.—stilboiides, Walk.
Chrysotoxum, Ill.—Baphyrus (N. I.), Walk.
Syrphus, Fabr.—ericetorum (N. I.), Fabr.: ægrotus, orientalis (Mad.), Wied.: alternans (N. I.), Walk.
Baccha, Fabr.—Amphithecæ, Walk.


Ceria, *Fabr.*—eumenioides (N. I.), *Saund.*

Family *Tachinidae.*


Zona, *Walk.*—pictipennis (Nep.), *Walk.*

Family *Dexiidae.*

Dexia, *Meigen.*—serena (Mad.), *Walk.*

Family *Sarcophagidae.*


Family *Muscidae.*


Sphryracephala, Say.—Hearseiana (Nimach), *West.*

Family *Anthomyidae.*

Anthomyia, *Meigen.*—Peroe (Mad.), *Walk.*

Family *Cordyluridae.*


Family *Sciomyzidae.*

Sepedon, *Latr.*—Crishna (Nep.), *Walk.*

Family *Micropetidae.*

Nerius, *Wied.*—rubescens (Mad., Ben.), *Macq.*

Family *Ortalidae.*


Family *Trypetidae.*

Family *Diopsidae*.

*Diopsis, Linn.*—*indica, Hearseiana* (N. I.), *West.* : Sykeri (Bom.), *Gray.*

**B.**—*Eproboscidea, Pupipara,*

Family *Hippoboscidae*.

*Hippobosca, Linn.*—*variegata* (Ben., Mad.), *Wied.* : Francillon (Ben.), *Leach.*

*Ornithobia, Meigen.*—*pallida* (N. I.), *Meigen.*

*Ornithomyia, Latr.*—*nigricans* (Ben.), *Leach.*

Family *Nycteribiidae*.

*Nycteribia, Latr.*—*Hopei* (Ben.) : *Roylii* (N. I.) : *Sykesii, West.*

**III.**—*Suctoria.*

Family *Pulicidae*.

*Pulex, Linn.*—*irritans, Linn.*

References.


**MYRIAPODA.**

The class *myriapoda* is one belonging to the sub-kingdom *Arthropoda* and includes the animals known as centipedes, millipedes and one kind of glow-worm. They do not undergo a metamorphosis properly so called, though in some the number of rings and feet augment as they grow. The buccal apparatus consist in most of two mandibles which are toothed at their broad extremity and of a four-lobed underlip whose two lateral lobes represent the maxillae of insects. In some the second pair of feet are soldered together at the base and form a second underlip which serves as a protection to the oral organs and the first pair of feet, and in others these parts coalesce and form a suctorial apparatus. There is no separation between the thorax and abdomen and the whole body is ringed and has attached to its under
surface the legs, which number twenty-four or more and are terminated by a single claw. Most of them have two clusters of simple eyes, but in some the eyes are wanting. The antennæ are as a rule short and thread-like. They are distributed into the following suborders and families:—

I.—Chilopoda or foot-jawed.
   a.—Cermatiidae.
   b.—Scolopendridae. Centipedes.
   c.—Geophilidae. False glow-worm.

II.—Chilognatha or jaw-jawed.
   a.—Glomeridae. Millipedes.
   b.—Polydesmidae.
   c.—Julidae. Snake millipedes.

The Chilopoda are carnivorous in their habits and live on insects that prey on vegetable matters. Their mandibles are half-leg and half-jaw, like the falces of the scorpion, and in the centipedes are provided with a poison sac and gland with which their prey is numbed. The Cermatiidae are easily recognised by their thin body, long legs, long antennæ and correspondingly long ultimate pair of legs. The Geophilidae are small, long and narrow with short legs, often forty or more. Several species of this family emit a phosphorescent light at the breeding season. The Chilognatha, on the other hand, have an oral apparatus fit for manducation and are vegetable feeders, doing considerable damage to garden and other crops; they also consume dead earth-worms and small mollusces. Many have the power of emitting a very unpleasant unctuous fluid with an acid reaction. They have also the habit of rolling themselves up spirally with their head in the middle, and in this position hybernate. A common rufous form may be found on the roads after the rains have commenced crawling over each other in hundreds.

Class MYRIPODA—Centipedes.

I.—CHILOPODA.

Family Cermatiidae.

Cermatia, 
   a.—nobilis, Templ.: Hardwickei, Downesii (Cen. In.), rubrilineata, Neup.: longicornis (Mad.), Fabr.: serratipes (Mad.), Gerr.
Family *Scolopendridae*.

*Scolopendra, Gerv.*—tigrina (Oudh), formosa (Ben.), silhetensis, Hardwickei, concolor (Ben.), tuberculidens, *Newp.*: de Haanii, *Brandt*.

*Cryptops, Leach.*—nigra (N. I.), *Newp*.

Family *Geophilidae*.

*Mecistocepalus, Newp.*—punctifrons (Mad.), *Newp*.

II.—*CHILOGNATHA*.

Family *Glomeridae*.

*Zephronia, Gray.*—heterostictica (Mad.), glabratia, *Newp.*: chitonoides (Mad.), tigrina, zebraica (Bom.), nigrinota (As.), lutescens, laevissima (Sik.), excavata, (Sik.), atrisparsa (Bom.) *Butler*: inermis (Mad.), *Humb*.

*Sphærotherium, Brandt.*—politum (Sik.), maculatum (Sik.), *Butler*: javanicum, *Gudr*.

Family *Polydesmidae*.

*Polydesmus, Lutr.*—depressus, σιγμα (Mad.), *Faur*.

Family *Juliidae*.


*Spirobolus, Brandt.*—punctulatus (Cal.), *Newp*.

*Spirostreptus, Brandt.*—nigroabatius (Mad.), maculatus (Cal.), cinctatus (Mad.), *Newp*.

*Lysiopetalum, Brandt.*—Hardwickei (Nep.), *Gray*.

References.

*Koch, C. L.*—System der Myriapoden. Regensburg, 1847.


*Murray.*—Economic Entomology (Aptera)—South Kensington Museum Hand-
CHAPTER III.

HISTORY.¹

CONTENTS.


In a previous chapter² we have given a general sketch of the principal races of men inhabiting the Himalaya-Tibetan region. We have shown how their distribution, their character and their habits have all been affected by the physical circumstances of the country in which they live; how physical unfitness has retarded the diffusion of particular races, and how physical adaptation has encouraged it. The operation of these general laws is well exhibited in Kumaon and Garhwal. Here the entire tract between the snowy range and the plains of Hindustan is in its main physical characteristics Indian. The country which lies between the snowy range and the ghat-range or water-parting is on the other hand entirely Tibetan in its character. These statements are more especially true of the inhabited portions of the two regions. The mass of the population of the first-named tract is found in the valleys and the lower slopes of the mountains below an elevation of 6,000 feet. Here the climate is thoroughly Indian; a well-marked winter, almost entirely without snow, is followed by a summer of nearly tropical heat that is further succeeded by a season of periodical rain. The vegetation is semi-tropical in its character and the common agricultural productions are those of the plains of northern India. In the valleys beyond the snowy range, the Bhot of the inhabitants of the lower hills, we find

¹ In this chapter it is intended to give only the general ethnography, reserving census and caste details and folk-lore for the notices of each district given hereafter. So far as possible matters affecting the Kumaon Himalaya will alone be noticed, but much concerning other portions of the great range must be incidentally mentioned, for which the fuller explanation may be obtained by following up the references given in the foot-notes.

² Chapter I., Vol. I.
ourselves under altogether different conditions. The heavy falls of snow in the winter months give to the climate at that season an even more than Tibetan rigour. The summer is always temperate and the periodical rains fall only as moderate showers. The vegetation is scanty and sub-arctic in its character and the late spring and early autumn restrict agricultural operations to one precarious summer crop of a few of the hardier products of northern countries. Precisely then as the climatal conditions of the Himalaya approach those of India on the one hand or of Tibet on the other, so do we find that the Hindu or the Tibetan element prevails among its inhabitants.

In considering the origin and position of the races inhabiting the Himalaya between the Tons and the Sárda, it will be necessary to discuss the ancient geography, history and ethnography of the tract, for the materials for these really separate studies are one and the same and it would lead to much useless repetition to separate them so as to make each intelligible by itself. We shall therefore in the following pages combine all that we have been able to gather regarding the early history, geography and ethnography of the Kumaon Himalaya, and although it may take us into what at first sight may appear to be matters unconnected with our subject, a little reflection will show that where the materials for positive deductions are wanting, we can only arrive at some certainty by establishing negative propositions. The Himalaya of these provinces is not an isolated tract separated from the rest of the Himalaya to the west or from India on the south by such physical or ethnographical boundaries as would give it a peculiar character and would lead to a well-marked local history. On the contrary though, as we shall see, it has a local mediæval and modern history, its earlier history must be looked for in the notices that we possess regarding the western Himalaya as a whole, and it is only after a careful and comprehensive view of those notices that we can arrive even at the negative conclusions which are all that we can expect to establish in the present state of our knowledge. It is still, however, of some advantage to show that many of the existing theories regarding the origin of the people of these hills are devoid of foundations in fact and are otherwise impossible. We shall endeavour, therefore, to trace out every reference to this section of
the Himalaya and thus afford indications which in the absence of more precise information will enable us to form some conception of its position in history. We hope that it is hardly necessary formally to deprecate the criticism of those who have the inestimable advantage of access to great libraries and the society of the learned. The following pages simply profess to be suggestive notes on a comparatively virgin field in Indian archaeology and are the fruit of the leisure minutes, we may say, of an unusually laborious Indian official life. We shall leave to those most competent to decide the ultimate value of the results of our researches into Kumaon history; but, in any case, we believe that we have added something of permanent value to existing knowledge and leave to others the task of completing the work. The Hindu writers, though professing to give in many cases the geography and history of the countries known to them, have with an universal persistence disfigured their accounts with the most puerile and groundless stories and have so mingled truth and fiction that it is difficult in any case and impossible in most cases to distinguish facts from fables. With the exception of the Kashmir chronicles we are not aware of any writing that deserves to be called an historical composition, but none the less is it necessary to consult these records and endeavour to collect from them the historical indications that they still assuredly possess.

The great mass of the population in Kumaon and Garhwal profess a belief little differing from the orthodox Hinduism of the plains. The existing inhabitants belong to the Khassa or Khasiya race and speak a dialect of Hindi akin to the language of the Hindus of Rajputana. All their feelings and prejudices are so strongly imbued with the peculiar spirit of Hinduism that although their social habits and religious belief are often repugnant to those who strictly observe the orthodox ceremonial usages of Hinduism, it is impossible for any one that knows them to consider the Khasas to be other than Hindus. There are several facts connected with their history that show, whatever their origin may have been, the Khasas have for centuries been under the influence of the Brahmanical priesthood. The shrines of Kedár and Badari are both within Garhwal and from time immemorial have been visited by crowds of pilgrims from all parts of India, whose enthusiasm for Hinduism must have acted on the hill men brought into connection
with them as guides and purveyors. Again, many of these pilgrims took up their residence in the hills and leavened the manners and observances of the rough indigenous population. Many other immigrants arrived to take service amongst the petty princes of the hills or to receive their daughters in marriage, and thus we find a considerable sprinkling of families all through these hills who consider themselves one with the various castes in the plains whose tribal name they bear. To the north in the inter-alpine valleys of Bhot, we have a tribe of decided Tibetan origin and whose affinities are found in the trans-Himalayan tribes of Hundes. They are known as Bhotiyas by the people of the lower hills, who in turn are designated Khasiyas by the Bhotiyas, whilst the people of the adjoining portion of Tibet are known as Hunas or Huniyas. In addition to the tribes already enumerated there are the Rájis or Réjyas, the modern representatives of the Réjya-Kirátas and the Thárus and Bhukas of the Tarái lowlands and traces of the Nágas and Sakas, whilst others contend that we have here also old Baktrian (Yavana) colonies. For our present purpose it is only necessary to observe that there are, at the present day, three great divisions of the population, the immigrants from the plains, the Khasas and Bhotas. With regard to the first division we shall reserve the detailed examination of their individual claims to the local accounts of each district which will follow hereafter. Here we shall endeavour to ascertain who these Khasas, Bhotas, Hunas, Sakas, Yavanas, Nágas, and Réjya-Kirátas were and what was their position with regard to the neighbouring tribes, a study that will necessarily lead us to consider the general history of ancient India wherever these names occur and much that might appear foreign to our purpose, but which bears materially on the conclusions to which we shall eventually arrive.

It is not often that the Hindu writers tell us much that we can depend upon regarding the peoples of ancient India, yet it may be gathered from them that at a very early period, the compilers of the sacred books possessed a considerable knowledge of the geography of these mountains. This knowledge, though veiled in the later works by a cloud of silly legends, is none the less real and, when stripped of the marvellous, can be verified, at the present day. In Vaidik times, when the
elements were worshipped, when the primal manifestations of nature absorbed the devotion of the Aryan immigrants, the noble range of the Himálaya fitly called 'the abode of snow,' was looked on as the home of the storm-god, the mother of rivers, the haunt of fierce wild beasts and more fierce wild men. It then received the homage justly due to it as the greatest and most formidable of all the mountain systems that the Aryans had met with and was finally declared to be the home of the gods. From the earliest ages, the great, the good, and the learned have sought its peaceful valleys to enjoy nearer communion with the deity. In the manuals of the later Pauránik records we find almost every hill and river reverently and lovingly described and dedicated to some one or other of the members of the great pantheon. Legends of the gods and saints and holy men adorn the story of each peak and pool and waterfall and give that realistic turn to the teaching of the earlier priesthood which appears to have been peculiarly adapted to the Hindu mind. "He who thinks\(^1\) of Himáchal, though he should not behold him, is greater than he who performs all worship in Káshi. In a hundred ages of the gods I could not tell thee of the glories of Himáchal. As the dew is dried up by the morning sun, so are the sins of mankind by the sight of Himáchal."

The sources of our information may be thus briefly indicated:—

**Sources of information.**

First the Vaidik records. Max Müller assigns a date between 1200 and 1000 B.C. to the older hymns of the Rig-Veda;\(^2\) Haug places their composition between 2400 and 2000 B.C.; and Duncker states that the immigration of the Aryas took place about 2000 B.C., and the origin of the oldest songs of the Veda cannot, therefore, be considered earlier than the sixteenth century before Christ. For the songs of the Mantra period containing the later hymns Max Müller gives 1000 and 800 B.C. as the date of their composition, whilst Haug and others place them between 2000 and 1400 B.C. The works of Müller's Bráhmana period include the Bráhmanas, Upanishads, Aranyakas, and similar writings chiefly expository of those of the preceding period which are included in the Sanhitas or collections of the four Vedas. To the Sútra period are assigned the six Vedántas

---

1 From the Mánasa-khanda of the Skanda Purána in Sir John Stracey's notes, to which also I am indebted for a paraphrase of a portion.  
or branches of Vaidik exegesis and the Sūtras or redactions of the ancient Sākhās containing aphorisms relating to sacrificial and domestic duties and the like. These last belong to the Smriti or traditional class. The epic poems or Itihāsas form the second division and are represented by the Mahābhārata\(^1\) and the Rāmāyana. To the third division and latest in point of time belong the Purāṇas and their continuations to the present day, including the local collections of legends regarding the lives of the saints, the holy places and the miracles performed there. From the earlier Vaidik records we learn that the Aryas came from Central Asia and established themselves on either bank of the Indus. The greater number of the hymns of the Rig-Veda refer to this period of the Aryan history and distinguish between the immigrants and the aborigines. To the latter they give the generic name of Dasyu, which subsequently included the non-Aryan tribes as well as those of Aryan descent who separated from Aryan practices in matters of religion and polity. The later Vaidik records indicate the gradual advance of the Aryas to the south-east until we find them in the Itihāsa or epic period occupying the whole of the upper Duāb.

The geographical indications in the Rig-Veda are of the most meagre description and consist of the enumeration of certain rivers in the celebrated 'hymn to the rivers' and the names of a few tribes and countries.\(^2\) The rivers named show that the Aryas were then living in the tract between the Indus and the Satlaj and were not well acquainted with the region between the latter river and the Ganges. The rivers Ganges and Drishadvati or Kaggar are named but once, the Sarasvati and Jumna are only mentioned a few times, but the Sindhu or Indus is frequently referred to and to it as 'the most copious of streams' the river-hymn is the passed. In one verse, the other rivers are asked to received this hymn:—"Receive my hymn, O Ganga, Yamuna, Sarasvati, Sutudri, along with the Parushni: listen,

1 As to the date of this work, see Gazetteer, II., 60, note. That the principal part of the Mahābhārata belongs to a period previous to the political ascendency of Buddhism had been proved by Professor Lassen; Müller’s History above quoted, p. 62. The archaic portions of the Mahābhārata may be earlier than some of the works of the Smriti class and the older portions of the Vishnu Purāna may be earlier than portions of the Rāmāyana, but still the general statement given above is correct.

O Marudvriha along with the Asikni and Vitasta; O Arjikiyá along with the Sushoma." In the succeeding verse the Rasa, Sveti, Kubhá, Gomati, and Krumu are mentioned as tributaries of the Indus. The Sutudri is the Satlaj: the Parushni is the Iravati or Havi: the Marudvriha is the Chináb after its confluence with the Jhelam: the Asikni is the Acesines or Chináb, and the Vitasta is the Hydaspes or Jhelam. The names Arjikiyá and Sushoma signify, according to Lassen, vessels used in the preparation of the Soma juice and are not the names of rivers. The Kubha is the Kopohenes or Kábul river, the Krumu and Gomati being the Kurum and Gomal rivers. The Sveti is the Swát river and the Rasa appears to be some other affluent of the Kábul river. The earliest seat of the Aryas in India is therefore the lower Kábul valley and the adjoining tract along the Indus, a place of which we shall have much to say hereafter. The knowledge of the Himálaya is confined to certain allusions to winter: thus in the Rig-Veda we have the prayer:—"May we rejoice living a hundred winters (atathimáh) with vigorous offspring." In the Atharva-Veda the following passages occur:—"He whose greatness these snowy mountains (himavanto) and the sea with the aerial river declare." "May thy mountains be snowy (himavanto), O earth, and thy wilderness beautiful." Again in the same work the medicinal plant kushtha is said to be produced to the north of the Himavat and to be carried thence to the east. In the Aitareya-Bráhmana the Uttara Kurus are referred to thus:—"Wherefore in this northern region all the people who dwell beyond the Himavat (called) the Uttara Kurus and the Uttara Madras are consecrated to glorious rule." In a passage of the Kaushitaki-Bráhmana it is written:—"Pathyá Svásti (a goddess) knew the northern region. Now Pathyá Svásti is Vách (the goddess of speech). Hence in the northern region speech is better known and better spoken and it is to the north that men go to learnt each: men listen to the instructions of any one who comes from that quarter, saying, 'he says (so and so),' for that is renowned as the region of speech." On this the commentator remarks:—"Language is better understood and spoken: for Sarasvati is spoken of (as having her abode) in Kashmir, and in the hermitage of Badariká (Badrináth in Garhwál) the sound
of the Vedas is heard." So also Lassen:—"An account is to be found in an ancient record, according to which the Sanskrit had been preserved in greater purity in the northern countries than elsewhere, and Kashmir and Badari, at the sources of the Ganges, are specified by the commentator as such regions. This is, however, not sufficient to prove that in the different provinces of India there were then fundamental differences in the sacred language." The medical treatise of Charaka makes the physician Bharadvája a disciple of Indra and assigns to the neighbourhood of the Himalayas that gathering of sages out of which came the instruction of Bharadvája by Indra. The treatise referred to has, according to Weber,1 "rather high pretensions to antiquity; its prose here and there reminds us of the style of the Srauta-sutras." From the later Vaidik records, therefore, we learn that as early as several centuries before the Christian era the shrine of Badari was celebrated as a seat of learning and as the abode of holy men.

We next turn to the names of the peoples known to the Vaidik writers. In a verse of the Rig-Veda Visvámitra asks:—"What are thy cows doing amongst the Kikatas? They yield no milk for oblations and they heat no fire," implying that they were a people who knew not Aryan rites. Again in the Atharva-Veda, in an invocation to Takman, the personification of itch, as Chachak Devi is now of small-pox, it is said that his abode was among the Mújavats and Mahávrishas. As soon as born he sojourned amongst the Bálhikas, and he is here desired to depart to the Gándháris, Mújavats, Angas, and Mágadhas. The Kikatas are elsewhere explained to be one with the Mágadhás or people of Behar. The Bálhikas are the people of Balkh; Gándhára is the tract around Peshawar, and the Mújavats are elsewhere explained3 to be a mountain tribe of the north-west frontier. In the Bráhmanas, the name 'Báhíka' is applied to the tribes of the Panjáb generally; and it would appear that they as well as the Kámbojas, a frontier tribe to the north-west, spoke a dialect of Sanskrit, for Páñini, in his grammar, explains the dialectic differences between the speech of the Aryas and that of the Báhikas and Yaska those between the Aryan speech and the language of the Kámbojas. There is also evidence4 to show that the people of Gandhára were in

---

1 In the Mahábhárata. 2 Muir, II., 353. 3 Ibid, p. 268.
the habit of holding intercourse and contracting alliances with the Aryas. From these indications Muir argues that:—“Although in individual passages of the Mahâbhârata hatred and contempt are expressed in reference to the tribes living along the Indus and its five great tributaries, yet there is no trace of these tribes being regarded as of non-Indian origin.” ** * “The Indians distinguish not expressly, but by implication, the nations dwelling between the Indus and the Hindu Kush into two classes: first those to the eastward of the Indus, and some of those immediately to the westward of that river, as the Gandhâras, are in their estimation Indians; but with the exception of the Kashmiris and some less known races these Indians are not of the genuine sort: the general freedom of their customs is regarded as a lawless condition.” And Weber similarly remarks:—“The north-western tribes retained their ancient customs which the other tribes who migrated to the east had at one time shared. The former kept themselves free from the influence of hierarchy and of caste which arose amongst the latter as a consequence of their residence amongst people of alien origin (the aborigines). But the later orthodox feelings of the more eastern Aryas obliterated the recollection of their own earlier freedom and caused them to detest the kindred tribes to the westward as renegades, instead of looking on themselves as men who had abandoned their own original institutions.” Thus we have three classes of inhabitants in Upper India, that branch of the Aryas to whom the composition of the Vedas is to be attributed; their brethren in race and language who did not follow them in the development of their religious system and the aboriginal tribes.

The question remains as to who were Aryas and who were Dasyus. The primitive meaning of the word ‘Arya’ is still a subject of discussion. Some trace it throughout the Indo-European region in the ‘Airya’ of the ancient books of Persia; in the name ‘Ariana’ applied to the

1 Quoted from ibid., 354.  
2 It may be well to notice here in what respect the tribes not belonging to the four classes, such as the Bâhikas and Khasas, offended the prejudices of the twice-born. One of the charges brought against them is the boldness and unchastity of their women, “who sang and danced in public, drunk and undressed, wearing garlands and perfumed with ungucnta.” Another charge is that they had no Veda, no Vaislik ceremony and no sacrifice. Again, a Brahman then becomes a Kshatriya, a Vaisya or a Sudra, and eventually a barber. The aboriginal tribes would also seem to have been in the habit of burying their dead. Muir, II., 412, 482.  
tract comprising Herāt, Afghānīstān, Khurāsān, and Biluchīstān; in the name ‘Aryaka’ (Irāk); in the word ‘Ariya’ in the inscriptions of the Achaemenides; in the name ‘Iran’ in those of the Sāsānīdes; in the ‘Arioi’ (Oesetēs) of the Caucasus; in ‘Argeia,’ an old name of Greece; in the name ‘Hermann’ (Arminius) in Germany; and even in ‘Erin,’ the old name of Ireland. The meaning attached to the word in the earlier hymns of the Rig-Veda appears, however, to be ‘light-coloured,’ ‘pale,’ ‘white,’ as compared with the Dāsyus or black Antiocthones. Gradually as the Aryan forces advanced the word carries with it the meaning of free, noble, brave, masterful, wise, as opposed to the enslaved, debased, and ignorant Dāsyus, and here we find the white-faced immigrants called collectively the Aryan ‘varna,’ or ‘colour,’ a word which is to-day translated by caste (baran). The Greeks also knew of this contrast between the dark and light coloured races of India, for Ktesias records that the Indians were white and black, and that he himself had seen several of the fairer race. The Dāsyus are described as a black-skinned race who despised the rites and ceremonies of the Aryas, and again as goblins and demons inhabiting the forests and mountains of the frontier countries. In the Rig-Veda it is recorded that Indra, “armed with the lightning and trusting in his strength, moved about shattering the cities of the Dāsyus,” and the gods are prayed to “distinguish between the Aryas and those who are Dāsyus”:

“By these (succours) subdue to the Aryas all the hostile Dāṣa people everywhere, O Indra, whether it be kinsmen or strangers who have approached and injuriously assailed us, do thou enfeebles and destroy their power and vigour and put them to flight.”—“Who delivered (us) from the destroyer, from calamity; who, O powerful (god), didst avert the bolt of the Dāsa from the Arya in (the land of) the seven streams.”—“He who swept away the low Dāsa colour” (varṇam)—“scattered the servile hosts of black descent”—“conquered the black-skin.” Again Manu writes that those tribes which are without the pale of the castes, whether they speak the language of the Mlechchhas or of the Aryas, are called Dāsyus, and there is not

1 Muir, Sams. Texts, II. 360: ‘hatvi dasyun pra aryum varnam devat,’ slaying the Dāsyus he protected the Aryan colour.”
2 McCrindle’s Ktesias, p. 13.
3 Muir, l. c., 368.
4 The Dāsyus had chiefs over each tribe, several of whom are named. They lived incities, were intelligent and knew the law, but did not adopt the Brahmanic ritual, especially the complicated system of sacrifice requiring the aid and presence of several priests. See Muir, II., passim.
wanting evidence to show that some of the opponents of the orthodox immigrants to whom we owe the Vedas were of their own colour or caste. In the hymns of the Rig-Veda we have addresses to Indra implying the existence of Aryan foes as well as Dasyus:

“Do thou, heroic Indra, destroy both these our foes (our) Dása and our Aryan enemies” — “May we, associated with thee, the mighty one, overcome both Dása and Aryan through thy effectual energy”

“Whatever ungodly person, Dása or Aryan, designs to fight against us, let those enemies be easily subdued by us.” The Aryan tribes, we further learn, were divided into clans, each under its own Raja, and the newcomers pressed on the old settlers and fought with them. A formidable coalition of the Bharatas and others whose family priest was Visvámitra attacked the Trityas on the Sarasvati, whose spiritual guides belonged to the family of Vasishtha, and we have the prayers of both priests invoking the aid of Indra in the coming battle. The Bharatas were defeated and the song of victory of Vasishtha shows us that the enemies against which his side fought were Aryas. In the Aitariya-Bráhma, the author, after quoting a saying of Visvámitra, adds—“Most of the Dasyus are descended from Visvámitra.” Thus we see how certain Aryas who did not follow the orthodox guides became classed with the aborigines, and thus arises one source of the great confusion observed in the later ethnology. The system existing on earth was also transferred to the sphere of the gods, and here we find the Dasyu race represented by the Rákshasas, Dánavas and Daityas, sometimes the rebellious subjects and sometimes the slaves of the deities. It is in the later records that most details are given, but before proceeding further we will note the route by which the Aryas passed into Upper India. So late as 1840, Professor Benfey argued that most probably the Aryas dwelt for some time in little Tibet, near the sources of the Indus, before passing into India, and that the route adopted by them was through the passes along the Kumaon and Garhwal frontier to Indraprastha. In this view he was supported by Professor Weber as the only one consistent with the materials at their disposal. On reading through the Rig-Veda, however, both these eminent scholars abandoned this position and agreed in the result now generally accepted, that the Aryan tribes moved from Baktria into India by

1 Dasyu is connected with dása in the sense of ‘slave’; Muir, II., 367.
the Hindu Kush through the Kábul valley and across the Indus to the Sarasvati, the route that has been taken in every successive great invasion of India.

From the Sarasvati, the Aryas pressed on and occupied the upper Duáb, and it is here we find them in the Itihása period, when the Mahábhárata was written. The Uttara Kurus are now mentioned as living in Hari Varsha, as a people whom no one attempts to conquer and their country as the home of primitive customs. In describing the condition of the southern Kurus it is said that "they vied in happiness with the northern Kurus." In the Rámáyana, it is recorded that the Uttara Kurus are liberal, prosperous, perpetually happy and undecaying. In their country there is neither cold nor heat, nor decrepitude, nor disease, nor grief, nor fear, nor rain, nor sun, a description which has been localised in Kumaon, but here agrees better with the tract to the north of the Kashmir valley. Lassen remarks that though the country of Hariwarsha belongs to the region of mythical geography, the existence of the Uttara Kurus has a basis of geographical fact from (1) the way the country is mentioned.

1 *Ibid.*, 309, 337. Lassen writes:—"The diffusion of the Aryas towards the south, points to the conclusion that they came from the north-west from the country north of the Vindhyas, probably from the region bordering on the Jumna and the eastern part of the Panjáb. Their extension to the east between the Himálaya and the Vindhyas also indicates the same countries as their earlier seats. We find, moreover, evident traces of the Aryas in their advance from the north-west, having severed asunder the earlier population of Hindustan and driven one portion of it towards the northern and another portion towards the southern hills. Further, we cannot assume that the Aryas themselves were the earlier inhabitants who were pushed aside: for the inhabitants of the Dakhin, like those of the Vindhyas range, appear always as the weaker or retiring party, who were driven back by the Aryas. We cannot ascribe to the non-Aryan tribes the power of having forced themselves forward through the midst of an earlier Aryan population to the seats which they eventually occupied in the centre of the country; but, on the contrary, everything speaks in favour of their having been originally settled in those tracts where we find them at a later period and of their having once occupied an extensive territory." Again, he writes:—"There is only one route by which we can imagine the Aryan Indians to have immigrated into India; they must have come through the Panjáb and they must have reached the Panjáb through western Kábulistán. The road leading from the country on the Oxus into eastern Kábulistán and the valley of the Panjkoa or into the upper valley of the Indus, or from Gilgit over the lofty plateau of Deosáu down on Kashmir, roads now known to us as the roughest and most difficult that exist and do not appear to have been ever much or frequently used as lines of communication. We can only imagine the small tribes of the Díradas to have come by the second route from the northern side of the Hindu Kush into their elevated valleys, but we cannot suppose the main of the Aryas to have reached India by this road. All the important expeditions of nations or armies which are known to us have proceeded through the western passes of the Hindu Kush, and if we suppose the Aryan Indians to have come into India from Baktoria, this is the only route by which we can assume them to have arrived."
in the Vedas; (2) its existence in historical times as a real country, and (3) its being referred to as the home of primitive customs.

As regards the frontier tribes, the Mahábhárata mentions the conquest by the Pándavas of "the Utsavasankatas, seven tribes of Dasyus, inhabiting the mountains." Again, "Púkasásani conquered the Daradas with the Kámbojas and the Dasyus who dwell in the north-east region, as well as the inhabitants of the forest, with the Lohas, the farthest Kámbojas and the northern Rishikas." Moreover, Saineya, the charioteer of Krishna, is said to have "made the beautiful earth a mass of mud with the flesh and blood of thousands of Kámbojas, Sakas, Savaras, Kirátas, Varvaras, destroying thy host. The earth was covered with the helmets and shaven and bearded heads of the Dasyus," clearly intimating that the word 'Dasyu' is here a generic term denoting the whole of the tribes who are previously mentioned in this passage. The same record affirms their connection with the Aryas in the verses:—"These tribes of Kshattriyas, viz., Sakas, Yavanás, Kámbojas, Duvirás, &c., have become Vrishallas from seeing no Brahmans." This statement is repeated subsequently with the addition of the Mekalas, Látas, Konvasiras, Saundikas, Darvas, Chaúras, Savaras, Barbaras and Kirátas. Again the Yavanás are said to be descendants of Turvasu, the Vaibhojas to be sprung from Druhyu, and the Mlechchha tribes from Anu. The Mahábhárata thus not only uses the word 'Dasyu' as a generic term for the border tribes, but also makes these tribes to belong to the Kshattriya or warrior race. How it came to pass that these Kshattriyas lost their Aryan status is thus related:—"Satyavrata was degraded to the condition of a Chandála or outcast and called Trisanku on account of three sins (tri-sanku) of (1) killing a cow, (2) displeasing his father, and (3) eating flesh not properly consecrated. But on his repentance and feeding the family of Visvámitra during a twelve years' drought, he was transported to heaven. His descendant Báhu was vanquished by the tribes of Haihayas and

1 Ptolemy describes Serika or China as surrounded by mountain ranges, the Anabian, Aurasian, Asmirian, Kašian, Thagarian, Emóthus and another called Ottorokorze, and places the Ottor-korze southernmost of all near the Emóthus and Serikan mountains. It was doubtless from the ancient legend quoted in the text that the Greeks derived their idea of the Hyperboreans, the people who lived a thousand years, a long and happy life, free from disease and care in a land all paradise; see McCrindle's Ancient India, 24, 77.
Tālajhangas' and died in exile. To him a posthumous son named Sagarā was born, who nearly exterminated the Haihayas and would have also destroyed the Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas and Pahlavas, had they not applied to their family-priest, Vasishtha, for protection. The priest desired Sagarā to refrain from the slaughter of those who were as good as dead, for he had compelled the tribes to abandon the duties of their caste and all association with the twice-born, and Sagarā thereon imposed on them peculiar distinguishing marks. He made the Yavanas shave their heads entirely, the Sakas to shave the upper half of their heads, the Pāradas to wear their hair long, and the Pahlavas to let their beards grow. He deprived them of all religious rites and thus abandoned by Brahmans, they became Mlechchhas.'

This instructive legend shows us that the writers of the Itihāsa and early Paurānīk periods believed that these tribes had a common origin with themselves, though, as Muir shows, "they, at the same time, erroneously imagined that these tribes had fallen away from Brahmanical institutions: thus assigning to their own polity an antiquity to which it could in reality lay no claim."

In another passage of the Mahābhārata we have the statement that "in the region where these five rivers (Panchnad, Panjāb) flow after issuing from the mountains dwell the Bāhīkas called Arattas. * * The name of the country is Aratta; the water of it is called Bāhīka, there dwell degraded Brahmans, contemporary with Prajāpati. They have no Veda, no Vedic ceremony, nor any sacrifice. The gods do not eat the food offered by servile (dāsamīyāndu) Vrityās. The Prasthalas, Madras, Gandhāras, Arattas, Khasas, Vasātis and Sindhusauviras are nearly all very contemptible." Here we have the Khasas associated with the tribes of the Panjāb, which would show a more westerly location than Kumran.

The same record shows us that around Hastināpur, the seat of the Pandu rāj, were Dasyus variously known as Asuras, Daityas, Bhīlas, Rākshasas and

1 Assisted by the Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas and Pahlavas, according to the Vāyu Purāṇa; Wilson, VIII., 290. 2 Wilson, VIII., 294, who notes that the Greeks commonly shaved a portion of the head; but it is doubtful whether they ever shaved the head completely. The Skythians shave the fore part of the head, gathering the hair at the back into a long tail, as do the Chinese. The mountaineers of the Himalaya shave the crown of the head, as do the people of Kāfristan, with the exception of a single tuft. It is doubtful who the Pāradas are, except the ancestors of the Brahuis may be assigned to them, and then the Pahlavas will be the Parthians. 3 I., 488. 4 In the Meerut district.
The great Khândava forest in the valley of the Jumna near Indraprastha or old Dehli was occupied by the Nágas under their king Takshaka, who were expelled by fire and driven to take refuge in the hills. The Aryas continued their progress and preceded by Agni, the god of fire, occupied the whole country as far as the Sadántra or Gandak. We also read that Arjuna during his exile visited the holy places and at Hardwári met Ulúpi, the daughter of the Nága Rája Vásuki, whom he espoused. The same record gives a brilliant description of the city of the Nága Rája, that it "contained two thousand krores of serpent inhabitants; and the wives of all those serpents were of consummate beauty. And the city contained more jewels than any person in the world has ever seen, and there was a lake there which contained the water of life and in which all the serpents used to bathe." Throughout the Mahábhárata the Himálaya is considered holy ground, the well-loved home of the gods, where there were many places of pilgrimage (tirthas).

After the destruction of Dwáraka, when the Pándavas were told by Vyása that their power had departed and that they should now think of heaven alone, it was to the Himálaya that they retired. Placing Parikshit on the throne of Hastinápur and Yayutsu in Indraprastha, "Yudhishthira then took off his earrings and necklace and all the jewels from his fingers and arms and all his royal raiment: and he and his brethren, and their wife Draupadi, clothed themselves after the manner of devotees in vestments made of the bark of trees. And the five brethren threw the fire of their domestic sacrifices and cookery into the Ganges and went forth from the city following each other. First walked Yudhishtihra, then Bhima, then Arjuna, then Nákula, then Sahdeva, then Draupadi, and then a dog. And they went through the country of Banga toward the rising of the sun; and after passing through many lands they reached the Himálaya mountain, and there they died one after the other and were transported to the heaven of Indra." From Kurmácháal in the extreme east near the Káli to Jamnotri and the Dún the wanderings of the Pándavas are noted by some rock or stream commemorating some exploit or calling to mind some scene in the story of their travels. At Deo Dhúra, the grey granite boulders near the crest of the ridge are said to have been thrown there in sport by the Pándavas. Close
to the temple of Devi in the same place are two large boulders, the
uppermost of which, called 'Ran-sila,' is cleft right through the
centre by a deep fresh-looking fissure, at right angles to which there
is a similar rift in the lower rock. A smaller boulder on the top is
said to have been the weapon by which Bhima Sena produced these
fissures and the print of his five fingers is still pointed out. Ran-sila
itself is marked with the lines for carrying on the gambling game
of pachisi which even in their wanderings the Pándavas could not
abandon. They are also the reputed founders of the five temples to
Siva as Kedáreswar and did penance at Pándukeswar close to
Badarináth. All along the course of the sacred river are pools and
streams, temples and rocks, sacred to the Pándavas and across the
Ganges in Tihri, the course of the Jumna is in a lesser degree
consecrated to their memory. At Bhimghora above Hardwár the
priests show the imprint of the hoofs of Bhima's horse, and they say
that Drona, the preceptor of the Pándavas, resided in the eastern
portion of the valley of Dehra Dún, the Drona-ka-asrama of the
Kedára-khanda.

The law-book of the Mánavas is clearly in its present form the
outcome of many hands at various times, but will be more conveniently referred to
under the received title 'Manu.' It is still the great authority
on the systematic ethnography and cosmogony of the Hindus,
and affords us further evidence of the existence of the belief
that the majority of the border tribes were regarded as of the same
stock as the Aryas, but degraded members of it. It tells us that
the references made in the Shástras to castes other than the four is
merely "for the sake of convenience and conformity to common
usage." Even the very lowest classes, such as the Nishádas and
Chándálas, are derived from the miscegenation of the four castes.
Like the authors of the Mahábhárata, Manu affirms that the Kshat-
triya tribes of Paundrákas, Odras, Dráviras, Kámbojas, Yavanás,
Sakas, Páradas, Pahlavas, Chínas, Kirátas, Daradás, and Khásas,
became Vrishálas or outcasts from the extinction of sacred rites and
from having no intercourse with Brahmans. Further, as already
noticed, he declares that "all the tribes which by loss of sacred rites
and the like have become outcasts from the pale of the four castes,
whether they speak the language of the Mlechchhas or of the Aryas,
are called Dasyus." Here we have again the connecting link between the earlier and the later records and the natural explanation of the entire phenomena. As in Africa, at the present day, the tribes converted to Islám, leaving behind them their heathen practices, look with contempt and even hatred on their brethren in race who adhere to paganism, so the Aryas despised those of their race who remained content with the primitive belief which was once their common property and refused to accept the sacreldal innovations, or who being of non-Aryan descent declined to accept the Brahmanical creed. The terms of abuse used towards these tribes by the priestly writers prove nothing more than the existence of the 'odium theologicum' which has burned fiercely in all climes and countries from the earliest dawn of history to the present day. The preceding extracts show that even in the most orthodox writings the Khasas are looked on more as heretical members of the great Aryan family than as outcast aborigines, and that from a very early period they have been recognised as an important tribe in Upper India.

According to the Mahábhárata, Krishna visited the hermitage of Upamanyu in the Himálaya, where "the mongoose sports in a friendly fashion with snakes and tigers with deer." He also visited the Pándavas in their exile and is said to have himself, in company with Arjuna, lived a considerable time in Badari. Arjuna as Nara and Krishna as Náráyana "mounted on the chariot of righteousness, performed an undecaying penance on the mountain Gandhamádana." There they were visited by the sage Nárada, who "descended rapidly from the sky to the spacious Badari. There he saw the ancient gods, the two most excellent Rishis," and there he remained with them for a thousand years. Again it is said that the Chakravarti Rája Dambodhbhava, having an overweening conceit of his own prowess, visited Gandhamádana (Badari group of peaks) with his army and resolved to overthrow the Rishis. They tried to put him off by saying that they were divested of all earthly passions and lived in an atmosphere of peace. Dambodhbhava, however, resolved to attack them, when Nára took a handful of straws and scattering them to the winds so whitened the air and so filled the eyes, ears, and noses of the men of Dambodhbhava's army that they fell at Nara's feet and sued for peace: referring doubtless to a snow-storm encountered by the
invaders. In another part of the same record Krishna is thus addressed:—“Formerly Krishna, thou didst roam for ten thousand years on Gandhamadana, where the Muni Sáyangriha was. Thou didst stand on the spacious Badari, a hundred years with thy arms aloft, on one foot, subsisting on air, with thy outer garments thrown off, emaciated, with thy veins swollen.” Badari is also called Siddhásrawa, ‘the hermitage of the perfect’, “where the illustrious Vishnu was perfected when performing a great act of austerity in the form of a dwarf, when the empire of the three worlds had been taken away from Indra by Bali.” Tradition states that Ráma performed austerities at Rikhikes, and his brother Lachhman at Tapuban, in order to wipe away the sin of slaying Rávana. The grammarian Vararuchi also visited the Himálaya and by propitiating Mahádeva obtained from him the materials for his Pániniya grammar. When near his death Vararuchi again retired to Badari, and “throwing off this mortal coil, resumed at Pushpadanta his seat among the brilliant spirits of heaven.” Gunádhya, brother of Pushpadanta, followed his example and worshipped ‘the crescent-crested deity’ in his mountain home. It was here, too, that Sahasránika, rája of Kausambhi, when wearied with the toils of state, spent his declining years in solitude and devotion.

We now come to the Pauránik period and find that the legends concerning the Himálaya have grown with the people, and that in the later development of Hindu mythology they occupy a much more important place. There is little doubt that the story of Mount Meru, the Olympus of the Indian gods, was suggested by the sight of the lofty summits of the Himálaya crowned with perpetual snow. In the geographical notices contained in the Puránas we have the traditional distribution of the countries and peoples then known to the compilers, and to their pages, amongst much that is puerile and absurd, we must look for the little further aid to our researches that can be derived from indigenous sources. Lassen writes:—“It is true that

1 Wilson, III., 174. 2 Ibid., 184: Badari is mentioned in the Pádma Purána as one of the celebrated Vaishnava tirthás where bathing is particularly enjoined. Pushpadanta was born as Devadatta and from worshipping Mahádeva was through his favour united with Jaya, daughter of Raja Susarma, and retired in his old age to Badari. So also in the Vámana Purána the sacred character of the lingás at Kédár and Badari is extolled: Ibid., VI., lxxv. 3 Ibid., III., 196. 4 Muir, II., 337.
we might be tempted to discover in the superior sacredness which they (the Aryas) ascribe to the north, a reference, unintelligible to themselves, to a closer connexion—which they had formerly with the northern countries: for the abodes of most of the gods are placed to the north in and beyond the Himálaya and the holy and wonderful mountain of Meru is situated in the remotest regions in the same direction. A more exact examination will, however, lead to the conviction that the conception to which we have referred has been developed in India itself and is to be derived from the peculiar character of the northern mountain-range. The daily prospect of the snowy summit of the Himálaya glittering far and wide over the plains and in the strictest sense insurmountable, and the knowledge which they had of the entirely different character of the table-land beyond, with its extensive and tranquil domains, its clear and cloudless sky and peculiar natural productions, would necessarily designate the north as the abode of the gods and the theatre of wonders; while its holiness is explicable from the irresistible impression produced upon the mind by surrounding nature. Uttara Kuru, the Elysium in the remotest north, may be most properly regarded as an ideal picture, created by the imagination of a life of tranquil felicity, and not as a recollection of any early residence of the Kuruš in the north. Such at least is true of the representation which we have of this country in the epic poems. It is, however, probable that originally, and as late as the Vaidik era, a recollection of this sort attached itself to that country, though in later times no trace of it has been preserved.”

It is not difficult, therefore, to picture the Aryan immigrants arriving at the Ganges and sending some adventurous spirits to explore its sources. After traversing the difficult passes across the snowy range and the inclement table-land of Tibet, they discovered the group of mountains called Kailás and the lakes from which flowed forth the great rivers to water and give life to the whole earth. The rugged grandeur of the scene, the awful solitude and the trials and dangers of the way itself naturally suggested to an imaginative and simple people that they had at length rediscovered the golden land, the

1 The name Kailás seems to be of Tibetan origin which would apparently show that the Hindus discovered the country around Mánasarovar after it had already been occupied by a Tibetan race.
2 Hiranya, Suvama-bhāmī.
true homes of their gods whom they had worshipped when appearing under milder forms as storm and fire and rain in the plains below. In the course of time, Brahanical innovations caused the worship of Agni, Vayu or Indra, Sūrya and the other Vaidik gods to give place to a system where the intervention of a sacerdotal caste between the worshipper and his creator was essential. The transfer to the new system of the localities already held sacred soon followed, and Brahma, Vishnu, and Siva, the triad of the new revelation, took possession of the Himalaya. In place of domestic worship offered by individuals for individual good and addressed to unreal presences, a highly ornate ritual was introduced administered by a consecrated class and addressed to visible types. It is in this later stage that we find Hinduism as described in the Purāṇas, so late indeed that the worship of Brahma had already almost become obsolete. In the Vedas,1 “the one universal Being is of a higher order than a personification of attributes or elements and however imperfectly conceived, or unworthily described is God. In the Purāṇas, the only Supreme Being is supposed to be manifest in the person of Siva or Vishnu either in the way of illusion or in sport; and one or other of these divinities is therefore also the cause of all that is,—is, himself, all that exists.” The Purāṇas exhibit a sectarian fervour and exclusiveness not found in the Ramáyaná and only to a qualified extent in the Mahábhárata. “They are no longer,” says Professor Wilson, “authorities for the Hindu belief as a whole; they are special guides for separate and, sometimes, conflicting branches of it; compiled for the evident purpose of promoting preferential or, in some cases, the sole worship of Vishnu or Siva.”

Before proceeding further with our subject, it will be convenient succinctly to describe here the Purāṇas which form the class of writings that give us the greatest details concerning the Himalaya. There are eighteen Purāṇas compiled at various times by different hands.2 The Vishnu Purána which has been translated by Professor H. H. Wilson and edited by Dr. F. Hall is the principal and next to the Bhágavata.

1 Wilson’s Works, VI., xlii : Gazetteer, II., 61.
is still regarded as the great authority on matters connected with their religion by large sections of the Hindu community. Both are compiled in the form of a dialogue in which some person relates the contents in reply to the inquiries of another. In the extracts hereafter given from the Skanda Purana, the narrator is Suta, or properly ' = Suta' (i.e., a bard or panegyrist and pupil of Vyasa, the generic name for a compiler or editor). Each Purana is divided into khandas or books, which are again subdivided into chapters which often consist of mahatmyas or collections of local legends like the Mánasa-khanda and Kedára-khanda of the Skanda Purana noticed hereafter. Regarding this latter work, Professor Wilson writes:—"It is uniformly agreed that the Skanda Purana, in a collective form, has no existence and the fragments in the shape of samhitas, khandas and mahatmyas, which are affirmed in various parts of India to be portions of the Purana, present a much more formidable mass of stanzas than even the immense number (81,100) of which it is said to consist." The more celebrated of these portions are the Káshi-khanda, giving a description of Benares, and the Utkala-khanda, giving an account of the holy places in Orissa. Besides these there are a Himavat-khanda devoted to Nepal, a Rewa-khanda, a Brahmatara-khanda and others. There are also several separate samhitas or collections. The mahatmyas are, however, the most numerous, and even Colonel Vans Kennedy thinks that they "have rather a questionable appearance." Many of the khandas, such as the Káshi-khanda, are quite as local as the mahatmyas, "being legendary stories relating to the erection of certain temples or groups of temples and to certain lingas; the interested origin of which renders them, very reasonably, objects of suspicion." Professor Wilson adds:—"In the present state of our acquaintance with the reputed portions of the Skanda Purana, my own views of their authenticity are so opposed to those entertained by Colonel Vans Kennedy, that instead of admitting all the samhitas and khandas to be genuine, I doubt if any one of them was ever a part of the Skanda Purana." * * "There are in all parts of India various compilations ascribed to the Puranas which never formed any portion of their contents and which, although offering, sometimes, useful local information and valuable as preserving local

1 Wilson's Works, VI., xvii.
popular traditions, are not, in justice, to be confounded with the Puránas so as to cause them to be charged with even more serious errors and anachronisms than those of which they are guilty.” The Skánda and Brahmánda Puránas are those to which the majority of the modern fabrications have been attributed by their authors who have “grafted personages and fictions of their own invention on a few hints from older authorities.” They retain the form of the genuine Purána, the dialogue and many of the stories giving them the local colouring necessary for the particular object in view. “Still,” as I have elsewhere said, “imperfect as they are, and disfigured by absurd stories and interpolations of later times, the Puránas with the great epic poems, are the chief amongst the few historical records we possess of any antiquity to assist us in compiling an account of the heroic age.”

We shall now briefly refer to the geography of the Puránas which commences with the chapter on cosmogony and is here closely connected with the geography of northern Kumaon and the adjoining part of Tibet. One account of the creation of the earth relates how Vishnu, in his boar incarnation, supported the earth on his tusks as it was about to sink into the waters and then fixed it on the thousand heads of the king Ananta; whilst another likens the earth to a lotus, the stalk of which springs from the navel of Vishnu as he lies asleep at the bottom of the ocean. The world was then in chaos and Brahma arose and formed the seven great island continents:—Jambu, Plaksha, Sálmali, Kusa, Krauncha, Sáka, and Pushkará, separated from each other by the seas. Jambudwipa is again divided into nine varshas or regions and in the centre of all is the glorious mountain of Meru, of various colours: on the east it is white like a Brahman; on the south it is yellow like a Vaisya; on the north it is red like the dawning morn or a Kshattriya, and on the west it is dark

1 Colonel Wilford in exposing the forgeries of his own pandit who had fabricated a khanda for each of these Puránas calls the Skánda, Brahmánda and Pádma Puránas the “Puránas of thieves and impostors.” As. Res., VIII., 252.
2 Compare Ward, I., 3; Wilson, VI., 39. To the present day the local theory regarding earthquakes is that they are due to Vishnu changing his burthen from one tusk to another. It is said that all the islands except Jambu have perished. Between Jambu and Plaksha is the salt sea; between the latter and Sálmali, a sea of sugarcane juice and then a sea of wine, of clarified butter, of curds, of milk and of fresh water.
3 Compare the existing Tibetan appellations:—Gya-nak, the great black or China; Gya-gar, the great white or India; and Gya-ser, the great yellow or Russia.
like the dry leaves or a Sudra. Meru is circular in shape and forms the germ of the lotus.\(^1\) It stands on the most elevated portion of the central division of Jambu known as Ilavrita. South of Meru the Nishadha mountains separate Ilavrita from Harivarsha; south of the latter, the Hemakūta divides it from Kimpurusha, and further south the third or Himavat range forms the boundary between Kimpurusha and Bhárata. Similarly three ranges of mountains form the boundaries of countries on the north. First come the Nila range between Ilavrita and Hamyaka on the north; then the Sweta mountains bordering the country of Hiranmaya where there is much gold; and again the Sringin range separating Hiranmaya from the country of the Uttara Kurus. All these names would lead us to believe that the writers had the country to the north of the Kashmir valley in view, though the names subsequently mentioned are clearly connected with upper Garhwal and Kumaon. To the east of Ilavrita lies the country of Bhadrásva and to the west the country of Ketumála. Four mountains form buttresses to Meru: on the east is Mandara; on the south Gandhamádana or Merumandara; on the west Vipula or Kumuda, and on the north Súpárswa. On each of these stands severally a kadamb-tree (Anthocephalus cadamba), a jambu-tree (Eugenia Jambolana), a pipal-tree (Ficus religiosa), and a nyagrodha-tree (Ficus indica). There are also four great forests and four great lakes,\(^2\) the waters of which are partaken of by the gods and which are called Arunoda, Mahábhadra, Asitoda, and Mánasa. The last is the Mánas-sarovara of the

\(^1\) In the shape like an inverted cone. 
\(^2\) For a long description of each lake from the Váyu Purána see Wilford in As. Res., VIII., 326. According to him the Puránas place a great lake called Bindu-sarovara to the north of Mánas-sarovara, and but for its distance it might be identified with the Bówa Hrad or Rákhás Tái, the Cho Lagan of the Tibetans which adjoins and is connected with Cho Mápán. On the Chinese map of India O-neou-tchi is given as the name of lake Mánas and the Gángri range has the same name. In the Ceylonese books it is called Anotatte. The Arunoda lake or 'lake of the dawn,' which is said to lie east of Mánas, may be the Cho Konkyu or Gungrut-cho, smaller but similar to the others, which lies near the source of the Brahmaputra. To the west of Mánas is the Sitota lake, from which issues the Apara Gandaki or 'western Gandak,' identified by Wilford with the Chakshu or Oxus: so that this lake must be the lake of the Pamir, but is more probably the Cho Moriri, the source of the western Satlaj. The Mahábhadra lake in the north may be identified with one of the lakes of the table-land. There appears to be a mingling of facts true of the country to the north of Kashmir with facts true of the country north of Kumaon in these accounts. In some Mérn clearly indicates the group of mountains to the north and west of Kashmir, and in others those in the neighbourhood of lake Mánas.
Hindus and Cho Māpān of the Tibetans, of which more hereafter.

Meru in its widest sense embraces the elevated table-land of western Tibet between Kailás on the east and the Muztāgh range on the west and between the Himavat on the south and the Kuen-luen range on the north. "It lies between them like the pericarp of a lotus and the countries of Bhárata, Ketumála Bhadráswa, and Uttara Kuru lie beyond them like the leaves of a lotus." In the valleys of these mountains are the favourite resorts of the Siddhas and Cháranas and along their slopes are agreeable forests and pleasant cities peopled by celestial spirits, whilst the Gandharvas, Yaksas, Bákshasas, Daityas, and Dáknavas pursue their pastimes in the vales. "There, in short, are the regions of Swarga (Paradise), the seats of the righteous and where the wicked do not arrive even after a hundred births, * * there is no sorrow, nor weariness, nor anxiety, nor hunger, nor apprehension; the inhabitants are exempt from all infirmity and pain and live in uninterrupted enjoyment for ten or twelve thousand years. Devi never sends rain upon them, for the earth abounds with water. In those places there is no distinction or any succession of ages." This account agrees well with Homer's description¹ of Olympus in the Odyssey, vi., 42:—

"Olympus, where they say the blessed dwell,
Repose for ever in secure abodes:
No stormy blasts a thwart those summits sweep,
No showers or mows bedew the sacred steep;
But cloudless skies serene above are spread
And golden radiance plays around its head."

The accompanying figure² represents the worldly lotus floating upon the waters of the ocean which is surrounded by the Suvarna-bhúmi or land of gold and the mountains of the Lokalokas and is in

¹ Quoted by Muir, II., 480. The same idea is familiar to us in the Scotch song, the 'Land o' the Leal':—

"There's nae sorrow there, Jean;
There's neither cauld nor care, Jean,
The day is aye fair i' the land o' the Leal."

accordance with the theory expressed in the Bhāgavāta and Brah-
mānda Purāṇas:—

On the summit of Meru is the city of Brahma and, like filaments from the root of the lotus, numerous mountains project from its base. Within Meru is adorned "with the self-moving care of the gods, all beautiful: in its petals are the abodes of the gods, like heaven: in its petals, I say, they dwell with their consorts. There reside above Brahma, god of gods, with four faces; the greatest of those who know the Vedas, the greatest of the great gods also of the inferior ones. There is the court of Brahma, consisting of the whole earth, of all those who grant the object of our wishes: thousands of great gods are in this beautiful court: there dwell the Brahmarishis." All round are the cities of the Lokapālās or guardians of the eight regions. To the
east, Indra sitting upon a vimana, resplendent like a thousand suns; in the second interval between east and south is Agni or Jivani, from whom sprang the Vedas. In succession comes Vaivaswata-Yáma called by mankind Su-Sanyána, Virupaksha. Varuna also called Subhávati, Váyu called Gandhávati, Mahodaya and Isána. According to the Vishnu Purána, the city of Brahma is enclosed by the Ganges, which, issuing from the foot of Vishnu and washing the lunar orb, falls here from the skies and after encircling the city divides into four mighty rivers flowing in opposite directions. These rivers are the Sita, which passes through the country of Bhadráswa; the Alaknanda, which flows south to Bhárata; the Chakshu, which traverses Ketumála, and the Bhadra, which washes the country of the Uttara Kurus. Other Puránas describe the detention of the Ganges in the tresses of Siva until set free by king Bhágirath and escaping thence formed seven streams:—the Nalini, Hladini, and Pávani going east; the Chakshu, Sita, and Sindhu going west; and the Bhágirathi going south. The Sita is supposed to flow from an elephant’s head, the Alaknanda from a cow’s head, the Chakshu from a horse’s head, and the Bhadra from a lion’s head, and they are so represented on the Chinese map compiled in the fifteenth century to illustrate the travels of Chinese pilgrims in India which will be found in the pocket to this volume. Wilson would identify the Bhadra with the Obi, the Sita with the Hoang-ho, the Alaknanda with the Ganges, and the Chakshu with the Oxus, and this may be what is intended, for according to Chinese accounts, the Sita or Yarkand river, which flows into Lob-nór, is supposed to have an underground connection with the swamps near Kokonor, which form the head-waters of the Hoang-ho. As a matter of fact the local traditions identify the Bhadraw with the Indus or ‘lion-river,’ the Sing-chin-kamba (or khampa) of the Tibetans on the north; the

1 Here clearly in order the Hoang-ho, Alaknanda, Oxus, and Indus. 2 Kléproth, Mélin., Zol. Asie., II., 411. 3 Herbert obtained the same Tibetan names in 1819, As. Res., XV. In the great Chinese map prepared by order of Khian-lonung, the four corners or gates of the Mán lake are called the lion, elephant, horse and ox gates: Tóvi-gchéal on the east, Ghiou ougyun on the south, Arubho on the west and Dpadzsa-lonung on the north. The Pandit explorers give the names Singh-gi-chu or Singh-gi-khamba or Singh-gi-kha to the Indus: Langjä-khamba to the Satlaj: Tanjan-khamba to the Brahmaputra and Mubhj-khamba to the Karmáli. Moorcroft (1., 417), in 1821, calls the Indus at Le the Sinh-khu-bub, and again (ibid, 261) writes:—’The great eastern branch of the Indus or as termed in the country, the Sinh-kha-bub, the river that rises from the lion’s mouth in reference to the Tibetan notion borrowed perhaps from the Hindás, of the origin of four great rivers from the mouths of as many
Chakshu with the Brahmaputra or 'horse-river,' the Tamjyak-kamba of the Tibetans on the east; the Alakananda with the Satadru or Satlaj or 'bull-river,' the Lang-chin-kamba of the Tibetans on the west, whilst the fourth river is the Karnâli or Mapchu-kamba or 'peacock-river' on the south. All these rivers take their rise in the Mâna and Râkhas lakes or in the mountains near them known as Kailâsa by the Hindus.

A volume might be written on Meru alone, but we must return to our geographical investigations and first to the sub-divisions of the island-continent Jambu. It was Agnidhra who, according to the Vishnu Purâna, divided Jambu into nine portions amongst his nine sons—Nâbhi, Kimpurusha, Harivarsha, Ílavrita, Ramya, Hiravat, Kuru, Bhdrâsva, and Ketumâla. Nâbhi received the country called Hima south of the Himavat mountains and was blessed with a son named Rishabha, whose eldest son was Bharata, after whom the country was named Bhârata. This is the name therefore of the country to the north of the salt sea and south of the snowy mountains which is described as again divided into nine subordinate portions, viz.,—Indra-dwîpa, Kaserumat, Tâmravarna, Gabbastimât, Nâga-dwîpa, Saumya, Gândharva, and Vâruna and the ninth unnamed. ¹ It has seven main chains of mountains:—Mahendra (in Orissa); Malaya (southern portion of western ghâts); Sahya (northern portion of the western ghâts); Suktimât; Riksha (in Gondwâna); Vindhya and Pâripâtra (northern and western Vindhyas). Amongst the rivers mention is made of the Satadru (Satlaj) and Chandrabhâga (Chinab) as flowing from the Himavat. The Vâyu animals: as the Indus from the lion's mouth; the Ganges, Mab-cha-kha-bab, from that of the peacock; the Satlaj, Lang-chin-kha-bab, from that of the elephant, and the Ster-chuk-hu-bab or river of Tibet from the mouth of the horse." Gerard (p. 23) calls the Satlaj the Lang-chin-khâ-bab or Langhin-kumpa; the Indus, the Singhehouch or Singshinghchou or Singing-kamper; and the Brahmaputra, the Tamjua, Damchoo or Erchumbo. He identifies the Tamjoo with the Tsango or Tsancire of Georgi and the Damchoo with Turner's river Etchumbo at Tashi-Lhunpo. Lieutenant J. D. Cunningham (Notes, p. 63) gives the names as follows: the Indus, Singhehouch (or kumpa); the Satlaj Langchin khab; the Gogra (Karnûli), Mâmechin khab; and the Berampooter (Brahmaputra), Tacho or Tamjooed khab. Captain H. Strachey (1864) gives the Tibetan names most correctly thus:—rTachuk-Tangsapo or horse-river (Brahmaputra); Sege-Tangsapo or lion-river (Indus); Langchen-Tangsapo or elephant river (Satlaj) and Mâche-Tangsapo or peacock-river (Karnûli) "Sing or sing is lion; lang is bull (not elephant: elephant in Tibetan is 'great bull'); mam is peacock; 'tu' is horse; chin is great 'ku' means 'mouth' and 'bab' means 'issuing from': so khaba is a corruption of 'Aubab' with the affix 'pa' (khabab).*¹ This unnamed portion is called Kumârika in the Trabhâna and Râwa Khânda and by Bhâsikara Acharya and represents Indus as the Ganges is said to flow through it.
Himalayan Districts

Purána adds a number of inferior mountains and gives the following as the rivers of Himālaya:—Ganga, Sindhu, Sarasvati, Satadru (Satlaj), Chandrabhāga (Chináb), Yamuna (Jumna), Sarayu (Śarju), Airavati (Ravi), Vitasta (Jhelam), Vipāsa (Biās), Devika (Ghágra), Kuhu, Gomati (Ganati), Dhuntpápa, (old junction of Kaggar and Satlaj), Bákuda, Drishadvati (Kaggar), Kausiki (Kosi), Vṛitiya, Nirvira, Gandaki (Gandak), Ikshu (affluent of the Brahmaputra), and Lohita (ditto).

In the Brahmānda and Váyu Puránas we have favorable examples of a more local and detailed geographical description and are able to identify many of the places referred to. It will, however, be only necessary to give the text of a portion as an example. The first extract is from Wilford's translation of the Brahmānda Purána, in which the following account of the streams that flow from Meru is given:—

"The water of the ocean coming from heaven upon Meru is like amrita, and from it arises a river which through seven channels encircles Meru for a space of eighty-four yojanas and then divides into four streams springing over the four sacred hills towards the four cardinal points. One stream goes over Mandara in the east and encircles the beautiful grove of Chaitrarath and falls into the Arunoda lake and goes thence to the mountains of Sitanta. It goes over the mountain of the ocean coming to him, spreading all over his body, its waters are become most efficacious. It falls then on Himáchal, from which it goes over the earth: hence its name Ganga. To the west (apara) is a large river encircling the forests of Vaibhára. It is most propitious and falls into the lake Sitoda. Thence it goes to the Subaksha mountains and to the Purnoda lake, to the mountains called Sikhli, Kanka-vaidūrya, Kapila-Gandhamadana, Pinjara, Kumnda-madhumánta, Badari group in upper Garhái. The Badari group is located in the Nithi valley. Copper mines, of which there are many. There is a stream and fountain of this name near Badarinath. The Panchachuli group: the great mountain with these summits will be Tričá. I take it that nearly all these allusions refer to the Kumaon Himalaya and are local."
Anjana, Makâta-krishna, Sweta filled with large snakes, to the thousand-peaked mountain, the Pârijâta mountain, through Ketumâla, a large country, and then falls into the western ocean. North from Meru there falls a branch called Bhadra and Bhadrâ-soma upon Suparasva of gold, which it encircles and goes to the lake called Sitodaka in the forest of Bhadrâ-soma. Thence to the mountains of Sankha-kûta, Vrisha-vatas, Nila, Kapinjala, Indranila, Mahânila, Hemaratinga, Swetasinga, Sunâga, the mount with a hundred peaks, Pushkara, Durja-rája, Varáha, Mayâra and Játsudhi. After eroding a thousand lesser hills it goes to the three-peaked mountain called Visubuddha and then into the northern country to the Gandharâvâdâna. Along the banks of the Apara-Gandika or western Gandak is the country of Ketumâla, renowned for men mighty in deeds, strong and powerful, and for women bright as the lotus, whom to see is to love. There is the great panacâ cetâ and there resides Indra.6 The eastern Gandak is in Bhadrâ-sâva.7

In the Brâhma Purâna it is said that Vishnu resides in Bhadrâ-sâva with the countenance and the head of a horse: in Bhárata with the head of a tortoise (kurma): in Ketu-mâla with the head of a boar (vardha): and in Kuru with the head of a fish (mataya). The Vâyu Purâna describes the country to the west of Meru as containing numerous valleys divided by ranges of hills.

About the mountains of Subaksha and Sikkhâsila is a level country about a hundred yojanas in extent and there the ground emits flames.8 There is Vibhava-su or Vasu simply who presides over the fire burning without fuel. Within the mountain is the Mâtu-linga, ten yojanas broad, and there is the hermitage of Vrihaspati. Like these two mountains the Kumuda and Anjana (black) ranges also enclose a valley between them.4 Between the great mountains Krishna and Pândura is a level country enclosing a valley abounding with the lotus called Ananta-sâda.5 Between Sanku-kûta and the Vishabha mountains is the Parusbaka country, the abode of Kinnaras, Uragas, Nâgas, and holy men. Between Kapinjala and Nâga-saila is a tract adorned with many groves. It abounds with fruits and flowers. The Kinnaras and Uragas with tribes of plous and good men live there. There are beautiful groves of drakshâ (vine), nágarama (orange) and bodârî (stone-fruit) trees. The portion lying between the Pushpaka and Mahâmegha mountains is as flat as the palm of the hand devoid of trees and with very little water which is whitish. The soil is hard and tenacious and even

1 As Ras., VIII., 354. The jack-tree, which does not grow in the hills; but neither does the badârî or jujube grow near Badarinâtha, which is said in many descriptions to possess a tree of surpassing size and assigned to various species, pipal, borgad, bodârî, and here the jack. 2 Vishnu as Iswara. 3 Can only refer to Jwâla-makhi in the Kangra valley, with its celebrated Saiya shrine. 4 Some connect the Kumuda mountains with the Comedi of Ptolemy, and if so with the Kashmîra valley. In the Brahmânda Purâna, the country of Kus is said to contain the Kumuda mountains and is hence also known as the Kumuda-dwipa. It contained the Kumudvati river, probably the Kunar river, and amongst its inhabitants were the Sakas and Pârasikas and Syâmakas, i.e., the Indo-Skythic rulers of Kipin, Persians and the Siyâlaas. 5 The valley of Kashmir is still locally assigned to a Nâga race.
without grass. There are few animals and the few inhabitants have no fixed habitation. The whole country is called Kānana or Kānana.1 There are several large lakes, likewise great trees and larger groves called Kanta. There are caves here in the mountains most dreary and dark, inaccessible to the rays of the sun, cold and difficult of access. In this country are Siddhas or prophets with the gift of miracles and learned and famous Brahmanas. The next mountains are those of the Sitānta range, many yojanas in extent, abounding with all sorts of metals and gems. It is skirted by a most delightful country, well-watered and enlivened with the harmonious noise of the black bee and frogs. There are towns with gates and the refreshing moisture of this country proceeds from Urupa and uniting together forms a stream called the Vaha of the moon or Chandravāla.1 There amongst immense caves is Kridávana and the great forest of the Pārijāta tree of the kings of the gods.3 There live the Siddhas and Yakshas in caves. To the east is the Kumuda peak with the eight towns of the proud Dānavas. Again in the many-peaked mountains of Vajraka live strong and terrible Rákshasas who are also called Nilakas. In Mahanila are fifteen towns of the Hayānana or Asvamukhas, the horse-faced. They were originally Kinnaras courageous like Kārttikeya. There are fifteen chiefs of the Kinnaras elated with pride, and in caves below the ground abide people like snakes who live upon the golden stamens of certain flowers. In the hills above are a thousand abodes of the Daityas; the houses are elegant like high-emblatt4ed forts.4 In Venumati are three forts belonging to the Ronakas, Ulukas and Mahāntras, three principal tribes of the Vidyādharas whose mighty deeds equal those of Indra.5

On Vaikanka reside the offspring of Garuda, the destroyer of serpents: it abounds with precious metals and precious stones. A strong wind swiftly passes over this mountain, in a human form, called Sugriva. The offspring of Garuda in the shape of birds fly about this mountain: they are strong, fly quickly and mighty are their achievements.6 On Karaja always resides the mighty lord of living beings, riding upon a bull: hence called Vrishabhānaka Sankara, the chief of Yogas. The inhabitants like Mahādeva always carry poison about them: they are Pramathas and difficult of access. Mahādeva resides there amongst them. On Vasudhāra in Vasumati are the sthānas or places of the eight forms of Mahādeva. They are full of splendour and proper places of worship. There are seven places of Siddhas and the place of Brahma of the

1 This can be no other than Bisahr, including Kunáor, the Kunu of the Tibetans and still celebrated for its vines, oranges and apricots. The inhabitants were called Kinnaras, hodie Kunets.
2 The Chandra and the Bhāga, which unite to form the Chandrabhāga.
3 The noble forests of deodārā which form such a feature of this part of the country.
4 This may refer to the strikingly tower-like structures in the upper valleys towards Balti and Ladāk.
5 From the Vishnu Purāṇa (Hall’s Wilson’s V. P., II., 195) we learn that Venumati was son of J. otishmat, king of Kusa, the Hindu-kush country which was bounded by the Saka country. The name Vidyādharas or ‘magical-knowledge holder’ seems to be a name applied to many of the hill-tribes who were supposed to be possessed of magical powers. It is especially noted as a character of the people of the Swāt valley, and the Romakas may possibly be represented by the ‘Rum’ branch of the Kafirs. The Nilakas inhabited Kashmir.
6 Elsewhere this land is called Deva-kūta peopled by men as well as birds and lives in the Dvipa Sālimāi. One tribe of these Gandharvas was called Agneyas, servants of Kuvera, whose principal employment was to explore the bowels of the earth in search of wealth. Can these be the Aguri caste of miners so well known in these hills?
four faces, the mighty lord of created things, on a high peak to which all living creatures bow. The eleven Rudras reside there on the Gaja-anila. Sunegha, the mount of the beautiful cloud, is full of minerals, with caves in its bosom and groves along its skirts. Here dwell the twelve Adityas and the eight forms of Rudra, also Vishnu, the Asvinas and the good and perfect who are continually worshipped by the Yakshas, Gandharvas and Kinnaras with their king Kapinjala. On the five-peaked Anila, reside Râkshasas with Dânavaa haughty, foes of the gods, great, strong and of mighty deeds. On Sataasinga or the hundred-peaked range reside the benevolent Yakshas and on Tamrâbha is a town inhabited by the children of the snake race; Kâdruveyas and Tâkshakas. In the beautiful Vîsakâcha are many caves and the famous abode of the god Karthikeya. A town and settlement of the beneficent Sunâbha, son of Garuda, occurs on Swetadara. On the Paîsâchaka mountains is a settlement of the Kuveras with a great palace to which the Yakshas and Gandharvas resort. Kinnaras reside on Kumuda; Mahinâgas on Anjana; the towns and white houses of the Gandharvas are seen on Krishna and on Sweta or Pândura, the battlemented town of Vidyâdharas Daityas and Dânavaa reside on the range with a thousand peaks. On Sukûta reside the chiefs of the Pannâgas; on Pushpaka many tribes of sages; on Supakasha or Subaksha are the mansions of Vaivaswata, Soma, Vîyu and Nâgrâja, and there the Gandharvas, Kinnaras, Yakshas, Nâgas and Vidyâdharas worship their favourite deity.

From these statements we learn that the hill tribes to the west of Kumaon were Kinnaras, the ancestors of the Kunets of the present day and Yakshas or Khasas, that there were Nâgas in Kashmir and Vidyâdharas in the Swât valley, as well as Siddhas, Gandharvas, Dânavaa and Daityas, names applied to various hill tribes, or perhaps more correctly to sections of those tribes following certain avocations. The name Vidyâdharas is commonly applied to the people of the Kusâ-dwîpa, which is to be identified with the mountainous tract between the Indus and the Hindu-kush and which was bounded externally by Sakâ-dwîpa, which may be assigned to Kipin or the Kâbul valley occupied by Sakas in the first century before Christ. Through Sir John Strachey we are enabled to give a paraphrase of a portion of the section of the Skanda-Purâna known as the Mânasa-khanda. It occurs in the usual form of a dialogue between Sûta, a pupil of Vyâsa, and Janamejaya, the son of Parikshit, the Pândava ruler of Hastinapur, and professes to relate what was formerly transmitted by Vyâsa to Vasishtha. In form and often in substance, it follows the model of the older Purânas and minutely describes the country from the lake Mânasarowar in Tibet to Nandâ-devi and thence along the course of the Pindâr river to Kamâjâyâg.
From this point the narrative touches the Dhanpur range and thence to the Rámganga and Kosi as far as the plains. Then along the foot of the hills to the Káli, which it follows northwards, winding up in the hills a little to the east of the Karnáli. Notes are given explaining all the allusions and identifying most of the places mentioned. The writers have transferred many of the names of rivers celebrated elsewhere to comparatively unimportant streams in the vicinity of celebrated tirthas, and these have in many cases been forgotten or have existed merely as literary fictions known only to the educated few: hence one of the main difficulties in identifying the names given here. The work itself is very popular and is deeply interesting as showing the form in which the actual living belief of the people is exhibited.

MÁNASA-KHANDA.

Introduction.

Janamejaya addresses the Súta¹ and says that he has received an account of all other matters, but desires to hear of the creation of the world and its state: subsequent to that event and the mahátyas of the great tirthas.² Súta, in reply, relates that when Brahma formed the desire that the universe should be created, he instantly assumed the visible form of Vishnu.³ The whole universe was covered with water on which Vishnu floated sleeping on a bed which rested on the serpent Seshnág (or Ananta). From his navel sprang a lotus from which issued Brahma; from his ears sprang the two Daityas, Madhu and Kaitabha,⁴ who attacked Brahma. Then Brahma demanded help from Vishnu, and Vishnu fought with the Daityas for five thousand years. Then the great illusion (Mahámáya), the supreme will or desire of Vishnu, made the Daityas submit, and they told

¹ See page ² Places of pilgrimage. ³ For a more detailed account of the creation according to Hindu writers, see Muir's Works, IV., and Wilson, VI.

⁴ In the Mahábhárata we read that when Brahma sprang from the lotus produced from the navel of Vishnu, "two horrible Dánavas, Madhu and Kaitabha, were ready to slay him. From the forehead of Hari, who became incensed when he saw their transgression, was produced Sambhu (Máhádeo), wielding the trident and three-eyed." In the Devamáhátya of the Márkandeya Purána, Durga is identified with the Mahámáya of the story in the text: Muir, IV., 230, 435. Madhu is said to have given his name to Mathura (Muttra), formerly called Madhopura, and his son Lavana was conquered there by Sairughna. The derivation of the name Mathura from 'math,' a convent, is, however, also advocated.
Vishnu that they admired his power and would obey whatever orders he gave them. His order was that they should die by his hand, and he then killed them with the chakra called Sudarshana. From the marrow (meda) of these Daityas was formed the world. Then Vishnu, in the shape of a tortoise, placed himself to support the earth and raised it out of the water. Then Vishnu desired Brahma to create all that the world was to contain.

Brahma first created the three spheres of the earth, the sky, and the heaven; then he divided the earth into nine portions (khandas) and created wind and sound and time, past, present, and future, and work (karma) and desire and anger; then he created seven Rishis, and from anger he created Rudra. Thus were formed the three great deities: the duty of Brahma being to create, of Vishnu to preserve, and of Rudra to destroy. These are the three gunas or qualities. Kasyapa was the son of Marichi, one of the Rishis, and from his thirteen wives were born the Adityas, Dánavas, Daityas, Yakshas, Rákhasas, Apsaras.

1 Beautiful, the discus of Vishnu or Krishna.

2 The seven great Rishis in the constellation Ura Major:—Marichi, Atri, Angirasa, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasishtha.

3 All daughters of Daksha. By (1) Aditi, Kasyapa had the twelve Adityas, a class of gods; (2) by Diti, the Daityas or Daitya; (3) by Danu, the Dánavas; (4) by Visishta, the Gandharvas; (5) by Suraan, a thousand winged serpents or dragons; (6) by Khasa, the Yakshas and Rákhasas; (7) by Surabhi, cows and buffaloes; (8) by Vinata, Garuda or Suparna, king of the birds and enemy of the serpent race and Aruna; (9) by Táma, six daughters; (10) by Kádru, mighty, many-headed serpents, such as Sesa, Visuki, Takshaka, Sanskruti, Naga, Nala, Karlikuka, Dhananjaya, Kapila, Náhuasa, Mani, &c.; (11) by Krodhara, all wild animals (danshiras or sharp-toothed), Bhutas or goblins and Pishchhas; (12) by Brahma, the vegetable kingdom; and (13) by Muni, the Apsaras. All these names are connected with pre-Aryan tribes. The Daityas were the assistants of the creator regenerated in the present Manvantara as the twelve Adityas named:—Vishnu, Sakra, Arjuna, Dústrí, Tásha, Púsán, Vivásat, Savitri, Mitra, Varuna, Ansa and Bhaga.

4 The Dánavas or descendants of Danu number amongst them Dwimúrdhána, Hayagriva, Pulaman, Ekačákra, Tára, Sankara, Hayumukha, Ketu, Kálanátha, Rahu, the Kálikanjas and Páulomas, all names of vour amongst the enemies of the gods.

5 The Daityas were also enemies of the gods and descendants of Diti, whose two sons were Hiranyakashipu and Hiranyakasipsa. From the former came Aunáhiida, Hílada, Práhiida and Sánhíida, and amongst their descendants were Tára, Virochana and Bali.

6 A race like the Guhyakas, attendant on Kúrera, the god of mines. Elsewhere (V. II. 1.) said to be produced by Brahma as beings emaciate with hunger, of hideous aspect and with long beards, and that crying out for food they were called Yakshas (from yaksh, to eat). By the Buddhists they are sometimes classed with goblins and again as a merry joyful race. They are called Gáširi by Pliny, and in them we recognise the Káshi or vanna (from gáshir, to injure). Sometimes said to be descendants of the sage Pulastya, who was father of Visvaru, father of Ráwan. Their principal abode was Lanka or Ceylon under their chief Ráwan.

7 The Apsaras are female deities, the wives of the Gandharvas; they were produced at the churning of the ocean. For a long note about them see Goldstucker's Sanskrit Dictionary, p. 222, reproduced in Wilson VII, 80.

8 The Vára Purána makes the Kashmiri Vách mother of both the Apsaras and Gandharvas.
Gandharvas,¹ Nāgas,² Siddhas,³ Vidyādharas,⁴ birds, beasts and everything contained in the world.

**Raja Vena.⁵**

From the Rishi Atri came the Raja Anga, and from him Vena, who tyrannised over the world so that all mankind rebelled against him and killed him. Then they took his body and rubbed it, and from the right side sprang forth Prithu for their king. During the reign of Vena all plants had perished by reason of his tyranny, and when Prithu saw this, he was wrath and took his bow and arrows to destroy the earth, and she, in the form of a cow, fled from him through the three spheres, but no one dared to shelter her for fear of Vena. Then in despair she stopped and demanded the protection and pardon of the king. He consented on condition that the earth should deliver up the plants that she had hidden. To this she agreed and asked the king to remove the mountains which covered her and which prevented the spread of vegetation. Then Prithu with his bow uprooted the mountains and heaped them up one on the other, and made the earth level and called her after his own name 'Prithwi.' Then, that the earth might again produce food for man, Prithu created the calf Swayambhuva Manu, and with his own hand milked from the earth all plants and vegetables. Then

¹ A celestial race living in the sky and guarding the Soma and governed by Varuna as their wife, the Apsaras, are ruled by Soma. They are learned in medicinal herbs, regulate the course of the asterisms, follow after women and are destroyers of intercourse with them. In the later legends they are the choristers of Indra's heaven and are held intermediate between man and gods. See further Wilson's Work VII., 26-84. ² The serpent race. ³ From 'siddh,' implying the idea of perfection: in legends, a semi-divine race of great purity and holiness who reside in the ether and are possessed of the eight great supernatural faculties, the power of becoming as small as a mote and the like. ⁴ Those who are 'the holders of knowledge' which is of four kinds: (1), Yajna-vidya, or knowledge of religious ritual; (2), Maha-vidya, or great knowledge leading to the Tantrika worship of the female principle; (3), Lochya-vidya, or knowledge of spells and necromancy; and (4), Ama-vidya, or knowledge of the soul or true wisdom. ⁵ The story of Vena is narrated in the Vishnu Purana (Wilson VII., 172). Sunita, daughter of Mrityu (death), was mother of Vena, the celebrated Benu of the Hindu legends. (See Bijnor Gazetteer, V.) He was inaugurated universal monarch by the Rishis, but immediately proclaimed that no worship should be performed, no oblations offered, and that no gifts should be bestowed on Brahmanas; that all gods were present in the person of the king, who is made up of all that is divine. The cursed priests slew the king, and put an end to the monarchy which arose. They took his body and rubbed it, and from its left side sprang forth 'a being of a complexion like a charred stake, with flattened features and of dwarfish stature. 'What am I to do?' said he to the sage. 'Sit down,' (nischitta) said he, and hence the name Nischita given to the aborigines of the plains. From the right arm of Vena sprang forth Prithu, to whom Mahadeva gave his bow Adyarga and celestial arrows. Prithu prospered and gave his name to the earth and was the first ruler to whom the title of Raja was applied. There is little doubt that he was an Indo-Skythian prince.
the gods and demons all milked the earth of various virtues, so that the earth fled to Brahma and complained to him of the everlasting milking. He took her with him to Vishnu and Siva, and Vishnu asked her what she desired. She asked that as the only means of saving herself the three gods should come and live with her. Vishnu answered that in the form of the serpent Ananta and the tortoise he had already saved the earth, and would again come to help her when her pain became too great to bear, but that now he would not go to her, and further he said that "at some time the head of Brahma will fall upon thee" (the earth), and Siva will come to sit upon the mountain of Tankara, and the ling of Siva shall be established in many places. Then Vaivaswata Raja shall have a descendant called Bhagirath Raja, who shall bring down Ganga to thee. Then I will myself come in my dwarf incarnation to protect thee from the tyranny of the Raja Bali; and all the world will know that Vishnu has descended on thee. Then thy pains shall all be removed and the mountains shall cease to afflict thee with their load, for I shall be Himálaya, where Náráda and the Munis for ever glorify me. Siva will be Kailása, where Ganesh and the other gods glorify him. Vindhyáchal will be Brahma, and thus shall the load of the mountains be removed." Then the earth said—"Why do you come in the form of mountains and not in your own form?" Vishnu answered—"The pleasure that exists in the mountains is greater than that of animate beings, for they feel no heat nor cold, nor pain, nor anger, nor fear, nor pleasure. We three gods as mountains will reside in the earth for the benefit of mankind." Then the three gods vanished and the earth returned to her former place.

Establishment of the Siva Lingas.

Daksha Prajápati had a daughter who was called Káli and who was married to Siva. Daksha summoned all the gods to worship them at Kankhalá near Hardwár, but he omitted to invite Siva and his wife, for he admired neither the manner nor the appearance of Siva. The godless Káli went to see the sight though uninvited, but her father was displeased at her coming, and did not do her

---

1 At Brahm-Kapáli, the great rock in the river above Baurináth. 2 Tangnówa near Jageswar. 3 In the Vámaná uadvátr. 4 Page. 5 The story of Daksha's sacrifice is very old and is repeated in nearly all the Puránas. For an account of his family see Wilson, VI., 108, and of the sacrifice, Ibid., 120, and Gázetteer, II., 269.
honor. Then in rage she jumped into the kund (or excavation in which the sacred fire was placed) and was burned up. Siva, who was seated on Kailás, rushed in wrath to the place and destroyed Daksha and all that he found there, and he took the ashes from the fire where his wife had perished and smeared them over his body and went to Tankara, the mountain of Jageswar, covered with all beautiful plants and deodar trees (Cedrus deodara), and began there to perform great austerities in order to propitiate the eternal Brahm. Vasishtha and many other Munis and their wives lived on this mountain. One day the women were walking through the jungles plucking kusha grass and sticks, and they saw him smeared with ashes, wearing a snake as a necklace round his neck, sitting with closed eyes and speechless, and his heart heaving with sorrow. The women wondering at his beauty collected round him. The Rishis when their wives did not return were greatly alarmed, and when their wives did not come back all night they went to search for them and found Mahádeo seated as before motionless and their wives senseless on the earth all round. The Rishis, believing that they had been brought there by Siva, began to abuse the god and said—“I let the thing with which you have done this injury (i.e., your ling) fall upon the earth.” Then Siva said—“You have cursed me without cause; yet shall it not be said that you have beheld me without advantage, though by your curse, which I shall not oppose, my ling shall fall. You shall become the seven stars in the constellation Saptrikhi, under the rule of Vaivasvata Manu, and shall shine in the heavens.” Then Siva in obedience to the curse of the sages flung down his ling upon the earth; the whole earth was covered with the ling, and all the gods and the Gandharvas came to glorify Mahádeva, and they called the ling Yagisa or Yagiswar, and the Rishis became the stars of the Saptrikhi.

1 The hill on which the old temple of Jageswar stands in Patti Darun.
2 For their husbands’ use in performing sacred rites.
3 Ursa Major or the pole-star, dhrwva; see Wilson, VI., 174.
4 Because the women were collecting grass and wood for the yagya or sacrifice. The legend of the amours of Mahádeo with the wives of the Rishis belongs to the Agni form of Siva, and we find in the Mahábhárata that Agni is made the hero of the tale. Śváha taking the form of the wives of the Rishis satisfied Agni and from the deity a son was born, called Skanda from the seed discharged (śhānma) and collected in a golden reservoir by Śváha and called Karttikeya, because he was brought up amongst the Krittikas, who lived on Kailás and who are possibly one with the Kritiyas of Kashmir, where this cult had its origin. He has six heads and other members and but one stomach, in allusion to his birth. Urundhati, the wife of Vasishtha, the seventh Rishi, took no part in the matter: see Muir, IV., 354, 364.
There is no place\(^1\) in the universe where Siva is not; therefore doubt not, O Eishis, that the \textit{ling} of Siva could overshadow the world. Then Vishnu, Brahma, Indra, the sun and the moon, who were then at Jageswar worshipping Mahâdeva, left each a portion of his own self (i.e., power and instructions) at Jageswar. Then the cow Prithivi came to Siva and said—“I am burdened with thy \textit{ling} and cannot move it; lift me up and deliver me therefrom.” The gods then set out to examine how far the \textit{ling} extended: they reached the serpent Ananta and still there was the \textit{ling}; then they returned, and Prithivi asked—“How far does the \textit{ling} extend?” Brahma answered—“I have seen its end: it extends to the end of you (i.e., of the world.)” Then Prithivi said—“You, a great god, have lied: henceforth in the world none shall worship you.” Brahma answered—“You too, when the last \textit{yug} shall come, shall be filled with Mlechchhas.” Then she asked the other gods if they had seen the end of Mahâdeva’s \textit{ling}; they answered—“Brahma, Vishnu and Kapila do not know; what power have we to know?” She then asked Vishnu; he went to Pâtâla to search, but still did not find the end. Here the gods said to Vishnu—“We cannot find the end; yet the \textit{ling} must be removed from the earth or the world will perish.” Then Vishnu prayed Siva to grant him a request. Siva agreed, and Vishnu said—“The earth is weary of thy \textit{ling}; lift it up from her;” and Siva answered—“Cut up the \textit{ling} with thy \textit{chakra} into pieces and set up everywhere the fragments for worship, and there too in each place leave a part of yourselves for worship.” Then Vishnu cut up the \textit{ling} into many pieces and throughout the world the fragments were left for worship. Thus was the earth rejoiced with the establishment everywhere of the \textit{ling} of Mahâdeva throughout the nine divisions (\textit{khandas}) of the earth.

\textit{The Pandas of Jageswar} have the same story, except that they make the seven wives of the Bishis enamoured with Mahâdeo. They met him in the forests whilst nude, performing the celebrated dance which he invented for the gratification of Pârvati and accompanied by the music of the tambor. In consequence of the curse of the Bishis, the \textit{ling} fell on the earth, and Vishnu at length consented to become the receptacle or \textit{yoni}, and cutting up the \textit{ling} distributed it over the twelve great \textit{linga} temples of India, whilst the smaller fragments are preserved at Jageswar. Numerous legends are told to inculcate the value of a pilgrimage to Jageswar, and even Vishnu is brought in and made to describe its extent, rivers, and forests from the marks on the palm of his hand. It is said to be 144 square miles in extent, being bounded on the east by Jateswar, on the north by Gananâtha; on the west by Trinccra, and on the south by Bâmecwar. The ridge called Iswardâr is supposed to be the scene of the dalliance with the wives of the Bishis.\(^2\) This would point to a post-Musalmán period for this composition.
The nine Khandas—

Four of these khandas are situated in Himáchal. The first is the Himádi-khanda. Kúli, who had been burned at Kankhal, was born again as Párvatí, the daughter of Himáchal, and was again married to Mahádeva. The second is Mánasa-khanda named after Mánasa-sarovara, the first created of all thehs made by Brahma. The third is Kailás-khanda, named from Kailás, where Siva himself with all his servants reside. The fourth is Kedar-khanda around Kedár, on seeing which the five Pándavas were cleared from the guilt of patricide. The fifth is Pátalá-khanda, where the Nágas worship the ling. The sixth is Káshi-khanda, where is the great ling called Visveswara, where everything that perishes finds salvation (mukti). The seventh is Rewa-khanda, in which is the Rewa river, and whoever bathes in it finds deliverance and its stones are known as Narmadeswara. In this khanda is the ling called Rámeshwara. The eighth is Brahmatara-khanda, where is the Gokarneswara linga. The ninth is the Nagar-khanda, from hearing of which souls are received into the paradise of Siva. In this khanda is Ujjayini.

Birth of Uma or Párvatí.

Then Janamejaya addressed the Súta and said—'How did Kúli after her cremation become Párvatí? The Súta replied—'Himáchal and his wife Mena performed great austerities and prayed for children. Brahma and the other gods asked—'Why do you mortify yourselves so?' Mena replied—'Give me such a child as will do honour to all of you.' The gods approved and disappeared, and in answer to Mena's prayer Párvatí was born. Párvatí worshipped Siva and is also known as Uma, Gaum, Durga, Kálika, and Bhadrá. At this time the Dáityas expelled the gods from paradise. The gods then went to Brahma and represented their case and said—'The Dáitya called Tácalásura has conquered us: expel him again from Swarga.' Brahma answered—'In return

1 The Kármá Purána relates how Sati, daughter of Daksáha and wife of Siva, voluntarily suffered cremation and was afterwards born again as the daughter of Himáchal by Mena, and in that character as the only Kármá Uma again became the wife of Siva as Bhada and is here called Bénaka. The story is also given in Kálamkár's Kámadhánta Sanáktaa, Mutí, IV, 385, 446. 2 In the Kámará district of the Bombay Presidency. The Dáitya Tácalá, son of Himajyásha, the son of Dáitya Cáyána, and half-sister of Dáitya A. Vásuni or Sura, the god of war, was taken by the gods and rejected by the Dáityas: hence the former are called Suras and the latter Asuras.
for his devotions, I promised this Daitya that he should not die even by the hand of Vishnu, but I will tell you how to act. Go to Siva, who is seated with his mind intently fixed on one object, disturb his contemplation; then he will marry Parvati, and from her a son shall be born who shall destroy the demon Taraká. Then Indra placing Kámadeva before them went to Siva and began to glorify him; then Mahádeo opening his eyes saw Kámadeva before him, and with rage fire issued from his body and burned up Kámadeva. Then the gods began to glorify Mahádeva, and he asked them what they desired. They told him that they wished that he should beget a son on Parvati to slay the demon Taraká. Mahádeo agreed and told Brahma to go to Himáchal and ask his daughter in marriage. He went and told Himáchal that Parvati was Káli and asked for her for Mahádeo. Himáchal consented and Brahma returned to tell Siva to make his preparations for the marriage. Siva said—'Call Viswakarma, the workman of the gods.' Viswakarma came and prepared all that was wanted and made a golden image of Ganesha, which he told Siva to adore, for it was from a neglect of Ganesha that Káli had been destroyed. Then Brahma said—'If Kámadeva shall perish, the world will end for want of children;' and Mahádeo said—'Henceforth Kámadeva shall live in the minds of all men; he need not again take a bodily shape.' Then Mahádeva smeared his body with ashes and threw over his shoulders the skin of a deer and adorned himself with snakes instead of jewels, and took the trisála, in his hand and wearing a necklace of dead men's skulls and seated on a bull, he went off to the marriage. Stopping on the south bank of the Gomati, he worshipped Ganesha, and thence went to the confluence of the Gomati and Garuri, where he sat down and told Brahma to announce the arrival of the marriage procession to Himáchal. Brahma did as he was ordered and delivered presents to Himáchal, who came out to meet Mahádeva and took him to his dwelling, where he gave to Mahádeva his daughter and all the gods and Gandharvas and Apsaras, and others glorified Mahádeva. Then

1 See Muir, IV., 224. 2 Said to have taken place at the confluence of the Sarju and the Ganges. See Wheeler, II., 41, and Muir, IV., 364. 3 The Gomati rises in the Kátyá valley and joins the Sarju at Bágewar. 4 Now called Garur-Ganga. This confluence is a little below Bhujwáth and the place where Siva sat down on the grass was called Bhaidyanáth from the herbs on which he sat becoming good for medicine. Trîyogî-Narîyan is also claimed as the site of the wedding of Siva and Parvati by the Garhiwallis.
Himáchal, after he had distributed gifts and done due honor to the companions of Siva, received as a gift that he should henceforth be honored like Siva himself throughout the universe. Then Brahma and the other gods went back to their respective dwellings, and Siva and Parvati and their attendants went to Kedára-mandal (or circle of Kédár).

**Legend of Himáchal.**

Janamejaya then addressed the Súta and said—'You have told me the history of Siva, now tell me the míhátya of Himáchal.' The Súta replied as follows in the words of Vyásá:—'Himáchal is the giver of the four gifts,1 dharma, artha, káma, moksha. Mahádeva always resides in Himáchal and on him attend the gods; and in him are many caves and much ice. The míhátyas of Himáchal were related by Dattátreya Rishi2 to Káshi rája.3 Once this Rishi went from Shesháchal4 to behold Himáchal. He saw upon him many lakes, and bhujpatra5 and other trees and mines of gold and other metals, and tigers and deer and every species of birds, and wild men, and medicinal plants. When Himáchal saw Dattátreya approach, he bowed in reverence before him and after doing him all due honor, he asked the sage why he had come to visit him. Dattátreya said—'Thou art the greatest of mountains and the Ganga and the other holy streams flow from thee and Siva resides in thee, and on thee fell the ling of Siva and his wife is thy daughter; thou art like a god. Víndhyáchal6 and the other mountains join their hands before thee, therefore have I come to behold thee; now show to me thy tirthas and the ling of Mahádeva and thy caves and thy mines of precious metals.' Then Himáchal showed Dattátreya Mána-sarovara, and in the midst a golden ling and the rája-hansa.7 Then Dattátreya went all round the sacred lake and bathed in its waters and in that of its streams; then he saw Siva seated in a cave with Parvati and before him was Brahma and the gods glorifying him and the Gandharvas singing and the Apsaras dancing. Then he saw Ganga which descends from the foot of Vishnu to Kailása, and thence to Mána-sarovara, in which he bathed. Then he saw the

---

1 Virtue, wealth, desire, absorption or death.  
2 One of the seven human incarnations of Vishnu.  
3 Son of Káshi and descendant of Ayas, eldest son of Yúuruvas.  
4 Abu.  
5 See legend of Agastya, post.  
6 Betula bhujpatra.  
7 Royal goose with red legs and bill. Great grey goose called Manasankar or dweller in Máná: Wilson, XL., 90.
Brahmakapá and the *Saptrikhi* who dwell there. Then he went to Kailás, where he again found Siva and the gods, and he worshipped Siva, who said—'Ask what you desire.' He asked that the power to go through the world when he pleased without obstruction might be given to him, and Siva granted the prayer. Then he asked of Siva—'Which is the greatest of mountains and where do you live yourself, and in the earth which is the most sacred place?' Then Siva answered—'I dwell everywhere, but Himáchal is my peculiar seat, and on every one of his peaks I dwell for ever and on the mountain of NandaI dwells Vishnu, and I and Brahma also. There is no other mountain like Himáchal; look upon him and receive whatever you desire.' Then Dattátreya glorifying Mahádeva departed to the north, where he saw a lake filled with the juice of the *jáman* and other lakes and temples of Siva and Vishnu, where the Gandharvas were singing and the Apsaras dancing. Thence he turned back to Kedár, where he saw many holy Rishis in caves, performing austerities and the river Mandákini; then he came to the mountains of Nar-Naráyana and worshipped at Badrináth, and he saw Lakshmi and Nárada and the other sages and the Alaknanda.

**Dattátreya and the Rája of Káshi.**

Dattátreya again visited Himáchal and taking leave went to Káshi and proclaimed the glories of Himáchal to the Rája Dhanwantari. Then the Rája said—'In the earth which is the greatest of *tirthas* and what *tirthas* have you beheld?' Dattátreya answered and said—'You are the greatest of rajas and there is no *tirtha* like Káshi, where you live. He who even without going to Káshi desires to see it and dies with the name of Káshi in his mouth finds release, for there is Ganga and Visveswara. In the three spheres there is no *tirtha* like this.' The Rája answered and said—'This is true, but tell me also of the other *tirthas* which bring blessings on mankind. I have heard that formerly rajas went to Swarga with their bodies, by what road did they go?' Then the sage said—'He who thinks on Himáchal, though he should not behold him, is greater

---

1 Nanda Devi.  
2 E. *jambolana*.  
3 Mountain on which the temple is situated.  
4 A river in pargana Nágpur in Garhwal which rises in the Kedár glacier.  
5 One of the Badrináth peaks: see page 7.  
6 The eastern branch of the Ganges which rises in the Niti valley.  
7 Renanas.  
8 Grandson of Káshirája and produced from the churning of the ocean.  
9 Wilson, IX., 3.
than he who performs all worship in Káshi, and he who thinks of Himáchal shall have pardon for all sins and all things that die on Himáchal, and all beings that in dying think of his snows are freed from sin. In a hundred ages of the gods I could not tell thee of the glories of Himáchal. This was the road the raja took to heaven, where he went with his body. That Himáchal where Siva lived and where Ganga falls from the foot of Vishnu like the slender thread of a lotus flower and where the Rishis worship and where the Siva lingas are numerous. I behold Mána-sarovara and there in the form of the raja-hansa dwells Siva. This lake was formed from the mind of Brahma, therefore was it called 'Mána-sarovara.' There dwell also Mahádeva and the gods, thence flow the Sarju1 and other (female) rivers and the Satadru2 and other (male) rivers. When the earth of Mána-sarovara touches anyone's body or when anyone bathes therein, he shall go to the paradise of Brahma, and he who drinks its waters shall go to the heaven of Siva and shall be released from the sins of a hundred births, and even the beast who bears the name of Mána-sarovara shall go to the paradise of Brahma. Its waters are like pearls. There is no mountain like Himáchal, for in it are Kailás3 and Mána-sarovara. As the dew is dried up by the morning sun, so are the sins of mankind dried up at the sight of Himáchal. At Mána-sarovara, the king,

1 The Kumaon Sarju rises at the foot of Nanda Dávi, but this may refer to the Karnálí, the longest branch of the Sarju of the plains and which rises close to Mána-sarovara.
2 The Satlaj, which rises in the Rásas lake, which is itself connected with the Mána lake.
3 The following description of Kailás as seen from the pilgrim route is interesting:—'On the approach to the lake,' writes an observant traveller, 'the Gángri range continued far to the eastward, rising out of a wide green plain. This extended between the base of the mountains, and the northern shore of both lakes (Rásas and Mána) being visible from this as far as the low hills on the north-western corner of Mána-sarovar. The most remarkable object here was Kailás, now revealed in full proportion to its very base, rising opposite (northward) straight out of the plain only two or three miles distant. The south-west front of Kailás is in a line with the adjacent range, but separated on either side by a deep ravine; the base of the mass thus isolated is two or three miles in length perhaps: the general height of it is about 4,250 above the plain, but from the west end the peak rises some 1,500 feet higher, in a cone or dome rather of paraboloidal shape. The peak and upper ridge were well covered with snow. The stratification of the rock is strongly marked in successive ledges that catch the snow falling from above, forming irregular bands of alternate white and purple. One of these bands more marked than the rest encircles the base of the peak, and this, according to Hindu tradition, is the mark of the cable with which the Rásashas attempted to drag the throne of Siva from its place.'

* * * In picturesque beauty Kailás far surpasses the great Gur-la or any other of the Indian Himaláyas that I have seen; it is full of majesty, a king of mountains. Through the ravines on either side of the mountains is the passage by which the pilgrims make the circumambulation. The circuit is performed in two days by those who take it easily, but with more exertion it may be done in one day.
Bhagiratha, performed the austerities by which the holy Ganga was produced and Vasishtha obtained the Surju. The country around this holy lake is called Mánasa-khanda.

The creation of Mánasa-sarovara.

The sons of Brahma, Marichi and Vasishtha and the rest proceeded to the north of Himáchal and performed austerities on Kailásá. There they saw Siva and Parvati, and there they remained for twelve years absorbed in mortification and prayer. There was then very little rain and little water, and in their distress they went to Brahma and worshipped him. Then Brahma asked what their desire might be. The Rishis answered and said—'We are engaged in devotion on Kailásá and must always go thence to bathe in the Mándákiní; make a place for us to bathe in.' Then Brahma by a mental effort formed the holy lake of Mánasa. The Rishis returned and rejoicing at the success of their journey again engaged in mortification and prayer on Kailásá and worshipped the golden ling which rose from the midst of the waters of the lake.

Story of Mándhátri.

The rāja then said—'The journey to Himáchal is a very difficult undertaking for man; who was it prescribed the necessity of making a pilgrimage to him?' Then Dattátreya said—'From Vaivaswata was descended the Rája Mándhátri,' and one night the earth, in the shape of a woman, came to the rāja and said to him—'In the world I have not seen a man so beautiful as you, therefore I come to you.' Mándhátri said—'Art thou the daughter of a god or a Dánava, or an Apsara, that thou art so beautiful?' She said—'I am the earth who have come to thee seeing thy beauty. I have left all other rājas.' He said—'I have sworn to have only one woman to wife, therefore charm some other of the kings of the earth.' She said—'All the former rājas who were my masters have ascended in old age to Swarga, but I remain still a young maiden. I will have thee for my husband.' He said—'If I die, my wife must burn on my death as Sati; how shall the earth, who does not die or grow old, take me, who am a mortal, for her lord?' She said—'When I too become old, I will burn with you as Sati.' Then Mándhátri married the earth and

1 To propitiate Siva, so that Ganga might descend from heaven and purify the ashes of the sons of Sagara. Muir, IV., 365.  
2 Wilson, VIII., 267; another of the human incarnations of Vishnu.
lived in happiness. When he became old he said—‘Let me go into the forests and engage in prayer and mortification. Then dying together we will go to Swarga and live together.’ Then the earth laughed and said—‘I am young, how shall I go with you? When I become old then I will die with you.’ Then Mándhátri was enraged and drew his sword to kill the earth, and she fled towards Himáchal and the raja followed her, and then reached Mána-sarovara. Then on the banks of this lake the raja cut off her head, but the earth could not perish and vanishing in the waters went down to Pátála, where she worshipped the gods who were seated on Kailása.

**Route to Mána by Barmdo.**

The raja next inquired ‘Which is the road to the holy lake?’ Dáttátreya answered and said—The pilgrim must go by the road of Kúrmáchal; he must first bathe in the Gandaki and then in the Loha, and let him then worship Mahádeva and the other gods. Then let him worship on the top of Kúrmá-sila and bathe in the Hansa-tértha, thence let him go to the Sarju, then to Dárún or Tánkara, and worship Mahádeva, thence to Pátála Bhubaneswara, and then without eating for three days let him worship Siva. Then let him bathe in the Rámganga and worship at Baleswar. Thence to Pában mountain and worship Siva, thence to Patáka and worship Siva, and he should then bathe at the confluence of the Káli and Gori. Thence to Chaturdaunshtra mount and worship Siva there. Then to Vyásásrama and worship Vyása and then to the source of the Káli, then to Kerala mount and worship Debi; thence to Puloman mount, where there is a lake; thence to the mount of Táraka and let him bathe in the Tárani and Sárdha (or Káli), where

1 The old name of Kumason on the Káli, now applied to a hill near Champáwat in Páti Chárí, surmounted by a temple to Ghatá and said as the spot where Vishnu descended in his tortoise avatára to save the earth.
2 The Gidháya river in Káli Kumason.
3 The Lohághát river in Káli Kumason.
4 Kándéo, a hill in the eastern Gágar range near Chhirapáni in Páti Chárí and surmounted by a temple sacred to Mahádevo.
5 A stream and waterfall on Kándéo.
6 The hill on which the Jageswar temple is situated in Páti Dirón.
7 A temple and cave in Páti Baraun of parganaa, tiangoli north of Gangoli Hit Dék Bungalow.
8 The mountain in Páti Mái and parganaa, Síra above the temple of the Thal Baleswar.
9 The Dhwaj peak in Páti Kharásat to the north of Pithoragarh.
10 Near Akrót.
11 Páti Chaudáns.
12 Páti Byáns is sacred to Byáns Bhikhi, the Vyása of the Purana, who is supposed to reside on the Kalirong peak near Chángru in Byáns. Also in Byáns and called Chhechhula.
13 A peak in the dividing range between Dárma and Byáns, at the foot of which is a small lake known as Mán talá or Byánshiti between the Jhúling and the Rárub Yanktí.
14 The Táraka-dhúra or pass into Tibet.
they join. Then let him behold the caves and worship the gods and let him cut his beard and fast and perform the Śrīdha ceremonies. Then to Gaurī mount and then descending to Māna-sarovara; let him bathe there and give water to the manes of his ancestors and worship Mahādeva in the name of the rāja-hansa. Then let him make the parikrama (circumambulation) of the holy lake Māna and look on Kailāsa and bathe in all the rivers around.

The return journey.

Then the Rāja asked—'By what way do you return from the lake Māna?' The sage replied—'Pilgrims must first go to Rāwan-hrada and bathe and worship Śiva; then let him worship at the source of the Sarju; then to Kechara-tirtha; thence to Bhranm-kapāl; thence to Chhaya-kshetra and worship Mahādeva; thence to Rāmasena and bathe there; thence to Rinnochana and Bhranm-sarovara, thence to Sivakshetra and thence to the mount of Nanda; thence to Baidyanāth, thence to Māllika, where let him worship Devi and bathe in the Briddhagang. Thence to Jwāla-tirtha, where he should worship the sacred fire and bathe in the Padmāvati. Thus is the pilgrimage completed.

Māna-sarovara.

On the south of the Māna lake is the mountain Sambhu, from which issues the river Sheshi, which flows to the north into Māna, near which are mines of silver and lead: near this the sands are red and the waters white. To the north is the Nāla mountain, whence issues the river Kapila, which flows into Māna-sarovara, while to the south is a cave and a gold mine. From the Nāla mountain, a river,
HIMALAYAN DISTRICTS

called Pushpabhadra, flows to the east into Mána-sarovara and also the Devabhadra. Here Rámachandra propitiated Mahádeva, and from this went to Swargn, leaving his horses and elephants, which still remain there. Near this flows the Chandrabhága from the head of Siva on Kailása. From the mountain Gauri flows the Sárdá into the Mána lake. From Kailása flows the Mandakini or Bhadra to the south into the lake. West of this river are five lakes, Káli-
hrad, Kan-hrad, Padma-krad, Káti-hrad and Hari-hrad. To the left of Kailása is the Kalápa peak, where are many caves and mines of gold and silver; from it flows the river Sonanda, of which the water is the color of gold; this flows into the Mána lake. Near Kalápa is the Mount Meru; this mountain is blue and from it falls the Saraswati and Suvarna-dhura, which also flow into Mána-sarovara. Beyond these is the Mahendri mountain, from which flows the river Mahendri into Mána-sarovara; from it also flows the river Baruni with yellow waters into the lake and the Swatti.

Mountains.

Now hear me, in reply to your inquiries, detail for your information the names of the mountains and rivers. The first of all is

1 The Mahábhárata records that it was on the Gandhamadana mountain that Ráma propitiated Siva and obtained from him his weapons and among them the axe (parasa), whence his name Parasuráma or "Ráma of the axe." The Gandhamadana peak is above Badrinath.

2 The Chandrabhága is the Chínáb or Sandalblás or Akenás of Ptolemy known, as the Asikni in Vaidik times: it rises however in Lahul and the term in the text properly applies to the Satadra or Satía. This is correct if the Karnali is intended.

3 Besides the two streams at Sarnih-Unish already noticed, the Pandit makes the Son-cho flow into the lake from the Kailása range on the north. East of Mána-sarovara is the Gunkyut-cho; to the north, the Gergel-cho; to the west, the Cho Lagan or Rawan Hrad, and further west near Gyánima the Tara-cho.

4 Four streams flow from Kailása into Cho Lagan: the Barka-cho the Jong-cho, the Sár-cho or golden stream (or Sonanda), and the Kalápa-cho or Kalápa river. The two latter join the lake near its outlet which forms the source of the Satía.

5 Lieutenant Henry Strachey, who visited the lake, writes:—"The permanent affluent of Mápán are three or four. First a stream rising in two branches from the Gángi mountains and falling into the lake at the eastern quarter of its north side; the second, also from the Gángi range, a few miles further east, entering the lake at the north-east corner: at the very same point is the mouth of the third stream which rises in Hortal. The fourth affluent is doubtful: a stream possibly comes from the Nepál Himalayas into the south-east corner of the lake. In the summer season there are many temporary streams from rain and melted snow." (J. A. S. Ben)

6 Here follows an account of numerous places of pilgrimage on the lake, chiefly Siva's lingas and legends connected with them and in honor of the sacred lake. The lake is about 46 miles in circumference and it takes four to six days to perform the journey and worship at the different shrines. There are eight principal stations known locally as (1) Tokar, on the middle of the south side: (2) Gaur, at the southern quarter of the east end: (3) Ju, at the northern quarter of the east end: (4) Jakya, at the western quarter of the north side: (5) Langduna, at the middle of the north side: (6) Bundi, at the north-east corner: (7) Sárálam, at the middle of the east end: and (8), Namuk, at the south-east corner.
Nanda, where dwells Nanda Devi. Then comes Drona (Dunagiri near Dwāra); then Dārūkāvana (Jageswar) and then Kurma-chal (Kanadeo in Kāli Kumauin), beyond which the Mānasā-khanda ends. Then comes Nāgpura; then Dārān (in Gangoli); then Pātana (above Baleswar in Sīra); then Panchsāra (Panch-chūli); then Ketumāna (a ridge in Goripāṭ); then Mallik-Arjun (in Askot); then Gananātha (in Byāns), &c., &c.

Legend of Nanda Devi.

On the peak of Nanda is a lake and there is the abode of Vishnu and Vishnu himself. From Nanda flows the Pindaraka¹ from the hair of Mahádeva into the Vishnuganga.² In it meet the Kāli³ and Saraswati⁴, Kāmathi, Vaindhya, and Bodhini.⁵ The Brishchiki and Krikalāsi also flow from Nanda. The Pindaraka joins the Vishnuganga at Karnaprayāga, where the king Karna worshipped the sun and received from him whatever he desired, gold and jewels and wealth, and he founded the ling of Karneswara Mahádeva.⁶ South of Karnaprayāga is the mount Vaindhya, five peaked, with beautiful trees and many mines. To the west of this the Dārakā-peak,⁷ from which flows the river Chandra into the Pindar. Beyond this is the hill of Durhiddhya and the Pānda. Then Benn,⁸ a great mountain with great caves and mines and stones of white crystal. On its peak is the Churesa-lingu.

The western Rāmanga.

The Rathabāhini⁹ possesses the seventh part of the virtues of Ganga; its sands are golden and in it are many fish and tortoises.

¹ Pindar river. ² The Alaknanda, so called from the confluence at Vishnuprayāg. ³ Kaliganga. ⁴ Sunderdhunga. ⁵ Flows from the Vaindhya hills, which from the subsequent description I would identify with the peaks in the watershed between the Pindar and western Rāmanga above Lobha, where there are mines. There are several rivers flowing from this range into the Pindar, and I would assign the name Vaindhya to the Agar-gār. ⁶ Karnā is one of the characters in the Mahābhārata and the temple at Karnaprayāg dates from Katyāra times. ⁷ The peak above Darkot now known as Santholi; the Chandpur river flows by its eastern base and joins the Pindar at Simil. ⁸ The Durhiddhya and Pānda peaks will be the Dhobri and Pandra peaks on the Dhampur boundary and the Benn, the Ben peak above Adbadri and near Beni Tāl. ⁹ The western Rāmanga: Wilford identifies the Paurānik Vāma or Su-stha, 'the beautiful river,' with the Rāmanga. It is also called Sarāvati, 'full of reeds,' and Bānaganga because Kārtikeya was born in a thicket of reeds on its banks at a place called Sarabau, 'reed-forest.' The Saccharum Sacca still grows on its banks (Gaz., X., 807.) In the Anara-kośa, the Rāmanga is called the Sausami (= Su-sami) in the country of Usānara. The word is intro-duced on account of its referring to a town called Kantha known as Su-sami Kantha; but if this be Kantha-o-golah, the old name for Shahjahānpur, then the term Sausami will not apply to the Rāmanga.
He who bathes in it shall be cleansed of the sins of a hundred births. In a hundred years the *tirthas* cannot be told. The Saraswati is the first to join the Rathabahini and the Gotami and Sakuti and Sara\(^1\) and the Belali\(^2\) which flow from Drona. On the left of the Rathabahini is the Nágárjun,\(^3\) where the serpent Arjun is worshipped. To the right of this is the mount Asura,\(^4\) where Káli is worshipped, and to the right of Nágárjun is the Siva-ling of Bibhandeswar,\(^5\) which is the right hand of Mahádeva. After Mahádeva had been married to Párvati, he demanded from Himáchal a place to sleep in; and he rested his head on the head of Himáchal and his back on Nila and his right hand on Nágárjun and his left hand on Bhudaswar (in Gangol) and his two feet on Dárúkávana (i.e., the jungles of Dárún near Jageswar). This is the most glorious of *tirthas*. The river of Bibhandeswar is called Surabhi,\(^6\) for Kámadhenu, the cow of the gods, by the order of Brahma, took the form of this river. The Nandini and Saraswati join the Surabhi and flow into the Rámganga.\(^7\) At this *sangam* (confluence) is the Senasanavasi Siva-ling.

**Dunagiri.**

From the great hill of Drona flows the Druni\(^8\) into the Rámganga. Above Drona is the mount of Brahma, whence flows the Gárgi,\(^9\) at the source of which the Rishi Garga made his devotions. To this mount came Duhsásana the Kaurava and conquered the raja of the mountains and bathed at the junction of the Satradhára and Sukávati, and there he established the Siva-ling of Duhsásaneswara.\(^10\) Himáchal has two heads and two feet: one head is called Lodhra, the other Brahma, and between them is the source of the Gárgi. Here at the source of the Gárgi is the Gargeswara Siva-ling. Into the Gárgi flow the Bilvávati and Betávati and Bhrávati and then the Sukávati; then join the Sailávati, and the

---

1. *Streams* of the Lobha valley.
2. Druni is Dunagiri and the Betáli may be either the Kham-gadh, which flows from near Dwára to the Rámganga, or the stream issuing from Tarág Tál.
3. The Nágárjun, or as it is commonly called Nágárjun temple, is in Patti Dora Malla on the ridge between Dwára and Naithána at the source of the Bahwa-gadh; a Saiva temple according to the Khúsiyas.
4. The hill above Páli in Dora Tálla, where there are temples to Káli and Naithána Devi.
5. The temple of the Bibhandeswar Mahádeo is situated near Rana in Dora Malla.
6. In Gangol.
7. The Surabhi must be the Rókú or Rókkan, which flows past the temple, but it joins the Gangá near Sháuli: the geography here gets confused and unintelligible. At Sainana in Náyán there is a temple to Siva. Briiddhidhár is mentioned.
8. The river from Bériti beyond Dwára.
9. Gangá, which rises between the Sukha-devi and Debór peaks.
10. Now called Sukéswar near Bâneuli-sára in Patti Atháguli.

Gārīgi joins the Rāmganga. 1 At the confluence is the Siva-ling of Chakreswara. 2 To the left is the mount of Bārāha. The mount of Drona is between the Rathaśilini and Kausiki. 3 There are many caves and many beautiful trees and flowers and tigers and deer and great creepers and the Aukhadi, the plant which shines at night like the diamond and laughs at mankind who know not its value, and on the mount lives Drona. Kālika and Bahumati and Mahishumardani are worshipped there. Between the Śalmai 4 and Kausiki is the mount Bidrana 5 and near it is the Siva-ling of Pinākisa, 6 a great tīrtha.

The Kosi.

There was a Rishi called Kusika who adoring Ganga raised his hands to heaven, and into them fell the river Kausika and thence to earth. Brahma sat on the Lohra peak 7 and poured forth from a vessel the river Sālmai. Where the Sālmai and Kausiki meet is the tīrtha of Phālguna, 8 and here is the Someśwar Mahādeo where to worship is equal to worship in Kāshi and near it dwells the serpent Takshaka. 9 Above is the tīrtha of Chandrasekhar 10 and the confluence of the Godāvari 11 and near it is Mallika Devi. 12 Above, in the Kausiki, are two great rocks, Kausi-silā and Raudri-silā, and above them is Brahm-kapūla and Kāpila tīrtha and Dharma-silā and above them is Pinākisa Mahādeo. To the left of the Kosi is the mount Kāshāya 13 and on the right is the dwelling of Barāditya 14 further on joins in the Rambha. 15 Beyond Barāditya is Katyāyani Devi 16 also called Syāma Devi. From Tankara 17 flows the Shāli 18 to the Kosi; afterwards the Kausiki breaking through the mount of Sesha flows into Madhyadesa (the plains). The mount Sesha is on the left of the Kausiki. Gandharvas live in its caves and great trees and deer and tigers; on it dwells Seshnāga 19 and from it flows the Sīta to the Kausiki southwards. Between the Sīta and the Kausiki is Asoka-banika, the grove of Asoka trees where the seven Rishis and the

---

1 The affluents of the Gagā on the right bank are the Chandīs, Baiāru, Bīka and Balwa and on the left bank the Naurar.
3 Kosi river.
4 River from Lohr, which joins the Kosi at Someśwar.
5 Now Bidhān.
6 Pinath.
7 Bhāltākā.
8 Same name now is close to Someśwar, where the burning ghāt is situated.
9 Near Someśwar is a village called Sarp and the great pool in the Kosi below is called Sarp-ṇāḍa.
10 Retains the name.
11 Retains the name.
12 A large rock in the river.
13 Kalmatiya hill near Almora, the peak of which is still called Kashaṭā.
14 The temple of the sun at Katāmala.
15 A small stream which rises below the Mission School at Almora.
16 Siyāshi Devi.
17 Jageswar.
18 Suāl river.
19 There are several Nāg temples here.
Satyavrata Rajas did penance. Here there are Asokas and other trees and many birds. Ramachandra and Sita and Lakshmana came here by the order of the Rishi Visvamitra. Sita was rejoiced at the beautiful forest and said to Rama: "It is the month Baisakha; let us stay in this wood and let us bathe in the waters of the Kau- siki." So they remained there during Baisakha in the forest and two springs burst forth for them. Thence they went back to Ayodhya, and from that time the name was changed to Satabani. He who beholds Satabani can have no sorrow. Near is the river Devaki, and to the right of mount Sesha is mount Garga, in which are many caves and mines of metals and trees and birds and deer and Rishis and gods live there and from all sides flow down rivers.

The Lakes.

In this tract there are sixty-six lakes at which the sage Garga pays his devotions. Gargaschal is at the feet of Himachal. On his summit is the Gargaswar Siva-ling where dwells the sage Garga, and whence flows the Gargi. On the left of the Gargi is Bhimsarovar, and west of these Trushi-sarovara which the three Rishis created. The three Rishis Atri, Pulastya, and Pulaha came to the tirthas of Himachal, and from Chitra-sila ascended to the mount of Garga. They were thirsty and found no water, then they dug into the mount and thought admiringly of Mana-sarovara and on this Mana-sarovara filled up the place, that they had dug, with his waters, and the place was called Trushi-sarovara. He who bathes in it shall derive the fruits of bathing in MaNa-sarovara. Around Chitra-sila is the Bhadravata; here is a great bar tree in a leaf of which Vishnu floated over the ocean. In Chitra-sila, Brahma, Vishnu, Siva and their Saktis dwell and Indra and the other gods. Below the junction of the Gargi and the Pushpabhadra stood the bar tree in the shade of which Sutapa Brahma performed austerities for thirty-six years, eating dry leaves and his hands raised to heaven. Seeing him Brahma, Vishnu, Siva, and the other gods came and granted him all that he should desire, and sent for Visvakarma and on the banks of the Gargi, Visvakarma with gold and

---

1 In the Kota Dün where there are several groves of Asoka trees. 2 Dabka river. 3 Gargar. 4 Gaula. 5 Bhim Tāl. 6 Nainī Tāl, or lake of the three Rishis. 7 Or 'painted rock' near Rānihāgh. 8 The stream from Bhim Tāl which joins the Nainī Tāl river at Mayapurī, where a fair takes place on Makar Sankrānti.
other metals and jewels made the Chitra-sila (or variegated rock) and the virtues of all the gods entered into it, and they took away Sutapa to Vaikantha, the paradise of Vishnu, and he who worships at Chitra-sila and bathes in the Gárigi shall follow him. To the east of Gargáchála are the seven lakes which are the holiest of all the lakes of Garga. The first is Trishi-sarovara, the second is Bhima-sarovara, the third is Návaka-saróvara; the fourth is Nála-saróvara, the fifth is Damayanti-saróvara; the sixth is Ráma-saróvara and the seventh is Síta-hrada. Bhima-sarovara was made by Bhima Sena, and on the banks of it he established the Bhimeswar Siva-ling, from it flows the river Pushpabhídra.

Bárahmandal-Bágesar.

East of Kálmatíya is the mount of Swayambhú and beyond it is Tankura in which is Dárikávana (i.e., the forest of Deodárs in Dárín). To the south of Dárikávana are the hills of Súlmali in which are mines of iron and copper and gold, on Himáchal between Kailás and Manda the gods love to look. At the junction of the Sarju and the Gomati is the Níla mount on which live the gods and Siddhas and Gandharvas, and Apsaras. At the junction is Agni-tirtha, and above is the Surya-kund. Between this Báránasi-Kshetra created by Chandí for the dwelling of Siva. Mahúdeva and Párvati when it was ready came to the place, and when they reached it a voice from heaven (akáshabáñi) glorified Mahúdeva, who sat down at the junction of the rivers and Brahma and the other gods came there and they said, “the akáshabáñi first called out the glories of Siva, therefore shall this place be called Bágiswar.” The Rishi Galava said, ‘Let him who wishes to be cleansed from all his sins bathe in the Sarju’. On the mount of Níla the Rishi Márkanandéya performed austerities, and while he was there the Rishi Vásishtha

1 Náukuchiya, the lake of the nine 'kuneha' or corner: if any one see all the nine bays at the same time he meets with some great fortune before the year is out.
2 Nál Tal, one of the lakes comprising the Sát Tál.
3 Ráni Damayanti ke Tál, another of the seven lakes. The two last names refer to the hero and heroine of the well-known episode in the Mahábhárata, for a popular account of which see Wheeler's History of India, I, 480.
4 Káhúriya Tál, a small pool above Bhim Tál.
5 Close to the Ram Tál, but now dry.
6 Síntala near Almora.
7 Jágesar.
8 Súlan.
9 At Bágesar, the hill above which is now known as Kokura ka danda.
10 Now called Agni-kund.
11 A pool in the Sarju above Bágesar.
12 Now called Uttar-Báránasi, 'the Benares of the north.'
13 One of the servants of Siva.
14 ’je, lord of speech’ from Sans: ‘Váh,’ ‘speech’ as in compound Váh-pati, ’lord of speech,’ ‘eloquent.’
15 A celebrated sage, the hero of the stories of the white horses with black ears, Wilson XI., 225.
brought down the Sarju from the north. When the Sarju saw Márkandeya, it stopped before him forming a lake, and when Vasishtha saw that by virtue of the austerities performed by Márkandeya the Sarju could not flow onwards, he went to Siva and prayed him to open the road for the river. Then Siva and Párvatī, consulting together, contrived a plan by which Párvatī became a cow and went to graze near Márkandeya. Siva became a tiger and sprang upon Párvatī, and when Márkandeya saw this, he ran to save the cow and drive away the tiger. When the sage rose up from his devotions for this purpose the Sarju seeing himself free flowed onward, and when Párvatī and Siva heard the waters flowing they resumed their proper forms. When Márkandeya saw them he began to glorify them and said to Siva, "Thy name is Byághreshwara, 'the lord of tigers,'" then Siva and Párvatī vanished and Márkandeya departed to the paradise of Brahmā.

Dánpur.

In the beginning of the Satya-Yuga Brahmā divided the earth into portions giving to each the share to which he was entitled. To the Nágas2 he gave the country between Jiwara3 and Dárú and this city was called Nágapura.4 The chief of the Nágas called Malla Nárāyana5 said to the Rishis, "give us water, there is none here," and the Rishis called down the Bhadra Ganga from the mountains and gave it to the Nágas. The Nágas saw Kámadhenu, the cow of the gods, and asked her to give them cows and she gave them many beautiful cows and the Nágas built sheds (gōths) for them and ordered their daughters to tend the cows. These Gopis (cow-tenders) saw Mahádeva and the place was called Gopeswara6 and the jungle was named Gopivana.7

The story of Pátála-bhubaneswara.

Between the Sarju and the (eastern) Rámganga is the shrine of Pátála-bhubaneswara.8 The Rishis asked Vyasā to tell them of

---

1 From Sans. Vayúghra, 'a tiger.' 2 The serpent race. 3 Juhár, the country between Milam and the Rái peak. 4 Nákuri now giving its name to a patti or fiscal sub-division in pargana Dánpur. A temple to the Nágas still exists on the ridge above the village of Nápali. 5 Mahen, the name of the ridge above Siring, on the route to the Pindari glacier was the residence of this Nágachief who received the suffix Nárāyana as a title on account of his worship of Viodnā. 6 A Siva Linga of this name now. 7 Gopin. Visuki the Nágachief is still worshipped at Gádyārā, where a great festival takes place in Baisakh and Kúrtik. 8 The temple is situated in patti Barāun and pargana Gangolī.
Pátála, how does Mahádeva live there in darkness and how large is it, and who are those who worship Mahádeva there and who are the chief of the gods of Pátála, and who first discovered that there was such a place as Pátála, and how can men go there without the sun or moon? Vyása said— As is the earth above so large is Pátála below, not even Vasishtha and the Munis can tell where is the end of Pátála, but can only penetrate to where Bhubaneswara Mahádeva resides. Below this there are three caves called Smara, Su-var, and Swadhamu, into which no sinful man can enter, and in the Káli-yug they will be shut up. I will tell you the story of how Pátála1 was discovered by mankind. Rituparna2 was a Suryavansi Rúja of Ayodhya who left his kingdom and travelled north into the mountains with his soldiers and killed many deer and birds. There the Rúja saw a great boar lying in a stream of water and attacked the animal with his sword, but the boar fled and the Rúja pursued him until fatigued with the sun and thirst he looked about for shade to rest himself. Whilst searching about the Rúja reached the entrance of a cave where was a watchman (kshetrapála) sitting and asked the man where he could find a shady place to rest in, the guardian of this cave replied—‘Enter here and you will find all that you desire.’ So the Rúja went into the cave and near the entrance he met Dharma and Narsinha and went on with them, and then he came to the serpent Seshnág with the thousand heads and the daughters of the Nága seized the Rúja by the hand and brought him before their father. Seshnág asked him who he was and why he had come. He answered—‘I am a Suryavansi Kshatriya, and my name is Rituparna, and I came to Himáchal with my army to hunt; whilst following a great boar I lost my way and wearied with thirst and the sun I came into this cave by permission of its guardian. In a former birth I must have done virtuous acts, that I should behold thee now.’

1 The Vishnu Purána divides Pátála into seven regions, Atala, Vitala, Náta, Gabhustimát, Mahátalá Sutala and Pátála, inhabited by Daityas, Dánavas and Nágas. The joys of Pátála are above the delights of Indrá’s heaven. The lovely Nága-kanyás wander about fascinating even the most austere; the rays of the sun diffuse light, not heat, by day, and the rays of the moon give light, not cold, by night. There are lakes, groves and flowers, singing birds and skilled musicians to make life enjoyable. Below the seven Pátalas is Vishnu incarnate as Sesh and known by the name Ananta to the Siddhas. He has a thousand heads adorned with the mystical swadistha and in each head (phana) a jewel to give light. He is accompanied by Váruni, the goddess of wine; he wears a white necklace and holds, in one hand, a plough and in the other a pestle. Sesh supports the whole world as a diadem on his head and is the great teacher of astronomy. The Puráñas make him even one with Balaráma.
Then Seshnág said,—'Fear not, tell me what gods do the four classes of men in the earth now worship'. The Rája answered—'They worship Mahádeva and demand from him what they desire.' Then Seshnág said, "Do you know this cave, and that in it dwells Mahádeva?" and the king answered—"No, nor do I know who thou art, but I desire to know all these things." Then Seshnág answered and said—'The name of this cave, O Rája, is Bhubaneshwara and where the end of this cave is not Kapila and the Munis can tell: in it live the three gods, Brahma, Vishnu, and Mahádeva, under the single form of Bhubaneshwar, and Indra and the other gods, and the Daityas, and the Gandharvas, and the Nágas dwell here and Nárada, and the other Devarshis and Vasishtha and the other Brahmarshis, and the Siddhas and the Vidyádharas and the Apsaras. No sinful men have yet entered this cave, here are the grottoes where Mahádeva and Párvati dwell; behold them; but as with your own eyes you cannot see them, I give to you the eyes of gods.' Then Seshnág gave to the king the heavenly eyes and showed to him Pátála and the dwelling of the gods and the Gandharvas, and Nágas, and Daityas, and Dánavas, and Rákshasas, and the king did them due reverence. Then Seshnág showed him the eight families of serpents, and the Siva-ling of Visveswara and Airávata, the elephant of Indra, and the Sárýáta and Kalpavriksha, the trees of the gods, and Vrihaspati, the Guru of the gods and the horse of Indra, called Uchchaishhrava and the cave Seshávati in which dwells the serpent king Ananta, whose breath rushes forth into the earth from

1 The Rishis or sages of the celestial class who lived in Vaidik times in Deva-varsha and are generally recognized as the elder Rishis. The category varies with the different works and some of those called Brahmarshis by the Vishnu Purána are as old as the oldest hymns of the Rig Veda: see Muir's Texts, III, 219: Wheeler, II., 425. 2 The Brahmarshis, Brahmas or Prajápatis, the mind-born sons of Brahmá are Bhrigú, Pulastya, Puláha, Kratu, Angiras, Marichi, Daksha, Atri and Vasishtha according to the Vishnu Purána, to which some add Nárada Dharma, Adharma, Sankalpa and Ruchi. Hence the term Brahmarshi-desa given to a portion of Central India in the Epic poems: Wilson, II., 143. 3 Airávata, the elephant of Indra, is one of the articles produced from the churning of the ocean. The others are the (1) Hidáhu or Kalákata poison which gives his name of Nikánatha to Siva; (2) Virúni or Sura, goddess of wine; (3) the white-eared horse of Indra, Uchchaishhrava; (4) Káustubha, the jewel of Vishnu; (5), the cool-rayed moon; (6) the sage Dhanwantari, clothed in white, with the amritá in his water-pot; (7) the goddess Sri; (8) the Apsaras; (9) Surabhi, the cow of plenty, the fountain of milk and curds, and (10) the páríjata tree—which is the delight of the nymphs of heaven: perfuming the world with its blossoms. This páríjata is one of the fine trees of Paradise and is identified with the Erythrina indica or 'coral-tree.' It is frequently mentioned in the Puránas. The Sárýáta are descendants of Vaivaswata. 4 One of the trees of Indra's heaven. 5 A celebrated sage, son of Angiras and husband of Tara, also the planet Jupiter and like Sarasvati presides over speech.
Bhrigatunga and the Muni Bhrigu and Sanatkumara and other Devarshis and the Hataksha Siva-ling.

Then he took the Raja further into the caverns of Patála and shewed him the roads to Swarga and Ganesha; and the Siva-ling of Sateswara and the earth resting on the head of the Serpent Ananta and the Siva-ling of Saureswara and Páravati. Then he shewed him Patála-bhubaneswari Devi, and near her the Bágisha and the Baidyanátha Siva-lingas, and on the left of them hidden by a rock the Gauanátha-ling. Below again he shewed him a cavern into which he looked and saw a light shining like an emerald (maraka.*) in it were the Munis absorbed in religious exercises and there in the midst sat the Muni Kapila and the Siva-ling of Kapila and the dwellings of the Dánavas and Daityas, and by this road he transported him in an instant to Ujjain and shewed him there the river Sarasvati and the Siva-ling of Mahakála. Then in another instant they were back in the cavern and there Seshnág shewed the Raja the cave of Sukshma and in it was Ganesha, and the forests of Kadalivana and the Muni Márdandeya. Then they returned to the cave of Patála-bhubaneswara; and he showed him another cave through which goes the road to Setubandha-rámeswara, and in it no showed Chandra-sekhara. This cave was forty kos long and forty kos broad, and its sides were formed of emerald; thence in a moment they returned from Rámeswara into the cave of Patálabhubeswara and entered another cave through which they went to the river Godávari and bathed in it, and another cave through which they went and bathed in Ganga-ságara and worshipped at the Siva-ling of Chandeswara. In one of the caves Seshnág showed the Raja the asrama or hermitage of Márdandeya Rushi and the five Siva-lingas of the five Kedáms. In another cave he showed the Raja the road to Baijnáth;

*The peak of the Rishi Bhrigu near Pohkri in patthi Bhirang where there is a cave from which comes a wind.

*One of the ten Maháraajas named in Manu and father of Sri or Lakshmi by Khytá in one of her births previous to the churning of the ocean. Called also lord of Lakshminitura on the Nerbudda known as Bhrigu Kachcha.

*Always young, one of the sons of Brahma.

*Nála, golden; name of a Siva Ling on the Godávari.

*Name of a sage, the founder of the Sankhya philosophy.

*In Máiwa.

*Kadilban, plantain-grove, a forest in the Dakhin celebrated for elephants.

*The narrator of the Márdandeya Purána.

*The Siva Ling at Rámsaram, at the bridge from the continent to Lanka, set up by Rama: see Wheeler, II, 333.

*Moon-created, an epithet of Siva, also the name of a mountain.

*Chandi, another name of Páravati.
and the Siva-lingas of Nilakantha and Bali,¹ the king of the Daityas.

Then in the great cave he showed him the cave of Brahmadwara² and its Siva-lingas and there worshipped Kāmadhenu³ from whom falls down the milk on Mahādeva. Here there is a pool called Siva-kunda, the water of which if any one drinks without permission from the deity, he is struck with the trident of Siva. Then the Raja asking permission of Mahādeva, drank at the pool and Mahādeva said to the Raja—'Within this space thirty-three krores of gods remain in attendance on it.' Then Seshnāg showed him the moon and stars and the Ganas and Gandharvas and the great Mahādeva-ling, on one side of which sits Brahma and on the other Vishnu. These three gods dwell here in one shape as the Siva-ling of Bhubanesvara. Then in the cave of Smara he saw Mahādeva throwing the dice with Pārvati and the other gods standing by adoring. Then he saw another cave, ten thousand yanjas in circumference, at the door of which sat a guardian snake. This cave was lighted with the light of jewels, and in the midst of a house made of precious stones, and in it a bed of the same and on it, on stuffs as white as milk, sat Briddha-bhubaneswara, Mahādeva and Pārvati. Then Seshnāg took him through another cave to Kailāsa and the Raja bathed in Māna-sarovara. Then they came back and they showed him the cave of Smeru where was Siva sleeping with matted hair on his head, and wearing the skin of a tiger and having a snake as a jāno and near him Ugratāra Devi,⁵ and he showed him the cave of Swadhama and the Raja asked—'What is the light that flows forth from the midst'? and Seshnāg answered—'This is Tejomāya Mahādeva⁶ tell it not to any one; from this light sprang forth Vishnu, Brahma, and Siva when the universe

¹ Bali was the son of Virochana, son of the great Daitya Prabhāsa. He conquered Indra and the other gods and was, in turn, vanquished by Vishnu in his Vāmana or dwarf incarnation and sent as ruler to Pāṭalā: see page 262.¹
² Now called Brahma kanthi, a small cave branching out from the great cave.
³ The cow belonging to Vasishtha which yields all desires, here represented by a rock somewhat in the form of a cow from which water trickles on to the top of the Linga.
⁴ The sacrificial thread. ⁵ The 'terrible goddess' as Siva is called Ugratāra, the terrible lord. Rudra or Siva was born half male and half female, but separating himself into two parts by order of Brahma, each sex became multiplied and of two classes, dark or fierce and light or agreeable. Hence the eleven Rudras and their wives. Ugratās, Bhava, Kāia are strong or dark forms of the male and Durga, Kāli, Bhavāni, Chandī, Mahāratri. Vīrātās, amongst the fierce forms of the female. Similarly Siva, Mānu, Mahat are the agreeable forms of the male and Lakshmi, Gauri. Ume the mild forms of the female.
⁶ 'Whose form is light.'
was created, and from this light the whole world is enlightened.

Look in the midst of it and you will see a form which is Vishnu the
creator of the universe. He who understands the Vedánta and the
Shástras calls this light Brahma. Not even the gods can come before
this light: worship it. ‘From this cave goes the road to Kedára.’

Then they went to Kedára and worshipped the Siva-ling and drank
at the spring of Udaka, and they went to Mahá-pantha and thence
returned to Pátála-bhubanesvara. Then the Raja said in his own
mind — ‘Am I mad or am I dreaming; what is this Pátála that I
am seeing?’

Then Seshnág said to the Raja — ‘Take thou a thousand loads of
jewels borne for thee by Rákshasas, and this horse, the speed of
which is that of the wind and go to thy own home; but tell of
Pátála to no one, and you and your family shall flourish. There
shall hereafter be a Brahman called Batkala who shall tell of this
cave to mankind, then they shall know of it.’ Then the Raja mount-
ing on the horse came forth with the Rákshasas carrying the jewels
and thanked Seshnág; then he went to the mount of Dárú and on
the banks of the Sarju he found his army who were searching for
him, and he returned to Ayodhya and stored up the jewels in his
treasury and dismissed the Rákshasas who had carried them.

Then the Raja called his Ráni and his sons and told them all that
he had seen and divided the jewels among them. While he was
telling of the wonders of Pátála the messenger of Mahádeva came
and seizing the king carried him off to the dwelling of Siva. He
who shall hear this history of Raja Rituparna and this mákátmâyé
of Pátála-bhubanesvara all his sins shall be forgiven and he shall
enter into the paradise of Mahádeva.

**KEDÁRA-KHANDA.**

The Kedára-khanda section of the Skanda Purána occurs in the
same form as the Mánasa-khanda and opens with the usual philosophical inquiries as to the
origin of things of which the following may be taken as a specimen:

‘This is related by the Súta Sanaka and other rishis. First the Rishí Sánaka asked: — “What is Brahma?” he is without the three qualities, i.e., without

1 Now called Udak Nauli. 1 The peak above Kedár.

‘without the three guas or qualities,’ an attribute of the Supreme being.
of the wife of this Brahman without qualities did the world proceed?" The Sūta answered and said:—"Vaiśākhā Muni," the son of Brahma, told this to his wife Arundhati: she asked, "You know all things, the universe proceeded from Brahma, how shall he be discovered? and in the Kāli Yaj when men cease to perform due worship and believe not, how shall they obtain release, and how was the world created, and what are the duties of the four classes, and how many are the manasataraś and Yugas?" Vaiśākhā answered and said:—"This question was asked by Pārvati from Mahādeo, and he answered thus: "He is without form or senses or colour, nor does he perform any work; he is not created nor does he resemble any created thing; he is joy; he is without master; he is the soul of the universe; he is without colour, neither white nor black nor red nor yellow, nor of all colours mixed together; he has neither body nor form, yet there is nothing in the universe in which he is not. He neither performs any acts nor does he sleep, nor has he any senses. What the Supreme Spirit really is, neither Brahma nor the gods can tell. He is without qualities: without beginning, middle or end; without visible form or any form, separate from all things, yet pervading all things. The followers of the Sānkhya call him puruṣa, the Vaiṣṇavas call him ātman, the Dvaitabādi of the Nyāya call him jīva and brahma. The followers of the Mimāṃsā call him Karma, whilst those who hold with Patañjali address him as sakāvāra. The Saivas say he is one with Siva, the Vaiṣṇavas that he is Viṣṇu, the Gauḍas that he is the sun, and the Sāktas that he is the Sakti. I Mahādeo alone know something of him, but not all; he is without the qualities of stability, activity, or stagnancy; he has neither beginning nor middle nor end; he is not perceptible by the senses; he is without bodily form, yet everything in the universe bears his form: he had no beginning; he is above and beyond all things. The followers of the Sānkhya call him puruṣa; the Advaitabādi say of him that he cannot be seen with the eyes, yet he pervades all space; he is all-powerful and everything is and has its being in him. The followers of the Nyāya say that he is jīva and brahma, matter and spirit. Those who adopt the Mimāṃsā system declare he is karma or works, whilst the followers of the Yoga Śhāstras declare he is abstracted meditation. The Saivas say he is Siva; the Vaiṣṇavas that he is Viṣṇu; the Sāttvaks that he is Sūrya: the Gāṇeśhas that he is Gaṇeśa, and the Sāktas that he is Sakti. The Supreme Spirit, O Pārvati, whence this universe arose was water, the depth, length and breadth of which no one can tell; in which are millions of Brahmans and Brahmans of various forms. In every Brahma there is still the all-pervading spirit. This water of the Supreme

1 Goodness, knowledge, quietude.
2 Activity, passion.
3 Darkness, stagnancy.
4 He who is truth.
5 Or Gyan who knows.
6 Joy.
7 Ujja or ‘energy’ is the usual name of the wife of this Mānasepura or mind-born sage.
8 Periods of a Manu, each of which comprises seventy-one Yugas or ages and is ruled over by its own Manu and sages. Six manasataraś have passed and we are now in the seventh under Vaiśvaśata Manu. Seven more have to come before the day of Brahma is completed: see further Wilson’s works, VI. 45.
9 Reference is here made to the schools of philosophy.
10 Followed by Patañjali.
11 The mundane eggs, the embryos of worlds.
12 The active principle of creation.
Spirit which is outside the mundane egg once came into the world and this is Ganga."

Pārvati then asks Śiva to tell her how this came to pass and how the egg was formed. Mahādeva answered and said: "Listen, O daughter of Himalaya, to the history of Viṣṇu. First there was only water in the universe, in which floated Viṣṇu on a bed born on the serpent Śaṅkumāg. This was when the former world had ended and Viṣṇu determined that a new world should be created. At the thought, there sprang from his navel a lotus and in the lotus was born the four-faced Brahma. Then Viṣṇu said, 'Create the world.' When Brahma heard the words, he listened and saw Viṣṇu and said: "Thou art the chief of the gods; thou art unaffected by any thing; thou art without form visible or invisible; thou hast neither beginning nor end. Śiva and the other gods cannot tell who thou art, much less can I duly adore thee. I am a child and without knowledge, and my mind is overwhelmed with ignorance, how then can I fitly glorify thee? Where are thy hands and thy feet and thy limbs, where art thou thyself? This much only can I perceive that thou art this ocean with the waters of which thou cherishest all things animate and inanimate. Every created thing depends upon thee; thou art the light of the sun and the moon and the stars through which darkness is driven away from the world. Thou art wind and the breath of life and ether above the world; thou art time and its divisions and the senses and mind. The body is the chariot, the soul is the master within and the mind is the charioteer; the bodily faculties are the horses and the senses are reins. The charioteer must be vigilant or the chariot will be upset. Thou art perfect, pure and unchangeable. Until thou hast formed the thought of creation, until then thou wert the Supreme spirit, neither creator nor created: When thou hast performed this wish then thou becomest creator and created." I am powerless, how shall I create the world?" Viṣṇu answered and said: "Brahma became the creator (prajāpati) of the universe. I give to thee all knowledge; create the universe and live until creation has perished. I am pleased with thy adoration of me, so ask of me whatever boon thou desirest." Brahma answered and said: "Thou has created me; I will create all things; I have received from thee all knowledge, what more can I ask for myself? But I will ask one thing and that is that thou wilt be pleased to remain in this world which I shall create." A great part of the above description has been borrowed more or less closely from the older Paurāṇik writings, and is followed by the usual description of terms of time, the origin of the gods, demons, Dānavas, Dāityas, Rākṣasas and Yakhas. Then comes the story of the heroes of the lunar and solar races, and the exaltation of the Bhūgarbhī as the principal source of the Ganges with some account of the various places of pilgrimage along its banks."

1 Chaturmukha. 2 Vigrāha. 3 Aītma. 4 Mānas. 5 I have had two manuscripts of the Kedāra-khanda, one lent me by Ganga Datta Upreti of Srinagar, and the other by Dharmendran Joshi of Almora. The latter which was copied in 1816 A. D. has been followed throughout. The topographical account of British Garhwal commences at the 41st chapter and 40th page. The entire account is filled with stories illustrating the holiness of particular places like that of Pātalī in the Mānas-khanda. I have omitted nearly all these stories, so that this account is little more than an index to a portion of the Kedāra-khanda.
The *mahatmya* of Kedár follows the description of the valley of the Bhágirathi. Párvati asks what is Kedár and what are the fruits of visiting its sacred places and bathing in its holy waters. Mahádevo answered and said: ‘The place that you have spoken of, O goddess, is so peculiarly dear to me that I shall never leave it nor forsake it. When I or Brahma created the universe, Kedár so pleased me that it shall ever remain sacred to me. Brahma and the other gods are there, whoever dies there becomes one with Siva. Such as thou, Vaishnavori, art amongst Satis, Hari amongst the gods, the ocean amongst lakes; the Jahnavi amongst rivers, this peak amongst mountains, Yájnavalkya amongst Jogis, Nárada amongst Bhaktas, the Sálagrám amongst stones, the groves of Badari amongst forests, Kámadhenu amongst kine, a Brahman amongst men, the Brahman who can impart wisdom amongst other Brahmans, the wife who honours her husband amongst women, the son amongst children, gold amongst metals, Shuka amongst saints, Vyása amongst sages, this country amongst other countries, a prince amongst men Básab (Vásudeva) amongst the gods, the giver of good fortune amongst mortals, my city amongst villages, the Apáras of heaven amongst dancers, Tunvara amongst Gandharvas, so is Kedár-kshetra when compared with any other sacred place. Mahádevo then relates the old story; how once upon a time a hunter came here to this part of the Himalaya and after killing a large number of deer wandered northwards to Kedár where he found a number of holy men assembled and engaged in devotions. The hunter sat down at a respectful distance to watch their proceedings when suddenly a deer of a beautiful golden hue sprang up near him and walked gently by. The hunter prepared his bow to shoot the deer but before he could draw the string, the deer had disappeared. Disturbed at this he walked onwards and met Siva armed with a trident, with matted hair, wearing a garland of serpents and accompanied by his train. Frightened at the sight, the hunter concealed himself and the procession passed on. The hunter next met the sage Nárada from whom he learned that Kedár was a place of such sanctity that strange occurrences continually took place and portents and omens appeared, and that if any one desired salvation, he should find it there, though his sins were as great as can be
imagined the virtue that accrued from a visit to Kedár was sufficient to cleanse them.

**Mandakini valley.**

Mahádeva then gives a brief account of the places of pilgrimage around Kedár. On the lower course of the Mandakini⁴ is the holy Siva-kund⁵ where is the Kapila Siva-ling, and above this is Bhrigutunga, king of rocks. Still higher up at a distance of two yojanas is the babbling fountain of Hiranyakarbha,⁶ and to the north of this the great Sphâtik-ling. A few paces to the east is the Bahnidśrītirtha⁷ near which is a well where Bhím Sen⁸ worshipped me, Mahádeva. Above this is Mahápanth⁹ four kos in circuit abounding with milk and ghi, where the gods dwell, full of gold and jewels and birds with shining wings. Above Mahápanth is the Swarga-rohinī pahár. At the junction of the Mâdhvī⁴ with the Mandakini is the Shuuprad-tirtha and where the Kshırghanga⁵ joins the same river is the Brâhma-tirtha. To the south of this is the fountain known as Samudr-jal, which is of such purity that whoever even touches its water receives some benefit. To the left is the Purandar peak, where Indra worshipped Siva and where is the Madhálaya-ling. About forty cubits thence is the Hans-kund where Brahma appeared as a hansa, and near it is the Bhím Sen sila where is the bed of Siva. About six kos thence to the south is the Gauritirtha where the water is warm and the earth of a yellowish-red colour. Here Gauri bathed whilst her courses were on her and here is the Gaurèsvar-ling. Whoever smears the mud of this pool on his body, bathes in its water and makes an offering however small shall receive an eternal reward. To the south is Goraksahāshrama¹⁰ where also there are hot springs and a ling, and if any one remains there for seven days, his sins are all forgiven. On the same hill are four pools called Devika, Bhadrada, Shubhra, and Mátangi, bathing in which ensures particular benefits. On the hill

---

¹ This river flows through Patti Maikhandas from the glacier above the Kedár temple.  
² There are several pools of this name, but this is perhaps the one at the confluence of the Madh and Mandakini streams.  
³ Gauri-kund.  
⁴ Same as the Agni-tirtha near Gauri-kund.  
⁵ Now known as Bhím Udyā.  
⁶ There are a number of caves here.  
⁷ The mountain and glacier above the temple.  
⁸ The group of peaks above Mahápanth.  
⁹ To the east of Nalapatan.  
¹⁰ Apparently one of the streams which form the head-waters of the Mandakini for hence we descend the valley again to Gauri-kund.  
²²“Here is the Shesheswar-ling and in the pool near it are numerous snakes who do no harm to those who bathe in it.” These snakes occur in the pools at Trivugi and Gauri-kund.
above Gauri-tirtha is the Chirbasa Bhairab who acts as watchman to Mahadeva, and who must have offerings of strips of cloth when his lord is worshipped. Kali also resides here and about a kos off is Binayak-dwara1 sacred to Ganesha. Within the Kedara-mandal and to the west of the Tribikram Nadi2 is the Narayan-tirtha. About a kos and a half above is the Narayan-kshetra where fire always burns. This is the place where the wedding of Gauri Sankara and the daughter of Himachal took place. Here is the Sarasvatikund and the Brahma-kund, the water of which is of a yellow colour and harbours snakes. To the south is the Bishnu-tirtha and the Jaleswar-ling and the holy Harida stream.3

**Bhillang valley**

Mahadeo then praises Bhilla-kshetra4 saying: 'Here I played with thee, O goddess, disguised as a Bhil. The hill is lovely and well wooded and watered, and from it you can see Ganga, and here is the Bhillieswar-ling. Here I still engage in sport with the Bhils, clad in a dark-coloured blanket, I wander about the hills at midnight'. Close by is the temple of Kameswari Devi and less than a kos above it, the Surasuta stream where Siva smeared his body with ashes. On the south bank of the stream is the Mataliaka-sila. The extent of the Bhillkagan-kshetra is five yojanas long by four yojanas broad, and it contains some sixty streams. To the south of Bhillangan-kshetra is Bagala-kshetra5 which extends two yojanas in breadth and four yojanas in length. It contains numerous places of pilgrimage and temples and that sacred to Bagala Devi is well-known. To the south of this temple is the Punya-pramodini stream and on the northern bank of the stream, a figure of the four-armed Vishnu and, about two kos to the south, the temple of Trishirkha Devi. Next comes Shikambhari-kshetra6 sacred to Shikambhari Devi where her temple exists. She protects the sages in their devotions and here is a grove of Shako trees and the tigers of the forest and the snake with the jewelled head pays her worship. Near it is the Sankara peak where the feast of lamps takes place on the eleventh of the dark half of Karthik. To the south

1 The confluence of the river from Triyugi with the Mandakini. 2 The stream which flows by Triyugi-Narayan; the Sini of the maps. The fire has lasted here for three ages, hence the name Triyugi. 3 The Sinigadh of the maps and Jalmal of some travellers. 4 The valley of the Bhillang river in Tihri to the west of Triyugi. 5 In Tihri. 6 In Tihri.
of the peak is the Máarakata-ling surrounded by a hooded snake, and to the left of this is the Nandini river and the temple of Ruma Bhairab adorned with numerous bells, the hermitage of Shukra and mines of copper.

Madh and Tung.

Mahádeva then goes on to say that there are five kshetras which every one should visit, Kedár, Madh, Tung, Rudrálaya, and Kalp, all of which are within the Kedár-mandal. A Gaur Brahman is next introduced to tell a story in praise of Madhmaheswar. Here is the sacred Sarasvati-tirtha regarding which the story of the hunter Shambuka is told to show its surpassing sanctity. The hunter and his dog followed the chase until they came near Madh where they met a joyous band of pilgrims singing the praises of the Sarasvati. The hunter cared naught for this and threw his dog into the pond and the dog on coming out shook off some of the water on to Shambuka, but such was the virtue of even this partial ablution in the sacred stream that on their death both hunter and dog were summoned to Siva’s heaven. The Tungeswar-kshetra is next mentioned and is said to be two yojanas square, and its praise is sung in the story of Dharmdatta and his son Karmsharm. Dharmdatta was a good and pious man, but his son Karmsharm was a gambler and bad character and even induced his own sister to become as bad as himself. Dharmdatta died of a broken heart and his son seized the property and sold it, and squandering the proceeds took to highway-robbery as a profession. Meanwhile his sister turned courtesan and in her travels fell in with her brother and became his mistress. The brother was in the end killed in a forest by a tiger, but a crow took merely one of his bones and carried it to Tung-kshetra where it fell within the sacred tract, and such is the power inherent in the soil of these holy places that Karmsharm after some time spent with the Rishis was transported to the heaven of Siva.

This brings us to the Akáshganga1 which finds its source in three springs on the summit of Tungnáth. To the west of Tungnáth is a Sphá tik-ling2 and to the south of this the Gaur-tirtha

1'Argáskámi and Agaakamnee of the maps which take its rise below the temple to Siva as Tungnáth on the Chandrasila peak. 2 A white ling shaped boulder sacred to Siva.
and about half a mile thence the Man-sarovara in which the lotus grows. To the north of the Man pond is the temple dedicated to Siva as Markateswar,¹ and to the south of this near the hermitage of Mrikanda, the temple of Maheswari Devi. The sources of the Akáshganga is the best of all places for performing the funeral rites of ancestors.

**Rudrandh.**

The Rudralaya or the ‘abode of Pudrā’ is also called the Mahálaya or ‘great abode,’ and is introduced by Mahádevo with a long account of his own power and greatness which we omit. Here is the Baitarani stream² sacred to the ancestors where one pind equals a kmr offered at Gya. Here is Shiumukh, the head of Siva, and the place where the Pándavas came to remove the sin of killing their brethren, but Mahádevo showed them not his face, and going to Kedár they obtained a sight of his hinder parts and so obtained salvation. At a distance of half a kos is the Mana pool, the waters of which are of a yellowish-red colour, and to the east of this is the Sarasvata pond in which lives the fish called Mrikunda and to the east of the pond a great lmy in colour and form like a coral bead. On the fourteenth of the dark half of the month, the fish in the pond are fed and oblations are offered for the repose of the manes of ancestors. To the north-east is the pool with yellow waters where Mani Bhadra worshipped Siva. Kalpethal³ is the place where Durvásasa Rishi performed austerities beneath a kalpa tree and thus obtained salvation. To the south of the Kalpeswar-ling⁴ is Kápila-ling and below it flows the Haimanvati stream, and to the south of it is Bhringeswar about two kos from Kalpeswar. Here there are also hot springs and some distance near them to the west is Gosthal-ksheatra,⁵ when Mahádeva is worshipped as Parmeshwar (Pasupati) and an iron trisul or trident stands near his temple and an ever-flowering tree of great beauty. To the east Mahádeva resides as Jhasha-ketana-ha (or destroyer of Kandarpa, the god of love), after which his wrath being appeased by Rati, he became known as Rateswar and a pond near his temple⁶ is dedicated to Rati.

¹In Mako village where the priests of Tóngnáth reside during the winter.
²The Rudrigadh of the map which flows through the valley in which is the Rudranath temple.
³Patti Urgam.
⁴In Urgam village.
⁵Gosthal in Malla Nágpur where is the Gopeswar temple and the iron trident.
⁶In the valley below Gopeswar.
Badarindāḥ.

The account of Badari is given in a conversation between Vasishtha and his wife Arundhati. The holy circle of Badari includes the entire tract (keśetra) between the hermitage of Kanwa and the peak of Nanda. Such is the efficacy of austerities performed there that oblations offered at Kanwa's shrine frees even thieves and the slayers of kine and Brahmans from the just punishment due to their sins. To him who bathes at Nandprayāg and worships Rāmapati there, further benefits are promised. The circle of Badari is three yojanas broad by twelve yojanas long, and contains the Gandharavādana, Badari, Nar-Nārāyana and Kuvera peaks besides numerous streams and warm springs.

Patti Dasoli.

Nandprayāg1 is so named after the virtuous Raja Nanda who here made a great sacrifice which was attended by the gods and many Brahmans. Here is the Vasishthesvar-ling and to the north of it the sin-cleansing Brihika and Birahwati.2 The latter is sometimes called the Kalyāni and received its present name from the austerities performed there by Siva himself. Here is a temple to Siva as Bisheeswar, and to the east thereof the sacred pool of Manibhadra,3 and to the south of this the Mahābhadrā stream, remarkable for the great fig-tree on its bank and the Sūrya-tirtha. Two ḍos to the east is the temple of Gopeswari Devi where Raja Danda of the solar race performed austerities, hence the synonym Dundkāranya.

The valley of the Alaknanda.

On the north bank4 of the Alaknanda is the Bilvesvar temple surrounded with bel (Ægle Marmelos) trees with fruit as large as coconuts and smooth as jujubes. To the south of the river is the Garur-ganga, the stones of which have the power of removing the poison from snake-bites, and its yellow mud when smeared on the body imparts wisdom like Ganesha. To the north of the Alaknanda is the Charmanwati5 stream where is the hermitage of Raja Anant Sri and a temple dedicated to Chandi Devi and on the Mecha peak

1 At the confluence of the Nandākini and Alaknanda. 1 The Birch Ganga. 2 The Mahādeo lake in patti M. Dasoli. 3 In Malli Dasoli flowing from the Bhadra peak. 4 The description now follows the Alaknanda up to Badrināth. 5 The Alaknanda stream in Urgam.
a ling. To the north-east is the Gauriya hermitage where Devi subsisted on the leaves of the forest trees for a thousand years and gave the tract its present name Paranakhanda. On the banks of the Alaknanda near the hermitage are a ling and pool known as Siva-kund. About a mile beyond is the pool Bishnu-kund, and two kos farther is Jyotirdham¹ in which is the temple of Narisingh where Prahlád performed austerities. Here are also the pools known as Brahma, Bishnu, Siva, Ganesh, Bhringi, Rishi, Surya, Durga, Dhanada, and Prahlád-kund, Nárada worshipped Vishnu at Bishnu-kund. From Jyotirdham the traveller proceeds to Badari, and the Gandhamádana, peak by the confluence of the Dhauta and the Alaknanda (Ganga) near which are the pools already mentioned. The place is called Bishnuprayág and above it is the site of the hermitage of Ghatotthava who became the watchman of Vishnu. Here there are hot-springs and the temple dedicated to Siva as Muneswar and one to Ghantakarn. There are numerous hermitages of holy men around and every pool forms the source of a stream and every peak the home of a god. Above Bishnuprayág is Pándusthán¹ where the Pándavas lived for a time engaged in devotion. Here is Pándvesvar Mahádeva. On the right bank of the river is the Nar peak with its thousand lings and places of pilgrimage and the Náráyan-kund. Next comes the Bindumati stream and two kos beyond is Bhaikhánas where the saints performed the hom sacrifice. Above this on the summit of the peak is the Jageswar Bhairab and the Kuvera rock. Then comes the Pravara stream and the temple of Badari where is the Kúrm-dhára and the five-rocks (Panch-sila), viz., Náradiya-sila, Báráhi-sila, Nárasinhi-sila, Márkañdeya-sila, and Gáruri-sila, with their respective pools. Within the circle of these rocks is the throne of Vishnu. Here also is the Bahni-tirtha and the rock Brahµ-kapál sacred to the manes of ancestors. Close to Badrináth and near the sources of the stream is Nrisinh in the form of a rock and the Náráyan-kund. A little less than a kos to the west is the Urvasi-kund where dwelt Pururuvas and Urvasi and two kos off is the Svarna-dhára, and on the banks of the river the Shesh-tirtha. To the left of Badrináth are the Indra-dhára, Deodhára, and Basu-dhára streams, the Dharm-sila and the Som, Satyapadam, Chakra, Dwádasáditya, Saptarshi, Rudr, Brahma.

¹ Joshiimath ² Pándukoswar, where the temple still exists.
Nar-Náráyan, Byás, Kesava-práyág, and Pándavi-tirtha, the pool of Muchu-kunda and Manibhadra.

**Episodes.**

Some twenty chapters devoted to stories in praise of the various tirthas now follow which may be dismissed after a very brief notice. Arundhati asks her husband to tell her something more about the great places of pilgrimage than their mere names, and he goes on to relate to her what he professes to have heard from Nárada regarding them. These stories show that whatever may be a man's desire he will obtain it by worship at Badari, and whatever may be his sins they will be forgiven if he supplicates the deity through the priests of Kedár and Badari. The first story tells how "Once upon a time there lived a very learned and pious Brahman named Bishnumana on the banks of the Drishadwati. Though the father was learned and good, the son Bishnurati grew up so ignorant and debauched that Bishnuprama was obliged to expel the boy from his house. Bishnurati joined a band of wandering musicians and came to Badari where he sang the great song in honour of Vishnu, and so pleased the god that he was allowed to live near Nárada-kund, and the sufferings which he had gone through in his travels were held sufficient punishment for the evils that he had wrought." The next story tells how Sankara Vaisya, a resident of Pratisthán-pura,* longed for issue, and hearing of the virtues of a journey to Badari went there with his wife. There he found a number of Brahmans engaged in devotion, and after feeding them explained his object, and in return received from them a charm which he gave to his wife, who soon became pregnant, and in due time brought forth a son who was named Dharmadatta. When Dharmadatta grew to man's estate, and proceeded with his merchandise into strange lands, he became enamoured of a daughter of the Mlechchhas, who eventually plundered him of all his property. Dharmadatta returned to his father, who ordered him to make the round of Kedár and Badari in order to cleanse him of his sin. Next we have Janamejaya slaying eighteen Brahmans in order to enjoy the society of a beautiful woman that he met out hunting, and cleansed of his sin by a visit to Badari and the intercession of Vyása.

---

1 From the 58th to the 78th on the Godavari.

* Pratisthâna is probably Paithan.
Chandragupta Vaisya, a resident of Avanti (Ujjain) had ten sons, and was one day visited by a Badarináth panda by name Dharma
datta, who was asked to describe all the wonders of Badari. In
reply Dharmadatta told the Vaisya the names of all the places of
pilgrimages, and the advantages to be had from visiting them; that
he should take all his property and go to Kedár and Badari, and
give it to the Brahmans there, who would ensure his admission to
paradise. Accordingly Chandragupta with his wife and sons set
off on a pilgrimage with Dharmadatta, and afterwards remained
with him near Badari. Whilst there Chandragupta’s wife lost a
precious ivory ornament one day, and inquired from the sages who
lived near what was to be done to recover it. They answered that
she and her family should go the round of the places of pilgrimage
again, and when this had been accomplished, and they had arrived
a second time at Badarináth, the elephant from whose tusk the
ornament had been made appeared, and with the whole party was
at once conveyed to the paradise of Vishnu. Then comes a story
of how Nárada standing on one foot sang the praises of Mahádeo
for one hundred years at the confluence of the Mandákini and Alik-
nanda, now known as Rudrprayág, and how he was visited by the
great god himself who here invented the musical modes used in his
worship. Then follows a long explanation of the various rágas, their
use, value, authority, accompaniments, rules, divisions, &c. In
illustration a story is told of Devásraya who had five sons, all of
whom were learned and pious except Gopalshama, who was so
ignorant that he was denied the sacrificial thread, and was appointed
as cow-herd. Gopal when he became of age reflected on his condi-
tion, and sought for those to whom he belonged, and for this purpose
travelled to Kailás, and visiting the various holy places arrived
hungry and tired at Rudrprayág. Some days afterwards whilst
wandering about the sacred place he overheard a Brahman per-
forming his devotions and saying “Om siváya námah” as the
great compelling invocation to the deity. Gopal immediately com-
enced repeating this simple litany, and when he had continued
muttering the name for some hundred-thousand times, Siva took
pity on him and revealed to him his origin and restored his facul-
ties. Henceforth Gopal Siddh became known throughout the
whole of Kedár as the favorite of Siva. The Brahmans who had
refused to partake of the feast prepared by Parasuráma were still under the curse pronounced by that sage and were known as Brahmarákshasas until restored by Gopál.

_Nilkanth and Pindar._

Arundhati then asks whether the intercession of any other holy man has ever resulted in the release of such numbers as were saved through Gopál. She was told that the Nilkanth mountain lying between the peaks known as Shumbha and Nishumbha was the site of the great austerities performed by Rája Antideva, by virtue of which both the Rája and some thousands of Hákshasas were received into the heaven of Siva. The place is further marked by a temple to Mahisháni Devi. An account is next given of the Chakrakshetra which lies to the south of Máňasa and is known by the great bel tree and the temple dedicated to Bilweswar and Gáneshwari Devi, the Heramb-kund and Bainuwa-tirtha. To the east is a temple to Chandi Devi and east of this a pool of yellow water and above it is Bikata-ksheatra, so called from the son of Jambha Asura. Jambha had two sons, Bikat and Tat; the first adored Siva and the second Vishnu, and here is a temple dedicated to Siva as Bikateswar. Here is the Sailodak spring, the waters of which if applied to the eyes enable one to see where treasure is concealed. Here also is the Nandeswar temple. Tat-ksheatra lies along the Pindar and is the place where Tat with his Daityas performed austerities, and above the site of his hermitage, in a forest surrounded by bel and other trees, is a temple dedicated to Siva as Brahmaputreswar. A little more than four kos to the north of the Brahmaputrashtán is the Pushkara peak where Pushkar and the Nágás worshipped Siva. Next comes the Muni-siddháni-ksheatra, full of deer, trees, flowers, and birds, where Pushkar-nág lives. To the south-east is the temple of Chandika Devi and the Táreswar ling. To the south of this is the Káveri stream, where is the Kávereswar ling, and further south the Nág-dhára and Nigamálaya with the stream Páphára, where Dwípeswar, 'lord of the Isles,' died. The Jaleswar ling is

1 The Tat kshetra must occupy the greater portion of Pindarpá. I would place the Brahmaputra sthán in the Wán valley and the Pushkara peak might be identified with one of the spurs of Trimúl. There is still a temple to Sangal-nág at the confluence of the Kailáganga and Pindar rivers at Talor and one to Bhékul Nág at Ratgaon and to Bánpe-nág at Margao in Pănhkhanda. We next have the valley of the Kailáganga, and then that of the Pindar, after which the tract around Karn-prayág called Siva-ksheatra is reached.
within this tract and also a temple to Jaleswari Devi and four kos to the east the Benu-tirtha on the banks of a small stream. To the north-east of this stream is the Dandeswar and Mahāganapati temples and also one sacred to Bhairab. To the south-east of the Brahmaputra is the Gobind-tirtha at the source of the Pindar river, and the temple dedicated to Birsháni Devi. To the north-east of this temple is Binateswar, and further south is the Bishumiti-kshetra and the Bisheswar temple and pool. North of these is Gana-kund, the Saumyeswar temple, Kambha-kund and Dasamauli, where Rávan repented him of his evil deeds, and here also the Rávaneswar ling is established. Here is the Saudámini stream and on its banks the Sukameswar ling. North of the river is Kapilatirtha, Kapileswar, Yogoswar, Bāgeswar, Brahameswar, and a temple to Ganesh. At the confluence of the Pindar and Alaknanda is Siva-kshetra, where Karna performed austerities. Here are temples dedicated to Uma and Umeswar, the Bináyak-sila, Suraj-kund, the Dhananjaya Nág temple and the Ratna-prabha ling with its golden yoni. Close by is the Menukeswar temple, the Hivasí stream and Pulaheswar ling, near which is the Braham-sila of many colours. Above on the hill is the Manibhadra-kshetra and Mani-wati stream, the Yaksheswar ling and sacred pool, Bameswar, the Dibeswar-kund where the lotus grows and the Debeswar ling. To the left of the Dibeswar ling is Svarnákarsthrán, the Svarneswar temple, the Indra-tirtha, where Bhairab in a black form seized and bound Indra, the Indreswar and Káleswar temples and also the rocks known as Bhim-sila and Hanumat-sila. The last mentioned is of a white colour and has the power of transmuting the baser metals into gold. Beyond these is Bhim-kshetra, in which is the Bheswar ling and temple.

Káli-kshetra.

Two yojanas to the north of Káli-kshetra1 we arrive at the temple of Rákeswari Devi which marks the site where Shasha, the moon, was freed from the leprosy caused by the curse of Brihaspati. It was in the Nandan woods that the moon met the wife of Brihaspati and debauched her and was cursed by the sage and became a leper. The moon then prayed to Siva and offered oblations here

---
1 Káli-kshetra or Kálikasthrán, also known as Kálibangwára, is the tract along the Káli near its confluence with the Mandákini below Kálimath.
and obtained forgiveness. Arundhati then asks where the Rājas paid their devotions, and in reply was told that they visited the Kedār-tīrtha and Kāli-śaṅkara on the banks of the Sarasvati. Siva is worshipped in Kāli-śaṅkara as Kāleswar and there is a great temple to Kāli herself and to the east about two kos is the temple of Turana Mandana Devi. To the north of the temple of Kāli is the temple of Kot-māyeswari Devi. To the north of the river at the junction of the Barana and Asi streams is Saumya Kāshi now concealed (gupta) and only five kos in extent, but hereafter to be revealed when its sacred precincts will comprise one hundred kos.

Jumna, Tons, and Dehra Dūn.

In the country to the west of the Ganges are numerous places of pilgrimage, the Brahma-dhāra and others. Jumna and Tons. The Jumna flows through the north-western portion of this tract and the Hiranyakākū joins it and their confluence is holy. Still further west is the Tamasa, and where it joins the Jumna is the Daksha-tīrtha and north of it the Bishnu-tīrtha. From the hill above the last-mentioned place of pilgrimage flows the Bimuktida stream, and at its junction with the Tons is a temple dedicated to Siva as Jyotiswar. To the north is the Hem-sringa peak from which flows the Siddha stream, and at its confluence with the Tons is the Siva-ling to which Brahma paid devotion. North-east of this are the Hiranya-saikata and Hemwati streams, and on the eastern bank of the latter stream the Kasyapa-tīrtha. Further west is the Brahmaphutra stream and on its banks the Brahmeswar-ling and the temple dedicated to Ganeswar Devi. To the north-west is the Satadru river and on its banks the Panchnadeswar-ling, and west of this the Jambhu-sail, whence the Jambhu stream takes its rise. On the banks of the Jambhu is a temple dedicated to Bishhāra Devi and beyond it the Kāmdhāra stream, an affluent of the Brahmaphutra and at their confluence the Kamākhya-tīrtha. From the Saundaryyāk peak flows the Sundari river to its

1 One with Mahisha-mardini, slayer of Mahish Asura. The story of Raktavijaya is told at some length, how, accompanied by Shumbha and Nishumbha, he ravaged the country of Kāli and how she slew him after he had conquered Indra and the gods. Kotimāyeswari Devi assisted him spreading delusions amongst the Daityas and also Rākṣeswari Devi, whose temple is about two miles above Kālkaśtha. 2 Now called Gupt-Kāshi. 3 Includes western Tihri and Jaunsār-Bīwar. 4 The Tons river. 5 Near Kāli in Jaunsār. 6 The Nāga peak of the maps. 7 The Satlaj.
confluence with the Mokshawati stream called Sundar-prayāg, where is a temple to Sundari Devi. At Bishnu-prayāg is the confluence of the Punyavati with the Bishnu-dhāra. Once upon a time the ocean came to the Himālaya and there worshipped Śiva for many thousand years: hence the origin of the Samudra-tīrtha. When Brahma created the world, the Tamasa was created from the Brahmac-kund and its confluence is the Rudra-tīrtha and Bishnu-tīrtha, where is an image of Vaishnavi Devi and, half a kos beyond, the Sakra or Indra-tīrtha. To the south-east of the Barana-tīrtha at a distance of twelve kōs is the Bālakhilya peak and river\(^1\) and the Bālakhilyeswar-ling. To the north-east is the temple dedicated to Śiva as Somesvar and from the hills around five rivers take their rise and afford numerous places of pilgrimage to the devout. One of the streams called Dharmkūṭ hen has on its eastern side the Dharmkūṭ peak where Dharm Rāja performed austerities. To the south of this is the Siddhakhūṭa peak\(^2\) and to the north Apsaragiri. To the north-east is the Yakshkūṭ peak and to the south of this the Saiñeswar-ling. From the peak of Nanda to Kāshtgiri the entire tract is known as Kedār-mandal, and within it are innumerable lings, all worthy of the highest honour.

**Māya-kshetra and the Ganges valley.**

From Ganga-dwāra\(^3\) to Ratnāstambha and from the peak of Nanda to Kāshtgiri is known as Māya-kshetra. To Brahmanasthān is twenty-three yojanas, between the Ganges and Jumna eight yojanas, Tiryak three yojanas, and Māya-kshetra twelve yojanas. Maya is Sati, the daughter of Daksha, who lived near Ganga-dwāra, where is the Daksheswar-ling and the places known as Chandikātīrtha, Drona-tīrtha, Rāma-tīrtha. To see Rikhikesh\(^4\) and Brahmatīrtha even ensures the fruit of good works. Tapuban\(^5\) also is a place for performing the funeral rites of ancestors and Lakshmanasthān for achieving good fortune.\(^6\) Then whoever bathes at Siva-tīrtha attains to the heaven of Śiva. Near Ganga-dwāra is the Niśa peak sacred to Śiva as Niśeswar. Near the Bilwa-tīrtha is the Śiva-dhāra and a great bel tree and a ling near which Nārada Muni

---

\(^1\) The Suswa Nadi in the Dūn, regarding which the story of the pigmy Brahman (balakahil), is told.  
\(^2\) Nāgbidh in the Dūn.  
\(^3\) Hardwar. The description now leads us up the valley of the Ganges.  
\(^4\) In Dehra Dūn, on the right bank of the Ganges.  
\(^5\) In Dehra Dūn near Lachman-jhōla.  
\(^6\) Here follows some seven chapters describing Daksha’s sacrifice. See Gaz., II., 283-290.
always dwells and the great Ashvatara Nāg with a jewel in his head and who sometimes appears as a sage and sometimes as a deer. In a cave to the left lived the Muni Rishika and here on the fourteenth of the dark half of Shrāwan a light is seen and the voices of people talking are heard. About two gun-shots to the east of the temple of Bilvesvar is an excellent spring of water on the hill and below it a den of wild pigs. About a kos beyond is the temple and stream sacred to Brahmani Devi. About six kos from Bilwa-tirtha is the temple sacred to Siva as Trimurtteswar, near which is the Sunandi stream and the temple of Sunandeswar and the yellow stone known as Nandi-sila similar to the stone of the same name at Gaya and the ling called Nandeswar. A kos hence is the Bīrbhadra tapasthal and the temple dedicated to Siva as Bīrbhadreswar. About half a kos to the south are other pools and tīrthas and lingas. Next comes an account of Kankhal with numerous stories of its various places of pilgrimage, the Kusha-tirtha, Bishnu-tirtha, Samudra-tirtha, Siva-tirtha, Ganesh-tirtha, &c. To the north of Ganga-dwāra the Kaumadwati stream joins the Ganges at Renuka-tīrtha and about half a kos above the Bajra-sila stream. A kos to the north flows the Sankarballabha or Chakru stream and joins the Ganges where the temples dedicated to Siva as Sankareswar and Bīrbhadreswar stand. Two kos to the west is the Sālihotreswar temple and, a short distance beyond, the Rambha stream which joins the Ganges at Rambheswar.¹

Kubjāmraka-kshetra.

We have next Kubjāmraka-kshetra, where is the Kumud-tirtha, to the south of which is the temple dedicated to Siva as Chandeswar, and near it the Sārshav-tirtha, where every Sunday the Sun comes in the shape of a bee and bathes in its waters. More holy still is the Purnamukh-tirtha, where are springs of warm and cold water and the Someswar-ling, and near it are the Kārūr-tīrtha and Agni-tīrtha. Next comes the Bāyavya-tīrtha, the Aswatthā-tīrtha with its great pipal (Ficus religiosa) tree, the Bāsawa-tīrtha and Chandrika stream and Ganapa Bhairab of terrible form. These are succeeded by the Bāräbi-tīrtha and the Samudra-tīrtha with its variously coloured waters. To the north of Kubjāmraka is the

¹ These appear to be in Tihar.
Rishi peak. Tapuban\(^1\) lies to the west of the Ganges and is the place where Ráma-chandra retired to devote himself to religious austerities. Below it is the Bilama-tírtha where Seabnág of the white body and coal-black eyes loves to dwell. To the north-west of Ganga-dwára is the hermitage of Ráma, and Ráma-kshetra extends for sixteen *yojanas* from the Dhenu peak to the Betavati stream. Within this tract is the Kélkhéti stream, on which are temples to Chandi and Durga and also the Ghantakarn-tápasyásthán. To the west of the latter place is the Bhuteswar-ling and the Kuhú stream and a great cave sacred to Márkandeya and other Rishis. There are also pools called after Ráma, Sita, and Hanumán, several lings and temples to Durga and Prabálíka Deví. Drona-tírtha is near Deo-dhára where is the Deveswar-ling and the Deojanya stream. To the west is the Navadola stream and six *kos* north the Dhen forest and Dhen stream. To the east of these is Kákachalsthán and west of it the Renuka stream. To the east of this is the Paryenkiní stream and at the confluence of the two, a place of pilgrimage. The place where Dasaratha shot the crow in the eye is called Pushpeswar-deosthal and is within the boundaries of Kákáchal. Dronasthál lies to the east of Máya-kshetra and is held to be eight *yojanas* long and three *yojanas* broad.

**Nágáchál and Chandruban.**

To the south-east of Deo-dhára at a distance of about three miles is Nágáchal and to the west of it the Subhanshraba stream. Two *kos* to the west of the Deo peak is Chandraban, where there is a *ling* and sacred pool, and to the west of it the Chandravati stream and on its right bank the Bishn-pád. To the north-east is the Subahan stream and west of it about two *kos* a temple to Gankunjur Bhairab at the source of the Gan-dhára, whilst a temple to Chandika crowns the summit of the peak. To the north is the Svarneswar-ling and half a *kos* beyond the Deogarh stream which joins the Sankaraballabha stream. To the west of Deo-dhára and on the other side of the Chandraban at a distance of about eight *kos* are the sources of the Jumna and Ganges with their numerous places of pilgrimage and sacred pools. The Chandreswar temple and pool and stream are all within the Chandraban.

\(^1\) As already noted this place is on the Tihri boundary in Dehra Dún.
The Jumna and Tihri.

To the west of the Jumna is the temple sacred to Káleswar and Káleswari and the Deojushta stream which joins the Jumna. East of the Jumna is Yavanesbaryya's throne known also as Yavaneasha-píth, four yojanas in extent. Within this tract is the Yoni peak, the Yoneswar ling and the home of Káliya Nág, and here in former times the Yavan Kál came to pay his devotions and hence the names Yavanesha-píth¹ and Káliya. To the south is the Brahma stream, and to the north the Rudra stream, and to the south of it the Bhasmamaya Páni with the white coloured rock honoured as a ling. To the east is the Bishnu stream and more easterly still the Ráma stream which unite at Bishnu-tírtha. To the west on the banks of the Jumna is the Bhiú-tírtha, the Rishi-kund and Sárabhang-tírtha and the Vasishtha-tírtha on the Brahma stream. From the peaks above Vasishteswar flow seven streams. To the west of the river is the Surakút peak² where is the temple to Sureswari Deví and west of it that to Kalika. To the north-west of the Brahma peak is the Sundari-píth and the Brahmaputra stream, the Sundareswar-ling, and the Haimvati stream which joins the Sundari and then forms a tírtha. The Haimvati has its source in the Siva peak, and on its banks is the Bhagvati ling, to the south of which is a pond with yellow water and the Bhuteswar-ling. Next comes Indra-kund and to right of it the Sakra-tírtha and Rudra-tírtha and, on the banks of the river, the Trisul-tírtha. To the west is the Mahatkmári-píth where is the temple dedicated to Siva as Saíleswar and the Bálwata stream. To the north is the Kunjurkút peak where are temples dedicated to Bálá and Títirpárnaka Deví. The latter is situated at the confluence of the Muni and Parni streams. To the north is the Bedbarna stream and to the west the Dewal rises on the peak of the same name. Here is the temple dedicated to Siva as Dewaleswar and the Dugdh-dhára.

Bhdjírathí and affluents.

To the cast of the river³ (Ganga) is the Chandrakút peak where is the temple to Bhubaneshi Deví and on the summit the Jagates-

¹ This is the only allusion to the Baktrian Greeks that has been found.
² Sarkot at the head of the Ráma-Sra valley.
³ The name Ganga or the river ' is applied either to the Bhágirathi or to the Alaknanda according to the locality.
warding. To the south is the Nágeswar temple and near it the Bhagwati stream; to the north-west is Bágèswar and west of it the Nákshatra Panch-dhára and Chámra-dolini streams and the temple to Chámreswar. Gardabha Asura was slain by the Rishis on the mountains above Chámreswar now marked by the temple of Gardabha-bhotkharnádini Devi. To the west on the banks of the river is the hermitage of Brahma and the Koteswar-ling. In the same tract are several lingas and pools and places of pilgrimage. Bhadraen's hermitage is also here and to the north-east near Bhillang-sarovara the Sateswar-ling, and at the confluence of the Bhillang and Bhágirathi the temple to Gáneswar and the Dhanush and Shesh-tírtha. To the north of the river is the Málvatya hermitage, near which is the Ashmurtteswar-ling. To the west near the Kútádri range is the Raudrisila, and to the south of it Yaksharaja's tapasthal and to the west on the Shekhar peak the Parnaban. Next comes the Gobardhan peak with its linga and temple, and to the south on the west bank of the river the Bháskara-kshetra with its linga, pools and temple. Then comes the Nawala stream and to the south Gaumukh. West of Bháskara-kshetra is the Ghanta-karn-Bhairab, the temple to Kandumati Devi, the Brahmí-sila and the Mokshavati stream which joins the river at Moksha-tírtha.

Deoprayág.

At the confluence of the Ganga and Alaknanda is the great Deoprayága-tírtha1 and the Brahma-kund where Brahma made his devotions before commencing the creation of the world. To the north of the Bhágirathi is a Siva-ling and between the two rivers the Swayambhuva-ling. Near the confluence we find also the Baitálika-sila, Betál-kund, Siva-tírtha, Suraj-kund, where Medhatíthi performed austerities, Vasish-tírtha, Báráhi-tírtha, Báráhi-sila, Paushpamálá-tírtha, where the Kinnari Puspamála performed austerities, and Pradyumna-thal. Near the Pradyumna-thal is the Baijpiyan-kshetra, where there is a cave containing an image of Bishnu, and about half a kos beyond near the Gridhráchal peak, the Bilwa-tírtha. Above Suraj-kund is the Rishi-kund, on the right bank of the Ganga is the Saur-kund and east of the confluence and on the right bank is the temple dedicated to Siva as Tundiswar and

1 Deoprayága in Tihri.
about four bow-shots off the Danweswar temple near the Danwati stream. At the confluence of the Danwati are five well-known *lings*: Bisweswar, Mahá-ling, Tátakeswar, Tundíswar, and Danweswar. The Bisweswar-ling was established by Ráma. To the south of Deopravág, where the small Nabálaka stream unites with a branch of the Bhágirathi, is the Indrpravág-tirtha and Indra and Dharm-kund. To the south lies the Dhanush-tirtha, the Brahmadhára and Indreswar-ling. To the east of the Nabálaka is the Trisúl-tirtha, pool and stream, and to the south the Urmika stream and to the east again the Vainateya stream whose confluence is marked by the temple to Garureswar. To the south is the Bibhávini stream and at its confluence the temple sacred to Bháveswari Devi. To the left is the Mend stream and to the right the Rájendri stream and at their confluence the Prithi-tirtha, where Prithu performed austerities marked by the site of the Pritheswar-ling. To the south the Kapinjula stream rises on the Kapardak peak which is honoured by a Siva-ling, and to the east the Chandrakút peak has another called Deveswar, near which flows the Chandratoya stream. Next comes the Lángal peak with its Lángaleswar-ling, and to the south-west the Manjukula stream which has at its confluence the Bhim-tirtha. About a kos to the east is the Pingalika rock where is a temple dedicated to Ban Devi. Half a kos to the west is the Dhenu stream and half a kos to the south the temple dedicated to Trisúleswari Devi.

About two kos from the Nabálaka stream is the Diptijáleswari-pith where, in former times, lived the daughter of Puloma. Hence to the east is the place where Kandu performed austerities and the Kándavi stream and a temple to Uma Devi and the Kaibaleswar-ling. To the south flows the Kápiinjurlini stream and to the east is the hermitage of Kapila and south-east the Ráshtrukúta peak. The Rathabáhi is like the Nabálaka, and about eight kos to the south of it is the Banyarikeswar-ling and a pool with yellow-coloured waters. Some twelve kos to the south is the temple dedicated to Devaráshtreswari Devi with its pools, streams and lings. To the west is the Punyakút peak where is the pool and temple sacred to Nandeswar, and to the south-west the Sundar peak with

---

1 The Chandrabadini peak.
the stream and temple sacred to Sundareswar. Some twelve kos to
the west by south is the Bhûrideo peak where the prince of that
name performed austerities and called the peak and stream after
himself. This stream joins the Nabálaka at the Bhavanáshan-
tirtha, where are temples sacred to Bhaváni Devi and Bhavamočchán.
To the south is the Sihlo peak where a Bhuil of that name perform-
ed austerities, and to the left about ten kos off a pond, to the west
of which flows the Svettarangini stream. To the south-west is the
Karíndrádri peak, whence flows the Karini stream, and at its con-
fluence is the Bhairab-tirtha and on the summit of the peak the
Mandareswar-ling. Below it on the right side flows the Bharda-
tara or Bhrigupatiini stream, and at the confluence is the Daridra-
nábáran-tirtha where Lakshmi resides. Eight kos to the south is a
temple to Kálika and twelve kos to the east are the Birini and
Bharani streams, and at their confluence the Bhrigu-kund, whilst the
Bírávak-tirtha lies four kos to the south of Indraprayág. To the
north-east of the Kúbjámrika-kshetra on the western bank of the
river is the temple dedicated to Siva as Yogeswar, the Siva-tirtha
and Suraj-kund. To the east of the Aláknanda is the place where
Benu performed austerities and about eight kos to the west is the
Bishwa stream and on the Támráchal peak a temple sacred to
Guhyesvari Devi and one dedicated to Bhairab. To the east is the
Nandbhadréswari temple close to the Mená stream and to the left
of it the temple of the Devi known at various times as Gúnashti
or Sátwiki or Rájasimata or Támasi, and here is the Náráyani
stream. To the east of the Chandrákút peak is the Kaleswar
Bhairab.

Sri-kshetra.

From Kolottamáng to Kolakeswar is known as Sri-kshetra1 in
extent four yojanas long and three yojanas broad. To the south
on the Kínás peak is the Yamkasthán. To the north of the river
about two kos is the Kolásur peak and the Ménuka stream with
the Ménukaswar-ling. Half a kos beyond is Deo-tirtha, where Bhu-
kund paid reverence to Siva, a place marked by the Bhukundeswar-
ing. To the south is the Suraj-dhára and to the left the Chand-
dhára and again the Bahni or Agni-dhára. To the north of the

1 The tract of which Srinagar is the principal place.
river is the Syámalá stream named after the daughter of Kolásura. Close to Indraprayág is the Drishadvati stream which flows from the peak of the same name and half a kos beyond the Kandika stream. In a cave on the summit is an image of Kandika Devi. To the north of the river is the Saktijeti stream and at its confluence a temple sacred to Siva as Ganeswar. Half a kos onwards is Bhäusernath, and at the confluence of the Sankhwati with the river is a temple to Siva as Nāheswar. Above this is Devipith and on the banks of the river Upendrája-pith, in which are two streams. On the hills above is a temple to Kandukeshwar Bhairab and on the banks of the river the Lásyu-tirtha and a temple to Visvanáth, and above them the Máya Devi and Mâyeshwar temples. At the junction of the Gori and the river is Gauri-prayág and Bágeshwari-dhára with a temple to Lakshmi and above it one to Nágeshwar. About a kos from where the Indráni meets the Gori is Rishi-prayág and one kos further Bribwa-prayág.\(^1\) Beyond this is the Indra-punyatam-tirtha. About half a kos from the confluence of the Kumbhika and Gori is Bishunáth and a kos above it Mukti-prayág. One kos above on the mountain is the hermitage of Alarka. Near Gauri-prayág is the Svarneswar-ling and the temple to Bináyakeswar and on the banks of the river the Bináyak-kund. On the right bank of the river is the Manjavati-dhára and a bow-shot off the hermitage of Alarka and above on the hill is the Manjughosh Bhairab. Siva-prayág is situated at the confluence of the Khandava and the river. About half a mile onwards the Kali-ka stream is met with and half a kos onwards on the Kari peak a temple sacred to Kavi Bhairab. Below this is the confluence of the Khandava and Batsaja streams and above them the Siva-kút peak, whence flows the Náráyani and Rájketi streams. To the north of the river is Dundi-prayág and above it the Panyavati stream takes its rise in the Kuvera peak. Near this is the Kani-tirtha, the Dwijihvak-kshetra, Sanpat-dhára, and on the peak above Dandi-tapasthal with its golden-coloured image of Ganeśh. To the east is the temple to Siva as Nirmaleswar and the Jambhu stream and the Dandika-tirtha. To the east of Siva-prayág on the right bank of the river is the Siva-kund, a ling five cubits high and the Deo-tirtha. On the north of the river in a cave is Ratirupa Devi and

\(^1\) There are names given to very small torrents which join the Ganges.
other deities and several places of pilgrimage, ponds and holy streams.

Close to the Kasi peak is the Bhairavi stream and the Satyasarand tapasthal with Sri-kund and to the east the Bhúsuta stream. To the north of the river above Mundadaitya is the Brahma-kund, and on the right bank about four bow-shots off is Aswi-tirtha, where is the Bhringi-sila and at the confluence of the Sarasuti the Dhanush-tirtha. Next comes the Bhriravi-pith and to the north of the river Kuver-kund, where is the temple dedicated to Ráj-rajeswari Devi and the Shravaneswar-ling. Then comes the enumeration of the temples about Srinagar itself, nearly all of which are mentioned with characteristic anecdotes either of the form of the deity worshipped therein or of the persons who established them. On the right bank of the river above Bhairavi-tirtha is the Maheswar-ling, and to the east the red boulders known as Bráhmi-sila and Vaishnavi-sila. Rámachandra offered lotus-flowers to Siva here: hence his form as Kamaleswar,¹ and there is also a temple to him as Nágeswar a short distance beyond. The Katakvati flows from the Golaksha peak, and at its confluence with the Alaknanda is the temple to Katakeshwar. To the north of the river is the Nripeswar temple and the Indra-kund and two arrow-flights to the south, the Siva-dhára and Siva-tapasthal.

Above Kamaleswar is the Bahini peak and Bahini stream and numerous springs of very pure water: also the cave and hermitage of Ashtabaktra Muni. Numerous hermitages, temples, caves, pools and streams on Indrakila and the surrounding peaks within Sri-kshetra are now mentioned, few of which are held in estimation at the present time. Amongst the streams noticed are the Manohari, Deovati, Madhumati, Manoumini near the Kilkileswar temple, and Jiwanti near a great cave and the Sudyumna tapasthal. The temple to Kans-mardini Devi is on the south bank of the river² where Chapala Apsara performed austerities. Then there is the Mandhar forest and Siva-tirtha where Bharadhvaj worshipped Siva, the Golakshaja-tirtha, Bináyak-tirtha and the Koteswar-ling. Next the Gogal river and tirtha and the image of Gaúesh with ears like a sieve and known as Súrppakarn. On the Mohendra peak is a

¹ This temple is in Srinagar itself. ² In Kotiya village.
great cave communicating with the bank of the river Alaknanda and within it lives Ganapa Bhairab. The Pábaní flows from this peak and beyond it is the temple of Mahendraśwar. Half a kos from Kateswar on the right bank of the river is the hermitage of Sukra, the Bhágar-kund and Punya-kund and Sukraddhára and Sukreswar temple. In a cave to the north is the Smasháneswar Bhairab and near it the hermitage of Parasuram. Three miles from the river and to the west of the Chaitravati stream is the Gauripith, and above it the Dipeswar temple where Dippál worshipped Siva and near it a temple to Kalika Devi.

Half a kos to the left is a beautiful spring known as Siddhadrava, and near it is the Mauktikhákhya-ling. To the north of the river and south of the Chaitravati stream is the Harshavatí stream and at its confluence with the Ganges the Turungareswar temple. Then the Rudra-tirtha and the Gosthavasrama-kshetra with stream, pond, temples and ling. Above the Harshavati some two kos is a temple to Táreswari Devi. The Sri-dhára lies to the north of the river. The Pattavati is about two kos from the Harshavati and next comes the Lohavati, and where the Pattavati joins the stream coming from the Tailasyáma peak there is a tirtha, and at its confluence with the Alaknanda the Jagadeswar-ling. To the east flows the Sunanda from the Koldeh peak and then the Yashovati stream.

_Parnashandáshrama-kshetra._

The Parnashandáshrama-kshetra extends from the Akol hill to Nággiri. The confluence of the Mandákini with the Alaknanda is known as Surajprayág¹ and above it is the hermitage of Visvámitra. In the neighbourhood is the Vasisht-kund, Sura-sila, Atri-kund, Gautam-tapasthal, Bháraddhvaj-tapasthal and the Tripureswar-ling. Next comes the Chhinna. Mastakeswari-pith, and to the left the Bhíma-dhára, Bhímeswar temple, Párvatí-kshetra and Párvatí-kund. To the north-east is the Kamandulabháya stream and the temple of Punyamati Devi and Jalaesvar. To the east some two kos is the temple of Kúrmásana Devi, and further east the Muni stream, on which is the Sileswar temple and some distance on the Rudrpráyág.
temple to Agastyeswar. Some three kos to the west in the Muneshwar-ling and the Siddheswar-ling in Mayabhidhashan on the Mayabini stream, and at its confluence with the Bhadrabela is the Shesheswar temple. Some eight kos to the west of the Lasyutarrangi is the Bhatagár, and to the south-east from the banks of the Mandakini, the Gangeswar temple and Sivasari-dhāra. Further on Babulingeswar is found on the bank of the Alakananda and east of it on the same river Purnashanashrama. To the east of the latter tract is Devi-kund and a Nágasthan containing a pool, ling and temple. The Tāmra stream flows from the Pushkar peak, and to the east at a distance of two yojanas on the banks of the Sarasvati is the hermitage of Sarga, where a trisul is imbedded in the ground. The place where Siva went to Kailás is called Gosthal, and there is the temple sacred to him as Siddheswar, and to the east is the Digambareswar-ling.

**Mandakini valley.**

Six yojanas to the south of Kedār is the tract known as Guptbārānasi some two yojanas broad, and here flow the Ganges and Jumna concealed from sight and here is the temple to Siddheswar. To the west is the place where Nala performed austerities marked by the site of Nal-kund, and again the temple to Rāj-rājeswari Devi. On the banks of the Mandakini, Mandhāta, the august son of Yuvanaswa, performed austerities, and to the west of this is the temple to Siva as Bāneswar. On the Phetkārini peak is a temple to Durga and her lord Durgeswar. To the north-east some two kos are temples to Mahādevi and Dwetapati Mahādeo and the Dānwati-dhāra. Mahesnamardani has a temple here where she slew the great Asura, and near it is the Patumati stream. To the south is the Kumbhika-dhāra and above it is Bishnaneswar. Vyāsa still lives in a great cave on the Khandákhya peak, to the south of which flows the Śāvitrī stream through the Bedmātristhal. To the north-west of Kedār and west of the Alakananda is

---

1. Agastymuni or Agastmuni on the Mandakini.
2. In Tihri.
3. Lasur river in Tihri.
5. Tract around Nāgnath in Bichhla Nāgpur.
6. Apparently above Pokhri village in Bichhla Nāgpur, where Pushkar Nāg is worshipped.
7. Here we get back to Gopeswar.
10. In Kānai Tarsāli village.
11. Temple in Ukhimath.
12. temple in Triyugi-Jākh village.
the Renuka peak, which also has a temple dedicated to Māheshamardini. To the south is the Bishwa stream which is joined by the Kapila stream, and at their confluence is the Kāpileswar temple. Beyond this is the Jamadagueswar and Bhilleswar temples and the place where Bālyati, son of Vyāsa, fixed his hermitage. Beyond this is the Nāg river and the great black boulder above which is the Ghosheswar temple.¹ To the left some half a kos off is Dharmasila and the temple to Dharmeswari Devi, then to the east on the river-bank the Shālī-tīrtha, also called Deo-tīrtha. About a kos to the north-east is Dhenu-tīrtha and near it Kāsahtagiri, amid whose forests Siva is worshipped as Kāsahteswar.

West of the Alaknanda.

Some half a yojana to the west of the river is a great peak called Bhallādri, where there is a bar tree (Ficus Indica) whose shade extends over four kos and the Bālakhilya stream. The place where the latter joins the Jahnnavi is known as Muni-tīrtha and has a temple dedicated to Siva as Bālakhilyeswar. Some half a kos hence is the Kapila river, and above it on the hill the Kapil Bhairab. Some twenty-four kos to the north of ‘the river’ is the hermitage of the Rishi Lomasa, near which is the source of the Lomas river. To the north are the white mountains and at the source of the Ganga the Bhāgirathi tapasthal and to the north of it the source of the Yamuna. To the north of the Yamuna is the Ratnakoti-giri, where is the hermitage of Pulastya and the Brahmajvāla stream. In the latter is the Agni-hṛad, and to the north-east, on the summit of the mountain, the pool known as Muni-jvāla and numerous mines. Siva is worshipped here as Nilkantheswar, and to the east is the Siddhakūṭ peak, to the south of this is Uma-kund and Gauri-kund with their warm springs. The river flowing to the west is called Siddhatarangi and on its banks is the Siddha-tīrtha. To the north is the Trikūtādri, from which flows the Sudhatarangi, and at its confluence the place is called Sudha-tīrtha. The Brahma and Rudrabhadra stream also take their rise in this tract, and at

¹ Probably the junction of the Māna-rudta with the Jādhī above Nilang, known as Nāg encamping-ground.
their confluence is the Brahma-tirtha, where Dikpāl performed austerities. To the north flow the Chitravati river and the Bhasmādhāra and their confluence is known as the Bhasma-tirtha. The Kāmḍhāra joins the Brahmaputra stream at Dhurva-tirtha, and above it the Sundari flows from the Sundar peak and the Mokshavati and their confluence is called Sundar-prayāg. The remainder is taken up chiefly with detailed descriptions of places in Tihri.
CHAPTER IV.

HISTORY—(contd.)

CONTENTS.


Before considering the ethnography of the Purāṇas it will be well to notice here the other early records and traditions that we possess regarding this portion of the Himālaya. Although we can hardly reckon amongst them the edicts of Asoka, yet a copy of these edicts and perhaps the most interesting amongst the many that exist was found at Kālsī or Khālsī in the western part of Dehra Dún. Asoka lived in the latter half of the third century before Christ and the existence of his edicts in the Dehra Dún would perhaps show the limit of his power in this direction and that the Dún, even at that early period, must have been of some importance, for it would manifestly be of little use to place an inscription of the kind in an uninhabited jungle. This record is inscribed on a great quartz boulder lying about a mile and a half above Kālsī near the villages of Byās and Haripur and just above the junction of the Tons and the Jumua. It is known locally as the Chitrāsila or 'ornamented stone' and was discovered in 1860 by Mr. Forrest, C.E. General Cunningham¹ considers the Kālsī text to be in a more perfect state than that of any other of

¹ Arch. Rep., I., 247. A complete transcript of the whole inscription has been made and published by the same scholar in his Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum; Calcutta, 1878. Tarānāth (Ind. Ant. IV., 361) states that Asoka received the town of Jātaliputra in appanage "as a reward for his victory over the people of Nepāl who dwelt in the kingdom of Kasya."
the similar edicts found elsewhere, especially in the portion of
the thirteenth edict which contains the names of the five Greek
kings Antiochus, Ptolemy, Antigonus, Magas and Alexander.
There are, apparently, no ruins in the neighbourhood which should
lead one to suppose that the record marks the site of an ancient
city. The Chinese Buddhist traveller Hwen Thsang, who visited
Srughna\(^1\) in the middle of the seventh century, a place identi-
ified with the ruins of Sugh on the right bank of the Jumna not
far below Kálsi, is silent as to the existence of inscriptions or
even of the Dún itself. We may, therefore, well accept the local
statement that for some centuries after the Christian era the Dún
was deserted. Mr. Williams records\(^2\) the tradition that Rája
Rásálu once lived at Haripur near Kálsi, where his stronghold lies
buried beneath a great mound (\(tibir\)). This Rásálu was, according
to tradition, the son of the great Sáliváhana, from whom the Saka
era takes its name and who possessed a residence also at Khai-
ramúrtti, near Ráwal Pindi.\(^3\) Another tradition makes the stone
the boundary mark between the dominions of the Nága ruler of the
hills and the Rájas of the plains.

There are a few notices in the early Greek and Roman Geogra-
phers that can be assigned to the Himálaya of these provinces, and
these have been collected from the accounts given by the companions
of Alexander, by Megasthenes and Daimachus
and the merchants, who from a very early
period held commercial intercourse with the east. The only special
treatise on India that has come down to us is the Indica of Arrian,
a work of very little value for our present purpose, and the frag-
ments of those that are missing do not lead us to expect that we
should gain much by their recovery. Pliny the elder and Ptolemy
of Alexandria give us the best accounts of India. Pliny completed

---
\(^1\) Gaz. II, 245.  \(^2\) Memoir of Dehra Doon, p. 76.  \(^3\) The local
legends of the country about the Tons and the Jumna are full of allusions to
Rásálu. The outline story is common to all that he was son of Sáliváhana, the
founder of Sálbáhanpur or Syáikut, and was at feud with the seven Rakshasas
who lived in Gandgarh and Mánikpur. It was their custom to eat a human
being every day and Rásálu delivered the people from this hateful tax. Colonel
Abbott has given a very interesting summary of the Panjáb traditions: J. A.
S. Ben. XXIII., 59, 123, and General Cunningham also refers to them. Arch.
Rep. II., 21, 153. Mr. H. Rivett-Carnac has called attention to certain archaic
sculpturings on a rock near Dwéra Hát in Kumaon similar to the 'cup-marks,'
found on monoliths and rocks in various parts of Europe. Other markings of
a similar nature occur on boulders near Devi Dhúra and elsewhere in eastern
his great work in 79 A.D., and had before him the records of Alexander's expedition and Megasthenes' journey in compiling his account of India from the Indus to Palibothra (Patna), the capital of the Prasii. At the close of the chapter on China, Pliny states:—

"After the Attacori we find the nations of the Phruri and Tochari and in the interior the Casiri of Indian race who look towards the Skythians and feed on human flesh.1 Here nomad tribes of Indians also wander. There are some who state that these nations touch on the Cicones and Brysari." Now 'Conae' and 'Chicones' are also read for 'Cicones,' and 'Conae' and can only refer to the Kuneta of Kunor, which is known to the Tibetans as Kunu. The Attacori are the Utatra Kuras of the Hindu books, probably as already suggested inhabitants of the hilly country beyond Kashmir. Near them were the Phruri, a sub-division of the Sakas at one time, in Yarkand and to be identified with the Phuunas of Indian writers, and the Tochari or Turushkas, a branch of the Yush-ti who gave kings to Kashmir. The Casiri are one with the Khasiras, a tribe of the Khasas, who are mentioned in the Mahábáhrata thus :—"Abhiras, Daradas, Kasmíras with Pattis, Khasíras, Antácháras (or borderers)," clearly showing their position in the hills to the west of the Jumna. The nomad tribes may be identified with the Pattis of Sápir and the Brysari with the people of Basáhr. The statement that the Casiri feed on human flesh is merely an allusion to the name Yaksha2 by which the Khasas were commonly known in ancient times. We know that they were numerous in the neighbourhood of Kashmir which is named from them and not from the mythical Kasyapa and under the name Yakshas were employed by Asoka not only to build his great chaityas but also as mercenaries. They were found also in Kipin, to which the Kábul valley belonged3 and in Gandhára.

In his chapter on India, Pliny gives a general view of the position and size of India and of the sources of his information. He brings us first from the Indus to the Ganges and thence to Patna. He then adds:—

1 Jam Indorum Casiri, introrsus ad Scythas versi, humanas corporibus vestuntur.
2 Wilson, VI, 83; the people of Kashmir are known to the present day amongst their neighbours as Kasbhiras, not Kasmíras.
3 Ind. Aut. IV 101, 141.
which in the language of the natives signifies ‘snowy,’ are the Isari, the Cosyri, the Izi, and upon the chain of mountains, the Chisiotosagi with numerous peoples which have the surname Brahmans, among whom are the Taccocalingas. There are also the rivers Prinas and Cailnas, which last flows into the Ganges, both of them being navigable streams. The nation of the Callinges comes nearest to the sea and above them are the Mandel and the Malli. In the territory of the last-named people is a mountain called Mallus; the boundary of this region is the Ganges.” • • • “The last nation situate on the Ganges is that of the Ganganarida Callinges” • • • “In the Ganges there is an island of very considerable size, inhabited by a single nation: it is called Modogalingas.” • • • The country of the Daras is the most productive of gold, that of the Sets of silver. • • • “The mountain races between the Indus and the Jomanes are the Cei, the Cetriboni who dwell in the forests (epicentres), and after them the Magalas, whose king possesses 500 elephants and an army of horse and foot, the numbers of which are unknown; then the Chrysel, the Parsangas and the Anmagi, whose territory is infested by wild tigers: these people keep in arms, 30,000 foot, 300 elephants and 300 horse. They are bounded by the river Indus and encircled by a range of mountains and deserts for a distance of 625 miles. Below these deserts are the Desi and Suri.”

The arrangement here is somewhat confusing. Pliny mentions the Kalingas, apparently the people of the coast of Coromandel, then the Marundai or Mandai, the people about Benares, and then the Malli or Multanis. Imanus is derived from the Sanskrit ‘Hima-vat’ as Emodus is from ‘HinádrI,’ both meaning snowy. His Isari and Cosyri here can only be the Brysari and Casiri of the preceding quotation. Next to the east in the hills comes the Izi, who may be identified with a tribe in the Mahábhárata called Ijikas who are named between the Súrašenas or people of Mathura, and the Kanyakágunas, Tilabháras, Sumíras and Madhumattas, which last are one with the Kashmiras. These Ijikas lived close to the Chisiotosagi, also called Chriotosagi or Kirátakas along the lower course of the Ganges in Garhól: the upper portion of the same river being occupied by Brahman colonies and Macca or Maga Kalingas, a name probably connected with the Mriga tribe of Brahmans who are recorded as the Brahmans of Sáká-dvipa in the Puránas. We have moreover in the Varáha-samhita the name “Mágadhika-kalingá” occurring between Panchála and Avartta. Now Panchála is clearly the middle Duáb and Avartta is the same as the Heorta of Ptolemy, a town of the Tanganoi, so that Mágadhika-kalinga must refer to the country on the upper course of the Jumna or of the Ganges, more correctly called Kylandrine by Ptolemy.

1 The Tons below Allahabad near Panásia and the Ken. 2 Mandagiri or Mungér. 3 They include the Kuneta, who to this day are divided into Khasiyas and Bess.
The country of the Dardas lay along the upper Indus—'sub-foentibus vero Indi Daradra et horum montana supereminant'—a tract celebrated then as in the time of Hwen Thang for its gold-washings, and the Sets are the people of Wazir-rāpi or 'the silver country' of the Waziră in British Kulu. Ptolemy places a city called Sasta in his trans-Himalayan tract near Aehasia regio or the country' of the Khasas. The Cesi named first amongst the mountaineers are clearly the Khasas; with them are the Cetriboni,1 a name of which the first part may be compared with the Chateriai of Ptolemy, and who occupied the tract south of Shaikhavati and therefore with the Kahatriyas, a tribe (not a caste) mentioned in the Purānas. The remaining names must be assigned from the context to the lower Indus valley or its neighbourhood. The outcome of this inquiry is that according to Pliny the Khasas occupied the country far to the west of their present location in Kumaon and Nepal, and that the Kirātakas with the Tanganas held the country between the Tons and the Sārda.

It is, however, to Ptolemy that the student of ancient geography owes his greatest debt. He was born about 87 A.D. and died in 165 A.D., having completed his great work about 151 A.D. He defines cia-Gangotian India as the country to the west of the Ganges as far as its confluence with the Sarju to the south of the Ghāsipur district. Although he must have known many more names, he gives as only three rivers as affluents of the Ganges—cia., the Jumna, Sarī and Son, under the names Diamuna, Sarabos and Saa. At the sources of the Indus he places the Daradrā; at the sources of the Jhelam. Ravi and Chīnāb were the Kasperaioi, and at the sources of the Biās, Satlaj, Jumna and Ganges, the Kulindas, whose country was called Kylindrine. The first are the people of Astor, Gilgit and the neighbouring countries; the second, the people of Kashmir and of the hill states between it and the Satlaj and the third will be the people of the hills between the Satlaj and the Ganges. The Kulindas are mentioned in the Mahābhārata as inhabiting the upper valley of the Ganges within the Himālaya and they appear to have been independent of Kashmir. Between the Biās and the Chīnāb was the small state of the Pandavas, and on the lower course of the Indus as far as the embouchure of the Narmada below Gujrat lay Indo-

1 The two last syllables clearly refer to the Sanskrit 'vans,' 'forest.'
Skythia. The Chatriaioi held the tract south of Shaikhávati and the Gymnosophi occupied in large numbers the country near the sources of the sacred rivers. To the south in the upper Doáb were the Datichæ, who possessed three towns to the west of the Ganges—Konta, Margara and Batankaissara (Batesar), and two to the east—Passala 'Bisauli' and Orza. It is strange that Kanauj is not clearly indicated in any of these lists. Ptolemy mentions only two nations on the left bank of the Ganges—the Tanganoi and Marundai. The Tanganoi were the most northern of all the peoples along the Ganges and they occupied also the upper portion of the Sarabas or Sárda. They are mentioned in the Mahábháráta¹ thus:—"Kántikas, Tanganas, Paratanganas, northern and other fierce barbarians, Yavanas, Chínas," and are placed by the Váyu Purána and Rámáyana amongst the mountain tribes in the north. South of the Tanganoi were the Marundai, who occupied a broad belt along the Ganges from Boritá² to its confluence with the Tista. They appear to have been a small and warlike tribe who were able to take and hold possession of the country near the great river, but were not numerous enough to occupy the inner lands lying near the mountains nor to resist the power of Kashmir. Kassida or Káshi belonged to this nation, who are regarded by Wilford as a branch of the Indo-Skythians and in fact the same as the Húnas. Thirteen kings of this dynasty are said to have reigned in Northern India. In the Puránas they are ranked with the Mlechchhas or foreigners and are considered to be the Maryanthes of Oppian, who states that the Ganges ran through their country. To the east of the Tanganoi came the Takoraioi,³ Korankaloi and Parsadai, and to the south of the Marundai were the Gargarides in the delta of the Ganges.

The information given by Ptolemy shows us that in the second century of our era, Eastern India comprised the kingdom of Kashmir, which was bounded on the north by the snowy range; on the south by the kingdom of the Pandavas, and on the east the boundary line extended from Dehli to Mathura and then as far as Bhupál. In the hills the Tanganoi, a sub-division of the Kirátas, held the entire country from the Jumna to the Sárda. In the

¹ Wilson, VII., 181. ² Lassen suggests that Borita may be identified with Ráí Barcli a tribe, not a caste. ³ Represented by the Thákurs of Nepál, here the name of
copper-plate grants preserved at the temple of Pandukeshwar near Badrináth and noticed hereafter, we find that, one of them is addressed to the officials of the district of Tanganapura and another to those of the districts of Tanganapura and Antaránga and both bestow lands in Tanganapura on certain Brahmans connected with Badari. Some of these lands were bounded on the south by the Ganges, so that the district lay in or about the upper course of that river. Mention is made in one grant of Buddháchal and Kákásthá, and the latter name will be the same as the Kákáchalsthán of the Kedára-khanda which lay near the confluence of the Bhágirathi and Alaknanda, so that we may safely place the district of Tanganapura1 on the upper course of the Ganges and the Antaránga district in the duáb between the Bhágirathi and the Alaknanda. Later on we may trace the gradual eastward movement of these tribes of Kirátas to Nepál, where we find them at the present day, and perhaps the Tanganoi in the name Tanhan,8 whence come the breed of hill-ponies called Tángan; the Thakuraíoi amongst the Thákurs in Nepál and the Kirátas or Kirántis further east.

We shall now proceed to examine the ethnographical indications afforded by the later Hindu records. Pauranick ethnography. According to the Vishnu Purána,9 the Kirátas lived to the east of Bhárata, on the west the Yavanás, whilst in the centre dwell the four castes occupied in their respective duties. The principal nations of Bhárata4 were the Kurus and Páanchálas, in the middle districts; the people of Kámarúpa in the east; the Pundras, Kalingás and Mágadhas in the south and in the extreme west, the Sauráshtras, Surás, Abhíras, Arbudas, Kárúshas and Málavas dwelling along the Páripátra mountains; the Sauváras, Sáindhavas, Húnás, Sálwas, people of Sákala, Madras, Rámás, Ambasashthás, Párasikás and others. From other sources, however, we can add to this very meagre list of countries and tribes. The Mahábhárata gives5 the names of the inhabitants of the different countries in one long list commencing with the Kurus, Páanchálas and

---

1 At the time of the grants in the eighth or ninth century, Taqibun was in the Káršikeyapára district.
2 This name continually occurs in the legends regarding the dispersion of the Ráipó́ tribes after the Múslím invasion.
3 Hall's Wilson, VII, 139.
4 By this name India proper is intended, as no description is anywhere given of the other divisions.
5 Hall's Wilson, VII, 156.
Madreyas; then follow the Jángalas, Surasenas, Kalingas, Budhas, Málas, Matayás, ** Kárushas, Bhójas, ** Bándikas, Vátadhanás, Abhíras, ** Vakrátapas and Sakás, Videhas, Mágadhás, ** Bhargás, Kírátás, Sudeştás and the people on the Yamuna, Sakás, Nishádas, Nishadhas, ** Kásımíras, Sindhusauvéras, Gándháras, ** Kuruvarnakas, Kírátás, Barbaras, Siddhas, ** Trigartás, Sálvasenis, Sakas, ** Tanganas, Parananganas, northern and other fierce barbarians (Méechchhas), Yavanas, Chínas, Kámbojas, ferocious and uncivilised races, Sakridgrahas, Kula thás, Húnas and Páráskas; also Romanás,¹ Chínas,² Dásamálíkas, ** Sudras, Abhíras, Darádas, Kásımíras with Páttis, Khasiras and Autacháras or borderers, ** tribes of Kírátás, Tamásas, Hauasamárgas, &c. This list² is very unsatisfactory owing to the repetition of the same name in different quarters and with different tribes preceding and following, an arrangement that can only be explained by supposing there were colonies of the particular tribe scattered over various parts of India. If this theory be correct there were Saka colonies in Magadha, on the Jumna and in the Kangra valley. The Varáha-sánhitá gives a more complete³ list and places in the north:—Káilása, Himaván, Vasumángiri, Dhanushmán, Krauncha-meru, Uttara-kuru, Kekaya with its capital Girivrajá (now Jálalpur on the Jhelam,⁴) Vásáti,⁵ Bhogaprajátha (Hardwář), Arjunáyaná, Agnídhra, Adarsa,⁶ Au táradwípi (Dnáb), Trigartta,⁷ (Kotchakra in Jándhar), Tahora,⁸ Turagráma or Asvamukha,⁹ Kesadhará, Chipítamásika, Dáseraka, Vatadhána, Saradhána, Takshasila (Taxila), Pushkalavata (on the Swát river), Kainántaka, Kantadhána, Ambara, Madraka,¹⁰ Málava,¹¹ Paulava,¹² Kachchhá,¹³ Danda,¹⁴ Pingalaka, Mánahala, Kohala,

¹ Can these be represented by the Rum division of the Siyahpósh in Wámasánt or Káśrístan as it is more commonly called.
² Probably to be found in the Shíne of Aśtor, Gilgit, and Yásmán.
³ There are nearly 350 names, the list strung together with little attempt a' description even by epitheta.
⁴ As. Rcs., VII, 243.
⁵ Cunn. Arch. Rep. II. 14; Avaspáti, King of Kekaya, St. Martin, Études sur la Geographic Grecque, &c., p. 110, 400.
⁶ Between the Jhelam and the Indus, St. Martin, l. c., p. 121: Wilson, VIII, 960.
⁷ This and the two following are in the Panjáb. In a passage quoted by Muir (II, 400) Aryávarta is said to include the country east of Adarsa, west of Káliakráva, south of the Himavat and north of Páripátra.
⁹ Tankur, Attak, ibid, II. 7.
¹⁰ This and the five following names refer to the locality as abounding in banyán trees (pátá) or reeds (sára) or prickly bushes (kámá) or are nicknames, horse-face, &c.
¹¹ Madra- désa, the plain country between the Jhelam and the Rávi.
¹² A division of the Panjáb.
¹³ The Púre country
¹⁴ Wilson, VII. 164.
¹⁵ This and the following six names are assignablc to the minor hill-states of the Panjáb: Kohala is the country of the Kohíla, a Kulu tribe; Sátaka is Wáviri Rupí in Kulu, celebrated for its silver, and Mándulyá is Mandí.
Sátaka, Mándavya, Bhútapura, Gandhára,1 Yásovati, Hematála, Rájanyá, Kachara, Gavya, Yaudheya,2 Sámya, Syámaka, Kshemadurta. To the north-east (north-west?) is Meruka, Nashta-rájya,3 Pásupala, Kira, Káshmíra, Abhisára,4 Darada,5 Tangana,6 Kulúta (Kulu), Saurítya, Vanaráshtra, Brahmapura (Bhágirathi valley), Dárvada, Amaravána, Rájya-kírátá, China, Kaulinda,7 Palava, Lola, Jatádhara, Kunáha (Kunsor), Khasa, Ghósha, Kanchika, Ekakarna, Suvarnabhu, Vasudhana, Divishta, Pávavara, Chívára, Nivasina, Trinéstra, Munjádri, Soma and Gándharva. Again it is said that the Prasthalas, Malavas, Kaíkeyas, Dasárnas and Vishnúras drink of the waters of the Rávi, Jhelum and Chínáb. Between the Sindhu and Mathura on the Jumna is Bhárata and the Saúviras, Sughna, Divya, Satadru, the country of Rámata, Sálava, Traigartta, Páurava, Ambáshta, Dhánya,8 Yaudheya,9 Sarasvata, Arjuna, Yánya, Mutsya, Arddhágáma, Hastyásapura, Mangalya, Pauštika, Saktá, Kárunya.

These dry lists of names are useful, and if we had more of them accurately recorded without any emendations from authors or editors, we might be able to draw some definite conclusions from an examination of them which would throw light on many a doubtful point. They are necessary here to show the connection between the countries and tribes mentioned in the records and thus afford some little aid to identification. When we find groups of countries or tribes always enumerated together and the same or similar epithets applied to them and sometimes the locality of one or more indicated, we may reasonably assume the position of the remainder to lie in the same direction. We shall therefore take up these names and endeavour to identify as many as we can, omitting those which are already noted as well as those which do not belong to upper India and very briefly noticing the names of places and peoples outside the Himálaya. Taking up the lists of the Viahnu Purána, we have no difficulty in assigning the Kuruś to the tract

1 Peshawar valley. 2 The Jód district on the lower course of the Jhelum. 3 Known to the Greeks as the country of Abisares; Wilson's Ariana, p. 190: occurs with Dárva as Dárvasbhidra and lies between Marri and the Margala pass; Cann. Arch. Rep. II., 18. 4 Dardéstán. 5 In Garhwal, p. 336. 6 The Kyolindriue of Ptolemy. 7 Dhan in the eastern half of the highlands between the Jhelum and the Indus. 8 The Kyolindriue of Ptolemy. 9 South of Dhanj.
about Thanesar west of the Jumna, known to the present day as Kurukshetra. The Panchalas were the people of the middle Duab extending across the Jumna to the Chambal. Kamarupa is the north-eastern portion of Bengal and the adjoining part of Assam. The Pundras lived in Bengal proper and the southern part of Behar, the Jungle Mahals and adjacent tracts. Kalinga is the sea-coast westwards from the Ganges to some distance along the coast of Coromandel. Magadha is Behar. The Saurashtras held the peninsula of Gujrat. The Suras and Abhiras are associated together in the Mahabharata and Harivamsa and appear to have been a pastoral people in the upper portion of the north-western Panjab represented by the Abirs and Gwalias of the present day. They are none other than the Suts and Abars of the classical writers, and the first name is one with the subdivision of the Sakas. Ptolemy places the Abhiras on the upper Indus as a powerful tribe. These Abhiras spoke a dialect of Prakrit, for we may refer to them the rustic speech called Abhirika, which is classed by Chandideva with the Sakari, Sabari and Utkali or language of Orissa. The commentator on the Kavyadhandrika, a work on poetry, expressly cites the language of the Abhiras as an example of the rustic dialects of Prakrit. Wilson connects the Arbudas with Mount Abu in Rajputana, a celebrated place of pilgrimage amongst the Jainas. The Kurusas and Malavas occupied portions of the Panjab, for the latter are enumerated by the author of the Varaha-sauhtas amongst the tribes who drank of the waters of the Ravi, Jhelam and Chindub. A colony of them may, at a subsequent date, have emigrated to Malwa and given to it their name. Next come the Sauviras between the Indus and the Jhelam, usually called Sindu-Sauviras and the Saindhus in Sindh. The double title occurs in the Mahabhara as the name of one of the chief tribes engaged in the great war who are placed by the Rámáyana in the west and by the Puranas in the north. The Hínas are identified by some with the Húniyas of the present day in Tibet, but here there can be no
doubt but that the name refers to a Panjáb tribe. The Sálwas\(^1\) held Rájasthán and Sákala is the Sangala\(^2\) of Alexander and the capital of Madra or the Panjáb between the Jhélam and the Indus, elsewhere known partly as Hárhaúra. The Rámases\(^3\) belong to the country of Rámata, which as we have seen lay close to the Satlaj, and the Ambashthas are the Ambastai of Ptolemy and are placed by Goldstücker\(^4\) in the middle Panjáb, and all agree that the Pára-síkas\(^5\) are the people to the west, of and adjoining the Indus. Thus ends the list given by the authors of the Vishnu Purána and which in Wilson’s opinion applies to the political and geographical divisions existing about the era of Christianity. It is also mentioned that the Yavanas lived to the west and there can be little doubt that by this name the Baktrian Greeks are intended. To the east lived the Kirátas, who may undoubtedly be identified with the race of the same which governed the Nepál valley, and of whom we shall have more to say hereafter.

We shall now turn to the lists given in the Mahábhárata, omitting those names which have already been identified as well as those regarding which no indications that can be relied upon exist. The Surasenás\(^6\) were the people of Mathura, the Suraseui of Arrian, and are placed in the Mahábhárata in one place before the Kalingas and again between the Tiragrahás and Ijikas or Itikas and Kanyakágunas (Kanauj) and once more in the north. The Bodhas or Bahyas are supposed to be a tribe of Central India and the Málas\(^7\) to have been in Chhatísgarh. There appear to have been two Mástyas, one comprising Dinájpur and Kuch-Bihár called southern Mástya, and a tribe of the same name in the north with a capital at Bairát on the Banganga some forty-six miles north of Jaipur.\(^8\) The Bhojas\(^9\) belonged to the Yádava race and had their settlements on the Vindhyán range. The Bahikás\(^10\) were a people of the Panjáb and the Vátadhanas were a northern nation, though Nakula places them in the west. Videha is Tirhút and the Bhargás are an eastern people subdued by Bhíma. ‘The people on the Yamuna’ would appear to bear the translation, ‘the people on or about mount Yámuna,’ an eastern mountain according to the Rámáyana. Nishádhás are mountaineers or foresters

\(^1\) Wilson, l. c., 135.  
\(^3\) See p. 336.  
\(^4\) Sáma. Dict., p. 401.  
\(^5\) Wilson, l. c., 136.  
\(^6\) Wilson, l. c., 154.  
\(^7\) Ibid., 157.  
\(^8\) Cunn. Arch. Rep., II, 2 2  
\(^9\) Wilson, l. c., p. 277.
in general and may here stand for the Paropanisadas and the Gandhāras are the people about Peshāwar. The Tanganae are the Tanganoj already noticed and are here called Mlechchhas.

The Daradas are the oft-noticed people of Gilgit and Astor and the Pattis are probably the people of Piti or Spiti. The Khawuris are the Casiri of Pliny, a sub-division of the Khasas like the Kunus. Passing on to the names in the Vardha-sanhitā we find after Tangana comes Kulu and Sauritya on the upper Tons, then the country of forests, a name applicable to the country about the Jumna to the present day. Then we have Hwen Thsang's Bhrapamapura in the Bhāgirathi valley. Next comes Dārvada or the Dāru country near Almora, near which is Amaravatī or the sacred groves of the ancient Jagesar, and then the country of the Rājya-Kiratās, of whom and the Khasas we reserve the notice. Wilford gives the name Sumaphala as that of the country at the source of the Ganges, considering it to be one with Cho-mapán, the Tibetan name for lake Mánasarovara, out this identification is not clear. In one place Sumaphala is preceded by Madhura and Rasaka and is followed by Salīla-manī, Lavana, Sankha, Manktika, Abja, Mandákini and Uttara Pandya or northern Pandya, which is traditionally situate in the northern hills. The Mandákini river flows from Kedārnāth, connected with which there are so many Pándava traditions. Bhrapamapura is also mentioned in the Mārkandeya Purāna close to Vanarāshtra on the one side and Ekapada,1 Khasa and Suvarna-bhūmi on the other. Khasa is here clearly Kumaon and Suvarna-bhūmi the Suvarna-gotra of Hwen Thsang identified hereafter with the Nāri-khorsum district of Tibet lying to the north of Kumaon and Garhwál. Out of all these names, the only ones that we are justified by tradition and fact in connecting with these hills are the Khasas, Kiratās, Rājyakiratās, Sakas, Nāgas and Hūnas,2 and these we reserve for a more minute and searching investigation.

In the preceding review of the literature bearing on the early history of the Himālaya we have endeavoured to show that whilst living between

Summary.

1 The Ekas are a hill-tribe akin to the Kiratās and are now only found in Nepāl.
2 The Hūnas of the inscriptions are clearly a powerful tribe of the plains defeated by Damodara Gupta at the battle of Māushari. For the speculations regarding the connection between the Hūnas and the Magyars see Hyde Clarke on the Himalayan origin and connection of the Magyar and Ugrian in J. Anth. Inst., VII., 44.
the Indus and the Sarasvati, the Aryans had but little knowledge of the Kumaon Himalaya. As they approached the Ganges their information becomes more complete, and though we have no topographical details until we reach the period of the later Puráñas, yet we may gather from the older writings that the sources of the great rivers were at a very early period held sacred. We also learn that the hills and forests of northern India were occupied by tribes regarded more as degraded members of the Aryan stock than as aliens in race. That they had attained to a certain degree of civilisation in some respects superior to that reached by the Aryans of the Vedas; they lived in forts and walled towns and were versed in the uses of drugs and knew how to smelt ores. In the later lists we infer from the recognized position of some the probable locality to be assigned to others, and that in the northern Himalaya were found the Dáradas, Kashmiras, Kámbojas, Gandháras, Chínás, Sakás, Yavanas, Húngas, Nágas, Khasas and Kirátas. The first four have been already identified as north-western tribes and the Chínás as representing the people of Gilgit, Astor and Yassan. We next come to the Sakás, to whom local tradition points as one of the earliest ruling races in the Kumaon hills. In one of the many curious legends handed down to us by the early writers it is said that the Yavanas, Sakás and similar tribes were created from the tail of the wonder-working cow Kámadbenu, and that the Kirátas and similar tribes were formed from her sweat, excrement and urine, a subtle distinction implying grades in degradation, and further that the Sakás and Yavanas belonged to the superior class. It may also teach us that this difference was intended to distinguish between the degraded Aryan and the autochthonous tribes, or rather those of the early immigrations.

There is every reason to suppose that the Nágas, Kirátas and Khasas entered India by the same route as the Aryas, and that the Kirátas were the first to arrive, then the Nágas and then the Khasas. The earliest notices regarding the Kirátas bring them as far westward as the Jumna in the first century. Local tradition in Nepál gives them an eastern extension to Bhután and at a very early date they held the NepáI valley. Twenty-nine names of kings of this race are

1 In the Rámayana  2 Wright's Nepál, pp 89, 106, 3'2
given in the local history of Nepál. We have collected the names of fourteen rulers attributed to the Khassa race in Káli Kumaon which are so similar in character that there can be little doubt of a close connection between them. Indeed, the community in manners and religion between the different divisions of the snake-worshipping tribes would alone show a common origin and will also explain how they all insensibly blend one with the other. In the lists of peoples given in the Vishnu Purána, we have already seen that the Kirátas or Kirátis are said to have occupied the country to the east of Bhárata as the Yavanas dwelt the west. In the Mahá-bhárata we find them to occur with the Jángalas (or ‘dwellers in thickets’), Kuruvarnakas (or ‘dwellers in the Kuru jungles’) and Barbaras in one place, and again we have ‘Kirátas, Tamasas’ and ‘Kirátas Sudeshtas and people near the mount called Yamuna’. All these indications agree with the position already arrived at on the upper Jumna and Ganges. The Tamasas are the people of the Tons of ‘dark river’, so called from the effect of the forests on its banks and itself an affluent of the Yamuna or Jumna. The Kirátas are also joined with the Sakas and Savaras as Dasyus, and in the Rámáyana they are described as “with sharp-pointed hair-knots, gold-coloured and pleasant to behold.” It was as a Kiráta that Rudra appeared to Arjuna in the valley of the Ganges. The local annals of Nepál ascribe to the Kirátas a dynasty that ruled in the valley for ten thousand years in the Dwápara Yug, where also there was a celebrated settlement of the Nágas, and after expelling an Ahir family they continued in the valley and were rulers of Nepál when Asoka visited it in the third century before Christ. We are further told that they previously lived to the east, but that they removed to Suprabha (Thánkot) to the west of the valley before establishing themselves in Nepál. The Kirátas are now a short, flat-faced people, powerfully built and are Buddhists in religion. From Dr. Campbell we learn that on the frontier between Sikkim and Nepál they are regarded as generically one with the Limbús. According to him, the sub-divisions of the tracts inhabited by the Limbús are two in number:—Kiránt-des, extending from the Dúd-kosi to the Arun river east and the Limbú-des from the Arun to the Konki. Using

1 Wilson, VII., 130.  
2 Ibíd, 171, 176, 187.  
3 Muir, II., 365, 491.  
4 Wright's Nepál, p. 89, 106, 110, 312: see also J. A. S. Ben., 1849, p. 733, 766: 1858, 446.
the tribal name 'Limbu' in its extended sense, we have the Hung and Rai divisions, the first of which carries us back to the Hánas and the Hing of the Márkandeya-Purán. This identification is strengthened by the marked Mongolian features of the people who owing to their isolated position have had little intercourse with Aryans or Aryanised tribes and preserve the original type intact. We cannot be wrong in assigning these Kirántis1 to the Kirátas of whom we have recorded so much, but they have no connection in appearance, language or religion with any important section of the people now inhabitants of the tract between the Tons and the Sárda.

We have, however, in the name 'Rájya-Kiráta' possibly a living link between the Kirátas of somewhat Tibetan physique and the Khasas of equally pronounced Aryan form and habits, if we can connect them with the Rájis of Askot in Kumaon. The Varaha-sankta places the Rájya-Kiráta between Amaravana and China or between Jagesar and Tibet, and the title will either mean the princely Kiráta or the Kiráta of 'Rájya.' It has been observed that Kumaon and Karttikeya pura are called 'Rájya' in the Pandukeshwar inscriptions, meaning literally the kingdom; but this, however, is merely a coincidence and, as we shall see, no weight can be attached to it, as it belongs to a formula common to many inscriptions in the hills and plains. The important fact is their position in the list and the knowledge that Kiráta once lived to the west and east of the present settlement of the Rájis in Askot on the Káli. The Rájis have often been noticed by ethnographers whose speculations have been based on a few lines in a report of Mr. Traill.2 It is there said that the Rájis "represent themselves as descendants of one of the aboriginal princes of Kumaon who with his family fled to the jungles to escape the destruction

1 It has been attempted to connect them with the Katýára, but the argument is not worth stating here. According to Hodgson, the alpine basin of the Sept Kausika or country of the seven Kosis was the original seat of the Kiránta, who are identified by him with "the classical Cirrhata, a once dominant and powerful race, though they have long since succumbed to the political supremacy of other races—first the Makwánia and then the Gorkháli." The Kiránta are now numbered amongst the Limbu tribes of the central region of the Eastern Himalaya. Campbell considers the word 'Limbú' a corruption of 'Ektímba,' the correct denomination of the people and generally used by foreigners to designate the whole population of the country between the Dód-kosi and the Meen, except such as belong to the well-marked tribes of the Mürnas, Lepchas and Bhotiyas, who are Buddhists, and the Parbatiyas, who are Brahmanical in religion. 

2 First Commissioner of Kumaon, in his Statistical account of Kumaon; Report on Kumaon, pp. 19, 57: As. Res., XVI., 150.
threatened by an usurper. Under the pretension of royal origin, the Rawats or Rájis abstain from offering to any individual, whatever his rank, the usual eastern salutation." He also states that there is "a total dissimilitude of language" between the Rájis and Kumáonis and that the Doms may have been descended from these Rájis, "the former being, for the most part, extremely dark, almost black, with crisp curly hair inclining to wool." This is the only account that has ever been given on any authority regarding the Rájis, yet Professor Ritter found in it confirmation of the opinion that a negro race may have been among the aboriginal inhabitants of the Himálaya and Kuen-lun.¹ There is no foundation for the statement that the Doms have curly hair inclining to wool. Out of hundreds that have come under notice not a single one can be said to have any negroid characteristic, though many are of an extremely dark complexion like the other similar servile castes in the plains. Dr. Pritchard² conjectured that the Rájis would be found to resemble the other numerous aboriginal tribes found along the Himálayan border, all possessing "the physical character of the Bhotiyas in general and very unlike the Doms." Dr. Latham,³ too, expresses his conviction that the Rájis are the equivalents to "the Chepang of Nepál."

The only information that can here be added regarding the Rájis has been furnished by intelligent natives of Kumaon who have fallen in with the tribe during their visits to the Askot forests and the following short extract from Captain H. Strachey’s journal at Garjia ghat:—"The Rajbári Karinda (agent) caught two of the Banmanus, the wild men of Chipula, for my inspection. I saw nothing very remarkable about them except an expression of alarm and stupidity in their faces and they are perhaps darker and otherwise more like lowland Hindustanis than the average Kumaon Paháris." They manufacture wooden bowls for sale and "live under temporary huts, frequently moving from place to place amidst the jungles of Chipula; their principal subsistence being certain edible sorts of wild plants and what game they can catch, and they occasionally get presents of cooked food from the villagers. They have a dialect of their own, but some of them can communicate with their civilised neighbours in Pahári Hindi." The scanty

² Ethnology of the British Colonies, p. 132.
³ Ethnology of India, pp. 11, 16.
vocabulary of the Ráji language that has been collected supports the connection with the tribes of Nepál suggested by Dr. Latham. It is a mistake to suppose that the Rájis are confined to the few families representing them in Kumaon, for there exists information which may be considered trustworthy that Rájis are numerous along the foot of the hills below the province of Doti, the most westerly district of Nepál, and this brings them to the locality assigned by Mr. Hodgson to the Chepáng, viz., the forests of Nepál west of the great valley, and therefore between the Kirántis and the Khasiyas. From their language it would appear that they are of ordinary aboriginal stock like the Kirántis, a still further reason for identifying them with the Rájya-Kirátas of the Puránas.

The Rájis themselves say that they are of Hindu origin. That when the world began there were two Ráj-pút brothers, of whom the elder was a hunter and lived in the jungles, whilst the younger cultivated the ground and had a fixed abode. The younger brother received the government of the world and said to his elder brother, "there cannot be two Rájas in one country," and accordingly the elder brother retired to the forests and his descendants are now called Rájis, who neither cultivate the ground nor live in permanent dwellings. The Rájis are said to have their own peculiar gods, but they also worship those of the Hindús and, like the people of Kumaon, and indeed of the entire Himálaya, attribute great power to the local deities, sprites, goblins and deified men. They bury their dead and their only funeral ceremony is said to be this, that for ten days after death they every night place out in the open air vessels of rice and water for the dead. The Bodo and Dhimáls to the east also bury their dead, but the Limbús first burn their dead and then bury the ashes. The former are allied to the Kasiyas of Assam, and amongst the latter are included the Kirántis of Nepál. Honesty and chastity they hold in great honor. They hide their women from all strangers, declaring that they are of royal race and must not be seen. They seem to be almost omnivorous and are said to approve especially of the flesh of the great langúr monkey. They support themselves chiefly by

1 Traill mentioned (1823) only twenty families and Captain H. Strachey states that he was informed that there were only five or six families (1846).

2 For many of these facts regarding the Rájis I am indebted to a note by Sir J. Strachey.
hunting and fishing and they get what grain they require from the Khasiyas, giving in return wooden implements of husbandry and vessels which they manufacture with some skill. There seems no reason for supposing with Mr. Traill that there is a connection between the Rájis and the Doms. The former are certainly very far from holding such an opinion and profess the greatest contempt for the Doms: so that if one of that class enters the dwelling of a Ráji, the place must be purified with water brought from twenty-two different places. There are twenty or thirty families of Rájis in the eastern parts of Kumaon, chiefly in pargana Askot, and a few families live near Jageswar in Chaugarkha, the ancient Amara-vana. The latter seem to be gradually becoming extinct, and they say themselves that they have never prospered since, forsaking the customs of their race, they began to cultivate the soil. The Ráwats mentioned by Mr. Traill are said to be Rájis who have settled themselves in villages and to whom are attributed the various petty dynasties of eastern Kumaon who preceded the Chands. We shall see hereafter that these Ráwats are mentioned in inscriptions as well as in tradition, and that their country is called Rájya. A class¹ called Lúl inhabiting the same tract has similar traditions, and both still occupy several villages in Káli Kumaon. As they seem to be distinct from the Khasiya population, it is not improbable that the tradition may be true which declares that they were formerly Rájis and that both represent the ancient Rájya-Kirátas of the Puránas, one class preserving many of its old customs, whilst the others has almost merged in the Khasiya population. We shall now continue our notice of the other tribes in Kumaon before proceeding to the Khasiyas, who will take up considerable time and space.

We have already stated that when we pass to the north of the great snowy peaks, we get among a different people, the Bhotiyas. Bod, the native name for Tibet, corrupted by the people of India into Bhot, has given rise to the name Bhotiya for the border tribes between the two countries. Bhot has not altogether lost its proper meaning, for it is still applied generally to the tract north of the great peaks, without reference to physical or political boundaries, though in Kumaon it is now more

¹ Query, people of Lola; see p. 303.
commonly used to signify the country within the snowy range south of the Tibetan frontier. It is rather an ethnographical than a geographical expression, intending the country inhabited by Bhotiys, rather than one of which any precise boundaries can be named. It will be convenient here to use the word Bhot and Bhotiya in this restricted sense. The adjacent province of Tibet is here called Hundes, and its inhabitants Húniyas. This name was supposed by Moorcroft to be undes or wool-country, and by Wilson to be Hundes or snow-country, but the real name is Hundes or country of the Húnas. This name is clearly connected with the Hiong-nu of the Chinese records and the Húnas of the inscriptions. There is no reason, however, to believe that the name Húna in the Purāṇas or the inscriptions is intended to apply to the trans-Kumaon Húnas, but only that they belonged to the same Tibetan race, for the Húnas of those records appear to have been a powerful tribe in the plains, and the allusions to them are too numerous and too important for us to assign them to the predecessors of the comparatively unimportant Húniyas of g-Nári in Tibet. That the Bhotiyas themselves are of Tibetan origin is sufficiently shown by the language that they speak, by their Mongolian caste of countenance, and those unmistakeable peculiarities that belong to the Tibetan race, and which are as well marked in them as in the Húniyas themselves. The Bhotiyas are, however, little inclined to admit this origin in their intercourse with Hindús. In the traditional account of the colonisation of the Bhotiya valley in which Milam is situate, and which is given hereafter, they declare themselves the offspring of a Rájput immigration from beyond the snows that succeeded a Sokpa colony, but they are usually called Sokpas themselves. Tibetan annals undoubtedly mention the existence of a trans-Himalayan Kshatriya kingdom, but it was the rulers that were of Hindú origin, not the people. On the boundary line between the Khasiyas and the Bhotiyas we find a mixed population, but no particular account of them need be given here, nor of the Hindu immigrants from the plains who have for so long a time monopolised all important offices in the country and who, at the present day, constitute what we may call the upper grades of hill society.

\footnote{Travels, I., p. 4.}
Much has been written regarding the Doms, the servile race of the hills and correctly enough supposed to be remnants of the original inhabitants. As we have noted they are of exceedingly dark complexion, as a rule, but not more so than the tribe of the same name in the plains and many Chamárs. They have for ages been the slaves of the Knasiyas and been thought less of than the cattle and with them changed hands from master to master. It was death for a Dom to infringe the distinctions of caste laid down by the Hindu laws, such as knowingly making use of a hukka or any other utensil belonging to a Rájput or Brahman. Even the wild Ráji, as we have seen, considered the presence of a Dom a source of defilement. The Doms are divided into a number of classes, chiefly according to occupation, like the Chamárs of the plains, and which will be noticed hereafter. In the extreme west we find them on the right bank of the Indus, living in villages apart from the people and filling the same servile avocations. In Yasan, Nagar and Chilás they are very numerous and are "of very dark complexion, course features and inferior physique." They are found again in the same position amongst the Aryans of Kashmir and amongst the Dogras of Jammu. Here again they are noticed for their dark complexion, which unmistakably marks them out from the light-complexioned Aryans. They are smaller in limb, stout, square built, and less bearded and altogether exhibit a much lower type of face which centuries of serfdom and oppression have not tended to modify. The Dhiyárs or ore-smelters of Jammu, corresponding to the Aguris of these hills and the Bátals of the Kashmir valley, who are curriers and musicians and correspond to the Harkiyas of Kunun, should be assigned to the same class. The Bems of Ladák occupy a similar position and are blacksmiths and musicians. In Kunáor and Kulu we have them again following the same trades classed with a tribe of similar occupation called Kohlis by the people of the lower hills, Chamárs about Rampur on the Satlaj and by themselves and the Kunáoris, Chömangs. The same remark is made about them here also that they are usually darker than the Kunets around them. The smiths are called Domang in Kunáori and the carpenters

1 Rep. G. T. S., 1876, p. 27. 2 Drew's Northern Barrier, p. 28, 170; Biddulph's Tribes of the Himal Koosh, p. 39 3 Ibid., p. 254; Cunningham's Ladák, p. 291. 4 J. D. Cunningham's notes on Kunawár, p. 11.
are termed Oras and both are equally with the Kohlis considered of impure castes. In Nepál these helot craftsmen are represented by the Newârs. Sufficient has been said to show that these Doms in the hills are not a local race peculiar to Kumaon, but the remains of an aboriginal tribe conquered and enslaved by the immigrants Khasas. In the plains we have them in the Gorakhpur district and with Khasas in Kattak and indeed over all the eastern districts of these Provinces, Oudh and Tirhút, but with these localities we have no concern here.¹

In the country lying along the foot of the Kumaon hills from the Kosi eastwards we have a tribe known as Thárus which may be traced further east to the Bágmati river. They are dwellers in swamps and great rice cultivators and are proof against malaria. They even dread visiting the plains, where they say that they suffer severely from fever. To the east they are neighbours of the Mechís, a tribe of similar character living in the thickest part of the Tarâí forest lying below eastern Nepál, Sikkim and Bhután.

The Bhukásás, a tribe somewhat similar to the Thárus, are found in the Tarâí and Bhâbar from the Pilibhít district on the east to Chândpur on the Ganges on the west, and a few scattered colonies also occur in the Debra Dûn. "They claim," according to Elliot, "to be Pan-wár Râjput and assert that their chief, Udiyâjit, was driven from house and home in a quarrel that he had with his brother Jagatdeo, the Râja of Bhâranagar and came to dwell with a few dependants at Baubásã on the Sârda. Udiyâjit had not been there long before his aid was solicited by the Râja of Kumaon, whose territories

¹ See however Wilson, I., 60, 181: Beames' Elliot, II., 84: Notice of Gorakhpur district, Gaz. VI. ² Stewart describes the Bhukásás of Bijmer thus:—

"The members of the tribe are of short stature and very sparse in habit, in both respects somewhat exceeding the ordinary Hindu peasant of the district, from whom, however, they do not differ much in general build or in complexion. The eyes are small: the opening of the eyelids being narrow, linear and horizontal (the inner angle not inclining downwards so far as observed); the face is very broad across the cheekbones and the nose is depressed, thus increasing the apparent flatness of the face; the jaw is prognathous and the lower lip thick and the moustache and beard are very scanty." Some of these peculiarities are more marked in some individuals than in others, but one Bhukás will always recognize another, though a Kumaoni says he only recognizes them when they speak. The features of the women are similar to those of the men. J. A. S. Res., XXXIV., ii., 150. Beames' Elliot, I., 29. Stewart shows that the tradition communicated to Elliot is certainly unknown to one great section of the tribe.
required defence against some of the neighbouring powers. Success attended the efforts of the Panwár, and the gratitude of the Rája induced him to offer his defenders an asylum in his territories. Upon this they are represented to have left Banbasa and to have taken up their residence in their present abodes." We cannot accept this tradition, no more than that of the Khági Chauháns, who assert a descent from the true Chauháns. The Bhukáss are nothing more than an outlying Hinduised branch of the great non-Aryan family. In physique and habits they are allied to the Thárus and have nothing in common with the immigrant plains' tribes in Kumaon. There is no doubt that their settlement in the Taráí is of ancient date, for in the Ain-i-Akbarí the name Bhukásár was given to the tract occupied by them up to a recent date. They are now in every respect in their habits and customs Hindus of the ordinary low caste type and employ Gaur Brahman parahits in their marriage and funeral ceremonies. Some are Sikhs and the wife follows the religion or path of her husband and the children that of their father. One of the Taráí parganahs is called Nánakmátha after the great Sikh guru, and there is a Sikh shrine there as well as in Dehra and Srinagar. The Bhukáss bear an excellent moral character; they are inoffensive and peaceable as well as intensely indolent and ignorant. They have no arts or manufactures and live on the chase and a scanty cultivation. They are particularly fond of wild pig, and this may be one of the reasons why they change the site of their villages every couple of years. In some places they collect the wild forest produce, but in no systematic way. They also engage in gold-washing, extracting gold-dust to the value of a few hundred rupees a year from the auriferous sands of the Sona Nadi. They are slowly but surely dying out and now number only a few thousands. We shall now proceed with our examination of the remaining tribes in the records which we have quoted.

In the lists of the Mahábhárata¹ we find the Sakas in one place between the Vákátapápas and Videchas or people of Tirhút; again between the people of Mount Jamuna and the Nishádas or foresters of the Paropanisadas, who lived west of the Indus; again between the Sálwasenís, a

¹ Wilson, VII., 165, 171, 179, 185.
people of the north-west Panjáb and the Kokarakas and once more in the Váyu Purána at Tusháras between the Patti or people of Piti and the Antacháras or borderers. We may gather from these statements that there were several colonies of this tribe in existence in the Pauránik times. They are the Sāc̄e of classical writers and the Indo-Skythians of Ptolemy. The language which they spoke was known as Sākārī and in one enumeration follows the language of Berar and precedes that of Váhlika. Again it is called a vāhāsha or dialect of Prákrit with the synonym Chandálīka and ranks with the Sābāri, Abhirika, Drávīra and Utkali or the language of the people of Orissa. The Váhlika elsewhere is said to be a language fit for celestial personages in the drama, the Sākārī for Sākārā, Sakas and the like, the Sābāri and Abhirika for wood-cutters and leaf-gatherers, and the Paisāchī for charcoal-burners and by others for barbarous hill tribes. The grammarian Lakshmidhara enumerates the following as Paisāchī countries where the two dialects of Paisāchī are spoken:—Pandya, Kekaya, Váhlika, Shāraya, Nepál, Kuntala, Sudhasha, Bhota, Gándhara, Haiva and Kanojana. Of these Pandya may refer either to the hill kingdom of the Pándavas or that in the Panjáb and the remaining names to the Himálaya and adjacent countries. A later writer gives as a generic epithet for the provincial dialects the term \textsuperscript{2} "according to the manner of those who speak like Nágas." This designation appears to have been derived from the writers on rhetoric who assign Sanskrit to the gods, Prákrit to men, and for the wild barbarous tribes scornfully deserving the name of men, such as the Chandálīas, Abhiras, &c., the tongue of Nágas or serpents.

Though the use of the term 'Nágas' in the extract quoted in the preceding paragraph may be strictly conventional, there can be no doubt that a race called Nágas existed to whom the hooded-snake was sacred. The Nágas were found in the plains and the hills, and in addition to the account of the Nágā city already quoted we may mention their assembling with their king Takshak under the auspices of Indra to oppose the building of Indraprastha. The Nágas appear to have been a race of trans-Himalayan origin who adopted the snake as

---

\textsuperscript{1} Muir, II., 40, 50.  
\textsuperscript{2} Lassen in \textit{iéd.}, 52.
their national emblem and hence gave their name to the cobra. Mr. Wheeler\(^1\) writes of them:—

"The seats of these Nágas were not confined to India, for they have left traces of their belief in almost every religious system, as well as in almost every country in the ancient world. They appear to have entered India at some remote period, and to have pushed their way towards the east and south; but whether they preceded the Aryans or whether they followed the Aryans is a point which has not yet been decided. In process of time these Nágas became identified with serpents, and the result has been a strange confusion in the ancient myths between serpents and human beings; between the deity emblem of the Nágas and the Nágas themselves.

The great historic fact in connection with the Nágas, which stands prominently forward in Hindu myths, is the fierce persecution which they suffered at the hands of the Bráhmans: the destruction of serpents at the burning of the forest of Khándava, the terrible sacrifice of serpents which forms one of the opening scenes in the Mahábhárata, and the supernatural exploits of the youthful Krishna against the serpents sent to destroy him, are all expressions of Brahmanical hatred towards the Nágas. Ultimately this antagonism merged into that deadly conflict between the Brahman and the Buddhist which after a lengthened period of religious warfare terminated in the triumph of the Brahman. From these data it would appear that the Nágas were originally a race distinct from the Aryans and wholly without the pale of Brahmanism; that those who became Buddhists were either crushed or driven out of India during the age of Brahmanical revival; and that the remainder have become converts to Brahmanism and appear to be regarded as an inferior order of Kshatriyas. But there is a vitality in certain religious ideas which seems to render them immortal; and whilst the Nágas as a people have almost disappeared from the Indian continent, the worship of serpents, or a reverential fear of serpents as divine beings, is still to be found deeply rooted in the mind of the Hindu. The general question perhaps properly belongs to the history of the Hindu religion;\(^2\) but it should be distinctly borne in mind while considering every legend which seems to point to the Nágas."

The earliest tradition regarding Nepál gives the name Nág Hrad or 'tank of the serpent' to the valley in which Kathmándú

The Nágas in Nepál is situate and makes it the residence of and Kumāra.

Karkotak, Raja of the Nágas, whose memory is still kept alive by an annual meeting for bathing and worship at the Tau-dah tank.\(^3\) Takshak also is said to have taken up his abode in the valley for a time, and here it was that he became reconciled to Vishnu through the good offices of the Bodhisatwa Aryávalokiteswara. This legend apparently implies a compromise

---

\(^1\) History of India, I., 147, 411: II., 630. \(^2\) See Ferguson's 'Tree and Serpent Worship' London, 1873. General Cunningham makes the ophiolatrous Takas of the Panjab a branch of the Nágá race. See also J. B. B. R. A. S., No. 23, p. 169, IX. 256 Ind. Ant. IV., 5. \(^3\) Wright's Nepál, pp. 77, 85, 96. There are similar legends about Kashmir.
between the followers of Buddha, the Brahmins and the snake-worshipers which curiously enough exists to the present day. In Garhwa it we have traces of the Nāgas in the names of pattiis Nāgpur and Urgam and the universal tradition of their residence in the valley of the Alakananda. At the present day Seshnāg is honored at Pandukeswar, Bhekāl Nāg at Ratgaon, Sangal Nāg at Takor, Bānpat Nāg at Margaon, Lohande Nāg at Jelam in the Nī valley and Pushkara Nāg at Nāgnāth in Nāgpur. In the Dūn, also, the Nagsiddh or Nāgāchāl hill is sacred to Bāman Nāg and in Kumaon we have the great Nāg at Bastir in Mahār; Kedār Kāli-nāg in Pungaraon; Būnī Nāg in Baraun; Karkotak Nāg at Pan- degon in Chhakhāta; Vāsuki Nāg in Dānpr; Nāgdeo Padamgīr in Sālam and numerous temples to Nāgrāja. The rock bearing the Asoka inscription at Kālsī in the Dūn is popularly reported to mark the boundary laid down of old between the Nāga Skythians of the hills and Hindustan. The Sakas are named in the list with the Nāgas and were, as we shall see, also of Skythian origin, but belonged to a very much later immigration of that race in historical times. It may, therefore, be safely assumed that a branch of the Nāga race was once the ruling power in these hills. Were these lists compiled at one time and did they represent the facts of one period, there would be much difficulty in attempting any solution of the inconsistencies which they apparently present; but when the main portion of the work can be shown to be the result of various hands at different times, we may fairly assume that the lists themselves suffered at the hands of successive editors.

The name 'Khasa' like the name 'Nāgā' is of far too wide significance to be that of a single tribe and its use at the present day to distinguish the cis-Himalayan people of Khas-des from the Bhotiyas is more generic than particular. In the Vishnu-Purāna, Khasa is the daughter of Daksha, wife of Kasyapa and mother of the Yakshas and Rākshasas. It is under the former name that the Khasas were known in the first century, for we find a translation of it applied to them as an epithet by Pliny. The name Khasa does not occur as the name of a people in the Vishnu Purāna, but we have instead the

1 It is not to be understood that Buddhism existed in Nepāl at the time of the scenes represented in the Mahābhārata if they took place in the fourteenth century before Christ: Gazetteer, II., 60.  

2 Wilson, VII, 75.
names of the Yakshas,\(^1\) who are attendants on the Adityas with the Rákshasas and Nágás, and are here relegated to the domain of fiction. The Yakshas were present with the Rákshasas and Nágás at the milking of the earth. Vaisravana or Kuvera,\(^2\) the god of mineral wealth, is said to be lord of the Yakshas and to dwell on Kailás, and the Yakshas are also known as Grámanis. In the Mahábhárata the Khasas do not occur in the great list, but they are mentioned\(^3\) in the Karna-parvan as living in the Panjáb, between the Arattas and Vasátais. The Arattas and the people of the country of the five rivers are pronounced contemptible, and 'there a Bábika\(^4\) born a Brahman becomes afterwards a Kshatriya, a Vaisya or a Sudra and eventually a barber.' This statement would imply the existence of a well-known settlement of Yakshas or Khasas at an early period in the Panjáb. It was to Yakes (Yakkha) artists that Asoka entrusted the building of his numerous Chaityas, and they were also employed by him as mercenaries in his army.\(^5\) In the time of Nágárjuna, Nága artists were employed. In the Dipavansa,\(^6\) the names of the Theros are given who converted 'the multitude of Yakkhas in the Himavat.'

In the Váyu-Purána the Khasas are one of the tribes that Ságra would have destroyed were he not restrained by Vasishtha,\(^7\) and in Manu they are, as we have seen,\(^8\) reckoned only as degraded Aryans of the warrior caste. In the Várdha-sanhita, the Khasas occur after the Kunaías or people of Kunáor, the Conae of Pliny. In the Márkandeya-Purána, the name Khasa is found between Ekapada and Suvarna-bhúmi, the Eka country and the golden land which we shall see hereafter is probably the g-Nári-Khorsum district of Tibet immediately to the north of Garhwál. There is a curious confirmation of this location in the story\(^9\) of the gold-digging ants first mentioned by Herodotus, who tells us that:—

"Besides these, there are Indians of another tribe who border on the city of Kaspatyrus and the country of Paktyika; these people dwell northward of all the rest of the Indians and from them the men are sent forth who go to procure gold." Then he describes

---

\(^1\) *Ibid*, 285.  
\(^3\) *As Res.*, XV., 108.  
\(^4\) *Ant.*., p. 277.  
\(^5\) *Ind. Ant.*, IV., 162. Sung Yu, the Buddhist Chinese traveller, mentions a temple sacred to Bhagwán built by Yakshas in Udyána: Beal's *Fah Hian*, p. 196.  
\(^6\) Oldenberg's translation, p. 159.  
\(^7\) *Wilson*, VII., 292.  
\(^8\) *Ibid*, X., 43, 44: *ante*, p. 279.  
how this gold was thrown up by ants from their burrows. Now in a passage of the Mahabharata, the Khasas are expressly mentioned amongst the northern tribes who brought presents to Yudhishthira and amongst them were presents of paipilikas gold so called because it was collected by ants (piplikas). This can only refer to the trade in gold dust with the miners of Thok Jalung in Tibet and indicates that at that early time the Khasiyas were the chief carriers or distributors. There is evidence to show the wide diffusion through an immense breadth of Asia of names having the apparently common root 'khas' or 'kho.' We find it in the names Khophene, Khoas, Khoaspes, given to rivers of the Kâbul valley by classical writers and in the Hindu-kush and Kashkâra of the country to the north. Colonel Wilford\(^1\) in his curious paper on 'Mount Caucasus' attempts to trace the Khasas from Kashgâr through Kashmir and Kumaon to the Khasiya hills in Asâm, and without accepting his conclusion we may assume that the facts recorded by him bear out the general result of a very wide extension of a Khasa race in pre-historic times. We may connect with them Kissa mentioned by Herodotus as an old name of Susa, and Strabo\(^2\) also calls the people of Susa, Kissii, whilst Diodorus\(^3\) and Quintus Curtius\(^4\) mention the Kossaei amongst the principal troops of Darius at Arbela. We may also connect with their name the Caucasus of Pliny and the Kasian mountains of Ptolemy as well as his Kasia regio. The Caucasus includes the mountainous country to the west of Kashmir and south of the Oxus and the Kasian range runs thence eastwards to Nepál. As noted\(^5\) by St. Martin:—"le nom des Khaca a été de temps immémorial une des appellations les plus repandues dans tout le massif Himâlaïen." In the Ceylon archives, the name Khasa occurs\(^6\) amongst the tribes who submitted to Asoka in the third century before Christ, and from Târânâtha we have the Tibetan version of Asoka's conquests in the following story\(^7\):—"In the Champarâna kingdom which belonged to the Kuru race there was a king called Nemita who was descended from the Solar race. He had six sons born of lawful wives and besides them he had a son by a daughter of a merchant to whom he gave in appanage

\(^1\) As. Res., VI., 455. \(^2\) Book V., ch. 3. \(^3\) Bk. XVII., ch. 14. \(^4\) IV., 46. \(^5\) Etude, &c., l. c. p. 417. \(^6\) Burnouf, Introd. à l'Hist du Buddhisme, p. 363. \(^7\) La Comme's Vassilief, p 46.
the town of Pataliputra, as a reward for his victory over the people of Nepál who dwelt in the kingdom of Kasym and over other mountaineers.” Here Nepál is mentioned as the Indo-Himalayan country best known to the writer who at the same time distinctly connects the name with the Khasas. In the ‘Chronicles of Kashmir’ we find Khasa tribes occupying the deserted city of Narapur at a time ‘when the country was full of Dáradas, Bhotiyas and Mlechchhas in the reign of Mihrakula, the great anti-Buddhist ruler, who reigned about 500 A.D. In the reign of Kshemagupta the Raja of the Khasas compelled the king of Kashmir to give up to him thirty-six villages. A Khasa was the favoured lover of the notorious Kashmiri queen Didda in the eleventh century and was probably of her own clan, for she was aunt of her successor, the son of Udaya, Raja of Sáhi or Lohara, a small State near Abhisára. These Sáhi Rajas claimed descent from Sáliváhana, who is synonymous with the Saka Raja who founded the Saka era. St. Martin states:—“On les (Khasas) trouve cités en plus de quatre-vingt endroits de la Chronique Kashamiriennne, parmi les principales tribus montagnardes qui confinent au Kashmir.” The natives of Kashmir are called Kashmiris by their neighbours in the surrounding hill-states and the name Kashmir has undoubtedly connection with the tribe of Kashiru and not with the mythic Brahmin-made Kasyapa. Wilford records that “when Parasuráma undertook to destroy the Kshatriyas, the Khasas who then lived in the plains fled to the mountains in confusion. Many went to Jalpasa and then ascended the passes.” From the above it is clear that at a very early period the Khasas were the principal inhabitants of the regions to the west of Kashmir, of Kashmir itself and of the hill country as far as Nepál and of a considerable part of the plains. They formed an important section of the Indian population found in those tracts by successive invaders, and though now possessing a national existence in Kumaon alone can still be traced from the sources of the Kábul river to the Tista. The Khasas of the plains were driven to the hills, the Vindhyas on the south and the Himalaya on the

1 As. Res., XV., 29, 76, 79 : T. B. B. R. A. S., No. 34, p. 59. In the introduction regarding the creation of Kashmir, Jalodbhava is represented as "devastating the neighbouring countries Dàrvâbhahisára Jahundara, Gaudhára and the territories occupied by the Sakas, Khasas, Tanganas and Mâlhiavas."  

north, and it is precisely in these places that we find them at the present day. We now find Khasas in the Kashiára country at the head of the Kunar valley and in the tracts adjacent to Kashmir. The Kunets of Kulu are still divided into two classes called Khasiyas and Raos, and we have the Khasiyas again in Garhwál, Kumaon and Nepal. Away from the Himalayas, we probably have them along the Vindhyan range and in the Bikaner desert as nomadic tribes under the name Khosa, most of whom are now Muhammadans. Tod¹ makes these Khosas a branch of the Sêhrlas. They occur again as Müasmaná in the desert around Thar and Párkar in Sind and in Bûchistán under the same name Khosas, and are particularly numerous between Bakhar and Shikárpur. The local tradition is that they entered Sind with the Kallhorás and after the fall of that dynasty they settled about the desert between Márwár and the valley of the Indus. That these Khosas belong to the same race as the Khasiyas of Kumaon is not a mere suggestion, but is corroborated by the fact that the dialect of Hindi now current in Kumaon has its closest affinity with the dialect spoken in Márwár and the adjoining parts of western Rájputána² and not with that spoken in the Gântetic plains and Rohilkhand. We have also sporadic colonies of Khasas and Doms in Orissa and Chutiyâ Nágpur.

We need not give evidence of the kind that we have collected more importance than it deserves, but there seems no reason for doubting that the Khasas were a very powerful race like the Nágas who came at a very early period from that officina gentium Central Asia and have left their name in Kashgar, Kashiára, the Hindu-kush, Kashmir and recognizable colonies at the present day in the hills from Kashmir to Nepal and in various parts of the plains and that the Khasiyas of Kumaon are of the same race. The account that the Khasiyas of Kumaon give of themselves tallies in all respects with the indications from other sources. They always profess to be Rajpúts who have fallen from their once honorable position by the necessity of living in a country and in a climate where the strict observance of the ceremonial usages of their religion is

¹ Tod's Rajasthán, Reprint. II., 190, 280, 293.
impossible, and undoubtedly this statement is supported by all the facts, so far as we are acquainted with them, which have any bearing on the question. It has been sometimes but hastily assumed, apparently from analogous circumstances in Nepal, that the Kumaon Khasiyas are a people of mixed Tibetan and Indian race. The Khasiyas of Nepal may have been less exposed to Aryan influences throughout their successive wanderings or may have been modified by admixture with Tibetan tribes. For as we proceed eastwards from the Kali we find, as has already been noticed, conditions of climate which however unlike those of Tibet must still be less antagonistic than those of the western Himalaya to the diffusion of a Mongolian race. But this admission does not affect the Khasiyas of Kumaon, who in physiognomy and form are as purely an Aryan race as any in the plains of northern India. The language of the Khasiyas, as will be shown hereafter, is a purely Hindi dialect both in its vocables and in its grammatical structure, and no signs of foreign admixture have hitherto been discovered in it. Supposed resemblances in feature between the Khasiyas and the neighbouring Tibetan tribes have helped to lead some to a conclusion different from that now given, but this resemblance has no real foundation in fact. The people of the plains no doubt differ greatly in appearance from those of the hills, but not more so than might be expected when we consider the great difference in the physical conditions of the countries that they respectively inhabit: nor more than the Aryan races of the plains owing to similar causes differ amongst themselves. The moist climate of lower Bengal, the comparatively dry climate of the North-Western Provinces and the still drier climate of the Panjáb with its great extremes of heat and cold cause those physical changes in the inhabitants that are so remarkable and clearly recognisable by the most casual observer. If to the effects of climate we add the influence of the various races who have from time to time invaded India we shall have reason to believe that much of the variation observed in the plains is due to circumstances which have been wanting in the hills. However this may be, this much at least is certain that, at the present time, the Khasiyas of Kumaon and Garhwal are in all respects Hindus. They are so in language, religion and customs

1 Mr. Bessees' derivation of the name from the Arabic 'Ālîs' is entirely untenable. J. R. A. S., IV., 178.
and all their feelings and prejudices are so strongly imbued with
the peculiar spirit of Hinduism that although their social habits
and religious belief are often repugnant to the orthodox of that
faith, it is impossible for any one who knows them to consider them
other than Hindu. Year by year with increasing communication
with the plains, the hill Hindu is more and more assimilating his
practice with that of his co-religionists in the plains, whilst to
the north, the Tibetan Bhotiyas are becoming more observant of
Hindu customs.

Kashkára occurs amongst the countries to which the ancient
Khasa race has given a name. It is pro-
Kator.

perly the name given to the States in the upper
Kumar valley known now as Chitrál, Yassan and Mastúj from their
principal towns. The ruling princes of these States still belong to
the Kator family, the Kushwaktiya branch in upper Chitrál in-
cluding Yassan and Mastúj and the Sháh Kator branch in Chitrál
proper. The people there now speak a dialect in which there are
many Persian vocables, but we have not sufficient evidence before
as to show what the real nature of their language may be. If, as
is probable, it be one with Dárd spoken by the adjoining races in
Gilgit and Astor it is an Aryan language. From the inscriptions
noticed hereafter we find a dynasty known by tradition as Katýúri
in the Kátyúr valley of Kumaon, certainly from the eighth to the
sixteenth century and forming the stock of numerous petty
principalities in these hills, and possibly we may look to the Khasiya
Katuras of the trans-Indus highlands for the origin of these
Kumaon Khasiya Katýúris. Mr. Thomás¹ and Sir H. Elliot² have
suggested a connection between the Kators of the mountainous
region beyond the Indus and the Kumaon Katýúris. There is
certainly a striking similarity in sound between the two names, but,
as we have often had occasion to remark, a coincidence of this kind is
frequently merely accidental and more commonly delusive. There
is a marked difference observed in the Pauránik records between
the Sakas and the Yavanas and the tribes classed as Nágás, Khasas
and Kirátas, still they are all reckoned as Vrishalas, beyond the
pale of Aryan concern, though some are recognised as of Aryan
race. We have also shown that a race once occupied Garhwál

¹ J. R. A. S., IX., 177. ² Dowson's Elliot, II., 408.
who were connected in religion and perhaps in race with the Nágás, and we may also notice the name Nacra Somtou, in d'Anville's reproduction of the native map of China, for the tract between the Karnáli and the Ganges and Sanke Somtou for that lying to the west of the bend of the Satlaj. Tradition certainly assigns the Katyúris to the solar division of the Kshatriya race, but we know the assimilating influences of Hinduism as they work before us, frequently manufacture the four castes out of the existing material found in such wild countries as Kumaon and assign to sun-worshipping tribes the attributes of the Kshatriyas of the solar race. Even at the present day the proselytising of the non-Brahmanical tribes is going on and the wealthier amongst the converts are received into and intermarry with the so-called Rajpút tribes of the hills. There is therefore no insuperable obstacle to the reception of the suggestion of Mr. Thomas and Sir H. M. Elliot, and proceeding from such distinguished scholars it certainly merits some investigation at our hands.

The passage referred to in Elliot is as follows:—"The identity of the name and the period of the establishment of the Kators (sic) in Kumaon appears to render it possible that we have in them the descendants of those Kators who fought under the banners of the first Muhammadan conquerors." Kanak or Kank was the last of the Katorman kings of Kábul according to the Musalmán historians, and the same name heads the list of local kings in Garhwál according to several authorities. Elliot cites the following passage from a copy of the Jámí'ut-tawáríkh:—"After Básdeo from among their rulers (i.e. of the Indians) one was Kanak, and he was the last of the Kayormán kings," and Básdeo is also the eponymous founder of the Katyúri house of Joshinath in Garhwál. Kanak of Kábul had a Brahman minister named Kalar who slew his master and founded a new dynasty of which the names of many members survive. Abu Rihán Al Birúní makes the Kábul dynasty to be of Turkish extraction and states that before the death of the last of the line some sixty generations had sat on the throne of Kábul.

We may assume, with Elliot, that the statement does not imply that the supreme power during this period remains in the same
family, but rather that the dynasty belonged to the same stock, whether Bactrian, Saka, Yueh-ti or Parthian. If we allow fifteen years for each of the sixty reigns preceding the murder of Kank, we arrive at the middle of the first century before Christ for the establishment of the dynasty, or about the time of the rise to power of the Yueh-ti branch of the great Skythian race. We have to show that besides the Skythian immigrants to whom the princely power belonged there was an indigenous Indian population in the Kābul highlands, and that this people can be reasonably connected with the people inhabiting the upper valley of the Kunar river at the present day, and that there are grounds for considering that both the subject Indians and the ruling Skythians moved eastwards, and that the former may be one with the Khasiyas and the latter one with the Katyūris of Kumaon. With regard to the Khasiyas we have nothing to add to the arguments already adduced to show that they belong to the great Khasa race.

The name 'Saka' is given to a race of Skythian origin, for whom more accurate information is obtainable from Greek, Roman and Chinese writers and the researches of numismatists. Still in the Indian records there are so many allusions to them that we cannot pass them over in silence. So much had they influenced Hindu writers that in the Paurāṇik cosmogony they are given a 'dwīpa' or island to themselves, situate between Krauncha and Pushkara in the Vishnu Purāṇa, and by other records placed in a somewhat different relation which it is unnecessary to discuss here. Bhavya became king of Saka-dwīpa and its divisions were named after his sons Jalada, Kumāra, Sukumāra, Marīvaka, Kusumoda, Mandāki and Mahādruma. The mountains and rivers 'that wash away all sin' are mentioned and the castes of the different classes, the Mriga of the Brahman, the Māgadh of the Kshatriya, the Mānas of the Vaisya and the Mandaga of the Sudra and 'by these Vishnu is devoutly worshipped as the sun.' Is it only a coincidence that the name 'Kumara' (Komaro) occurs on the coins of the Indo-Skythian rulers of Kashmir, and in other early Indo-Skythian inscriptions and that the sun-god was the favourite deity of many of them? We have

1 Wilson, VII. 199. 2 Cf. the great emigration of Maga Brahmins from the trans-Indus, region to India and the Macca Kalinga Brahmins of Ptolemy in the valley of the upper Ganges.
shown how the name 'Saka' occurs in the Paurânik records,¹ the Mahâbhârata² and Manu,³ and add the following texts not before cited. The Brahma-Purâna and Hari-vansa make the descendants of Narishyanta, son of the Manu of the present period, Sakas.⁴

In the Bhavishya chapter of the Vâyu-Purâna the Sakas are mentioned as among the royal races,⁵ and in the Vishnu-Purâna it is recorded that "after the e (Andhrabhritya kings) various races will reign; as seven Abhiras, ten Gandhabhillas, sixteen Sakas, eight Yavanas, fourteen Tushâras, thirteen Mundas, eleven Maunas, who will be sovereigns of the earth 1,399 years and then eleven Pauras will be kings for 300 years. When they are destroyed the Kailakila⁶ Yavanas will be kings, the chief of whom will be Vindhyasâkki; his son will be Puranjaya; his son will be Râmehandra; his son will be Dharma, from whom will be Varânga and others (five) who will rule for 106 years. From them will proceed thirteen sons: then three Bahlîkas and Pushpamitra and others to the number of thirteen will rule over Mekala." This remarkable passage shows us the Abhiras and Gardhabhillas as predecessors of the Sakas. The Abhiras, as we have seen,⁷ lived near the Indus associated with the Baktrian Greeks and Indo-Skythian inhabitants of the same quarter. The Matsya-Purâna reads "Hûnas" for 'Maunas' and Wilford⁸ considers the Maunas or Mundas to be the same as the Mândêi of Pliny and Marundai of Ptolemy and to be also reckoned with the Hûnas. In a Jaina legend⁹ referred to hereafter Gardhabhilla is made sovereign of Ujain and was deposed by a Sâhi or Saka noble and the Kailakila Yavanas are identified with a Grecian dynasty that ruled in Vákâtaka, to the south of Haidarabad. These statements are so comprehensive that there is no necessity for further extending them by collecting the numerous similar references in other works, and we shall now proceed to examine some of the notices regarding the Baktrian Greeks and Indo-Skythians, recorded by Greek, Roman and Chinese writers.

We have now to examine more closely the history of the region to the west of the Indus and show the links in the chain of evidence that connects it with

---

the history of Kumaon. The Greek and Roman geographers\(^1\) give us the materials from which we can judge of the condition of the Indus region in the time of Alexander, and the coins of Alexander's successors afford us means by which we may fill up many details\(^3\) for which other records are wanting. On the death of Alexander in Babylon in B. C. 323, India comprised the three satrapies of the Paropamisades, the Panjáb and Sind. The first lay to the west of the Indus and extended to the highlands in the neighbourhood of the Kábul valley.\(^3\) Its name recalls to our memory the Nishadha mountains of the Pauránik geographers, and refers not only to the Hindu-kush, but also to the western prolongation in the Koh-i-Bába and Paghmán ranges.\(^4\) The inhabitants of the valleys of the Kábul, Panjshir, Nijrno, Tagao, Alingar Kunar and Swát streams to the confluence of the Kábul river with the Indus were all known as Paropamisades or Paropanisadas. Commenting on the statements of the geographers in this respect Lassen remarks that:—

"We meet between the Paropamisades and the Indus a series of independent, warlike mountaineers, under their chieftains, separated into many smaller tribes, rich in flocks and herds; they are always called Indians, though no mention is made of either institutions characteristic of India or of Brahmans. This is doubtless correct, for they are the inhabitants of the Indian frontier, not exactly regulated by Indian customs, outcasts of the soldier caste, as the Indians might term them." Ptolemy makes the Koas or Kunar stream the principal river of the Kábul valley and does not mention the Kábul or Kopheen river at all. The Koas joins the Indus and the Swát river or Suastus, from which the adjoining

\(^1\) See Further points in the history of the Greek and Indo-Skythian Kings in Bactria, Cabul and India, by Professor Lassen; ed. Roër, Calcutta, 1840. Cunningham Arch. Rep., II., 8t. References in Dowson's Elliot, II., 408. Gazetteer, N.-W. P., II., 186, s. v. "Sahranspur district." \(^3\) Coins of Alexander's successors in the East, the Greeks and Indo-Skythians, by General Cunningham. Num. Chron., Vols. 8-10. Die Nachfolger Alexanders der Grossen in Baktien und Indien von. A. von Sallet: Berlin, 1872. Wilson's Ariana Antiqua. Thomas' Princep and Miscellaneous Essays, and Ind. Ant., IX., 256, note. \(^3\) The chief cities were (1) Ortopana or Kabura or Kabul, the people of which were called Kabolites by Ptolemy: (2) Alexandria ad Caucasum or Alexandrinia Opianica identified with Opian, 36 miles to the north of Kábul: (3) Cartana or Karsana also known as Tetragonis and identified with Bégaram, 27 miles to the north of Kábul: (4) Nagara or Dionysopolis, the Bégaram near Jalsalbad: (5) Peukelaotis or Peukelas (Pusatkala), Hastinagar on the lower Swát river: (6) Eubolium or Ohiin on the Indus at its junction with the Kábul river, the Utakhands of the Chinese Buddhist pilgrims; and (7) Aornos, the ruined hill-fort of Rániágat above Nográm. \(^4\) For a good map see Proc. R. G. S. I., 110; also Cunn. Anc. Geog., 17.
The district was called Suastene, joins the Koas. Under the sources at the Koas lived the Lambagae (Lampata), the people of modern Lamghan. As we shall see, the Kafirs, to the present day, extend from Lamghan through Kafirstan to the Kashkara mountains. A recent traveller who saw the Musalmán Kushkáras and the pagan Kafirs together in Chitrá could observe no such marked distinction between them as to justify us in believing that they belonged to different races. The Kafirs, however, speak a language based on Sanskrit, whilst their Musalmán neighbours, of necessity, have admitted a number of Persian vocables. For the latter, Persian is the language of civilisation and commerce, and in the same manner as a similar influence in India has added to the Hindi vocabulary there, Persian has materially influenced the original speech of Kashkara. According to Ptolemy, the Kunar was the most westerly river of India proper, but he does not make it the western boundary, for the Lambagae who occupied the country for a whole degree to the west of that river are still reckoned as Indians. The district of Gandhara lay between the Swat river and the Indus and below the Lambagae and Suastene lay Goruaia, which may be identified with the tract known as Gugiana on the lower course of the Kunar river and Bajaur, including Jandúl and Talásh at the junction of the Landúl and Swat rivers. From the above summary we may fairly assume that the country now known as Kash-kára and inhabited by a distinct race was in the time of Alexander regarded as a part of India and was then inhabited by Aryan races however heterodox they may have been.

It is unnecessary for our purpose to notice the Indian satrapies of the Panjáb (Pentapotamia) and Sind. The other provinces of the eastern empire were Ariana and Baktriana. The former comprised Aria and Drangiana under one satrap and Gedrosia and Arachosia under a second satrap. Baktria Sogdiana and Margiana were included in Baktriana under one satrap. On the death of Alexander, his officers distributed the older territories and the new conquests amongst the most powerful of their number. Alexander’s half-brother Arrhidæus and his expected son by Roxana were declared joint sovereigns. It is worthy of remark that amongst the kings of Baktria whose coins have been discovered some twenty-eight
names occur that are also found amongst the names of the companions of Alexander and the Diadochi that have been handed down to us by the Greek historians, so that we may regard the Baktrian kings as descendants of the chiefs who accompanied Alexander in his eastern campaign. At the conference of the chiefs, Oxyartes, the father of Roxana, was appointed satrap of the Paropamisades. Eudemus was already military governor of the Panjáb and the civil rule was left in the hands of the native chiefs. Pithon, the son of Agenor, became satrap of the delta of the Indus: Stasander and Siburtius held Ariana and Baktriana was committed to Philip. An empire not yet consolidated and now broken up into so many petty satrapies soon fell into disorder. In B. C. 317 we find Eudemus, Oxyartes and Stasander, who had succeeded Stasander in Aria, assisting Eumenes in his war with the Syrian king Antigonus, whilst Siburtius and Pithon espoused the opposite side. Antigonus was successful and from B. C. 316 to the defeat¹ of his son Demetrius by Seleukus Nikator in B. C. 312 his sway was acknowledged through Ariana and Baktriana. In India, Chandragupta of Patua had taken advantage of the departure of Eudemus to make himself master of the Panjáb and perhaps also of the Kábul valley. After Seleukus had firmly established himself at Babylon, he took the first opportunity that presented itself to reconquer Ariana and Baktriana and was preparing to wrest the Indian province from Chandragupta when disturbances elsewhere led him to believe that it would be more prudent to secure the Indian prince as an ally. Accordingly Seleukus surrendered the province of India to the Paliboθran prince and appointed Megasthenes to reside at Patna as his ambassador. These friendly relations continued under the sons of both kings Amritajata (Amitrochates) and Antiochus Soter, who also sent Daimachus as his representative to the court of Patna. Antiochus Soter succeeded his father in B. C. 280 and died in B. C. 261. Antiochus II. surnamed Theos succeeded and died by poison in B. C. 246, when his son Seleukus Kallinikos became titular ruler of the east. Two years previously the Parthians had revolted and established a kingdom and an era of their own, and at the same time Diodotus proclaimed his independence in Baktria. Diodotus I. was succeeded by his son

¹ Whence the era of the Seleukidae.
Diodotus II., who reduced Agathokles, satrap of Arachosia, and Antimachus, satrap of the Paropamisades, to subjection and they acknowledged fealty to him by placing his name on their coins. These changes must all have taken place subsequent to the death of Asoka, whose edicts contain the names of Antiochus, Ptolemy, Antigonus, Magas (of Cyrene), and Alexander (of Epirus), but make no allusion to the rebel leaders. The faction of Diodotus did not long enjoy their accession to power, for in a short time a Magnesian leader by name Euthydemus succeeded in expelling Diodotus from Baktria. "We know nothing more of Baktria until we come to the eastern campaign of Antiochus III. (B. C. 212-205). After reconquering Media, Parthia and Hyrkania, Antiochus made peace with the Parthian Arsakes and proceeded to the invasion of Baktria. Euthydemus, however, was able to place himself in a position which obliged his antagonist to come to terms. He then urged that Antiochus had no reason for attempting to deprive him of his kingdom since he had never rebelled against Antiochus but had only obtained possession of Baktriana by destroying the descendants of those who had before revolted. His son Demetrius carried further messages, and the result was that Antiochus accepted the peace that was offered and cemented the friendly relations with Baktria by betrothing his daughter to the son of Euthydemus. Antiochus then left Euthydemus in possession of Baktria (B. C. 208) and proceeded in person southwards to India. There he concluded a treaty with Sophagasenus, the king of India, and in return for a number of elephants confirmed the Indian in the possession of the Paropamisades and the other Indian satrapies. Antiochus had hardly reached his headquarters when Euthydemus, deeming it to be a favourable opportunity, marched southwards and annexed the cis-Himalayan districts to Baktria. This conquest was consolidated by his son Demetrius, who is styled "king of the Indians" by Justin, and whose authority extended from the sources of the Oxus to the delta of the Indus and from the Caspian Sea to the Satlaj and along the coast from the Indus as far as Gujrát. This statement is corroborated by the number and find-spots of the coins of his father and of himself. The variations in the portrait of Euthydemus on his coins show that he must have had a long reign, not less than thirty years,
according to General Cunningham. Up to the time of Euthydemus, the Greek princes used Greek legends only on their coins, but from the accession of his son Demetrius all the Greek princes of India and Ariana, over thirty in number, used the Indian language and a character, happily termed Arian, on the reverse of their coins. This character is, according to Mr. Thomas, akin to the Phenician and is written from right to left, like all other alphabets of Semitic origin. If Mr. Thomas' suggestion be correct that in certain letters on a coin of Eukratides he has discovered the Selen-kidan year 173, or B.C. 138, and on one of Plato Sel. 147 or B.C. 165, and on one of Heliokles Sel. 183 or B.C. 128, we shall have much to alter in the present arrangement of the Greco-Bak-trian princes known from their coins alone.

We know that Demetrius was old enough in B.C. 208-7 to have been employed as his father's agent in the negotiations with Antiochus, and allowing him forty years, we have the year B.C. 167 for his death and the accession of Eukratides, who according to Mr. Thomas' discovery minted coins in B.C. 138. There is no doubt that Eukratides succeeded Demetrius in Baktria; but may have left his rival in possession for a time of the Indian provinces. Justin tells us that:—"cudem ferme tempore sicii in Parthis Mithridates ita in Bactris Eucratides magni uterque viri regnum ineunt," referring to the rise at the same time of Arsaces VI., better known as Mithridates I., king of Parthia and Eukratides. Mithridates' reigned from 173 to 136 B.C. and is represented as the avenger of the murder of Eukratides. Even granting that the coin of Eukratides bearing the supposed date B.C. 138 was the last issued in his reign, for which numismatic evidence based on a comparison of the portraiture and devices is wanting, the remaining events of Mithridates' reign, including the expedition to India and his war with the Syrian king Demetrius, can hardly be brought into two years. According to Clinton, Demetrius made his preparations in B.C. 140 and entered Parthia in July, 139, and was captured at the beginning of 138, or according to General Cunningham in B.C. 139. In either case the

1 Num.-Chron., n.s., IX., 199.  2 Ibid., III., 229.  3 J. R. A. S., IX., 1; see also Dr. Hœnle's paper in Ind. Ant., VIII., 196.  4 Lassen, Bactrian coins, &c., p. 155, and 5 A view of the history and coinage of the Parthians by J. Lindsay, p. 7: Cork, 1852.  6 Fast. Hell., III., 351.  7 Num. Chron., X., 283.
death of Eukratides took place at least two years previously, for we must allow that time to have elapsed in preparation for the Indian expedition, the stay in India, and return of Mithridates to Parthia. We must place, therefore, the death of Eukratides in B.C. 141-40, and consequently either the date on the coin is wrongly read or the mints went on coining after the death of Eukratides in his name, or the dates given as those of Demetrius' war with Mithridates are incorrect or the initial year of the Seleukid era is wrongly placed. These are points that cannot be discussed here. During his expedition to India Mithridates is said to have subdued the country between the Indus and the Hypanis, and was stopped in his onward march by news of the preparations made by the Syrian king. He returned to Parthia, annexing the old Bactrian satrapies west of Arachosia on his way, and probably left the Bactrian satrapies in the Indian region to those in whose hands he found them. Both Mithridates and Eukratides in the earlier years of their reigns were much harassed by the incursions of the Skythians and Sogdians, and it was only when he had rest from them that Eukratides was able to turn his attention to India. Whilst returning from an expedition in which he penetrated India as far as the Sutlaj he was murdered by his son, 'who had been associated with him in the sovereignty.'

The name of the parricide is nowhere given, but General Cunningham considers that he must be one with Apollodotus, who is named in several passages of importance in connection with Menander in terms that would imply that they had much to do with the extension of Greek influence in India. Indeed the coins which from numismatic evidence alone are assigned to a date following close on or contemporaneous with the coins of Eukratides indicate a marked departure from those that preceded them. The coins of the predecessors of Eukratides and even of Eukratides himself were minted by Bactrian kings, though in many cases giving bi-lingual inscriptions; but we now come to a series of kings of whom there is evidence to show that their home was in India and that any extension of their power was made westwards from India up the Kâbul valley and who were more Indian than Greek in their habits. General Cunningham would include in this category the names of Antimachus.
Nikephoros, Philoxenus Aniketos, Nikias Soter, Lysias Aniketos, Antialkidas Nikephoros, Theophilus Dikaios, and Epander Nikephoros, who are known to us solely from their medals. Undoubtedly the death of Eukratides was the signal for disorder and his lieutenants everywhere hastened to carve out kingdoms for themselves. Those in Baktria were overcome by the Sakas, but for some time the cis-Himalayan satrapies remained in the hands of the Greeks. We must place the great expeditions of Apollodotus and Menander after the death of Eukratides (i.e., after B.C. 140), the former through Gujrat and Ajmere perhaps as far as Ujain and the latter through the Panjáb to the Jumna and thence through Oudh to the city of Patna. The number of the coins of Eukratides and the variety in their find-spots shows that he must have been one of the most powerful of the Baktrian kings; and the coins of Apollodotus and Menander, his successors, on numismatic evidence are comparatively as common. Strabo states that Menander crossed the Hypanis and penetrated eastwards as far as the Isamus, and the author of the ‘Periplus of the Erythrean Sea’ notes that “even in his time” ancient drachmas were current at Barygaza (Broach) bearing in Greek characters the stamp of the kings Apollodotus and Menander who reigned after Alexander.” In the epitome of Trojus Pompeius, also, the exploits of the Indian kings Apollodotus and Menander are referred to, so that it is probably to their expeditions that much of the local knowledge of the Yavanas proper is due.

The coins bearing Greek inscriptions belonging to this time illustrate the state of the country. Most are of such a character as to indicate their common origin in time and type. The number of names show that there were several petty states and that after the death of Eukratides there was no single ruling family to whom all acknowledged allegiance. There are few indications to show the relation of these princes towards each other or the order of succession. We may perhaps, however, assign the Apollo series to Apollodotus, as we find the standing Apollo with a tripod on the reverse on his coins, which are closely imitated by Straton, Dionysius, Hippostratus and Zoilus.

1 Apollodotus is supposed to be Bhagadatta, sovereign of Márwár. Weber, Hist. Ind. Lit., p. 181. 2 Not identified: Lassen agrees that Jomna (Jumna) may have to be read: Wilford suggests the Båmganga under the name Guráma. 3 290 A.D. according to Reinaud.
who may either be successors or lieutenants of Apollodotus: all bore the title ‘Soter.’ We now come to a class of coins consisting of degraded imitations of the pure Bactrian type with barbarous names of Indian and Parthian origin, of which those of Maues may be taken as the type. We have seen that the Parthians had occupied the country to the west of Arachosia, and they now seem to have advanced eastwards to India, for several of the earlier of these barbarian names may legitimately be referred to them. The type of the legends and figures on the coins of Maues at first approaches that of the coins of Demetrius, then we have imitations of the Apollo series and again the purely barbarian style. On some there are imitations of the horse and bow and quiver of the Parthian coinage.1 Connected with the medals of Maues are those of Azes, which closely imitate the former, and from their number and the localities in which they are found show that he must have attained to considerable influence. We have coins of Azes with the names of his generals Aspapati and Asvavarma: a Vonones with Spalabara and with Spalagdama, also a Pakores and Abdagasses, all of which indicate a Parthian origin.

It is difficult to decide when the use of the Greek language ceased in upper India, for we learn that the Indian embassy2 to Augustus (B. C. 22-20) brought with them a document in Greek, written on parchment and purporting to be a communication from Porus or

---

1 General Cunningham suggests that Maues was a leader of a tribe of Daeo Skythians called Moda and represented by the Mers of the present day: Arch. Rep., II., 59. The Meds are mentioned by Ibn Khurdaliba as robbers at the end of ninth century: Dowson’s Elliot, I., 15. There is much to be said in favour of an early Parthian settlement in the Indus delta. Tārāmātha in a curious passage (La Comme’s Vasillief, p. 51) tells us that in the time of the Magadha King Darmachandra, the Turushka King was ruling in Kashmir and at Multan and Lahore the Persian (Parthian) King Hunimanta, who attacked Darmachandra and subdued Magadha and demolished its temples. The priests fled and Darmachandra died and was succeeded by his son Konakachandra; who found himself a tributary of the Turushka. His cousin Buddhapakesha, who reigned in Benares, slew Hunimanta in battle and restored the law of Buddha, and under this king the Nalanda temple was destroyed and with it the records of the Mahāyāna school. Although there is no evidence to show that Nāharpāṇa of Gujrāt was a Parthian as supposed by some (J. B. R. A. S., VIII., 233; IX., 1, 139). Gotamiputra takes credit for his victories over Sakas, Yavanas and Pañhavas or Parthians (Pārthavas), and amongst them the successor of Nāharpāṇa. The author of the ‘Periplo of the Erythrean Sea’ distinctly remarks of the Indus delta that the Indus had seven mouths, on the principal of which was Barbarikon, a trading seaport. ‘Before this town lies a small islet and behind in the interior is Minnagar, the metropolis of Skythia, which is governed however by Parthian princes who are perpetually at strife among themselves, expelling each the other’ (Ind. Ant., VIII., 139). Arrian (150 A.D.) places the Astakenoi and Assakenoi to the west of the Indus as far up as the Kābul river, and these were formerly subject to Assyria and then after a period of Median rule submitted to the Persians (Ibid., IV., 85).

2 J. R. A. S., XVII., 809.
Phor as he is called in the local records. We know that writing on parchment was not an Indian custom, though it is reported of the people of An-sik (Parthia) as early as B.C. 120 by a Chinese author,¹ and therefore we may reasonably identify Porus with one of these barbarian Parthian kings. Again, according to Apollonius of Tyana, Greek was spoken in the Panjáb even by villagers² up to the middle of the first century after Christ. Our estimate of the state of the country west of the Indus is further confirmed by the statement of the Chinese author regarding Sarangia that the inhabitants were very numerous and were continually electing petty sovereigns, and that therefore Parthia took the country under its protection. There is nothing to show that at this time (first century before Christ) there was one paramount power in upper India, but that on the other hand there were numerous petty principalities of Bactrian or Parthian origin is abundantly proved from the coins. These gradually show less and less of Greek influence until we come to the Kadphises series, but here we may conclude our researches into the history of the Yavanas pure and simple, for we can identify the author of the Kadphises group with the immigrant Skythians and Turks. We shall, however, add the references to the Yavanas in the local records to complete the subject.

In the *Vishnu Purána* the Yavanas are said to be sprung from Turvasu and, as we have seen,³ are placed to the west of Bhárata. They occur between the Melechchhas and Chinas in the list of the Mahábhárata,⁴ and are also one of the nations that Sagara was about to destroy when prevented by Vasishtha. In the chapter on the future kings of India in the *Vishnu Purána*, eight kings of the Yavanas are placed between the Sakas and Tusháras⁵ and the Váyu gives them a reign of 82 years, and there was also a dynasty of Kilakila Yavanas.⁶ Some records call them Yavanas in religion, manners and polity, and the *Bhágavata* mentions the names of five of their princes Bhútananda, Vangiri, Sisunandi, Yasonandi and Praviraka. The Váyu makes Pravíra, a son of Vidhyasákti, who reigned in

Kāñchanaşpuri. The founder of the Sunga dynasty in Magadha is said to have engaged in conflict with the Yavanas on the Indus.\(^1\) In a passage of the Mahābhārata translated by Wilson\(^2\) it is stated that "all countries have their laws and their gods; the Yavanas are wise and pre-eminently brave." They are mentioned in the edicts of Asoka and in the Allahabad inscription of the Guptas. Pāṇini refers to 'the writing of the Yavanas' in illustration of one of his grammatical rules, but we are not in a position to fix his date.\(^3\) But it is from their influence on the writings of the Hindus, and especially on the works devoted to astronomy, that the extent of their relations with India may be gathered. The Indian astronomers write of the Yavanas as their teachers.\(^4\) Varāha-mihira, who lived in 504 A. D., gives not only the entire list of the Greek names of the zodiacal signs and planets, but he also directly employs several of the latter side by side with the Indian names as well as translations from the Greek of technical terms. It is unnecessary to continue our search after the allusions to the Yavanas in the Hindu records, and we shall merely add the following references collected by General Cunningham.\(^5\) In the *Milinda-prāna*, or 'Questions of Milinda,' there\(^6\) is a long disputation between Nāgārjuna and the Yavana Milinda, raja of Sāgal. The time and place lead us to identify this prince with the Greek Menander, raja of Sākala or Sangala\(^7\) in the Panjāb between the Chināb and the Ravi. Dr. Kern quotes a fragment of the *Gārgi-sañhita* of the astronomer Garga written about B.C. 50, in which after mentioning Sālisuka, one of the Maurya princes who died in B. C. 200, Garga says:—"Then the viciously valiant Yavanas, after reducing Sāketa, Panchāla, Mathura, will reach (or take) Kusumadhwaja (Pali-bothra), * * * Pushpapura (Palibothra) being reached (or taken), all provinces will be in disorder assuredly." Sāketa is Oudh, Panchāla we have already explained,\(^8\) Muthra was the chief city of the Surasenas and Palibothra is Patna, the city of Chandragupta, Asoka and Sophagasenus, with whom the Baktrian kings had held friendly relations. Another passage, referring to the Greeks in India, is taken from Patanjali's commentary on Pāṇini by Dr.

---

1 Wilson Hind. Theatre, I., 347.  
5 Num. Chron., X., 224.  
8 P. 360.
Goldstücker, where he says:—"The Yavana besieged Ayodhya; the Yavana besieged the Madhyamikas." Here Ayodhya is the sacred Ajudhya in Oudh and the Madhyamikas are the people of the middle-country (Madhyadesa) including the Gangetic districts south of Panchála and north of the delta. Patanjali gives the word 'besieged' in the imperfect tense as an illustration of the rule that this tense should be used "when the fact related is out of sight, notorious, but could be seen by the person who uses the verb;" so that, as observed by Dr. Goldstücker, it may be considered Patanjali was contemporary with the event. Now Patanjali lived towards the middle of the second century before Christ, a date which will correspond very well with that to be assigned to Menander on other grounds. In the lists of the kings of Magadha we have the name Pushpamitra, who lived between B.C. 178 and 142. In the Mālavikāgīnīmitra of Bhavabhūti, Pushpamitra, prince of Vidyasa, a kingdom lying north of the Vindhyas (Builsa), before performing the great Asvamedha rite, is said to have let loose a horse that it might wander free over the earth for twelve months. The horse was attended by a guard under the command of his grandson Vasumitra and the party was attacked by some Yavana horsemen on the south side of the Sindh river, which is identified by General Cunningham with the Sindhu river in Narwar. Tārānāth, the Tibetan Buddhist historian, also states that the first invasion of India by foreigners took place during the reign of Pushpamitra and five years before his death, so that the great expedition of Menander in which he overran Oudh and the Gangetic valley as far as Patna cannot have been earlier than B.C. 147. From all these indications we cannot assign to the Yavanas any direct connection with the Kumaun Himalayas, notwithstanding the statements of respectable authorities to the contrary.

We have now to return once more to Baktria and to the accounts that have survived of the tribes inhabiting the countries in its neighbourhood.

1 Pāṇini, p. 230.  
2 Wilson's Works  
3 See further Dr. Rajendra- 
Ila Mitra's essay. 'On the supposed identity of the Greeks with the Yavanas of the Sanskrit writers' in J. A. S. Ben., XI. III., 2, 246, in which he considers the term 'Yavana' was the name of a country and of its people to the west of Kaushār which may have been Arabia, Persia, Media or Assyria, probably the last: subsequently it became the name of all those places and again of all trans-Indus casteless races, including the Baktrian Greeks of Kābul, but at no time referre exclusively to the Greeks of Ionia; and with it read Weber's article in Ind. Ant., IV., 244.
Euthydemus in his negotiations with the Syrian king Antiochus III. (B.C. 208) urged amongst other matters that "those wandering tribes who were spread in great numbers along the borders of the province were alike dangerous to them both, and that if ever they should gain admittance into it, the whole country must inevitably fall into barbarism." Sixty years previously the Parthians had won their independence and were steadily preparing for the encroachments which Mithridates afterwards made on the southern provinces of Baktria, though they too had to contend with barbarous foes from the east. We fortunately have several allusions to the inroads of the Skythians in the classical authors. Pliny² writes:—

"Beyond this river (the Oxus) are the peoples of Scythia. The Persians have called them by the general name of Sacæ, which properly belongs to only the nearest nation of them. The more ancient writers give them the name of Aramii. * * The multitude of these Scythian nations is quite innumerable: in their life and habits they much resemble the people of Parthia. The tribes amongst them that are better known are the Sacæ, the Massagetæ, Dahæ, &c. (19 names). Indeed upon no subject that I know of are there greater discrepancies among writers from the circumstances, I suppose, of these nations being so extremely numerous and of such migratory habits."

In the epitome³ of Trogus Pompeius it is stated that the Sarancæ and the Asiæni, Scythian tribes, took possession of Sogdiana and Baktria, and as this statement comes immediately before the allusion to the Indian exploits of Apollodorus and Menander, we may consider it as occurring immediately before their time. He further informs us that the Tochari received their kings from the Asiæni, so that the two names must refer to one tribe. Curtius⁴ states that the Skythians and Dahæ were the first to invade India. Strabo⁵ writes that:—

"The Macedonians gave the name of Caucasus to all the mountains which follow after Ariana, but among the barbarians, the heights and the northern parts of the Paropamisus were called Emoda and mount Imaus: and other names of this kind were assigned to each portion of this range. On the left hand opposite to these parts are situate the Scythian and nomadic nations occupying the whole of the northern side. Most of the Skythians, beginning from the Caspian Sea, are called Dahæ Skythæ, and those situated more to the east Massagetæ and Saka: the rest have the common appellation Skythians, but each separate tribe has its peculiar name. All or the greatest part of them are nomads. The best known tribes are those who deprived the Greeks of Baktrianæ, the Asii, Pasiani (Asiæni ?), Tochari and Sakarauli, who came from the country on the

other side of the Jaxartes opposite the Sakas and Sogdiani, and which country was also occupied by Sakas: some tribes of the Dehav are surnamed Aparni, some Xanthii, others Pissuri.\(^1\)

Arrian\(^2\) identifies the Skythians to the north of the Jaxartes with the Sakas. Amongst these names we may refer the Asii and Pasiani to the same tribe as the Asiani of Trogus, and as this tribe belonged to the Tochari, there remains only the Saranæ of Trogus, Sagaraunæ of Ptolemy, and Sakarauni of Strabo—all synonymous with the Sakas or Sús. The Chinese annals clearly show that the Yueh-ti or Tochari and the Sús were the only two barbarian tribes in this neighbourhood at this time.

During the reigns of Mithridates I. of Parthia and Demetrius of Baktria, the Skythians were continually making incursions from the east and were with difficulty repelled. Phrahates, the successor of Mithridates, called in their aid against the Syrians, but the Skythians arrived too late to take part in the war and the Parthian king refused to pay them or lead them against some other foe. They accordingly commenced to ravage Parthia itself and Phrahates fell in battle against them (in B.C. 126), in which his Greek mercenaries joined the enemy.\(^3\) These Skythians can be none other than the Sakarauni branch of the Sús and the last of them to leave Ta-hia for the south, for we find that Artabanus II., uncle and successor of Phrahates, died a few years afterwards in a fight\(^4\) with the Tochari, who must have been a branch of the Yueh-ti, the successors of the Sús in Baktria. The Sakas are further mentioned as giving the name Sakastone to the Paraitekene district in Drangia (or the valley of the Helmand), and their capital city was Sigal, now identified with Sekula, one of the principal towns of Seistan.\(^5\) From the above we learn that the Sakas were the principal tribe in the earlier immigrations of the Skythians and that to many Scythæ and Sakæ were synonymous terms; at the same time they were divided into a number of clans, each having its own name, sometimes allied and sometimes at war with each other.

---

\(^1\) See Cunningham, Arch. Rep., II., 47, for his speculation as to the modern representatives of these tribes. He connects the Aparni with the Abars (p. 29-49); the Xanthis with the Æta (p. 54), and the Pissuri with the Paralate (p. 60).  
\(^2\) Bk. IV., 1, 4.  
\(^3\) Lindsay's Parthia, p. 13; Rawlinson's Sixth Monarchy, p. 109.  
\(^4\) "Scythæ depopulata Parthia, in patriam revertuntur. Sed Artabanus bello Thogarisen illato, &c." Here the Skythians are distinguished from the Tochari, who are the Tusharas or Tukharas of the Puranas.  
\(^5\) J. R. A. S., IX., 19.
other, and that wave after wave of these clans poured across the Altai, pushing forward those that had preceded them. Our further illustrations are from Chinese sources.

In the Chinese works Ts'ien Han-shu, and S'hi-ki or ‘Historical record,’ we possess most valuable information on the state of the countries adjoining Baktria from the third century before Christ. Mr. Kingsmill informs us that according to the unanimous tradition of the Chinese, the tribes of the founders of the Chinese power under the name Chows were driven from their original seats in the land of Ban by barbarous tribes known as Diks, later on called Hinyuk or Hündjuk. Allied with these were the Himwans, the Hien-yun of modern Chinese. Both of these tribes are by the earlier writers of the Han dynasty connected with the Jung of the Chow authors, a name which by the time of the Hans had become changed to Nú in the title of the Hiung-nú. From other sources we learn that a race called Yueh-ti occupied the provinces of Kansuh and the Tangut country to the east of the desert of Gobi in the third century before Christ, and that they were harassed by the Hiung-nú and fled before them westwards. The Ts'ien Han-shu records that in B. C. 221, ‘the Tung-hú had become a formidable power and the Yueh-tí were in a flourishing condition. The Shen-yu of the Hiung-nú was named Tow-man. The latter meeting with a reverse in his contest with Ts'in moved northward.’ Here mention is made of only three nations the Tung-hú, Hiung-nú and Yueh-tí. In B. C. 206, MaoJün, the Shen-yu of the Hiung-nú, engaged in hostilities with the Yueh-tí, whom he defeated. In B. C. 176, in consequence of reprisals on the part of the Chinese, the Hiung-nú invaded and occupied the country of the Yueh-tí, while Laulan, Wúsün, Húki and twenty-six neighbouring states submitted to them. The king of the Yueh-tí was taken prisoner and his barbarous conquerors made a drinking-cup from his skull.

From the Shi-ki of Szema Tsieu we learn that in B. C. 138 Djang-kien, Marquis of Po-wang, was sent as an envoy from China.

---

1 Wylie, J. Anth. Inst., Vols. 2, 3, 5, 9. 2 The founders of the modern empire of China. 3 Me-te of deGuignes. 4 Elsewhere it is said that Len-lan and Gu-sze have walled cities adjacent to the great salt marsh which lay to the east of Khotan and west of Kansuh. 5 J. R. A. S., X. (N. S.), 994, by Kingsmill, whose translation differs in some essential respects from that given by M. de Guignes in ‘Histoire de l’Academie Royale des inscriptions et Belles lettres,’ XXV., ii., 17, 1759.
to the Yueh-ti, to induce them to make cause against the common enemy, the Hiung-nú. Being compelled to pass through the Hiung-nú settlements along the northern face of the Kuen-lun, Kien was recognized and taken prisoner and detained there for ten years. When he succeeded in making his escape he travelled westwards for ten days and arrived at Da-wan, then occupied by the Yueh-ti; but not progressing in his negotiations, was sent on by the high road to Gang-gu. This latter country adjoined the territory occupied by the greater Yueh-ti, whose king Sze had been killed by the Hiung-nú and they had set up his heirs in his stead. The Yueh-ti had overcome Ta-hia and taken up their residence in that country, which was rich and fertile, and it is recorded that "they would rather be exterminated than submit to the Hiung-nú."

From the Yueh-ti, Kien went on to Ta-hia and remained a year at Bingnan-shan. He was desirous of returning by Tibet, but was again captured by the Hiung-nú and detained until the death of their Shen-yu in B.C. 126, when he escaped to China and in B.C. 122 gave this interesting account of his travels.¹ From this record we know that in B.C. 128 the greater Yueh-ti had already occupied Ta-hia or Baktria. From other sources we learn that the Yueh-ti had found another named tribe named Su already settled in those countries and drove them to occupy the country to the north-east of Ferghana and the Jaxartes.

In these Sús we recognise the Sahas of the Puránas and the Sakaruli, Sagaranúkë,² Sarunæ and Saces of classical authors. From the Marquis Po-wang we learn that they had been driven out of Kashgá and out of Tahia before B.C. 128. The Sus pushed onwards and occupied Kipin, a country which is often named in the Chinese annals and is also incidentally noticed by the traveller Fah-Hian. From a comparison of all the accounts, Kipin lay along the upper part of the sources of the

¹ Wylie, J. Anth. Inst., IX., 59. ² Cunningham derives this name from the Sagar, or iron-headed mace, which was their national weapon. Arch. Rep., II., 33, 42. We read that Demetrius, son of Euthydemus, who certainly lived in the first half of the second century before Christ, carried his arms into the country of the Suraus (Seres) and Phruri (Parna, Phruri). Some refer the Phruri to the Grinei Skythians of Ptolemy, who held Yarkand, and identify the Suraus with the people of Su-le, an old name of Kashgá. According to Ptolemy the Saces lived to the south of the Grinei Skythians, and this allocation of the tribes agrees well with the Chinese accounts. These Seres and Phruri are mentioned elsewhere with the Tochari and V. de St. Martin connects the Phruri with the Parnaus of the Indian records; see Num. Chron., IX., 148.
Kábul river and is the Hu-phi-ua of Hwen Thsang (Yuen-chwang). It appears to have varied so much in its extent as to represent an ethnographical rather than a geographical term. The Yueh-ti were in turn pressed by the Aussuns or Oussans, probably the people of Wu-sun1 to the north-east of Da-wan described hereafter, and who following in the wake of Sús, occupied Tahia.

That the Yueh-ti were of the same race (not the same tribe) as the Sús may be considered probable from the fact that we have no record of there being other than three well-known nations of Skythians in this neighbourhood at this time: that the Yueh-ti tribes occur with the Sakarauli, a presumably distinct Saka name in the enumeration of Strabo, and that they are included with the Sús under the name Saka by most classical authors. Tahia, on its conquest by the Yueh-ti, was distributed into five governments or provinces, viz., Hieou-mi, Chouang-mo, Kouei-chouang, Hy-tun and Tou-mi. So soon as the Yueh-ti had settled down in Baktria, one branch crossed into Kipin or Ariana and drove the Sús from the Kábul valley into the valley of the Helmand. The portion of Kipin annexed by the Yueh-ti was called Kao-fu2 (Kábul) and its people are described as like the Indians in their habits and character. They were more merchants than soldiers, and before the conquest of the Yueh-ti, one part belonged to Parthia, one to the kings of India and one to the kings of Kipin. The conquest of Kipin was effected by Khiu-tsi-li, the chief of the Kouei-chouang or Gu-shan tribes, a name of which we have traces in the city of Gu-sze near the great salt marsh to the west of Tangut. Khiu-tsi-li reduced the leaders of the other four tribes3 to submission, declared himself king and imposed the name of his own tribe on the entire nation.4 The conquest of Kipin took place about B. C. 38, for we

1 Kang-keu was the Chinese name for Shighman or Sogdiana, which appears to have been by Sakas (here Yuch-ti) as late as B. C. 40, and who were then at feud with the Wu-sun: Jour. Anth. Inst., V., 48. 2 Ma-twun-lin notes:—
3 The kingdom of Kao-fu was known in the time of the Han. It is situated to the south east of the great Yue-chie. It is likewise a considerable state. Their manners resemble those of the inhabitants of India and they are gentle and humane. They carry on much commerce with India. India, Kopshne (Kábul) and the country of the Aes are three kingdoms which are conquered by force and lost by weakness: Ind. Ant., IX., 15. 4 DeGuignes has the names Hieou-mi, Choam-ni, Kuei-choam, Ilie-tun and Kao-fu, which last was established on the conquest of Kipin. Klaproth gives the names in the text. 4 Klaproth's Tableaux historiques de l'Asie, p. 133: Paris, 1826: Lassen's Baktrian Coins, p. 168. Other names for the Gu-shan tribe are Kuei-choam, Kwái-chang Gau-chang. The earlier coins of Kozoulo-Kadhphises bear the name of the Greek king Hermaeus on the obverse which would lead us to suppose that he supplanted a Greek ruler in Kábul at least.
read that it occurred a century after the deputation of Djang-kien to the Yueh-ti, who were then in Kashgar. Khiv-tsi-bi died at the age of eighty and was succeeded by his son Yen-kao-chang, who may be identified with the Hima-kadphises of the coins. Before examining these coins we shall give the geographical notices of the Chinese annals, which in every respect confirm the results arrived at independently from our examination of western records.

Szema Tsien, the Chinese author to whom we are indebted for Geography according to the account of the embassy of Kien, furnishes us in his Shi-ki with further geographical indications which shed much light on the political relations of this period. According to him Da-wan\(^1\) lay to the south-west of the Hiung-nú territory and due west from China some 10,000 li. It had seventy subordinate towns and a population of about 100,000. "The soldiers use the bow and spear and shoot from horse-back. To the north lies Gang-gu; west, the country of the Yueh-ti; south-west, that of the Tochari\(^2\); north-east, Wú-sun; east, Han-mow and Yu-tien.\(^3\) Wú-sun lies north-east of Da-wan about 2,000 li. Its people are herdsmen and of similar manners to the Hiung-nú. Its bowmen are 10,000 in number and they are daring and quarrelsome. Formerly they were subject to the Hiung-nú, but now they are in a prosperous condition. They marry their near relations and refuse to pay homage at court.

Gang-gu\(^4\) lies to the north-west of Da-wan. It is not so large as Da-wan, but is as large as the country of the Yueh-ti and the manners and customs of the people are similar. It can muster 80,000 to 90,000 bowmen. On the south it has relations with the Yueh-ti and on the east with the Hiung-nú. Im-tsai\(^5\) (or Im-tsai ar-ghan) lies to the north-west of Gang-gu some 2,000 li; it is as large and its customs are alike. It can muster 100,000 bowmen; it overlooks the great shoreless marsh reaching to the northern sea. Da-yue-tí\(^6\) (or the country of the great Yueh-ti) lies west of Da-wan 2,000 or 3,000 li. The Yueh-ti dwell north of the Gwai-shui.\(^7\) To their south is Dahia\(^8\); west, An-sih; north, Gang-gu. They are herds- men and nomads with customs similar to those of the Hiung-nú. They can muster 100,000 to 200,000 bowmen. In former times

\(^1\) Yárkand \(^2\) On the upper affluents of the Oxus. \(^3\) Khoten.
\(^4\) Part of Ferghana \(^5\) On the Syr-darya. \(^6\) The Dahae north of the Oxus.
\(^7\) Oxus. \(^8\) Balkh.
they were rash and under-rated all accommodation. The Hiung-nú attacked and routed them; Shen-yu the Lao-shang killed their king and made a drinking cup out of his skull. Formerly the Yueh-ti dwelt between Dun-bwang and Ki-lín, when they were invaded by the Hiung-nú, they were compelled to emigrate to a distance. They passed Da-wan, invaded Da-hia on the west and overcame it. Following the course of the Dú-gwai-shui they fixed their royal residence on its north bank. A smaller portion of the tribe which was unable to accompany them sought the protection of the Giangs of Nan-shan: this branch is known as the smaller Yueh-ti.”

“An-sik lies west of the Yueh-ti about 1,000 li. The country is open, the land tilled. It produces both rice and wheat. Distilled liquors are used. Its cities are like those of Da-wan; those dependent on it, large and small, are about one hundred in number. The extent of the country is about 1,000 li square. It is a very powerful state. It overlooks the Gwai. There are marts where the people and merchants meet to buy and sell. Carriages and ships are used for the transport of merchandise to neighbouring countries perhaps 1,000 li off. Silver is used in coins and the coins bear the likeness of their kings. When the king dies, the image is immediately changed for that of the new ruler. They write on skins of parchment and make books of it. To the west of An-sik is Tiaou-chi: north, Im-tsei-ar-gan. Tiaou-chi lies about 1,000 li to the west of An-sik. It overlooks the western sea and is an agricultural country producing rice. There are great birds there producing eggs like water-jars. The inhabitants are very numerous. They are continually electing petty sovereigns. In consequence An-sik has taken it under its protection, but treats it as a foreign country. The country is good but disorderly. Da-hia lies upwards of 2,000 li south-west of Da-wan, to the south of the Gwai-shui. Generally speaking the country is open. It has cities and dwellings similar to Da-wan. It has no supreme sovereign; each city and town elects its own petty ruler. Its soldiers are weak and cowards in fight. The people are good as merchants. The Yueh-ti attacked it from the west and completely

---

1 Now Sha chan in Kansuh. 2 Tibetans. 3 Parthia. 4 Sarangia. 5 The lac’s egg. Yule’s Marco Polo., II., 346. 6 Oxua.
subdued it. The population is numerous, probably over a million. Its capital is called Lam-shi-ching. There are marts for the purchase and sale of merchandise. To its east lies Shin-dub. Djang-kien said that when he was in Da-hia he saw keung bamboo staves and shah (Sze-chuen) clothes. He asked whence they were obtained. The people of Da-hia said their traders went to the Indian markets. India is distant from Da-hia to the south-east about (several) 1,000 li. Generally speaking the country is settled and resembles Da-hia. Its climate is damp and hot. Its people use elephants in war.” Thus ends this valuable succinct record.

Returning to the coins we find amongst those imitating apparently Arsacidan models an unique one bearing on the reverse the legend—

tugannvvtuos Hgaov Saka koggavon—of the Saka king Heraus.

The last word ‘koggavon’ is by some translated ‘ruler’ and is connected by them with the Homeric Greek koigavos, but besides the great improbability of a Homeric title being revived for the first time by a barbarian king, we have evidence to show that the word is to be connected with the tribal name of the king. On the coins of Kadaphes and Kadphises,7 we have the forms ‘choransu,’ ‘korso,’ and ‘korsea’ in Greek, instead of ‘korrano’ and Kadphises and Kadaphes.

‘kushan,’ ‘khushan’ and ‘gushan’ in Arian; and on those of Kanerki, Ooerki and Basdeo it occurs as ‘korano’ on coins and as ‘gushan’ in inscriptions.

In the Mániykála inscription of Kanishka so often quoted in these discussions, Kanishka or Kanerki is styled “The increaser of the dominion of the Gushans” (Mahárája Kanishka Gushanasas somvardhaka), and in the Panjtar inscription we have a second reference to a Gushan prince (Maharayasa Gushanas). It is also worthy of remark that the word ‘korano’ occurs only on those coins where the Greek ‘basileus basileor’ or ‘king of kings’ of the

1 Darapsa, Zariaspa. 2 Shin-toh in the Han annals; Töen-chub in Ma Tuanlin. 3 Also called Cheng Köen, the Te-hang-kiong of de Guiscas. 4 The name of a hill in Sze-chuen producing bamboo with long joints and solid hearts known as male bamboo in India. 5 Thomas in J. R. A. S., IX., 26. 6 Some connect the ‘Su’ in ‘Su-Hermus’ and in ‘Choransu’ with the Sás or Sakas and the name Hermus with Heraus. 7 Thomas’ Princis, I., 146. 8 J. R. A. S., XX., 233. 9 Arch., Rep., V., 61. 10 The legend on the coin of Heraus may appear to be an exception, but his coin does not bear a title equivalent to ‘king of kings, but merely that of sattrap or gurabos.
Greek legends is rendered by the Skythic equivalent 'rao nano rao. We have traces of the latter still in the old Indo-Skythic province of Gujrāt in the title 'Ra of Junagarh'; in Gilgit, where the old rulers had the title 'Ra' and the old name of which is 'Sargin'; throughout Rajputāna and the Dakhin in the title 'Rao;' in most Rajput clans in the titles 'Rao' and 'Rāwat,' whilst the head man of Spiti is still called 'None,' and the honorific title 'Naṇa' is common amongst the Marāthas. It is not clear whether we are to regard the word 'korana' as purely the name of a tribe or a ruling family and the equivalent of 'Gusāhan' in the inscriptions or the name current in the tribe for a king or ruler and added on in the same way as 'Soter,' 'Dikaios,' 'Theos' and the like. In any case it was a title characteristic of the Yueh-ti tribe and may possibly be still found in the name 'Rono' applied to the most honoured clan in the Hindu-kush.

If the conjecture that Hima (Ooemo) Kadphises is one with Yen-kiao-chang be accepted we may assign to his father and the founder of the dynasty, Khin-ṭsi-hi, the coins bearing the legend kozola-kadaphes choransu sathou,' and on the reverse the legend—'kushanga yathuasa kujula-kaphinha sachcha dharmapidusa,' 'the coin of the Kushang king Kujula-kaphisa, the crown of the true dharma.' Have we here the Kushang clan of the Ya-tha or Ye-tha, a name by which the Yuch-ti were known later on? On a coin of Ooemo Kadphises we have the Baktro Pāli legend—Maharajasa Rajadhirajasa sarva-logu-twaraasa Muliswarasa Kathpisa—'Of the Mahāraja, supreme king, lord over all people, the great lord, Kathpisa.' In Kujula-kaphisa or Kozola-kadaphes we have the representative of the Kushang tribe; and if 'korana' be taken to have the same meaning as 'kushang' we have further members of the same family in the Turushkas of Kushmir—'Rao nano rao Kanerki korano,' 'Rao nano rao Ooverki korano,' and 'Rao nano rao Bazodeo korano.' Heraus the Saka also bears the title 'korana' and he was certainly not of the Gushan clan of the

---

1 Ind. Ant., III., 103. 2 Jesalmer, Bundi, Kachh, &c. 3 Bid- dulph's 'Tribes of the Hindoo-kosh,' p. 34. 4 Thomas' Prinsep, II., 238 and J. A. S. Ben. 5 M. Klaproth in his 'Tableaux historiques' writes (p. 156):—Un auteur Chinois nous apprend que Ye-ta était originellement le nom de la famille de leurs rois et qu'il est devenu plus tard celui de toute la nation; on le prononce aussi Ye-ta. Leur empire s'écroula dans le septième siècle et les Ye-ta devinrent tributaires des Turcs. 6 We have also a Kozola-kadaphes who may be identified with this Kozola-kadaphes, but both names are read distinctly.
Yueh-ti. We may therefore suggest that the tribal name gradually became the title of the ruler, whether the family belonged to the Gushan clan of the Tochari or not, and that it was conferred on the governors of provinces and on such of the conquered race as had submitted, but were allowed to retain their possessions.

Hima Kadphises or Yen kiao-chang enlarged and consolidated the conquests of his father and extended his influence as far as the valley of the Ganges to a distance of 3,000 li from the Indus and there reduced the country of Tim-li and its capital Chao-ki-ching, neither of which has as yet been identified. The coins which according to numismatic evidence follow those of Kadphises and which are known as the Kanerki-group bring us to a series of kings who are known to us by their coins and inscriptions and are also mentioned in contemporary records. Their names occur in a number of inscriptions in the Indian-Pali alphabet and dated in an unknown era which were discovered at Mathura (Mut'ta):—

Kanishka—Mahārāja Kanishka, S. 9, 28.

Huvishka—Mahārāja Rājātirāja devaputra Huvishka, S. 33, 39, 47, 48.

Vāsudeva—Mahārāja Rājātirāja devaputra Vāsu, S. 44; and Mahārāja Rājātirāja Shāli Vāsudeva, S. 87, also with dates 44 and 98.

Many others with varying dates, but without mentioning the name of any king, were found in the same locality. We have named inscriptions in the Baktrian-Pāli character of Kanishka (Bahāwalpur) dated in San. 11, and again as 'Mahārāja Kanishka Gushanavasa samvardinera,' dated in San. 18, at Mānikiyāla, and one of Huvishka as 'Mahārāja Rājātirāja Huvishka,' dated in San. 51, on the Wardak vase: in the first and third the Greek names of the months are used. Besides the we have the inscriptions found by Mr. Löwenthal at Zeda in the Yusufzai district in which occurs the words 'Kanishkahā Rāja Gandhāra' of Kanishka Rāja of Gandhāra. There is also a Taxila record in


which the Satrap Liako-Kusuluko speaks of the “78th year of the great king, the great Moga, on the fifth day of the month Panaemus.” The Takht-i-Bahi inscription of the Parthian king Gundophares is translated\(^1\) by General Cunningham:—“In the 26th year of the great king Guduphara in the samvat year three and one hundred \((100 + 3)\), in the month Vaisákha, on the 4th day.” Mr. Thomas would apply the Seleukidan era to the dates given in the Mathura inscriptions of Kanishka and Huvishka.\(^2\) This era commenced in the year B.C. 312, and the difference is provided for by assuming the use of a cycle of 100 years, or as appears to be the custom in the north-west Himalaya, the suppression of hundreds in the dates in common use. Thus in Kashmir,\(^3\) the year 24 is given as the date of the composition of the \textit{Itäja Turangini} by Kalhana, but this really stands for 4,224 of the Kashmir era which began in B.C. 3,076. According to this scheme San. 9 of Kanishka’s Mathura inscription represents B.C. 2-3. General Cunningham\(^4\) and Professor Dowson\(^5\) apply the Vikramaditya era to these dates, which brings out B.C. 48 for the same date, and Mr. Ferguson\(^6\) assigns these dates to the Saka era, which would give us 87 A.D., and for reasons given hereafter we accept this as most in accordance with facts. The Huvishka of the inscriptions has been identified with the Oorke of coins and the Kanishka of the inscriptions with the Kanerki of the coins; and in place of the Gushka or Jushka of the Kashmir chronicles we have Basdeo or Devaputra Vásudeva, the Śahī Vásudeva, a title reproduced in the Sahānu-Sahī of the Kālaka legend noticed hereafter and in the Sahānu-Sahī of the Gupta inscription on the Allahabad pillar. The legend on the obverse of the coins of these Turnushkas is the same throughout, \emph{‘Rao na na rao — korano,’} merely differing in the name and the legend on the reverse. The indications derived from a study of the coins further show us that Buddhism was the favoured religion under Kanishka. The coins of Huvishka exhibit traces of the popularity of the Saiva forms, the worship of the sun-god and Iranian beliefs; but Basdeo’s coins are almost

\(^{1}\) Arch. Rep., II., 59; V., 69; Ind. Ant. IX., 258.

\(^{2}\) Bactrian coins and Indian dates, J. R. A. S. IX., 1.

\(^{3}\) Dr. Bühler on Kashmir era, J. B. B. R. A. S., XIII., (1877).

\(^{4}\) Arch. Rep. III., 29; V., 60.

\(^{5}\) J. R. A. S. V

\(^{6}\) J. R. A. S. XIV. 81: XII., 259, which contains a valuable summary of the facts regarding the Saka and Vikrama eras; see also his Hist. Ind. Architecture, App. A.
entirely confined to the Okro (ogra) or terrible form of Siva clothed in Indian fashion with trident and noose (pasa) and attended by the bull Nandi. As Pasupati, Siva is still supreme in the hills from Garhwal to Nepal. The general result shows that, contrary to tradition, these princes were not synchronous.\(^1\) Huvishka's date overlaps the earliest date of Vasudeva by a few years, if the latter has been correctly read; but we cannot reconcile Kanishka's dates with those of Vasudeva if they were brothers and contemporaries. We may reasonably hold that all that this legend intends is that they all belonged to the same race or family.

The 'Chronicles of Kashmir' give us the names of Asoka, Jaloka and Damodara and, proceeds\(^5\) with the narrative thus:—

"Ensuite régnerent trois rois nommés Hushka, Jushka et Kanishka qui bâtirent trois villes designées par le nom de chacun d'eux. Jushka, roi vertueux construisit un vihara et les villes de Jushkapura et de Jayawami. Ces rois issus de la race des Turushkas étaient cependant protecteurs de la vertu. Ils bâtirent dans Sushka kahatra et dans d'autres contrées, des collèges des temples de Buddha et d'autres édifices. Pendant le long règne de ces rois le pays de Kashmir fut, la plupart de temps, entre les mains des Bâudhhas dont la force s'accroît par la vie errante. À l'œil cinquante ans s'étaient écoulés depuis l'émancipation du bienheureux Sâkyasîtha dans le fond de ce monde périssable. Ensuite l'heureux Nâgârjuna fut souverain de ce pays."

And again\(^3\) in the time of Lalitaditya we read:—

"Pour montrer manifestement l'empreinte de leurs chaînes, les Turushkas tiennent par ses ordres les bras en arrière et ont la moitié de leur tête rasée."\(^5\)

There is no doubt that the 'Chronicles' are in error in assigning only 150 years to the interval between the death of Buddha and the accession of the Turushka princes. Huen Thsang makes the interval 400 years,\(^4\) but in this he commits the same mistake that he made in the case of Asoka, who is placed\(^5\) by him only 100 years after the death of Buddha. Though the initial point of Huen Thsang's chronology is wrong as might be expected from the history of the early Buddhist church in China, his relative

---

\(^1\) Mr. Rhys Davids (Buddhism, p 338) gives the order Huvishka, Hushka, Kanishka, but for this arrangement evidence is wanting.\(^3\) Tr. Jyer I., 19.  
chronology may be generally accepted and according to this Kanishka will have lived three hundred years after Asoka. Now we know that Asoka reigned¹ about B.C. 252-217, and therefore Kanishka may, according to Hwen Thsang, be placed about 53-89 A.D. If we refer Kanishka’s dates to the Saka era his sanvat 9 in the Mathura inscription will fall in 87 A.D. Both the Chinese and Tibetan annals contain a full account² of the great Buddhist council held by Kanishka under the presidency of Vasubandhu and at the instigation of the sage Pārvika at which five hundred monks were present and certain commentaries were composed which are mentioned by both Hah Hian and Hwen Thsang. The latter furnishes³ us with still further indications of Kanishka’s power in the following statement. When Kanishka ascended the throne:—

“Faisait sentir sa force redoutable aux royaumes voisins; et l’influence de ses lois se répandait dans les pays lointains. Il organisa son armée et édifica ses domaines jusqu’à l’est des monts Tsong-lin (near the Pamir plateau). Les princes dépendants qui habitaient à l’est et le fleuve craignant la puissance de ses armées lui envoyèrent des otages.” At this time:—“Il ne croyait ni au châtiment du crime, ni à la récompense de la vertu; il mèpriait et calomniait la loi du Buddha.” Whilst hunting one day Kanishka heard of the prophecy of Sākya that a king by name Kanishka would arise and build a stupa over his relics: “se flatant d’être désigné par l’ancienne prédiction du grand saint, il ouvrit son cœur à la foi et montra un profond respect pour la loi de Buddha.”

On the spot he erected a great stupa, and this can be no other than the great stupa or tope at M niyāla⁴ already referred to. The latest Roman coins found⁵ with those of Kanishka in this tope bear the date B.C., 43 and these were worn and old. In a second tope opened during the Afgan war near Jalālabad⁶ coins of Kadphises, Kanishka, Huvishka and the Empress Sabina, the wife of Hadrian, were found, and the last could not have been minted before 120 A.D. In many of the earlier Buddhist works Nāgārjuna is made a contemporary of Kanishka though he was apparently

earlier, and it is said that it was through his labours that the Buddhist religion spread through Kashmir and thence throughout the Himalaya. He is the Nāgasena of the Ceylonese books and it was with him that the Yona king Milinda held his celebrated disputation. The Dipavamsa, written in the the fourth century, however, has the statement:—"The Thera who originated from the Kassapa tribe, Majjhima Durabhisāra, Sahadeva, Mūlakadeva, converted the multitude of Yakshas (Yakshas, Khasas) in the Himavat and the Thera Mahārakkhita converted the Yavana region." It is probable, however, that by the last name Nāgasena is intended as he was born of a Brahman family and received his initiation at the hands of the Buddhist fraternity of the rock Rakkhita and converted "Milinda king of Sāgal, in the country called Yon." In the vernacular Tibetan Nāgasena is called Lugrub and according to Westergaard's calculations lived in the first century A.D. He was the founder of the great Mādhyamika school of the Mahāyāna or 'Great-vehicle' which has exercised such influence in northern countries. In the Chaturvinsati-prabandha of Raja Sekhara, Nāgārjuna is stated to have been a contemporary of Sātavāhana, a synonym for the founder of the Saka era. In Buddhist records the name of Kanishka is placed with that of Asoka as one of the great protectors of Buddhism, and on his death, or rather the fall of his dynasty, Brahmanising influences became supreme in Kashmir: so that when Hwen Thsang visited that country, he found there a king who was attached to Brahmanical views and who is identified by some with Pravarasena II. The summary of Ma-twanlin informs us that Shin-tu extended from the south west of the Yuel-ti and the kingdom of Kābul (Kaofu) to the western sea and on the east to Pan-khi, and that the Yuel-ti slew the kings of those kingdoms and filled their places with generals to whom they gave the governorship. Having become rich and powerful by these conquests, they remained in power till the time of the later Huns who began to reign 222 A.D. Above we have seen that about this time they were ousted from Kashmir by the Kritiyas and in the plains they were supplanted by the Guptas.

Connected closely with the debased form of the coins of Basdeo and his imitators come those of the Kshatrapasa or satrap dynasty of Gujrat, amongst whom the name of Raja Kshaharata Mahakshatrapa Nahapana is the first. The Nasik inscriptions show that his son-in-law Ushavadata Dnuikaputra was a Saka, and the coins, whilst giving clear legends in the Deva-nagari alphabet, imitate in their devices the forms of the Indo-Skythian coins and also bear rude imitations of Greek letters. These letters appear to be an attempt to copy the corrupt form of the legend 'Raa naamo rao' as seen on the later Turushka coins. Following and closely imitating the better class of 'Sinha' or so-called 'Sah' coins come those of the Guptas and then those of the Vallabhis, each of which on numismatic evidence alone is shown to have followed the other, and all that we know from inscriptions confirms this fact. Dr. Bhaup Daji would make this Nahapana a Parthian monarch and descendant of Phrahates and founder of the Saka era. But there is nothing to lead us to suppose that his influence was other than local, and the evidence inclines to show that he was not an ardent Buddhist. He was a Saka it may be presumed like his son-in-law and obeyed the same paramount authority that then held India, and that this was the Turushka ruler of Kashmir cannot be doubted.

We may therefore fairly conclude that the Saka era originated with Kanishka and that its initial date is to be referred to his consecration on the 4th March, 78 A.D. We cannot, however, ignore the current traditions on the subject that it was dated from the destruction of the Sakas by Sālivāhan. The Saka era is, however, so closely connected with that known as the Vikrama era commencing with

1 Ind. Ant., IX., 16. 2 J. B. B. R. A. S., VIII., 238. 3 Ibid. p. 239: the name Sakasena occurs in an inscription in the Kanheri caves: see also Oldenberg Ind. Ant., X., 229, for an interesting note on the Kshatrapa series of coins. There is evidence both from the coins and the inscriptions to show that Nahapana was the head of one line of Kshatrapas and Chahana was the head of anothe. As observed (J. B. B. R. A. S., IX., 1 ; XIII., 351) the coins of Nahapana are formed on an Indo-Skythian model showing the national weapons whilst the head has a Greek origin: the coins of Chahana introduce the 'chaitya' symbol instead like those of other South-Indian dynasties. On the connection between the Sakas and Parthians, see Cunningham, Arch. Rep., II, 47. A coin of Zeionisces has the legend 'Manigolasa Chhatrapasa putram Chhatrapasa Sthom esa'— of Jihonia the satrap, son of the satrap Manigola,' and Cunningham makes him an officer of Kujula kara Kadphises. Arch. Rep., II, 168.
the new moon of March, B.C. 57, that the two must be considered together. We shall first take the local traditions. Both these eras are current in Kumaon; the first occurs in the earlier historical documents and is used by the Khasiya population and the second appears in the later literary and religious compositions. According to the received Kumaon version of the Rājāvali twenty-nine princes ruled in Indraprastha, beginning with Parikshit and ending with Lachhmi Chand. The last prince of this line was murdered by Mantri Mitrasena, who was succeeded by nine members of his family, ending with Mathimal Sena. He in turn was slain by his minister Birbahu (or Dhīrbahu), whose descendants ruled in Indraprastha for fifteen generations ending with Udai Sena. The names of the fourth dynasty are taken from my copy, Tod, Ward and Cunningham:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>My copy</th>
<th>Reigned.</th>
<th>Ward 1, 24.</th>
<th>Tod 1, 46.</th>
<th>Cunningham, J. A. S. B., VII., 24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dhīradhara</td>
<td>Y. m. d.</td>
<td>Dhooralhara</td>
<td>Dhodhara</td>
<td>Yonadhara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saindhuna</td>
<td>42 7 24</td>
<td>Senoddhara</td>
<td>Sendhwaia</td>
<td>Senudhwaia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saina</td>
<td>33 10 12</td>
<td>Mahakatuka</td>
<td>Mahagunga</td>
<td>Mahiganga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahājaya</td>
<td>31 10 8</td>
<td>Maha-yodha</td>
<td>Nada</td>
<td>Mahajodha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biranatha</td>
<td>28 5 28</td>
<td>Natha</td>
<td>Jeevana</td>
<td>Sarna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jīvarāma</td>
<td>42 2 15</td>
<td>Jeevana-raja</td>
<td>Oodya</td>
<td>Jivan-siraj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Udayasaina</td>
<td>31 7 22</td>
<td>Oodaya sena</td>
<td>Jehula</td>
<td>Umed-sen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhūpāla</td>
<td>52 3 8</td>
<td>Vindhchala</td>
<td>Ananda</td>
<td>Anandajala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rākshapāla</td>
<td>26 0 0</td>
<td>Raja-pala</td>
<td>Rajapala</td>
<td>Rajapala</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

My copy of the Rājāvali states that Rakshapāla (Rājapāla) was slain by Sakadatta, who after a reign of 95 years was expelled by Bīr Vikramāditya, that the latter reigned for 93 years and was slain by his successor Samantapāla. Ward¹ writes:—“This last monarch (Rājapāla) giving himself up to effeminate amusements, his country was invaded by Shakāditya, a king from the Kumaon mountains, who proved victorious and ascended the throne after Rājapāla had reigned twenty-five years. The famous Vikramāditya in the fourteenth year of the reign of Shakāditya, pretending to espouse the cause of Rājapāla, attacked and destroyed Shakāditya and ascended the throne of Dehli, but afterwards lost his life in a war with Shālivāhana, king of Pratisthana, a country to

¹ Ward's authority is a Brahman named Mrityunjaya, whose work was published in 1808 A.D. Could we have trusted these statements our work would have been much lightened but in seeking for corroborative evidence, we have discovered their worthlessness and have by a series of negative conclusions arrived at some positive inductions as to the origin of the Khassas of Kumaon.
the south of the river Narmada. Vikramasena, the infant son of Vikramāditya, was raised to the throne, but was supplanted by Samudrapāla, a yogi. Vikramāditya and his son reigned ninety-three years." Tod writes of Rājpāla that "he carried his arms into Kumaon, but was killed by Sukwanti, the prince of that region under the Himālaya, who seized on Indraprastha or Dehli, whence he was expelled by Sakaditya or Vikramāditya." Tod again quotes from his authority: "Sukwanta, a prince from the northern mountains of Kumaon, ruled fourteen years, when he was slain by Vikramāditya, and from the Bharat to this period 2,915 years have elapsed." General Cunningham writes that Indraprastha was taken by Sakaditya or Sukwanti in B.C. 57, and was retaken by Vikramāditya Sakāri. According to all modern tradition the author of the Vikrama era bears the title 'Sakāri' from having destroyed the Sakas, whilst Śālivāhana, who established the Saka era 135 years later, is held to be one with a second Vikramāditya who also triumphed over the Sakas. Mrityunjaya makes Śālivāhan the conqueror of the Vikramāditya, who slew Sukwanta; so that we are in this dilemma that some Hindu legends refer to only one defeat of the Sakas, whilst in others the two eras are explained as commemorating two defeats. For the numerous references to Vikramādityas in the later Indian records from the inscriptions of Chandragupta onwards we must refer the reader to Wilford's celebrated essay in which he identifies some nine Vikramas and almost as many Śālivāhanas and endeavours to deduce order from chaos with the result that one feels more bewildered than enlightened at the end of the argument.

We shall now examine the evidence as to the age of Vikramāditya which may be reduced to three heads: (a) legends; (b) express statements in authorities and (c) actual use in inscriptions. It would be unprofitable to state the legends at greater length than we have done, but one deserves some further notice as much conjecture has been built on it by many writers. It is found in the oft-quoted memorial verses containing the names of the nine gems of Vikramāditya's court. They appear to occur for the first time in a work called the

1 Cunningham, Arch. Report, I., 139.  2 As. Res., IX., 117.
Jyotirviddharana, which Hall¹ believes to be not only pseudonymous, but also of recent composition. The passage runs:—“Now has this treatise been composed by me in the reign of the august Vikramārka, Lord of Mālava and most eminent king of kings; in the assembly of which same king Vikramārka are, as assessors, Sanku, the eloquent Vararuuchi, Mani, Ansudatta, Jishnu, Trilochana, Hari, and Ghatakarpura, and also other literary men, amongst whom Amara Sinha is first and these also belong to King Vikramārka’s court: Satya, Varāha-mihira, Sruta Sena, Bādarāyana, Manittha, Kumāra Sinha, and other astronomers, such as myself. Dhanwantari, Kshapanaka, Amara Sinha, Sanku, Vetāla Bhatta, Ghatakarpura, Kālidāsa, the celebrated Varāha Mihira and Vararuuchi are the nine gems in the court of King Vikrama.” A description of the government is then given and the number of the soldiers of Vikrama, and that after destroying 555 millions of Sakas, he established the Saka era. Mention is next made of his conquest of “the Lord of the country of Rūm, the king of the Sakas,” whom he brought to Ujjayini to adorn his triumphal entry. The author dates his work in Kāli-yuga 3068 or B.C. 33, but the style and language is comparatively modern, and though he calls himself Kālidāsa and one with the author of the Raghuvansa, there are reasons for doubting the statement and Weber places him as late as the sixteenth century.² No argument for or against the existence of the Vikramāditya can therefore be derived from the occurrence of this tradition beyond this, that the writers named are known not to be earlier than the sixth century, and therefore cannot be referred to the first century B.C.

We shall now quote the Musalmān writer Al Birūnī, who is after all the principal authority on Indian eras. He wrote in the early part of the eleventh century and gathered his information at first hand in India, and is trustworthy, careful and accurate in his remarks. After describing the eras in use amongst the Indians Al Birūnī tells us that they ordinarily employed the eras of Sri Harsha, Vikramāditya, Saka, Ballabha and Gupta. The

first was dated 400 years before that of Vikramāditya, but he adds:—

"J'ai vu dans l'almanach de Cachemire cette ère reculée après celle de Vikramāditya de 664 ans. Il m'est donc venu des doutes que j'ai pas trouvé moyen de résoudre." This would give the year 607 A.D. for the initial year of the era of Sri Harsha. The era of Vikramāditya himself was calculated by taking 342, which was multiplied by 3 and made 1026, to which was added the years of the Jovian cycle of 60 years that had passed. This might lead us to suppose that the era was not known until after 1026 and indeed Reinaud in a note on this passage states that it commenced in 959 A.D., but we have an inscription of this century expressly dating from the Vikramāditya era. Al Birūnī then proceeds to discuss the Sāka era:—"L'ère de Sacā, nommée par les Indiens Sacakāla, est postérieure à celle de Vikramāditya de 135 ans. Sacā est le nom d'un prince qui a régné sur les contrées situées entre l'Indus et la mer. Sa résidence était placée au centre de l'empire des la contrée nommée Aryavarti. Les Indiens le fond naître dans une classe autre que celle des Sakya: quelques uns prétendent qu'il était un Soutra et originaire de la ville de Mansoura. Il y en a même qui disent qu'il n'était pas de race indienne et qu'il tirait son origine des régions occidentales. Les peuples eurent beaucoup à souffrir de son despotisme, jusqu'à ce qu'il leur vint du secours de l'orient. Vikramāditya marcha contre lui, mit son armée en déroute et le tua sur le territoire de Korour, situé entre Moultan e la château de Louny. Cette époque devint célèbre, à cause de la joie que les peuples ressentirent de la mort de Sacā et on la choisit pour ère, principalement chez les astronomes."

Here the Saka era is clearly assigned to the destruction of the Sakas by Vikramāditya. Al Birūnī however adds:—

D'un autre côté, Vikramāditya reçut le titre de 'Sri' à cause de l'honneur qu'il s'était acquis. Du reste l'intervalle qui s'est écoulé entre l'ère de Vikramāditya et la mort de Sacā prouve que le vainqueur n'était pas le célèbre Vikramāditya mais un autre prince du même nom." It is somewhat satisfactory to see that the difficulties regarding the assignment of this era are as old as the eleventh century.

Al Birūnī then explains the Ballabha and Gupta eras:—

"Ballabha, qui a donné aussi son nom à un ère était prince de la ville de Ballabha, au midi de Anhalwara, à environ trente yojanas de distance. L'ère de Ballabha est postérieure à celle de Sacā de 241 ans. Pour s'en servir, on pose l'ère de Sacā et l'on en ôte à la fois le cube de 6 (216) et le carré de 5 (25). Ce qui reste est l'ère de Ballabha. Quant au Gupta Kāla (l'ère des Guptas) on entend par le mot gupta des gens qui, dit-on, étaient méchants et puissants et l'ère qui porte leur nom est l'époque de leur extermination. Apparemment, Ballabha suivit immédiatement les Guptas: car l'ère des Guptas commence aussi l'an 242 de l'ère de Sacā. L'ère des astronomes commence l'an 687 de l'ère de Sacā. C'est à cette ère qu'ont été rapportées les tables Kanda Khātaka de Brahmagupta. D'après cela en s'en tenant à l'an 400 de l'ère de Yezderjed, on se trouve sous l'année 1488 de l'ère de Sri Harsha, l'an 1088 de l'ère de Vikramāditya, l'an
983 de l'ère de Saca, l'an 719 de l'ère de Ballaba et de celle des Guptas. D'un autre côté, les tables Kanda-Kśiśāka comptent 366 ans, le Pancha Siddhantaka de Varāha Mihira 526 ans, la Karana Sāra 132 ans et la Karana Tilaka, 19 ans. Les années qui j'assigne aux tables astronome sont les années adoptées par les indigènes eux-mêmes afin de donner plus d'exactitude à leurs calculs. * * * Déjà je me suis excusé sur l'imperfection de ce qui est dit ici et j'ai averti que les résultats que je présente offraient quelque incertitude, vu les nombres qui excèdent celui de cent. Je ferai remarquer de plus que j'ai vu les Indiens, lorsqu'ils veulent marquer l'année de la prise de Somnath (par Mahmud) événement qui eut lieu l'an 416 de l'hégire et l'an 947 de l'ère de Saca je les ai vu écrire 2° puis au-dessous 606 puis encore au-dessous 99 enfin additionner le tout ensemble; le qui donne l'ère de Saca. On peut induire de là que le nombre 242 indique les années qui précèdent l'époque où les Indiens commencèrent à se servir d'un cycle de cent et que cet usage commence avec l'ère des Guptas. D'après cela, le nombre 606 indiquerait les samvatsaras de cent complets, ce qui porterait chaque samvatsara à 101. Quant au nombre 99, ce seraient les années qui se sont écoulées du samvatsara non encore révolu, c'est ce qui est en effet: j'ai trouvé la confirmation et l'éclaircissement de cela dans les tables astronomiques de Durbar, le Moultanien: on y lit:— "cris 848 et ajoute le Loka-kāla, c'est-à-dire, le comput du vulgaire; le produit marquera l'année de l'ère de Saca." En effet, si nous écrivons l'année de l'ère de Saca qui correspond à l'année actuelle et qui est l'année 953 et que nous retranchions de ce nombre la quantité 848 il restera 105 pour la Loka-kāla, et l'année de la ruine de Somnath tombera sur la nombre 98." This Loka kāla was in use in Kashmir, but the cycle varied according to the place. "Les personnes qui se servent de l'ère de Saca et ce sont les astronomes, commencent l'année au mois de Chaitra. On dit que les habitants de plusieurs des contrées qui sont voisines de Cachemire font commencer l'année au mois de Bhādhrapada et qu'ils comptent en ce moment 84 ans. Ceux qui habitent entre (Baradari) et Māri la font tous commencer au mois de Kārtika, et ils comptent maintenant 110 années. On entend que les peuples du Cachemire se trouvent à present dans la sixième année de leur cycle. Les habitants de Nairbar au dela de Māri jusqu'aux limites de Tākeshar et de Lohāor commencent tous leurs années au mois de Mankher et sont maintenant arrivés à leur 188e année; ils sont limités en cela par les habitants de Lanaik, je veux dire Lāmbhan. J'ai entendu dire aux habitants du Multan que tel était aussi l'usage des habitants du Sind et de Karaaj et que dans ces pays, on avait coutume de commencer l'année à la conjonction du mois de Mankher; pour les peuples de Multan, ils ont renoncé, il y a un petit nombre d'années à cet usage, et ils ont adopté la méthode suivie en Cachemire, c'est-à-dire qu'à l'exemple des Cachemiriens ils commencent l'année à la conjonction du mois de Chaitra."

This extract gives us the only notice from Arabian sources that can be relied upon regarding the chronology of the Hindus at this early period. There

1 This shows that this chapter was written by Al Biruni in 1031 A.D.
2 Chait, March-April.
3 Bhādhra, August-September.
4 Kārtik, October-November.
5 Mangair, November-December.
can be no doubt but that Al Birûni correctly represents the opinions current in his time, and he shows conclusively that even then contradictions were rife that could not be explained. His description of the mode in which he saw the people calculate the Saka era is interesting. The person using the era first put down the number 242 and then added to it the cycles of 101 years that had elapsed and then the number of years in the current cycle. Thus the year 947 Saka was obtained by putting together 242 + 606 + 99; and Al Birûni gives as his opinion that 242 Saka was the year of that era in which it was introduced into use in the country in which he then was. This would give us 319-20 A. D., or the initial date of the local era adopted by the Brahmanising Vallabhis as distinguished from that of the foreign Indo-Skythian Buddhists. This date marks the decline of the Turushka dynasty in Kashmir, and all indications lead us to suppose that early in the fourth century there was a great Indian revival in the countries to the south-east of the Indus. For some reason unknown to us the Arabian writer styles the Guptas 'a wicked and powerful race,' but this may simply mean that they were opposed to the people of the country in which Al Birûni was at the time and from whom he received his information and cannot be considered as an expression of critical opinion on his part regarding their conduct. There is no doubt that Al Birûni is wrong in assigning, in accordance with the popular tradition when he wrote, the initial date of the Saka era to the destruction of the Sakas, for as we have seen that race was a power in India long subsequent to the year 78 A. D. It is not our intention to discuss here the initial date of the Gupta era or to explain the second error of Al Birûni in assigning the initial date of the Gupta era to that of their extermination. The Vallabhi inscriptions are dated from 311 to 348 in an era beginning in 319 A.D., but it does not follow that the Gupta dates can be referred to the same initial date. Indeed General Cunningham gives good grounds for believing that the initial date of the Guptas is 167 A. D., and this we shall consider hereafter. However, Al Birûni's errors are clearly those of his informants, and had he stated anything else, we should

1 On the Guptas, see Mr. Ferguson, J. R. A. S., IV., 81: XII., 259; Mr. Thomas' Gupta Dynasty, London, 1878: Dr. Oldenburg, in Ant. X., 213; and General Cunningham, Arch Rep., IX., 16, and X., 112, where the subject is fully discussed in detail.
have good grounds for doubting his veracity, for as we have seen the popular legend regarding the origin of the Vikrama era was current in his time.

Before proceeding further we shall quote the passages in the 'Chronicles of Kashmir' bearing on the question of Vikrama and his date and for this purpose will quote from Troyer’s translation1:

“Dans le même temps (the death of Hiranya) l’heureux Vikramaditya appelé d’un autre nom Harsha, réunit comme empereur à Ujjayin l’empire de l’Inde sous un seul parasol. La déesse Sri servit ce roi qui était comblé d’un bonheur merveilleux, en s’attachant à lui avec plaisir, ayant abandonnée pour lui les bras de Hari et les quatre océans. Employant la fortune comme moyen d’utilité, il fit fleurir des talents et est ainsi qu’encore aujourd’hui les hommes des Sakas se trouvent la tête haute au milieu des riches. Ayant d’abord détrait les Sakas il rendit léger le fardeau de l’œuvre de Hari, qui doit descendre sur la terre pour exterminer les Miechchhis.”

Vikramaditya placed the poet Matrigupta on the throne of Kashmir. In an earlier passage it is stated:

“Ayant fait venir ensuite, d’un autre pays, Pratápaditya, parent du roi Vikramaditya, ils le sacrérent souverain de l’empire. D’autres induits en erreur, ont écrit que ce Vikramaditya fut le même qui combattit les Sakas; mais cette version est rejetée.”

Here we have distinct mention of two Vikramadityas belonging to Kashmir, the earlier one at a distance of twenty-two reigns after the Turushkas and the later one after Toramána and Hiranya and clearly to be identified with the great Chakravartti Raja Vikramaditya. Toramána and Hiranya were brothers and the name of the former is known to us from inscriptions and coins. The inscriptions occur at Erán and Gwalior and the Erán inscription appears to be connected with that of Budhagupta dated in 165 of the Gupta era. Mr. Thomas reads 180 on a coin of Toramána and Dr. Mitra read 180 plus some other figure on the Erán inscription.

We have evidence of the very early use of the Saka era not only in India but in other Buddhist countries. According to Alwis,6 “the era most familiar to the Ceylonese is the ‘Saka Warasa,’ which is the year of some king of the continent of Asia whose name is Saka and who

---

1 The authorities are Wilson’s essay on the Hinnu history of Kashmir in As. Res., XV., 1. which is only an abstract translation, and Troyer’s text and translation, Paris, 1840. 
2 Troyer, II., 75. 
3 Id., p. 43. 
5 J. B. B. R. A. S., 1858-59, p. 161
was said to be the head of the royal house of Yavana." According to Sir S. Raffles,¹ the Javan era is called that of *Ají-Saka*, on whose arrival in Java it is supposed to have commenced; it begins in 75 A.D. In Bálí, the Saka era (*Saka Warsa Chandra*) is also in use and starts from 78 A.D., and the difference between the initial era in Java and Bálí is supposed to be due to the use of the lunar year by the Javans on their conversion to Islám and of the solar year by the people of Bálí. One of the earliest Javan traditions makes Trí-tresta, the husband of Bramáni Káli of Kámboja, the first Indian immigrant in Java, and he was slain by another Indian adventurer, Watu Gúnung of Desa Sangala (Panjáb). In Siam,² the word for era is *Sa-ka-rat,* but there the sacred era commences with the Nirvána of Buddha and the popular era with the introduction of Buddhism in 638 A.D. In both Tibet,³ China and Siam, the cycles of 60 years and of 12 years are also in use and, as we have seen, the cycle of 60 years was in common use in India at an early period.

In the Bánámi inscription⁴ of the Chalukya Mangalíswara occurs the following statement:—"Sri Mangalíswara who victorious in battle—in the twelfth year of his reign—five hundred years having elapsed since the coronation (or anointment, *abhisheka*) of the king of the Sakas." Here we have a very clear and distinct statement that, as might naturally be supposed, the era takes its name from its founder. The ordinary expression in the grants of the Chalukyas in recording a date is in the same terms as the preceding;

Saka era in inscriptions,

thus in the Aihole grant,⁶ five hundred and six years of the Saka king having elapsed, 'six hundred and sixteen years of the Saka king having elapsed' and in an old Coorg document⁷ when the eight hundred and ninth year of the time past since the Saka king was current. None of these inscriptions give out an uncertain sound and in some hundreds of grants of the first eight centuries the Saka era is called the *Saka nripa kála, Suka kála, Sakendra kála, Saka bhúpa kála,* and the like, without any allusion

¹ History of Java, II., 66; Crawford's Hist. Ind. Arch., I., 309. Buddhism appears to have been introduced into Ceylon in the third century before Christ; into Burma in the fifth century after Christ; into Siam in the seventh century, and into Java, Bálí and Sumatra in the sixth century. ² Schlagenthtir, Buddhism in Tibet, p. 276. ³ Ind. Ant., III., 306; VI., 763; X., 57; Arch. Surv. West India, II., 337; III., 119. ⁴ Ind. Ant., V., 63; J. B. B R. A. S., IX., 315. ⁵ Ind. Ant., VI., 91. ⁶ Ibid., p. 103.
to the destruction of the Sakas and clearly showing that the era was named from the accession of a Saka king. In a Jaina legend published by the late Dr. Bhau Daji, a story is brought in to explain the origin of the Saka era which is in many ways very instructive for our purpose. Gardhabhilla, Raja of Ujain, is there said to have offended the sister of the sage Kalaka and paid no heed to the saint's remonstrances. Kalaka on this proceeded to the west bank of the Indus, where the kings were called Sahi and the supreme king had the title Sahana-Sahi. He induced a Sahi and a number of nobles to return with him to Hindukadesa (India) and proceeding by Gujrát they reached Ujain and dethroned Gardhabhilla. The Sahi became Raja of Ujain and the nobles who accompanied him became feudal chiefs. Because they came from Saka-kula, they were called Sakas and thus originated the 'Saka vansa.' Vikramaditya, son of Gardhabilla, overthrew this Sahi, but one hundred and thirty-five years afterwards a Saka again became king and introduced his era. Whilst corroborating the inscriptions as to the origin of the Saka era this legend introduces the modern explanation of the origin of the Vikrama era, which apparently first appears in the writings of the astronomers. Aryabhata, the oldest of the Indian astronomers, does not mention either the Vikrama or Saka era. Varaha Mihira, who is supposed to have written towards the close of the sixth century, informs us that the Sakendra-kula commenced in the year 3179 of the Kali-yuga and again calls it as usual Saka-bhupadaka. Brahmagupta, who wrote in the seventh century, speaks of so many years having elapsed at the 'end of Saka.' Bhattotpala, writing in the middle of the tenth century, explains the phrase 'Sakendra-kula' thus:—

"Saka means king of the Mlechchha tribe and the time when they were destroyed by Vikramaditya deva is properly known as Saka." Again Bhaskaracharya, writing in the twelfth century, gives the years of the Kali-yuga "to the end of the Saka king," 'Saka vriipanta.' Even amongst the astronomers it was not until the seventh century that we find the slightest hint of the Saka era.

1 J. B. B. R. A.S., IX., 139, 154, and Wilford in As. Res., IX., 150, 8vo. In an old Jaina work it is stated that 155 years after Vikrama having passed again the Sakas expelled Vikramaputra and conquered the kingdom. J. B. B. R. A.S., IX., 141.
being considered as commemorating the destruction of the Sakas, and not even then was the Vikrama era in use.

Dr. Bhaub Déji states that we do not meet with the assertion that the Saka era commenced with the destruction of the Sakas until the eighth century, and again that not a single inscription or copper-plate grant is dated in the Vikramáditya Sanvat before the eleventh century, and this era was introduced on the revival of Jainism in Gujrat. Even then there is much confusion in its use, for the Svetambaras make their great teacher Mahávira live 470 years before Vikramáditya, whilst the Digambaras make him live 605 years before Vikramáditya, the difference of 135 years being the exact time between the Vikrama and Saka eras. General Cunningham in one of his reports writes:—“My impression is that Kanishka was the real founder of the era which is now known by the name of Vikramáditya. The Vikramáditya to whom tradition assigns the establishment of the era is now known to have lived in the first half of the sixth century A.D. I think it probable, therefore, that he only adopted the old era of the Indo-Skythians by giving it his own name. The earliest inscription that I am aware of dated in the Vikrama era is San. 811 or 754 A.D.” Subsequently he refers to an inscription at Jhalra Patan dated in San. 748 and alters Tod’s assignment of it to the Vikrama era on the grounds that:—“As the Sanvat of Vikramáditya does not appear to have been in use at this early period the true date of the inscription, referred to the Saka era, will be 135 years later or 826 A.D.” No better authority could be quoted for the inscriptions in the Bengal Presidency. Dr. Burnell states that the Vikrama-Sanvat is all but unknown in southern India except in the Dakhin. Mr. Fleet shows that the date of Dantidurga (eighth century) is erroneously supposed to have been recorded in both the Saka and Vikrama eras, and he adds:—“As far as my experience goes it

1 J. B. B. A. S., IX., 145, 242. 2 Arch Rep., II., 68. 3 Ibid., p. 266. 4 Elements South Indian Palæography, p. 73. 5 Ind. Ant., VIII., 151. 6 Ibid., p. 187. This Vikramáditya is reported in his inscription to have said:—“Why should the glory of the kings Vikramáditya and Nanda be a hindrance any longer? He, with a loudly-uttered command, abolished that (era) which has the name Saka and made that (era) which has the Chalukya figures,” alluding to the foundation of the Chalukya Vikrama era which Mr. Fleet has shown to start from February 10, 778. The mention of Vikramáditya here undoubtedly shows that the Vikrama era was known, but was not in use.
(the Vikrama era) was never used either before or after the
time of Vikramāditya VI. (1075 A.D.) by the western Cha-
lukyas and Chālukyas nor by the Rāshtrakūtas, who tempo-
rarily supplanted them in western India; nor by the feudatories
of those dynasties; nor by the eastern Chalukyas of Vengi.”
Dr. Bühler, however, quotes two early inscriptions assumed to
be dated in the Vikrama era: (1) the Gūrjara grant of Jayab-
hatra of “the year 486, which seems to be dated in the Vikrama
era”; and (2) the Pāthan inscription of Sanvat 802 recording
the accession of Vanarāja which “can be referred to no other
era.” But in both these instances there is room for very
much doubt. From all that we have gathered concerning the use
of this era these apparent exceptions will, hereafter, be explained.
With regard to the latter we have a note of the editor to say :
“Having examined this latter (Vanarāja’s inscription at Pāthana) I
am in doubt of its genuineness; possibly, however, it may be a
copy of an older one; but if a copy may the mode of dating not
possibly be an interpolation?” With regard to Jayabhata’s grant
the argument rests on certain assumptions that he must have been
the son of Dadda I. and father of Dadda II. and that as his date is
San. 486 and the records of Dadda II. are dated in Saka 380-417,
the former date must refer to some other era and presumably to
that of Vikramāditya. Now the genealogical portion of this date
of Jayabhata has been lost and all the arguments advanced are so
open to correction that we must decline to accept this solitary
instance as evidence of the use of the Vikramāditya era at this
early period. There is nothing to show why Jayabhata should
depart from the practices of his predecessors and successors
without expressly naming the new era. The third instance quoted
by Dr. Bühler has been shown to be due to an error of the
translator. The name Sālivāhana so often connected in modern
times with the Saka era does not occur in this relation in any
ancient records or manuscript. A Sātavāhana family reigned at
Paithana on the Godāvari when the Sinha dynasty ruled in Gujrāt,
and Gotamiputra or Sātakarni of this race is styled in an inscrip-
tion as the ‘establisher of the glory of the family of Sātavāhana’

1 Ind. Ant., V., 110 2 Ibid., p. 112. 3 Ind. Ant., VIII., 161.
4 J. B. B. R. A. S., VIII., 237: Hemachandra makes Sātavāhana have the
synonyma Hāla, Sālavāhana, Sālāhana.
by reason of his conquests over the Sakas, Yavanas, Palhavas and his being the destroyer of the descendants of Kshaharata. This power was of short duration, for Rudra Dáma in an inscription records his success against Sátabhars or Gotamiputra and the submission to him of the same countries that Gotamiputra, lord of Dakshinapatha, gives in his list of conquests. In the country where this Sátabhara dynasty lived and ruled there is no attempt to assign to it any connection with the Saka era. We have now shown—

(a) that the Saka era was instituted by the Buddhist king Kanishka; that it spread though his influence to all Buddhist countries:

(b) that there is no early mention of its being intended to mark other than the anointment or consecration of the Saka king until the seventh or eighth century:

(c) that the Vikrama era was not used until at least the eighth century, and consequently that the popular traditions assigning both eras to victories over the Sakas are incorrect, and that there is no real connection between the name of the founder of either era and Kumaon.

We shall now inquire how these traditions arose.

There are three different reasons given for the founding of the Vikramaditya era:

(a) that it was an invention of the astronomers:

The origin of the Vikrama era.

(b) that it was to commemorate the freeing of the people from debt:

(c) that it was to commemorate a great victory over the Sakas.

In the Jaina Ra jávali-kathe, a work written in ancient Kana-rese,1 it is recorded that:—“Then was born in Ujjayini, Vikramaditya, and he by his knowledge of astronomy having made an almanac established his own era from the year Rúdrirojári, the 605th year after the death of Vardhamána.” Now Vardhamána is the Jaina teacher Mahávira, who died in B.C. 661, and consequently the Vikramaditya referred to lived in B.C. 56 and is one with

1 Ind. Ant., III., 157.
the author of the Vikrama era. The accurate Al Birdni notes that in his time the Vikrama era was used principally by astronomers and that the same class had another era used solely by them and which commenced in 665 A.D.

The Nepál annals tell us that:—"At this time Vikramájit, a very powerful monarch of Hindustán, became famous by giving a new Sambatasa, or era, to the world, which he effected by liquidating every debt existing at that time in his country. He came to Nepál to introduce his era here ** and after clearing off the debts of this country introduced his Sambat." Hwen Thsang mentions a Vikramáditya of Sravasti or eastern Oudh in whose reign lived a learned Buddhist named Manoratha. "au milieu des mille ans qui ont suivi le Nirvána du Bouddha" or "dans l'one des mille années qui ont suivi le Nirvána du Bouddha," neither of which expressions is unfortunately intelligible. This Vikramáditya is said to have paid off the debts of his subjects and also to have oppressed the Buddhists and favoured the Brahmans and shortly afterwards lost his kingdom. Manoratha was evidently put to death by the Brahmans and Vasubandhu avenged him during the reign of Vikramáditya's successor. Táránátha states that Vasubandhu lived 900 years after Buddha and he was a pupil of Manoratha according to Hwen Thsang: so that the two authorities differ about the date. In Merutunga's Therávali it is stated that:—"Gardhabilla's son Vikramáditya having regained the kingdom of Ujjayini and having relieved the debt of the world by means of gold, commenced the Vikrama Sambat era." And accounts are not wanting of petty rulers desirous of imitating Vikramáditya and starting an era of their own by paying off the debts of their people. We have two notable instances in the annals of Nepál and Kumaon. Of the third reason given for the establishment of the Vikrama era we have given sufficient examples. That there was a great Vikramáditya in the sixth century there can be no doubt, but that he had anything to do with the era which bears his name requires further proof. This Vikramáditya reigned shortly after Toramána, Raja of Kashmir, and in the Kashmir chronicles is specially praised for his liberality.

---

a Wright's Nepál, p., 131 : the time will be discussed hereafter: it was about the end of the sixth century. b Mém. 1, 116. c J. B. B. B. A. S., IX, 147, 148.
From Tārānātha we learn that on the death of the Buddhist king Gāmbhirapaksha, Sri Harsha, born in Maru, abolished the teaching of the Mlechchhas by massacring them at Multān (but a weaver of Khorosān spread it anew) and laid the foundations of great Buddhist temples in the kingdoms of Maru, Mālava, Mewāra, &c. This Sri Harsha was succeeded by his son Sila, who reigned about 100 years. The contemporary of Sila in the west was Vyākula, King of Ma-mha, who raised himself by force over Sila and reigned thirty-six years. This account calls to mind Hwen Thsang’s description of Silāditya of Kanauj. From him we learn that Silāditya ascended the throne in 610 A.D. His father was Prabhūkara-Vardhana and his eldest brother Rāja Vardhāna preceded him on the throne, but being slain by Sāngaka, Raja of Karna-Suvarna, the minister Bāni and the people placed the younger brother Harsha-Vardhana on the throne with the title Silāditya. He suffered reverses at the hands of Satyāśraya or Pulakesi II., the western Chalukya Raja of Bādāmi, as recorded by Hwen Thsang, Ma-twān-lin and in several inscriptions of Pulakesi himself and his successors. We know that Silāditya was a zealous Buddhist himself, but was very tolerant towards Brahmins: of his father we know but little. His grandfather appears to have been a Silāditya of Mālwa and to have succeeded the great Vikramāditya there. Tārānātha tells us that the Sri Harsha Vikramāditya, the exterminator of the Mlechchhas, was succeeded by a Sila, and Hwen Thsang shows that the successor of Vikramāditya was a favourer of the Buddhists. Sri Harsha lost his kingdom probably through the enemies that he gained by his victory at Multān. Over a hundred years later the Buddhists lost everything with Silāditya of Kanauj. It is his death that marks the true era of Brahmanical ascendancy. With it came the preponderance of Hindu revivalistic ideas in religion and missionaries poured forth from southern and western India and gave the last touches to the complete restoration of Brahmanism. In Magadha, Nepal and Kumaon, the rulers for some time remained faithful to Buddhism, but the advocates of Sivaism and especially the apostles of Tantric beliefs were numerous and powerful, and it would appear that the great mass of the people followed them.

1 La Commes' Vassilief, p. 52: Ind. Ant., IV., 364. 2 Mém., I., 247. 3 Ibid. 4 Ind. Ant., IX., 19. 5 Ind. Ant., V., 72; VI., 78, 87, amongst others.
Al Biruni has, as we have seen, mentioned the great battle at Kohrur between the city of Multan and the fort of Luni, which can be no other than that noticed by Tarunath. The Aphsar inscription referring to Dhamodara Gupta states that:—"While gloriously dispersing at the battle of Maushari the roaring line of elephants of the fierce army of the western Hunas, he fainted and selected the nymphs of heaven." In other words Dhamodara perished in the battle of Maushari. Thus we have confirmation of the statement that the Guptas on one side and Vikramaditya on the other were determined opponents of the Sakas. Mr. Ferguson has arrived at the same opinion and states:—"What appears to have happened is this: about or before the year 1000 A.D., the struggle with the Buddhists was over and a new era was opening for the Hindu religion and a revival among the Hindu dynasties, and it was then determined to reform the calendar in a sense favourable to the new state of affairs. ** In consequence of this, in looking back through their history for some name worthy to dignify the era and some event of sufficient importance to mark its commencement, they hit on the name of Vikramaditya as the most illustrious known and the battle of Kohur as the most important in his reign." They then established the era by adding ten cycles of 60 years each to the date 544 A.D., and thus arrived at B.C. 56. This is a possible explanation, but there is no absolute necessity for connecting the great Vikramaditya's victory at Kohur with the era that bears his name. It is more probable that it was introduced for astronomical purposes like another similar era quoted by Al-Biruni and that this was done when Ujain was made the meridian of India. It did not come into general use even amongst astronomers before 1000 A.D. On this question Holtzmann pertinently remarks that:—"To assign him (Vikramaditya) to the first year of his era might be quite as great a mistake as we should commit in placing Pope Gregory XIII. in the year one of the Gregorian calendar, or even Julius Caesar in the first year of the Julian period to which his name has been given, that is in the year B.C. 4718." There is absolutely nothing on record regarding the first century before Christ, not even excepting the

---

Yueh-ti conquest of the Sakaś in Kipin, that would indicate a victory in Brahmanical interests, and this Yueh-ti success is not likely to have been the cause of the Brahmins fixing on 57 B.C. as the initial year of the era. The great Vikramāditya may have displaced a Buddhist family in Malwa and he himself was succeeded by the philo-Buddhist Silādityās, and Silādityā's namesake and descendant was again followed by Brahmanical rulers, and the facts concerning the troubles of this period were moved back to adorn the legendary but obligatory explanation of the origin of the two eras. Another suggestion is derived from a passage in Strabo, in which he states:—"The Sakaæ occupied Baktria and got possession of the most fertile tract in Armenia which was called after their own name Sakasene." This colony was exterminated by the Persians, who in remembrance of their victory instituted an unusual festival called Sakaæ. Many of the Indian legends concerning the great Vikramāditya contain facts connected with the history of the Kings of Persia, such as the surrender of the Roman Emperor and his being brought in chains to Ujain, which can only allude to the capture of Valerian by Shāpūr in 260 A.D. The institution of the Sakaæ is attributed to Cyrus by some, but in any case must be referred to a period not later than the second century before Christ.

Returning from this long digression we take up again the Sakaæ further history of the Yueh-ti. The title 'Shāh' found on the coins of Basdeo is none other than the 'Shāhan-Shāhi' of the Gupta inscription on the Allahabad pillar and the 'Sāhan-Sāhi' of the Jaina legend already quoted. It is also the 'Shāh' of the Katur kings of Kābul and the 'Shah-Katur' of the present chiefs of Kashkāra. Basdeo is the last of the rulers whose name is found preserved in Greek letters. Returning to the Chinese writers, we find that about 98 A.D., the chief of the Yueh-ti had so far established his power as to aspire to the hand of the daughter of the emperor of China in marriage. Ambassadors were sent to China on his behalf, but were stopped by the Chinese governor of Kashgar, who refused to allow them to proceed. The Yueh-ti king then sent a force of

\[1\] Borders on Albania.  
\[61\] Examen méthodique des faits qui concernent le Thian-tchu ou l'Inde par M. Pauthier: Paris, 1840.  
\[197\] Beal's Fah Hian, p. 197; Klaproth, Tabl. Hist.
70,000 men to compel the passage of his envoys, but these returned discomfited and ever afterwards he remained tributary to them. There is little doubt that the vigorous proselytising set on foot by Kanishka and his successors led to much division and dissension amongst his followers and subjects, and their treatment of the local princes and distribution of the government amongst military officials did not tend to make their rule more acceptable. Taking advantage of these disorders the Kritiyas expelled the Turushkas from Kashmir and were in turn driven out by the Tukhara king of Himatlas about 260 A.D., but again succeeded in recovering the throne of Kashmir. Up to the early part of the fifth century the Indo-Skythian tribes were known as Skuthæ to the Greeks and Romans and as Turks to the Persians and Arabians, but about 420 A. D., these names give place to the term Haïatelites or Haïateleh amongst the Arabs, Hepthalites amongst the Byzantine historians and Hephthal amongst the Armenians. Other variations are Euthalites, Ephthalites, Nephthalites, Atelites, Abtelites, who are one with the Cidarites of Priscus or the 'White Huns.' They were, according to DeGuignes, a race of Huns called Tele and first came into notice in their wars with the Sassanides, and eventually were conquered and absorbed by the Tu-khiu chief Tu-men, the founder of the eastern Turks, in the middle of the sixth century. The Chinese annals also record that at the end of the second century after Christ, the eastern capital of the Yueh-ti lay to the west of the sandy desert of Foe-ty at Lou-kiang-chi, which Klaproth places near Khiva. To the north, the Yueh-ti country was bounded by the territory of the Ju-ju, who appear to be one with the branch of the White Huns, who were subsequently conquered by the Tu-khiu, once their servants and iron-workers. The Yueh-ti had brought a large tract of country under their sway and Po-lo (Bolor or Chitrál) some two hundred and ten leagues from the sands of Foe-ty became their western capital. Some time after their king called Kitolo (Katur) crossed the Hindu Kush (420 A. D.) and invaded Sind and subdued five kingdoms to the north of Kan-to-lo (Gandhára). At this time the Yueh-ti used chariots drawn by two or

four pair of oxen. During the time of the Goei dynasty (424-451 A. D.) a merchant came from the country of the great Yueh-ti to China and taught the Chinese the art of making coloured glass. The Yueh-ti or Yue-tchi were now called Ye-tha or Yi-ta, and their power extended from Khoten to the Oxus and their principal town was Barnian. Their country was called Ta-koue or the ‘great kingdom’ by the Chinese. Kitolo left his son at Peshawar, who established there a separate kingdom of the little Yueh-ti, whilst the great Yueh-ti still occupied Kābul. Still there are not wanting traces of the presence of the Huns in this part of the world. Cosmas in 525 A. D. gives the name Hunnie to the country lying between China and the borders of Persia and the Roman Empire. He calls the king of this country Gollas,1 who had at his disposal two thousand elephants and a numerous cavalry, which show that Gollas must have had possession in some flat country and connections with India. Damodara2 Gupta records his victory over the fierce army of western Hunas at Manshari in the previously quoted Apshar inscription, and from DeGuignes we learn that Soupharai or Sukha Rai, the Soucran (Sukha Ram) of Tillemont and Sukhra of the Arabs, who was governor of Zabulistán, Ghazni and Bost under the Sassanidan princes Balas and Kobad, defeated the White Huns at Bikand about 490 A. D. Still we cannot accept the conclusion of Reinaud and others that the Ephthalites were one with the Yueh-ti. We acknowledge the proximity of the Ephthalites in the countries west of the Kābul valley, where, according to Procopius, they had been settled for a long time and some of them sought service as mercenaries in the Persian army, and their chief may have become suzerain of the countries as far as the Indus. But as remarked by Reinaud:—

"On ne mieux comparer les vastes contrées de la Tartarie à cette époque qu'à une mer presque constamment en furie, et où les vagues ne font que changer de place suivant le vent qui souffle"

The Huns had no long lease of power, for by the middle of the sixth century, or twenty-five years after Cosmas' relation, the White Huns fell before the Tukhiu or eastern Turks.

1 J. A. S. Paris, 6th Ser., 1, 433: Gollas must be the same as Anowai, who ascended the throne in 320 A. D. and perished at the hands of Tuman.
2 Antea, p. 435: this battle will fall in 680-690 A. D. if we take 319 A. D. as the initial date of the era, and in 480-490 A. D. if we take 167 A. D. as the initial date, and all indications show that the latter is the more probable date.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

The Chinese pilgrims of whom accounts have come down to us in some detail afford us valuable aid in ascertaining who were the occupants of the trans-Indus country at this time. There are, however, certain difficulties connected with the topography of the region traversed by them which throw some doubt on the conclusions arrived at. Fortunately all of them—Fah Hian, Sung Yun, and Hwen Thsang—visited the kingdom of Khie-pan-to bordering on Yárkand. Fah Hian calls it Kie-cha and Sung Yun calls it Han-pan-to. Hwen Thsang on his return journey to China after crossing a mountain range to the south of the valley of Po-mi-lo (Pámír) entered the kingdom of Po-lo-lo celebrated for its gold washings, and after a difficult journey of 500 li arrived at Khie-pan-to on the Síta river, where lived a king of the China Suryadeva gotra, descended from an ancestor born of the sun-god and a Chinese princess: hence the family name. M. de St. Martin identifies the chief city of Khie-pan-to with Kartchú on the Yárkand river. Fah Hian left Kartchú, 'in the midst of the Tsung-lings mountains,' on his journey from China, and proceeding westwards for a month crossed those mountains into northern India. He adhered to the incline of the same mountains for fifteen days in a south-westerly direction and reached the Indus (Sin-to), which he crossed and entered the country of Ou-chang or Swát. Here the river of Gilgit is clearly intended by the name 'Sunto,' for otherwise his statement is unintelligible. Sung Yun left Han-pan-to also on his outward journey from China and going west six days entered on the Tsung-lings mountains and after three days reached the city of Kieueh-yu and after three days more the Puh-ho-i mountains and then the kingdom of Poh-ho, to the south of which lay the great snowy mountains. Thence in the first decade of the 10th month (or two months after leaving Han-pan-to) he arrived in the country of the Ye-tha in 519 A.D. "They receive tribute from all surrounding nations on the south as far as Tieh-lo (To-li of Fah Hian and Tha-li-lo of Hwen Thsang, the modern Dárel); on the north, the entire country of Læ-leh (La-la, or it may be read Chib-leh); eastward to Khoten and west to Persia, more than forty countries in all." He then alludes to the curious custom of the females wearing horns on their heads from

1 Beal's Fah Hian, p. 14.  
2 Ibid., p. 181.  
3 Mém., II., 308.
which drapery descended, and adds "these people are of all the four tribes of barbarians the most powerful. The majority of them are unbelievers. Most of them worship false gods." Of the country of Gandhára (Peshawar) he writes:

"It was formerly called Ye-pu-lo. This is the country which the Ye-tha destroyed and afterwards set up Lac-lih to be king over the country; since which events two generations have passed. The disposition of this king was cruel and vindictive and he practised the most barbarous atrocities. He did not believe the law of Buddha, but loved to worship demons. The people of the country belonged entirely to the Brahman caste; they had a great respect for the law of Buddha and loved to read the sacred books, when suddenly this king came into power who was strongly opposed to anything of the sort and entirely self-reliant. Trusting to his own strength he had entered on a war with the country of Ki-pin respecting the boundaries of their kingdom and his troops had already been engaged in it for three years."

Sung-yun attended the royal camp to present his credentials and was very roughly received and when remonstrating with the king said:—"The sovereign of the Ye-tha and also of Ou-chang when they received our credentials did so respectfully." This would clearly show that the king of Gandhára did not belong to the long established section of the Ye-tha, and the Chinese traveller also styles the subjects of the Gandhára king Si-khiang or 'western foreigners.' According to Sung-Yun their conquest of Gandhára took place only two generations previously, or say 470 A.D., and they were in 520 A.D. at war with Kábul. Fah Hian\(^1\) refers to the Yueh-tí conquest of Gandhára as having occurred 'in former times,' and he wrote in 402 A.D., so that this clearly was a different conquest from that mentioned by Sung Yun. Again, the conquest by Kitolo must be considered a third, and the reigning prince of Gandhára in Sung-Yun's time probably belonged to some other division of the little Yueh-tí, who were then at war with the great Yueh-tí at Kábul.\(^2\) Chitrál is moreover said to have belonged to Akeou-khiang in the time of the Goei dynasty (424-451 A.D.), so that we may consider the kingdom of Gandhára

\(^1\) Beal, l. c., p. 37.  
\(^2\) General Cunningham suggests that the Gújars in Yaghistán and the plains are the representatives of the Kushan or Great Yueh-tí. Yaghistán is the name given to the country inhabited by tribes having independent institutions on our north-west frontier. Captain Trotter notes of these Gújars that they are said to be of Ját descent, though now Musalmáns. They are termed by the Pathání Hinoki, and are frequently met with in the pastoral districts where they tend the flocks of the Patháns, who are lords of the soil. They are said to be descendants of the aboriginal inhabitants of the country." Rep. G. T. S., 1873-75, p. 26. Cunn. Arch. Rep., II., 72.
in 520 A.D., as an independent offshoot of the little Yuen-ti, whose principal seat was in Chitrâl. The name Si-khiang is usually given to the Tibetans, and we know that the little Yuen-ti fled to Tibet in the first century before Christ.

Hwen Thsang on his journey from China visited Tukhâra and then Damian, where the people were zealous Buddhists. Further east in Kupisa in the Kâbul valley there was a Khatriya king (630 A.D.). Lâmhân and Nagarabâra were subject to Kupisa as well as Purushapura (Peshawar), the capital of Gandhâra. This dynasty, however, could not have lasted long, for Al Biruni, as we have seen, distinctly states that the dynasty which preceded the Hindu rulers of Kâbul was a Turkish one, and this can be no other than the ruling family of the great Yuen-ti. Buddhism prevailed throughout the whole valley of the Kâbul river and in Swât, where the spoken language, though somewhat different, resembled that of India. The remains of numerous buildings existed which had been destroyed by Mihirakula, Raja of Kashmîr, about 500 A.D., were seen by the Chinese traveller. Hwen Thsang then advanced as far as the sources of the Swât river and afterwards passed along the Indus into the country of Tha-li-lo (Darel), the former capital of Udyâna or Swât. Thence he visited Pol-u-lo, the modern Iskardo, where the people spoke a different language. All these indications corroborate the result of our previous investigations and show that an Indian people speaking an Indian language formed during the first seven centuries of the Christian era the main part of the population along the whole length of the Kâbul valley and along the Indus up to Gilgit, where they were bounded by the Baltis on the east. We shall now examine the few notices that occur in Arabian and Persian writers.

The writings of the earliest Musulmân geographers show that Kâbul was divided between the dominant Turks and subject Hindus. Istakhri in

1 There is some difficulty about this name and there are apparently two places that can answer to the name Bolor. According to Klaproth (Mag. As., I., 96), Chitrâl was known as Bolor to the Chinese, and he notes that under the Hans it belonged to Ou-tehba (Udyâna or Swât) and under the Goel (444-451 A.D.), it was the kingdom of Akeou-khiang, clearly a Tibetan dynasty and perhaps connected with the little Yuen-ti: Cunn. Arc Geogr., 63, and Progs. R. G. S., 111. The Pou-ho of Sung-Yun (Beal, p. 183) would more nearly approach Chitrâl, and this will also be the Po-lo of Klaproth’s authorities quoted at p. 427.

2 This paragraph is based upon Elliot, II., 413-437.
915 A.D. writes:—"Kábul has a castle celebrated for its strength, accessible only by one road. In it there are Musalmáns and it has a town in which are infidels from Hind." In this statement he is followed by Ibn Haukul (942 A.D.), and his successors. Ibn Khullikán states that in the time of Yakúb-bin-Luis Kábul was inhabited by a Turkish tribe called Durán, on which Elliot remarks:—"It is possible that the term Durán may have a connection with 'darrá' a hill-pass (valley), and that allusion may be made to the country north of Kábul, just in the same way as in modern times, the inhabitants of these same tracts are styled in Kábul, 'Kohistánis' or hill-men." The first invasion recorded was in the time of Abdullah, Governor of Irák, on the part of the Khalif Usmán (644 A.D.) He invaded Zaranj and Kish then considered part of Indian territory and the tract between Ar- rukhaj (Arachosia) and Dáwar and in the latter country attacked the idolators in the mountain Zúr. Abdurrahmán subsequently advanced to Kábul about the year 661 A.D. and took prisoner Kábul Sháh, the ruler, who became a convert to Islám; but we learn "that the king of Kábul made an appeal to the warriors of India and the Musalmáns were driven out of Kábul. He recovered all the other conquered countries and advanced as far as Bust, but on the approach of another Musalmán army, he submitted and engaged to pay an annual tribute." In 683-4 the Kábulis refused to pay the annual tribute and their king was taken and killed. The war was continued by the king's successor, who was again compelled to yield submission to the Musalmáns, but "whenever opportunity offered, renewed efforts were made by the Kábulis to recover their lost independence." In 697-8 Ranbil1 was chief of Kábul and reduced the leader of a Musalmán army who had invaded his territory to such straits that he was compelled to purchase his release. In 700-01 A.D., an avenging expedition under Abdurrahmán was sent by the celebrated Hajjáj against Kábul and was completely successful. The victor on his return was, however, coldly received by his master because he did not remain and take permanent occupation of the country. Exasperated at this, Abdurrahmán made a treaty with the infidels and promised them freedom from tribute should he succeed in overthrowing his master, and on

1 This name is very variously given by different writers, Zentil, Zoubil, Ratbiel, Ratpil, and Wilson makes the name Ratinpála.
the other hand the Kábul king agreed to afford him a refuge in the event of failure. Hajjáj was victorious and Abdurrahmán committed suicide when his host was about to deliver him up to the conqueror. Masúdí and other writers make the name Ranbal a dynastic royal title for the prince of Kábul and the territories between Hirát and Kábul. When Al Mamún was made governor of Khurásán he captured Kábul and obliged the king to become a Muhammadan. In 869-70 A.D., Yakúb-bin-Lais took Kábul and made its prince a prisoner. The king of Ar-Rukhaj was put to death and its inhabitants were forced to embrace Islám. This conquest appears to have been more durable than any of the preceding ones, for we find the coins of Yakúb struck at Panjshír, to the north-east of Kábul in the years 874-75 A.D.

Indians of Kábul.

All the authorities quoted by Elliot, except Al Birúni, makes Kanak the last of the Katormán kings.

Al Birúni writes: 1 —

"Le Kaboul était autrefois gouverné par des princes de race turque; on dit qu'ils étaient originaires du Tibet. Le premier d'entre eux, qui se nommait Barhtigín.** le trône resta au pouvoir de ses enfants pendant à peu près soixante générations.** l'ordre de ces régnes était écrit sur une étoffe de soie qui fut trouvée dans la forteresse de Nagarkot: j'aurais vivement désiré pouvoir lire cet écrit: mais différentes circonstances m'en empêchèrent. Au nombre de ces rois fut Kan; c'est celui qui a fondé le vihára de Peychaver et dont le vihára porte le nom. * * * le dernier roi de cette dynastie fut Laktouseman. Le prince avait pour visir un brahmane nommé Kalar.** Il s'empara donc du trône et eut pour successeur le brahme Sámanda. Celui-ci fut remplacé par Kamalavâ; puis virent successivement Bhima, Jayapála, Anaódápála et Nardajaaprála. Celui-ci monta, dit on, sur le trône l'an 412 de Phégire (1021 A. D.) Son fils Bhinapála lui succéda au bout de cinq ans."

Kank can be no other than the Kanishka of the Turushka dynasty of Kashmír. Elliot identifies Kalar with the Syálapati of the bull-and-horseman type of coins found in the Kábul valley and which bear Brahmanical emblems as those of their predecessors, bore the elephant and lion, considered Buddhistic signs. The latter in turn differed from the earlier Indo-Skythian coins. We cannot further allude to the interesting results derivable from a study of these coins beyond that they show that the Turkish dynasty had

1 Fragments Arabes, p. 147; Dowson’s Elliot, II., 10.  
Prinsep, I., 330, and references.
become thoroughly Indianised. In 961 A.D. Alptegh established the Musalmán dynasty of Ghazni and henceforth the Hindus were the objects of bitter persecution, so that many became Musalmánes and others fled to the hills or to India. In the histories mention is made of the services rendered to Mähmúd of Ghazni by the Hindu renegade Tilak, who is also said to have brought "all the Hindu Kators and many outsiders" under the rule of Sultan Masúd (1032 A.D.) At the time of Timúr's expedition against these Kators (1408 A.D.) their country extended from the frontiers of Kashmir to the mountains of Kábul and they possessed many towns and villages. One of their large cities was called Shckal and another Jorkal, which latter was the residence of the ruler. Timúr approached the Kator country by the Kháwak pass from Indaráb; to his right lay the Kators and to the left the pagan Siyáh-Pothes. He describes the former as a people who drink wine and eat swine's flesh and who speak a language distinct from Turki, Persian, Hindi and Kashmiri, and their chiefs were called Uda and Udásfu or Adálshu. Timúr further adds that most of the inhabitants were idolaters; they were men of a powerful frame and light complexion and were armed with arrows, swords and slings. In the time of Baber the country of Kábul was occupied by many and various tribes. He writes:

"Its valley and plains are inhabited by Türkës, Aimáks and Arabs. In the city, and the greater part of the villages, the population consists of Tajiks. Many others of the villages and districts are occupied by Pasháis, Paráchis, Tájiks, Beréks and Afgháns. In the hill-country to the west reside the Hazará and Nukderis. Among the Hazará and Nukderi tribes are some who speak the Mughal language. In the hills to the north-east lies Káfiristán and such countries as Kator and Gebrek. To the south is Afghanistán. There are eleven or twelve different languages spoken in Kábul; Arabic, Persian, Türkí, Mughalí, Hindi, Afghání, Pashái, Paráchi, Bérekí and Lámghání."

The Paráchu Musalmánes of the Indus valley appear to represent the Baniyas of the plains and have a dialect of their own. Pashu is spoken in the valley of the Kunar river and Hindi will probably represent the language of the Káfirs and people of Kaschkára. In the reign of Jahángír (1619) the Sarkár of Paklí is described as bounded on the north by the Kator country, on the south by the Ghakkar country, on the east by the Kashmir mountains

1 Dowson's Elliot, I., 128, 130. 2 Ibid., III., 400. 3 Erskine's Baber, I., 221.
and on the west by Attak-Banaras. Pakli was traversed by Jahangir on his way to Kashmir and lay, between the Indus and the Kishanganga. At this time, the country to the north was known as Kator comprising Gilgit, Darel and Chitrál.

From the preceding extracts we gather that Katúra or Kator was the name given to the reigning family in Kabul for many generations, and that they were so Indianised as to be regarded as Hindus. They, moreover, ruled over an Indian race inhabiting the country throughout the highlands from Lamghán to Baltí. We shall now turn to the people inhabiting this region at the present day. We find three great groups of tribes in this tract, the Kho division between the Indus and the Hindu-kush, the Shina on the upper Indus and surrounding all, Muhammadans of different races speaking Pushtu or Persian or Túrki. The Khos comprise the mass of the Chitrál population, the Siyáh-Posh of Kásfírstan and the people of Lamghán and represent the Khosas or Khasas of whom we have heard so much. The upper part of the Kashkára valley is called Túri-kho, the middle is known as Múl-kho and the lower as Lud-kho and the language spoken is called Khawár, the Arniya of Dr. Leitner. These Khos are the oldest inhabitants and are styled 'Fakh-r-mushkin' by the ruling class. The latter are descended from the common ancestor of the governing family and are generally spoken of as Sáh Sangallie, next to whom come the Zundre or Ronos and then the Ashimadek or food-givers. As already mentioned the Khushwaktiya branch of the Katúres reigns in Yassan and the Sáh or Sháh Katúre branch in Chitrál. It would appear that the native rulers of Gilgit, Iskardo and Kashmir were supplanted by Musalmán adventurers in the fourteenth century and those of Kashkára by others in the sixteenth century. The local tradition in Chitrál is that it was governed by 'a Rais who is said to have been of the same family as the rulers of Gilgit before the introduction of Muhammadanism.' The last local ruler of Gilgit was the Ra Sri Buddhaddatta of the Sáh-rais family and the old name of that valley was Sárgin. There is little doubt that in the name Sáhrais we have the Sáh or Sháh of Sáh Katúre and a continuation to our own day of the 'Sháh' in the inscriptions of Vásudeva and the Sáhana-Sáh of inscriptions and legends. The members of the present ruling family
are intruders and it is to the Ronos we must look for the representative of the old princes. Major Biddulph\(^1\) tells us that:

"The Ronos rank next to the ruling family in every country in which they are found. The Wazirs are generally though not always chosen from amongst the Rono families. They exist in small numbers in Nagar, Gilgit and Punyál, gradually increasing in numbers as one travels westwards through Yassán, Mástój and Chitrál, in which places there are said to be altogether over 300 families. In Nagar and Yassán they call themselves Hara and Hasiyá and in Chitrál, Zundra, but they all claim to be of the same stock. Some exist in Wakhán and Shrikol, where they are called Khalbar-khatar, and in Shighman, where they are called Gaibalik-khatar."

The Sáh Sangallie class in Chitrál give their daughters to the Ronos, 'who being descended from a former dynasty of rulers of the country are regarded as of royal blood.' Surely in these we have the representatives of the Yueh-ti rulers of Kashmir who called themselves 'Korano' on their coins, and of the Kator kings of Kábul, the last of whom was displaced by his Brahman minister; whilst the actual de-facto ruler of Kash-kára retains the ancient title of 'Sáh Katúre.'

From Major Biddulph\(^2\) we learn that "the name 'Dárd' is not acknowledged by any section of the tribes to whom it has been so sweepingly applied. In a single instance the term is applied by one tribe to some of their neighbour." The correct name for the principal tribe inhabiting Gilgit, Astor and the Indus valley is Shin or Shing, possibly the Chinas of the Purásás. They have pleasing features, hair usually black, but sometimes brown, complexion moderately fair: the shade being sometimes light enough, but not always, to allow the red to shine through; eyes brown or hazel and voice rough and harsh. Mr. Drew gives the divisions which exist at the present day and which he says 'may be called castes, since they are kept up by rules more or less stringent against the intermarriage of those who belong to different divisions.' With both Kho and Shin are found Gujars, Kremins and Doms. The last is a servile caste corresponding to the Khasiya Doms in Kumaon and performing similar duties. The habits and customs of both Kho and Shins and the language spoken by them all show their Indian origin, though they have been

\(^1\) 'Tribes of the Hindu-koosh,' p. 34, 66.  
\(^2\) Ibid., p. 8, 156.
for some centuries converts to Islám. There is still one other considerable section of the inhabitants of this region to be mentioned. Their language betrays a Turanian origin and they call themselves Búrisho or Wúrshik and are known to their neighbours as Yesh-kun. They form the entire population of Hanza, Nagar and Punyál, and nearly all the population of Yassan besides being numerically superior in Gilgit, Sai, Darel and Astor, and their language is called by themselves Búrishki and by others Khajúna. Major Biddulph1 rightly, we think, connects the name ‘Búrish’ with ‘Purusha-pura,’ the name of the capital of the Little Yuel-ti in the fifth century of our era.2

The Moollah who visited Chitrál in 1874 saw three several pagan Káfirs from various parts of Káfristán and describes their appearance as so like the Chitrális both in features and dress and in the way of arranging the hair of their faces that it would be impossible to distinguish them apart were it not for the fact that the Káfirs all wear a tuft of hair on the crown of the head like the Hindús, and this, too, is only visible when they remove their head-dress.3 In 1841, Dr. Griffiths saw some of the Káfir inhabitants of Kattar and describes them as a fine-bodied people and very active and not very fair. The chiefs were much fairer than their followers and in the expression of face and eyes, Aryan. According to Major Biddulph, the Siyáh-Posh are separable into three tribes conformable to the natural divisions of the country, the Rum, Wai and Bush. The Rum-galis or Lim-galis border on Laghmán and Kábul and may probably be referred to the Romakas of the Puránas. The Wai-galis inhabit the valleys extending south-east to the Kunar river at Chaghán Sárí, and the Bush-galis occupy the valleys to the north. They speak a language having an Indian basis; their principal deities are Imbra (Indra) and Mani (Manu), and the men shave their heads in Indian fashion, merely leaving the ordinary top-knot. The women of the Bash-galis wear a curious head-dress consisting of a sort of black cap with lappets and two horns about a foot long made of wood wrapped round with cloth and fixed to the cap. This custom is noticed by Hwui Seng4 when writing of the Ye-tha country which was met

with on leaving Poh-ho: there the royal ladies wore on their heads a horn in length eight feet and more, three feet of its length being red coral. As for the rest of the great ladies they all, in like manner, cover their heads, using horns, from which hang down veils all round like precious canopies. * * * The majority of them are unbelievers and most of them worship false gods.' Hwen Thsang has a similar notice regarding the Tukhára country of Himatala, the ruler of which was so friendly to the Yueh-ti Turushkas of Kashmir as to avenge their downfall.  

Taking into consideration the very different influences to which the Khos of Kashkára and the Khasiyas of Kumaon have been subjected for many centuries, it is not curious that their habits and customs at the present day should widely differ. The fortunes, too, of their rulers have varied. Sálikot in the Panjab is supposed to have been founded by Sáliváhan, whose son Rásálu was succeeded by Raja Hudi, chief of the Sálas.  
The chiefs of Nagarkot or Kangra were also closely connected with the Yueh-tis and Al Birúni mentions that they possessed a genealogical tree of the Turkish rulers of Kábul written on silk.  
The chiefs of Lohara or Sáhi, a petty hill

1 Mun. II., 197.  
2 Antea, p. 427. The following references will furnish all the information known about these so-called 'Káfirs':—


Mohan Lal.—Siah-posh tribe J. A. S. Ben., II., 305.
Trumpp, Dr.—Language of so-called Káfirs, J. R. A. S., XIX., 1.
Tanner, Col.—H. Proc. R. (S., III., 278, 311, 496.
Biddolph, Major.—Tribes of the Hindu Koosh, p. 136: Calcutta, 1881.
Prinsep, J., 214, Thomas' edition
Ersatine, W.—History of Caber, I., 221.
Révussat, A.—Nouveaux Melanges Asiatiqes, I, 223.

Out of all these writers only Klapinstone, Masson, Burnes, Trumpp and Biddolph have seen Káfirs, and no European was as yet entered their country.

state of the Gilgit or Sárgin valley, who succeeded Didda on the throne of Kashmir in the eleventh century, also claimed
descent from Śalivāhana, but were none the less Śāhis of the
Turushka stock. In A.D. 700, both the king of the Turks and
the king of Kábul are said to have borne the same name, which
was also common to the kings of Kashmir. Unfortunately
this name comes to us in many guises, but if we accept the form
Ranbil as standing for Ratnapála we have another link in the
chain. Again the existence of a Sūrya-deva Raja, sprung from the
sun-god, and therefore of the solar-race, in the hill state of Khie-
pan-to (Sirikol) in the seventh century, shows the influence of
Indian ideas far beyond the limits assigned ordinarily to the
Indians themselves. We may now conclude that we have carefully
and fairly made out a connection between the dynasty ruling west
of the Indus known as Kátures and the Kumaon Katyúras and
between the people of Kumaon and the Kunets of Kunaor and the
Khos of Kashkára. We find, wherever the Khasas occur, the Doms
live with them as their servitors and recognize in these Doms the
descendants of the Dasas of the Vedas, inhabitants of Upper India
even before either Nágas or Khasas appeared. The time has passed
for attributing to the small immigration of the Aryans that has
given us the Vedas, the origin of all the races who are to-day
assumed to be of Aryan blood and even for holding that all so-called
Rajpúts are of Aryan descent. Many of our Rajpút clans can be
traced back to Baktrians, Parthians and Skythians when the facts now
fast accumulating are closely examined. We have seen already how
the Aryan writers themselves acknowledge that in many cases all
the castes have a common origin. Many of the purer race did not
accept the advanced ideas of their priest-led brethren and are
accordingly contemptuously classed amongst the outcasts because
they knew no Brahmans.” The Aryan immigrants themselves
found on their arrival in India that other members of their race
had preceded them. These from admixture with the so-called
aborigines had degenerated from the primitive type in customs and
perhaps also in features. Their religion also was affected by this
union for, as we shall see hereafter, the Pasupati cult had its origin
amongst the non-Brahmanical tribes, and from this sprang the

1 Troyer’s R. T., VI., 367; VII., 1283.
3 Mém. I.
terrible forms of Siva which have taken such hold in comparatively modern times of the popular religious thought of India. The influence of the Vaidik Aryans is better shown in the language and literature of modern India and the modifications of the physical characteristics of the various tribes with which they have come in contact. Professor Huxley, as quoted by a recent writer, says, "the Indo-Aryans have been in the main absorbed into the pre-existing population, leaving as evidence of their immigration an extensive modification of the physical characters of the population, a language and a literature."

We may, therefore, assume for the Khasiyas an Aryan descent in the widest sense of that term much modified by local influences, but whether they are to be attributed to the Vaidik immigration itself or to an earlier or later movement of tribes having a similar origin, there is little to show. It is probable, however, that they belong to a nation which has left its name in various parts of the Himálaya, and that they are one in origin with the tribes of the western Himálaya whom we have noticed. This nation in course of time and chiefly from political causes and the intrusion of other tribes was broken up into a number of separate peoples, some of whom have become Muhammadans, others Buddhists and others again, as in these hills where the facility of communication with the plains and the existence of the sacred shrines in their midst rendered the people peculiarly open to Brahmanical influence, became Hindús in religion, customs and speech. As we approach the Aryan ethnical frontier in the Himálaya to the west, Turks, Tátars, Iranians, and Aryans professing the three great religions meet and as we near the ethnical frontier in the east, Tibetans and Hindús are found together in the debatable ground, as we may call Nepál. Further east Tibetans alone prevail until we get to the shading off between them and the monosyllable-tongued Indo-Chinese tribes in farthest Assam. Whatever may have been their origin, the Khasiyas have forgotten it and influenced by modern fashion have sought to identify themselves with the dominant Hindu races as the Hindu converted to Islám and called Shaikh seeks to be known as a Sayyid when he becomes well-to-do in the world. In this respect the Khasiyas do not differ from any other hill tribe brought
under Brahmanical influence. All see that honour, wealth and power are the hereditary dues of the castes officially established by the authors of the Māṇava Dharmaśāstras and seek to connect themselves with some higher than their own. Even at the present day, the close observer may see the working of those laws which have in the course of centuries transmuted a so-called aboriginal hill-race into good Hindūs. A prosperous Kumaon Dom stone-mason can command a wife from the lower Rajpūt Khasiyas, and a successful Khasiya can buy a wife from a descendant of a family of pure plains' pedigrees. Year by year the people are becoming more orthodox in their religious observances and the fanes of the dīi minores are becoming somewhat neglected. What little historical records exist show us great waves of invasion and conquest over all Upper India from the earliest times and bitter dynastic and religious struggles. The many different tribes who joined in these wars have not been superimposed without disturbance one on the other like deposits of inorganic matter, so as to enable us like the geologist at once to declare the order of their coming from their ascertained position, but rather they are in the position of a range of mountains full of faults, inversions and folds. Following out this simile the earliest inhabitants had to receive conqueror after conqueror, and accommodate themselves to the deposit left behind, by being crumpled up so as to occupy less space or by being cracked across so as to allow some parts to be pushed above others. We find that this is what must have taken place. In some cases the intruding power was strong enough to absorb or to enslave the conquered race, in other cases these have been pushed onwards from their original seats, and again in other cases they have been divided into two. From Tibet on the north and the plains on the south intruders have wedged themselves in or been superimposed on the Khasiya race, chemically assimilating as it were the subject race in places by intermarriage and in others showing a purely mechanical admixture. For these reasons it is impossible to trace any unbroken direct connection between the Kāτūres and Khos of Kanyakāra and the Kātyūras and Khasas of Kumaon, but the affinity is none the less established on as good grounds as any other question connected with early Indian history and may be accepted until other and better evidence comes to light.
CHAPTER V.

HISTORY—(contd.).

CONTENTS.


In the tract stretching along the foot of the hills from the Sárda to the Ganges and thence through the Dún to the Jumna we have traces of an ancient civilisation all record of which has vanished. In the Taráí in the depth of what appears to be primeval forest are found solidly-built temples containing stones richly carved and ornamented and surrounded by ancient plantations of mango and other fruit trees. The modern town of Rámnagar has been built from materials derived from the ruins at Dhikuli, a little higher up on the right bank of the Kosi river and which once, it is said, under the name of Vairát-pátan or Virátoagar, 1 was the capital of a Pándava kingdom subordinate to that of Indraprastha long before the name Katyúria was heard of. The numerous remains of tanks and scattered buildings are also attributed in popular tradition to the 'Pándub log.' Further west at Pánduwálá near the Láldháng chauki are the remains of an ancient town and temples of which many of the finer carvings have been taken away to Gwalior and Jaipur. At Lúni Sot also we have some fine stone-work and eight miles to the west near the ruined village of Mandhal in the Chándí Pahár some six miles east of Hardwár are the remains of an old temple containing some

1 This must not be confounded with the Bairát in which the Pándavas resided during their exile, although the Kumaonis have transferred the whole epic to their own hills, making the Lohughát valley the site of Kurukshetra: for the true Bairát, see Arch. Rep., II., 246, and VI., 91.
good carvings in a high state of preservation. They represent both Buddhist and Brahmanical subjects: amongst the former the tree and deer found on the coins of Krananda that have been discovered at Bahat in the Saharanpur district and amongst the latter the bull of Siva and the image of Ganesha. There is also a representation of the Trimûrtti or triune combination of Brahma, Vishnu and Siva which seems to be common amongst these monuments and which doubtless belongs to the later development of Hinduism. Numerous mango groves and the remains of tanks are also found amid the forest along the foot of the inner range in the Dún, similar in all respects to those found in the Taráí. If to these material evidences of an early civilisation we add the testimony of local tradition and those scraps of general tradition floating amidst the stories recorded by the early historians, we may safely assert that at a very early period the country along the foot of the hills supported a considerable population living in towns, the remains of which show a fair advance in the arts of civilisation. Amongst the general traditions regarding these hills we have seen that the legend connecting the Saka king and founder of the Saka era with Kumaon has no support from established facts. The local collections of legends regarding the places of pilgrimage in Kumaon and Garhwal afford us no aid for their political history. All the information before us would lead us to conclude that the name 'Kumaon' cannot have attained to any significance before the fifteenth century. Indeed it was not until the reign of Rudra Chand, in the time of Akbar, that much was known to the Musalmán historians concerning these hills, and it is in the writings of the Musalmán historians of that period that we find the name first applied to the hill country now known as Kumaon and Garhwal and that the stories regarding its early importance first find currency. Whatever historical truth these stories contain must be connected with western Kumaon and Garhwal, both of which can boast of a fairly ascertained history far exceeding in antiquity anything that can be assigned to the tract which apparently originally received the name Kumaon.

1 See General Cunningham’s notes on the ruins of Moradavaja’s fort six miles north-east of Najibabad, containing Buddhist remains, and on those called Chatarbhúj in the very heart of the Taráí midway between Rampur and Naini Tal and about six miles to the east of the high road. The ruins lie to the east of the villages of Maholi and Dalpur and between the Jotár Nadi and the Kakrola Nadi and extend over several miles. The remains of a fort, tank and wells are visible. Arch. Rep., II., 238. See also J. A. S., Ben., XXXVI., i., 154.
Our first step, therefore, is to ascertain what is known concerning the early history of Garhwal and western Kumaon, and for this purpose, however dry the task may be, we must collate and compare the lists of the rulers of Garhwal, for beyond these bare lists we have no written records whatsoever relating to its history. One of the earliest of these lists is that obtained by Captain Hardwicke in 1796 through Pradhumana Sah, then reigning at Srinagar and published by him in his ‘Narrative of a Journey to Srinagar’ in the first volume of the Asiatic Researches:

1. Hardwicke’s list of Garhwal Rajas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Names</th>
<th>Number Reigned</th>
<th>Names</th>
<th>Number Reigned</th>
<th>Names</th>
<th>Number Reigned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Bohg-Dhunt, the first Raja, between whose reign and Adey Paul 900 years passed, of which no records exist</td>
<td></td>
<td>22. Sooret Singh</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>48. Aunund Narain</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. His son Bejey Paul</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>24. Anoop</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>50. Mahah</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Ranjeet</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>32. Lechma</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>68. Purteet</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Inder Sain</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>33. Precim</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>69. Laitet</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Chunder</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>34. Saada Nand</td>
<td>65</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Mungul</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>35. Perma</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>Who died in 1791 and left four sons, was succeeded by the eldest,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Chooga Mun</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>36. Maha</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>60. Jakert bah, and was succeeded by his brother the present Raja</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Chinta</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>37. Sooka</td>
<td>61</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Pooren</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>38. Sibha Chand</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>61. Purdoon Man</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Soore;</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>41. Goolab</td>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Kerreg Singh</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>42. Ram Narain</td>
<td>59</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The second list is taken from an official report of the year 1849 and is the same as that accepted by Mr. Beckett, the settlement officer
The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventeenth had his head-quarters at Maluwa-kot, the twenty-first at Ambuwa-kot and the twenty-fourth in the Bhilang valley. Numerous Khasiya rajas owed allegiance to Son Pál, who held sove-

The compiler of this list makes Kanak Pál come from Gujrát and the seventh-
resembles in many respects the tradition regarding Som Chand in Kumaon, mentioned hereafter. A third list is given by Mr. Williams and differs in some respect from Mr. Beckett's list:—

3. Williams' list of Garhwal Rajas:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Raja Name</th>
<th>Raja Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Kank Pál.</td>
<td>Sooruji Pál.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sunât Pál.</td>
<td>Anerudo Pál.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Poorun Pál.</td>
<td>Vishog Pál. II.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Ameegut Pál.</td>
<td>Gugyan Pál.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Shuktee Pál.</td>
<td>Vikram Pál.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Retee Pál.</td>
<td>Vishitra Pál.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Salivanaan Pál.</td>
<td>Hans Pál.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Mudun Pál.</td>
<td>Suvarn Pál.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Vibhog Pál.</td>
<td>Sniluban Deo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Jeychander Pál.</td>
<td>Maheluksban Deo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Heerut Pál.</td>
<td>Sut Pál.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Mudun Subáce.</td>
<td>Apoorub Deo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Abeeegut Pál.</td>
<td>Jey Deo.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fourth list was obtained by me through an Almora Pandit and may be called the Almora list:—

4. Almora list of Garhwal Rajas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Raja Name</th>
<th>Raja Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bhagwan Pál.</td>
<td>Vibhrama Pál.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Abhaya</td>
<td>Vijaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Bhishiha</td>
<td>Hansa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Karna</td>
<td>Sona Pál, 1299 A.D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Keshma</td>
<td>Kámbha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Vyaaka</td>
<td>Sandhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Suratha</td>
<td>Snilubha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Jayati</td>
<td>Lakshmanadeva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Paru</td>
<td>Alakshmanadeva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Aryakta</td>
<td>Ananta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Salivahaa</td>
<td>Abhideva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Sanga</td>
<td>Abhayadeva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Maungita</td>
<td>Ajaya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Ratna</td>
<td>Ajayadeva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Madana Pál L</td>
<td>Asaphatapá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Bhagadatta Pál.</td>
<td>Ganitadeva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Jaychandra</td>
<td>Jitaribhadeva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Kirthi</td>
<td>Kalyána</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Madana</td>
<td>Aa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Anibuddha Pál.</td>
<td>Dipanta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Vibhogita</td>
<td>Priyanihára</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Subadhán Kot.</td>
<td>Sundara</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sixty-fifth in descent was Pratáp Sáh, whose son now rules in Tihri or native Garhwal. The dates given are those that have been gathered from grants now existing in the local

1Memoir of Dehra Dún, 81. He notes:—"It should be borne in mind that the writer's list does not profess like Hardwicke's to give a linear succession of kings; each name is only supposed to represent the power paramount in the country for the time being." The grounds for this statement are not given.

2Dhalip reigned during a part of the year 1717.

3Jayakrit Sáh reigned from 1760 to 1785.
official records. All accounts concur in stating that Ajaya Pála was the first who attempted to reduce the independent Khasiya rajas under his sway, and, as we shall show hereafter, he cannot be placed earlier than 1358-70 A.D. The above are the very few dates that we have been able to establish by corroborative evidence, and though every possible source has been carefully examined no better result has been obtained. Taking the twenty-six reigns before Sona Pála and allowing them the long average of fifteen years to each reign, we cannot place the Bhagwán Pála of the fourth list earlier than the first quarter of the ninth century. But then it can be urged that these lists as they stand do not give the entire succession, but only such members of the dynasty as made themselves remarkable, a not unusual feature in Indian genealogical lists. Al-Birúni, writing in the eleventh century, remarks:—“Les Indiens attachent peu d'importance à l'ordre des faits; ils negligent de rédiger la chronique des règnes de leurs rois. Quand ils sont embarrassés, ils parlent au hasard.” The earlier names, too, differ so considerably in these and other lists which have been consulted that no other theory is possible to account for such contradictions as the existence of Kanak Pála at the head of one and Bhagwán Pála at the head of another. By adopting this explanation there is no necessity for placing the reign of Bhagwán Pála in the ninth century. Setting aside Hardwicke’s list, an examination of the remainder shows a remarkable agreement in certain noteworthy names. No. 2 has fifth in descent Sigal Pála, who is the Shakti Pála of No. 3 and apparently the Suratha Pála of No. 4. The Sáli Pála of No. 2 is the same as the Sáliváhan Pála of No. 3 and No. 4. If we turn to the pedigrees of the Doti and Askot families given hereafter and which are of undoubted local origin, we find a remarkable coincidence amongst the earlier names. The first two of the Doti list are Sáliváhana-deva and Shaktiváhana-deva, and the first on the Askot list is Sáliváhana-deva followed by a Saka-deva as sixth and afterwards by a Vikramáditya and a Bhoja. All that we may suggest regarding the occurrence of the latter names in the lists is that the lists correctly give the sequence of these celebrated names, first a Saka Sáliváhan, then a Vikramáditya and then a Bhoja. These names have apparently been interpolated by the later editors of the lists, the bards of the houses of Garhwál, Doti
and Askot to lend lustre to the ancestry of their patrons, and certainly need not be accepted as members of the family in the regular succession. Even granting that these names are interpolations, there is much deserving of notice in the minor names of the list. The word 'Sigal' in Sigal Pála recalls the name of Sigal, the chief city of the Saka-Skythian district of Sakastene. Sáliváhan is a synonym of the Saka prince who founded the Saka era, called also Sakáditya, Sálí Pála, Shaktiváhana in these lists. Kánk, the eponymous founder in the second list, is none other than Kanishka and is also said to have come from Gujrát, where we have recorded evidence of an Indo-Skythian rule in the Kshatrapa and the so-called 'Sáh' dynasty, and where we have a Khosa race to the present day. In the Suratha Pál of the fourth list we have also a reference to Suráshtra, the old name of the peninsula of Gujrát. Now we cannot imagine that all these coincidences are accidental and would point out that a true historical connection with the old Indo-Skythian dynasty underlies the occurrence of these names in the lists, and we believe that very many of the so-called Rájput houses have a similar origin, notably the hill dynasties and the Baisa in the plains.

Having fairly established a connection between the Indo-Skythians and the local dynasties and bearing in mind that Joshimáth in Garhwál was the first acknowledged seat of the Katyúri dynasty of Kumaon, we shall apply this knowledge to the local traditions. Legendary tales in the south of India state that Sáliváhana came from Ayodhya; the Askot chronicles give the same origin, but Mrityunjaya assigns him to Pratishthana on the Godávari. The accord between the Askot and south Indian traditions betrays the influence of the Mysore preachers and teachers whose representatives to the present day hold all the chief officers at Kedárnáth and Badrináth, and it is doubtless to their influence is due the remodelling of the local lists. Locally Sáliváhana was the avenger of the defeat of his tribesman Sakadatta or Sakwanti, the first conqueror of Dehli, and, as he was the greatest name in the national lists, he has been introduced into all the local lists, being in fact suzerain as well. Neither then nor now could any powerful monarch have his seat of government in the Garhwál or Kumaon hills, though the lord paramount of those districts, like the British of to-day, may have
held considerable possessions in the plains. The successors of Sa-
 livāhan, whether of his family or not we have no means for decid-
ing, are reported to have occupied Indraprastha and the hill-coun-
try to its north for several generations, for the Rāja-tarangani states
that Indraprastha after the conquest ceased to be the abode of
royalty for nearly eight centuries. “Princes from the Siwālik or
northern hills held it during this time and it long continued deso-
late until the Tuārs.” General Cunningham looks on the date
736 A. D. for the rebuilding of Dehli by Anang Pāl Tomár “as
being established on grounds that are more than usually firm for
Indian history.” He also accepts the statement that Indraprastha
remained desolate for many centuries after the Saka invasion, and
it seems better to retain the indigenous tradition here than to start
theories for which we have no foundation in fact. But even for
this ‘dark age’ there are a few statements which throw some light
on its history. Frishta¹ tells us that Jaichand left an infant son
who succeeded him and who would have ruled in his stead had not
his uncle Dihlu deposed him and with the aid of the nobles ascended
the throne. “This prince as famous for his justice as for his
valour devoted his time to the good of his subjects and built the
city of Dehli. After having reigned only four years, Phūr (Porus),
a Raja of Kumaon, collecting a considerable force, attacked
Dihlu, took him prisoner and sent him in confinement to Rohtas,
himself occupying the empire. Raja Phūr pushed on his conquest
through Bang as far as the western ocean, and having collected
a great army refused to pay tribute to the kings of Persia. The
Brahmanical and other historians are agreed that Phūr marched
his army to the frontier of India in order to oppose Alexander,
on which occasion Phūr lost his life in battle after having
reigned seventy-three years.” The Greeks found Porus between the
Hydaspes and the Akesines and a nephew of Porus in the next
duāb. We may accept the suggestion that they were both Paurava-
as or descendants of Puru, for Plutarch makes Géasius the pro-
genitor of Phūr, and he may be identified with Yayāti.² We have
another Porus, however, in the king already referred to, who sent
an embassy to Augustus in B.C. 22—20, and this date would agree
better with the time given in the local legend of Raja Phūr. We have

¹ Briggs, Ixii, 26. ² Cunn Arch. Rep., II., 17.
already suggested on other grounds that this Porus may have been an Indo-Skythian or Parthian, and here he is connected with Kumaon, of which he may have been suzerain. In another passage Firishta tells us that Rámdeo Ráthor between the years 440 and 470 A.D. was opposed in his conquests by the Raja of "Kumaon, who inherited his country and his crown from a long line of ancestors that had ruled upwards of 2,000 years. A sanguinary battle took place which lasted during the whole of one day, from sunrise to sunset, wherein many thousands were slain on both sides, till, at length, the Raja of Kumaon was defeated with the loss of all his elephants and treasure and fled to the hills." The Raja of Kumaon was compelled to give his daughter in marriage to the conqueror. There is nothing to add to this statement but that it corroborates the other tradition that princes from the Siwálik hills held some authority in the upper Duáb between the Saka conquest and the arrival of the Tomars. That Indraprastha was not entirely desolate during the period is shown by the inscription of Raja Dháva on the iron pillar at Dehli which Princep from the form of the letters would assign to the third or fourth century, A.D.

Between the date of the Saka conquest of Indraprastha and the advent of the Chinese traveller Hwen Thsang, all that we can say regarding the history of these hills is that the country appears to have been divided amongst a number of petty princes, of whom sometimes one and sometimes another claimed paramount sway over the remainder. The chief of the Bhilang valley at one time enjoyed the greatest prestige and again a dynasty whose principal seat was in the Alaknanda valley near Joshimath. The Chinese Buddhist pilgrims Fah Hian, Hwui Seng and Sung Yun, whose travels have been translated by Mr. Beal, did not visit Kumaon, and we have to refer to the works of Hwen Thsang for our only information from this source on this period. In 634 A.D. Hwen Thsang proceeded from Thanesar to Srughna in the Saháranpur district, and thence across the Ganges to

1 Briggs, I. c. p. lxxvii: Dowson's Elliot, V., 561.  
2 J. A. S., Ben., 1839, p. 629: Thomas' Princep, I., 319.  
3 For this purpose we have the Mémoires sur les Conquées Occidentales par Hien-Thsang, translated by M. Stanislas Julien, 2 vols., Paris, 1857; and Histoire de la vie de Hien-Thsang par Hui-li, translated by the same, Paris, 1853. Also Cunningham's valuable commentary in his Ancient Geography of India, London, 1871.  
4 Gaz., II., 265.
Madāwar in the Bijnor district. He then describes Mayūra or Mayapurā close to Hardwār and his journey to Po-lo-ki-mo-pou-lo or Brahmāpura, which lay 300 li or 50 miles to the north of Madāwar. General Cunnigham writes:—"The northern direction is certainly erroneous, as it would have carried the pilgrim across the Ganges and back again into Sruglīna. We must therefore read north-east, in which direction lie the districts of Garhwäl and Kumaon that once formed the famous kingdom of the Katyārī dynasty. That this is the country intended by the pilgrim is proved by the fact that it produced copper, which must refer to the well-known copper mines of Dhanpur and Pokhri in Garhwāl, which have been worked from an early date." The Mémories describe the kingdom of Brahmāpura as 4,000 li or 666 miles "in circuit surrounded on all sides by mountains. The capital is small, but the inhabitants are numerous and prosperous. The soil is fertile and seed-time and harvest occur at regular seasons. Copper and rock-crystal are produced here. The climate is slightly cold and the people are rough in their manners; a few devote themselves to literature, but the greater number prefer the pursuit of commerce. The inhabitants are naturally uncultivated, and there are followers of both the Buddhist and Brahmanical faiths. There are five monasteries within which reside a few monks and there are some dozen temples of the gods. The followers of the different Brahmanical sects dwell together without distinction. To the north of this kingdom in the midst of the great snowy mountains is the kingdom of Sou-fa-la-na-kiu-ta-lo or Suvarnagotra where gold of a superior quality is procured and hence its name. From east to west this kingdom has its greatest extension, but from north to south it is narrow. For many centuries the ruler has been a woman, and hence it is called the 'Kingdom of the queens.' The husband of the reigning sovereign has the title of king, but does not meddle in affairs of state. The men occupy themselves with war and husbandry. The soil is fertile and is favourable to the growth of a poor kind of barley, and the people rear large numbers of sheep and ponies. The climate is icy-cold and the inhabitants are abrupt and turbulent in their manners. This country touches on the east the country of the Tibetans, on the north is the country of Khoten and on the west is San-po-ho or Sampaha (?)"
General Cunningham writes:—"The ancient capital of the Katyúri Rajas was at Lakhanpur or Vairát-pattian on the Rámganga river about 80 miles in a direct line from Madáwar. If we might take the measurement from Kot-dwára, at the foot of the hills on the north-eastern frontier of Madáwar, the distance would agree with the 50 miles recorded by Hwen Thsang. It occurs to me, however, as a much more probable explanation of the discrepancy in the recorded bearing and distance that they most probably refer to Govisana, the next place visited by Hwen Thsang, from which Bairát lies exactly 50 miles due north." General Cunningham also refers to the position of Lakhanpur, in a valley only 3,339 feet above the level of the sea and to the fact that the country around is still fertile and allows of two crops being collected during the year as further corroborating his identification of Lakhanpur with Brahmmapura. M. Vivien de St. Martin assigns Brahmmapura to Srinagar in Garhwal, which however was of no importance until the present town was built in the early part of the seventeenth century. Others have suggested that the extensive ruins near Barhepure, about twelve miles to the north-east of Najíbabad in the Bijnor district, mark the site of Brahmmapura; but this conjecture, apparently based on the similarity in sound of the two names, would conflict too much with the precise assignment of Hwen Thsang. The Chinese traveller has shown himself so accurate in the great majority of his statements that it would be contrary to all correct principles of interpretation to reject his distinct assertions before it is shown that they are incapable of any reasonable explanation. Such is very far from being the case in this instance, for in Bárahát in the valley of the Bhágiráthí in independent Garhwal we have an ancient and well-known site almost exactly fifty miles due north of Hardwár, and which in climate, products and position both with regard to Madáwar and Suvarnagotra agrees with the description of Hwen Thsang. Bárahát was the seat of an old dynasty and contains numerous remains of temples and other buildings. The inscription on the trisál of Aneka Malla written in the twelfth century and which still stands near the temple of Sukha shows that at that time it was a place of some importance.
The remains now existing are chiefly found to the north-west of the river at the foot of a high hill where there is a level piece of ground. Temples, places of pilgrimage, holy pools and sacred streams abound, for this place was on the direct route to Gangotri. In support of this identification we may remark that the distance to Govisana, the next place visited, is measured from Madãwar, to which place Hwen Thesang must have returned in order to reach Govisana from Bãrahát, whilst if he proceeded from Lakhanpur his road would have lain across the watershed into the Kosi valley.

It has been suggested, as we have seen, that the ancient name of Lakhanpur was Bãrahát, but the weight of local testimony connects this name with the ruins near Dhikuli on the Kosi. That Lakhanpur was an ancient residence of the Katyûris cannot be disputed, but the statement that it was their home in the seventh century is open to grave objections. An old verse embodies the popular tradition regarding its origin:

"Asanti Deva and Bãanti Deva, and in the next names head the list. In the Doti list, six names intervene between Bãanti and Gauranga, the second name of the Pâli list, and in the Askot list seven names intervene, but whether we are to assign these names to different persons of the same family, as is more probable, or to the same persons, the Pâli list in this case retaining only the more remarkable names, there is nothing to show. Assuming that the names belong to different persons, then the Pâli family must have branched off immediately after Bãanti Deva. In the genealogical table of this branch from Asanti downwards given hereafter we have one Sâranga Deo, tenth in descent, and again one Sâranga Gosain, fifteenth in decent, who settled at Támádhaun in Chaukot. On the image of the household deity in the family temple at Támádhaun we have

1 Bãrahát suffered much by the great earthquake of 1897, in which all the buildings were materially injured and many were completely buried in the ground. It is said that two to three hundred people perished, and since then few of the houses or temples have been restored: As. Res., XI., 476."
an inscription recording the name Sáraga Deo, and the date 1420 A.D. which if referred to the first Sáraga Deo will place the Asanti Deva in 1290 A.D. by following an average of thirteen years to each reign, and if referred to the second Sáraga Gósfain will place Asanti Deva in 1225 A.D. Taking the Dotti list there are eighteen reigns between Asanti Deva and the contemporary of Ratan Chand, Rainka Arjuna Sáhi, who lived in 1462 A.D. If we strike out some twenty years on account of the disturbance in the succession which must have shortened the length of the reigns as well as for the unexpired portion of Arjuna Sáhi's reign, an application of the same calculation gives us 1228 A.D. for Asanti Deva. We may, therefore, fairly conclude that according to local tradition Lakhapñpur was founded as late as the beginning of the thirteenth century.

The kingdom of Suvarna-kutuia, or Suvarna-gotra as rendered by M. Julien, must have lain to the north from Ganai in the valley of the Gauri (Gori) if we adhere to Lakhapñpur as the site to be identified with Brahmapura or across the passes in Tibet if we make Bárabát the Brahmapura of our traveller, and that the latter is the correct interpretation will be shown conclusively hereafter. There is no doubt that the valley of the Gori in Juhár in which Milam is situate has at the present day a considerable population and commands a large trade with Tibet; but in former times the valley of the Alaknanda was the more populous of the two, for Joshimath claims to have been the earliest seat of the Katyúris, an honour to which Juhár cannot aspire. The Juhár tradition, however, is interesting in itself, despite the fabulous details with which it is embellished and doubtless contains a residuum of fact. In any case it is all that the people have to say about themselves, and on this account alone is worth preserving; and as it is supposed to relate to this very period, we may introduce it here and as nearly as possible in the words of the narrator:—

**Story of the colonisation of Juhár.**

"Jibar or Jiwar is the old name of Juhár, and long before the present race of men came into the world there were two princes (principalities?) in Juhár called Halduwá and Pingaluwa. The former extended from the snows to Mápa and the latter from Mápa to Laspa. The people of these countries are said to have been covered with hair even to their tongues. There was no pass open at
that time to Hundes. High up on the cliffs near the source of the Gori glacier lived a huge bird (pārw), whose wings when extended were able to cover the valley at Māpa and who lived on human beings. The bird fed on the hapless inhabitants of Haldūwa and Pingalūwa until but a few families remained. Sakya Lāma lived at this time in a great cave near Laphkhel. Every morning the Lāma used to leave his cave and come to Laphkhel, where he used to sit all day at his devotions, flying back at night to his cave. There was at that time in the service of the Lāma a man to whom the Lāma wished to do service and he called the man to him and said:—'Go across the snowy mountains to the south and you will find a place called Juhār, where the pārw has eaten up Haldūwa and Pingalūwa, who lived there. I will give thee a bow and arrow with which thou shalt fight the pārw and kill it; go, take possession of and colonise Juhār.' The man answered and said:—'Thy servant will obey the voice of his master, but he knoweth not the way and who shall guide him.' The Lāma said:—'Fear not, I will provide thee a guide, but take care that thou leave him not. Whatever shape he may assume, follow on and fear not; remember that he is thy guide.' The man and the guide set out together, and after a short time the guide took the form of a dog and the place was called after him Kingri. The man followed the dog and it became a stag, hence the name Dol-dūnga; then the stag became a bear and the place was called Topi-dūnga; and again a camel, hence the name Unts-dhūra: then a tiger, hence the name Dūng-udīyr; and finally a hare, which lost itself in Pingalūwa's country at Samgao.

On looking about him the man saw nothing but, the bones of the people who had been eaten by the pārw, and becoming alarmed fled and took refuge in a house which he found near. Here he found a very old woman covered with hair, and he inquired of her who she was and how the country had become desolate. She told him that she was the last surviving inhabitant of Pingalūwa and Haldūwa's country and added:—'I have remained for the pārw's food to-day and you have come to give him his dinner for to-morrow: well done of you.' The man then told her the story of his master the Lāma and showed her his bow and arrows and asked her what were the capabilities of the country. She told him that it produced sa (Hordaeum caleste) and phāphar (Fagopyrum tataricum), that there were plenty of hones but no salt, and that they could not get to Hündes, where salt was to be had for the asking for it. Whilst thus engaged in conversation he suddenly heard a great whirr of wings and the bird appeared and seized the old woman and eat her up. Nothing daunted the man seized his bow and shot his arrows until he killed the bird. Then he lighted a fire and said to himself:—'I shall go back to the Lāma and get some salt. I am pleased with this place, and this shall be a sign to me that if the valley is intended for me this fire shall not go out until I return, and if the valley is not to be mine then the fire shall die out.' So saying he returned to the Lāma by the way which he had come and told the Lāma all that had befallen him. He found his old guide at Laphkhel in his

1 At the foot of the Balchha-dhūra pass. 2 The power of flying was one of the six essential attributes of the sacred Lāmas. 3 A peak to the east of the Chit-lamu or Kyungar encamping-ground is still called Kinringinri (King = a dog). Dol-dūnga at the confluence of the Dol and Lanka (Dol = jura = Huda aristotelis). Topi-dūnga on the left bank of the Lanka (Topi = a bear). Unts or Uta-dhūra is the pass above Milam. Dūnga is at the foot of the pass and Samgao is Shamgang on the way to Milam.
proper shape and then asked the Lama for salt. 'The Lama said:—'There is plenty of salt in Hundes, but I will produce it for you here.' The Lama then took salt and sowed it over the land like grain and promised that the supply should be sufficient for the entire wants of the new settlement. Having thus spoken the Lama flew away to his cave and was never seen again, and to the present day the herbage here is saturated with salt that there is sufficient for the Bhotiya stock. The people still say that this salt is one of Saky's gifts, and when Buddhist priests visit the valley they ask for salts in the name of Saky who gave the people salt.

When Saky's Lama flew away his servant returned to Juhár and there he found his fire still alight and accepting the omen resolved to remain in the valley. He collected a number of people called Sokes and established them near Milam and built a temple in honour of Saky. In the time of Sonpati Soka, who lived at Madkot, the route to Hundes by the Madkuwa river which was used by the people of Athrai, was opened and much gold was acquired by him. This route has since fallen into disuse owing to the accumulation of snow and the débris of avalanches. These events occurred before the time of Katyúr Rájas and in course of time the Sokes also disappeared. They were followed by the ancestors of the present Milamwás, who came from Tibet into the valley in this manner. They say that they are of Rajput origin and that their fathers served one of the Garhwári Rájas who gave them Jula in Badhm in jayé, and hence they were called Ráwats. One of these went through Malári of Niti into Hundes and entered the service of the Surajbansi Rája of Hundes. Here he remained for a time, and being fond of the chase wandered over the hills towards the south in pursuit of game. One day he followed a wild cow from early morn to evening and saw it disappear at the confluence of the Gunka and the Gori, and accepting this as a good omen the Ráwats much fatigued with the chase called the place Mi-dóna¹ and built there the village of Milam, the inhabitants of which are known to the present day as Ráwats or Sokes.

Such is the only tradition that exists regarding the early settlements in Juhár. As to the Niti valley, the tradition is that the branch of the Katyúr dynasty who subsequently occupied the Katyúr valley was originally established in Jyotirdhám² or Joshi-math on the Dhauli, the river of Niti. There are no indications or traditions of any Amazonian kingdom in the valley, and we must search for it across the passes in Tibet.

The Chinese name of the Amazonian kingdom was Kinchi, and The Amazonian king-

M. Julien makes Sampala which lay to the west

dom.
of it the same as Mo-lo-so or Malasa, which

was some 2,000 li or 333 miles to the north of Lo-hou-lo, the modern Lahúl. Hven Thsang describes the journey from Lahúl to Malasa as difficult and attended by an icy piercing wind so often described by

¹ From mi, man and dóna, encamping-ground or resting-place.

² The place where the great Jyotir ling, emblen of Mahádeo, was established.
travellers in the Himalaya and snow-storms. This clearly brings us across the snowy range to the trans-Himalayan valley of the Satlaj. In D'Anville's reproduction of the Jesuits' map of Tibet this tract is marked as Sanke Somtou and lies to the west of Tchoumourti or Chamurti, a district and town of the modern gNári. The country lying between the Ganges and the Matchou or Karnali is called Nacra Somtou in the same map. gNári is celebrated for its mines of gold and is bounded on the north by Khoten and on the east by Tibet proper. The Vishnu-Purána in its prophetic chapters declares that the Kanakas or Kánas will possess the Amazon country (Strí-rájya) and that called Múshika. The Váyu Purána reads Bhokshyaka or Bhokhyaka for Múshika and others read Búshika. Wilson writes:— "Strí-rájya is usually placed in Bhot. It may, perhaps, here designate Malabar, where polyandry equally prevails. Múshika or the country of thieves was the pirate coast of the Konkan."

In the Rája Tarangani, Lalitáditya (730 A.D.) is said to have erected a statute of Nrihari in the Strí Rájya, showing that it was near Kashmir; but in the Chinese annals we have a record which corroborates the statement of Hwen Thsang and proves that the Amazonian kingdom lay in Tibet and was a reality. From it we learn that there was a tribe in Eastern Tibet known as the Nu-wang from the fact of their being ruled by a woman. In the Tung history they are called Tung-Nu or Eastern-Nu, to distinguish them from a tribe possessing similar institutions to the west. They are first mentioned in the Northern history, and in the Sui history an account is given of an embassy from the Eastern-Nu in 586 A.D., in which it is stated that:

"The people in each successive reign make a woman their prince. The surname of the sovereign is Supi. They build cities in the mountains with houses of many stories, the sovereign's house having nine, in which there are several hundreds of female attendants and a court is held every five days. The men, having nothing to do with the government, only fight and cultivate the land. Both men and women paint their faces of many colours. They live principally by hunting and the weather is very cold. The natural products are copper and gold ore, cinnabar,

1 Wilson, IX., 222. 2 As. Res. XV., 49. The highlands of Tibet have always been notorious for the wandering bands of thieves that infest the routes. In the Mahábhárata the Kankas and Khasas are mentioned as bringing presents to the Pándavas of paipdika gold which was so called because it was collected by ants, paipdika, in allusion to the burrows of the miners in the Tibetan gold-fields. 3 Dr. Bussell, J. R. A. S., XII., 531. It is possible that in Suvarna-gotra we have the origin of the Suvarna-bhūmi and Hiranya-māya of the Puránas. Most of the gold imported from Tibet comes by this route to the present day."
much, yak and two breeds of horses, in addition to salt in abundance, which they carry to India and gain much by the traffic. They have had frequent wars with Tanghuland and with India. When the queen dies they collect a large sum of gold money and select from her family two clever women, of which one is made the queen and the other the lesser sovereign. ** The title of the queen is Pinchun and of the female ministers of state is Kanpall. ** The sons take the surname of the mother. The written characters are the same as those of India and the eleventh Chinese month is the beginning of their year. ** At the burial of their sovereign several tens of the great ministers and relatives are buried at the same time. In the period Wu-te (618-626 A.D.) the queen named Tang pang first sent envoys with tribute. Since the year 742 A.D. they elected a man as ruler and a few years afterwards the state was absorbed by Lhāsa."

There is therefore no need to doubt the statements of Hwen Thsang or the traditions of the Indians regarding this Amazonian kingdom, since it was not until some time after the visit of Hwen Thsang to Brahmapura that the western Chiang submitted to Lhāsa, as will be seen from the following short sketch of Tibetan history at this time.

The country to which the name Tibet is now applied appears in the Chinese annals of the Yang dynasty (from 618 A.D.) as Tu-po, which should be read Tu-po; hence in an inscription at Lhāsa dated in 822 A.D. we find the native Tibetan name for the country 'Bod' rendered in Chinese by 'Fan.' In the records of the Tatar Liaos who reigned in northern China in the latter part of the eleventh century Tibet is called Tu-poté, in which the latter syllable represents Bod. During the Ming dynasty the name was changed to Wussutsang from the two principal provinces dbus and gtsang, hence the modern name Weitsang. The word hai or 'western' is also applied to the country: hence hai-tsang and hai-fan, and the people are called Tupote and Tangkute. The European name is derived from the Arabic through the Mongol in the form Tibet which occurs in the travels of the merchant Sulaiman as early as 851 A.D. During the Han dynasty Tibet was occupied by a number of tribes called Khiang or Chiang, and towards the close of the fourth century a number of these were united together under Huti-pusuyeh, chief of the Fa-chiang, and

1 Rushell, J. R. A. S., xil, 415: he shows, as Bonnat had remarked, that the character for 'fan' is a phonetic which has the two sounds 'fas' and 'pe'.

2 The name Chiang is composed of the characters for 'man' and 'sheep,' indicating their pastoral character.

3 His descendants were called Tu-fan, their surname being Fu-suyeh.
formed the nucleus of the kingdom of Tibet. Under the Tang dynasty who ruled until the end of the ninth century the new kingdom was called Tu-fan, pronounced Tu-po and equivalent to Tu-bod. The first direct communication of the Tibetans with China was in 634 A.D., when Chitsunglungstan, the Tsanpu of Lhásá, sent an embassy to China and in 641 A.D. received a daughter of the Emperor in marriage and introduced Chinese customs at his court. On the death of Siláditya king of Magadha one of his ministers usurped the throne and plundered the Chinese envoy Wang Yuantae, who was returning with presents for his master. Wang applied for assistance to the Tibetans, who led 1,200 chosen warriors and 7,000 Nepalese horsemen to India and captured the offender and brought him prisoner to the imperial capital in 648 A.D. Lungstan died in 650 A.D. and was succeeded by his grandson, under whom the Tibetan kingdom was firmly established. The Chiang tribes who had hitherto stood aloof were glad to connect themselves with the rising power at Lhásá and the hostile Tukuhun¹ were driven out of the country (666 A.D.). The Tibetans now more than held their own against China and defeated successive armies sent against them. On the east their authority extended to Ssuchuen; on the west to Kashgár; on the north to the Tuchueh or Turkish country, and on the south to Polomen or Magadha, apparently used as a generic name for India. All these successes were gained by a family of hereditary ministers or mayors of the palace, the last of whom was executed by the Tsanpu Chiuhsiilung in 699 A.D. Chiuhsiilung himself died during an expedition against Nepál and India² in 703 A.D.

Csoma deKörösi gives from Tibetan sources a list of kings of Tibet commencing with the Tsanpu Nyákhr, an Indian refugee prince of the family of the Lichchhavis of Vaisáli³ and the reputed founder or at least the great restorer of the Pon religion. The Lichchhavis were determined opponents of Sákya and were Surajbansi Kshatriyas by birth, and thus the Juhár tradition of a Rajpút race in Tibet is confirmed. The emigration to Tibet took place according to M. Csoma in B.C. 250, and this dynasty of Indian origin ruled there.

¹ An eastern Tátar race settled near Kokonor (L. c., p. 597.) ² The same record gives an interesting account of the wars between China and Tibet up to 858 A.D., but we have nothing to do with this here. ³ Near Patna, Cunn. Arch. Rep. 1, 63; Ladák, 335; Lassen, III, 774. In the temple of Jágeswar, beyond Almora there is a brass image of a Pon Raía.
Sronga Tsan aGampo, who ascended\(^1\) the throne in 629-30 A.D., is represented as a great conqueror, a religious reformer and a pioneer of civilisation in Tibet, and can be no other than the Chitsunglungtsan of the Chinese records, who removed the seat of government from the Yarlung valley to Lhasa and married a daughter of the Emperor of China. The following list of kings occur in the Chinese annals:

Hutipusuyeh, chief of the Fa-chiang, to whose family belonged Fanni or Supuyeh who was a boy in 414 A.D., and succeeded in establishing the nucleus of a state in 425 A.D. After him reigned a sovereign named Haishitungno. Tungmo begat Totutu: Tutu begat Chiehlishihjo; Chiehli begat Punnungjo: Punnung begat Chusujo: Chusn begat Luntaansu: Luntaan begat Chitsunglungtsan, also called Chisamung and styled Fuyehshih. He was a minor when he ascended the throne in 630 and died 650 A.D. Chitsung was succeeded by his grandson Chilipapu, a minor who deceased in 679 A.D., and was followed by his son only eight years of age, Chinh Ilung, who died in 703 A.D. The next Tsanpu was Chilisulunglieshtsan Chilisotsan, aged seven, who died in 755 A.D., and was succeeded by his son Sohsilungliehtsan, who took Ch'angan, the then capital of China, in 763 A.D. We find Chilitsan surnamed Hulutti reigning in 780 and succeeded by his eldest son Tsuchihchien in 797. He died in 798 and was succeeded by his unnamed brother who died in 804 and by another who died in 816, when Kolikotsu succeeded with the title Yitai. The last named died in 838 and was succeeded by his brother Tamo, who died in 842, when the intant Chilihu of the house of Lin and nephew of the consort of Tamo was set up by one party and civil war ensued. Shangkunje declared himself Tsanpu in 849 and perished in battle with the Uigurs in 866 A.D. These names may be compared with those given\(^2\) from Tibetan sources by M. Csoma, M. Klaproth and Sarat Chander Das.

The kingdom of Kiu-pi-choung-na, which M. Julien renders by Govisana, lay 400 li or 67 miles to the south-east of Madawar.\(^3\) It was about 2,000

---

\(^1\) Lassen I. c: a Lichehshavi prince ruled at this time in Népal (Mém. 1., 407); the early date given to the first Lichehshavi prince between whom and Srongsngao Gampo there were only thirty-one reigns (679+12=82) is very doubtful.


li or 334 miles in circuit and the capital was about 15 li or 2½ miles in circuit. The city was built on an elevated site difficult of access and was surrounded by groves, tanks and fish-ponds. There was a numerous population of simple and rustic habits. The soil was fertile and resembled that of Madáwar. Many devoted themselves to literature and the practice of religious virtues, but many were still followers of the Brahmanical faith. There were two monasteries occupied by one hundred monks who studied the Hínayána-sutras and one temple of the gods. The larger of the two monasteries was close to the city and possessed a stupa about two hundred feet high built by Asoka to mark the place where for the space of a month Buddha expounded the law. Close by was a place where the four past Buddhas had been accustomed to take exercise, and near it were two stupas erected to cover the nails and hair of Buddha. Four hundred li or 67 miles to the south-east lay the kingdom of O-hi-tchi tu-lo or Ahichhatra. General Cunningham identifies Govisana with the old fort near the village of Ujain one mile to the east of Káshipur in the Tarádi district. The true bearing of Káshipur from Madáwar is east south-east, and by the road he travelled General Cunningham makes the distance 68 miles. He also states the position of Káshipur will agree with its bearing from Ahichhatra, the next place visited by Hwen Thsang and of which the site is well established. Káshipur itself was founded by Káshináth Adhikári as late as 1718 A.D., and the old fort is called after the name of the nearest village. The circuit of the fort and the ruins in its immediate neighbourhood is very nearly the same as that given by Hwen Thsang, and there are numerous groves, tanks and fish-ponds around the place. One of these known as the Drona-ságar is still a favourite place of resort for pilgrims going to visit the sacred shrines in the snowy range. We would, however, identify Govisana with the ruins near Dhikuli some 22 miles to the north of Káshipur on the river Rámganga, and which subsequently formed the site of the winter residence of both Katyúris and Chandas. The elevated position of this site and the presence of remains sufficient to account for the existence of a stupa and other buildings as well as its identification in popular tradition with the ancient city of Vairát-pátan lend great weight to this view, but until these ruins are more closely
examined this point cannot be decided, and in the meantime General Cunningham's identification may be allowed to stand. We have now to leave the pleasant pages of Hwen Thaang and for many centuries be content to grope our way amidst the traditions half fact and half fable that have survived.

Buddhism, as we have seen, was fairly established in Kumason in the seventh century, but between the date of Hwen Thaang's visit towards the middle of the seventh century and the period in which Sankara Achārya flourished such changes occurred that after his time hardly a single Buddhist temple remained in the Kumason Himalaya. The local tradition is distinct on this point, and it follows that if the institutions established by Sankara survive to the present day, the Buddhists must have succumbed either before his time or through his influence. In another chapter we shall give some account of his life and writings, and here we shall review the evidence as to the age in which he lived, which is so intimately connected with that strange upheaval of the old religion and the dispersion of its opponents. Wilson, in the preface to the first edition of his Sanskrit Dictionary, notices many of the statements made regarding the age of Sankara.

Sankara Achārya. From him1 we learn that the Kadāli Brāhmans who follow the teaching of Sankara declare that he lived some two thousand years ago; others place him about the beginning of the Christian era, or in the third or fourth century after Christ, or as contemporary with Tiru Vikramadeva, sovereign of Skandapura in the Dakhin in 178 A.D. The people of the Sringasgiri or Sringeri math on the edge of the western ghāța in the Mysore territory, of which Sankara himself was the second mahunt, assign him an antiquity of 1,600 years. Wilson gives a list of the mahunts of this institution showing twenty-seven descents from Sankara, and allowing a quarter of a century to each mahunt, a period of 675 years should elapse from the founder, but as Wilson could not determine the date when the list closed he did not attach any importance to the result. Dr. Burnell in writing of the time of Hwen Thaang (640 A.D.) incidentally states, 'as the Brahanical system of Sankara sprung up in the next half century.'

1 For details and references, see Wilson's Works, I., 200: V., 188: XII., 5.
thus making the great reformer live in the end of the seventh century. Williams in his dictionary gives the dates 650-740 A.D. The Vaishnava Brahmans in Malabar place Sankara in the tenth century. Dr. Taylor in his translation of the Prabodha Chandrodaya thinks that if we place him about 900 A.D., we shall not be far from the truth, and both Colebrooke\(^1\) and Rammohun Roy refer him to 1000 A.D. The latter writer, who was a diligent student of Sankara’s works, elsewhere infers that “from a calculation of the spiritual generations of the followers of Sankara Swámi from his time up to this date, he seems to have lived between the seventh and eighth centuries of the Christian era.” The Kerala Utpatti,\(^2\) devoted to the history of Malabar, makes Sankara contemporary with Cheruman Perumal, a prince who granted many privileges to Christians and founded Calicut. According to Scaliger, Calicut was founded in 907 or following another authority in 825 A.D. Wilson in one place assigns Sankara to the end of the eighth and beginning of the ninth century A.D., and in another place writes that subsequent inquiry has failed to add any reasons to those assigned by him for his proposed inference, but it has offered nothing to invalidate or weaken the conclusion arrived at. Weber\(^3\) places Sankara “in about the eighth century.”

In the local history of Nepal\(^4\) we have an interesting record of the traditions that have survived regarding Sankara Achárya’s visit to that country which may throw some light on the local traditions respecting him in Kumaon. On the death of Bhikhadeva Barma, his brother Báláchana Deva was regent of Nepál, and at this time Sankara Achárya visited the valley in pursuit of the Buddhists. Here he found that all the four castes were of that religion: some lived in Viháras as Bhikshus; some were Srávakas, also living in Viháras; some were Tántrikas called Acháryas and some were Grihasthas, also following the Buddhist religion. There were no learned men and when some of the Grihastha Acháryas endeavoured to meet him in argument, they were soon defeated.

\(^1\) In the preface to the Dáyabhága.
\(^2\) Hist. Ind. Lit., p. 51, which presumably gives the latest results on this subject. Weber writes: — “Sankara’s date has not, unfortunately, been more accurately determined as yet. He passed at the same time for a zealous adversary of the Buddhists, and is therefore called a Sáiva or follower of Siva. In his works, however, he appears as a worshipper of Vásudeva, whom he puts forward as the real incarnation or representative of Brahma.”
\(^3\) As. Res. V., 5.
\(^4\) Wright’s Nepál, 113.
“Some of them fled and some were put to death. Some who would not allow that they were defeated were also killed. Wherefore many confessed that they were vanquished, though in reality not convinced that they were in error. These he ordered to do aisva (i.e., to sacrifice animals), which is in direct opposition to the tenets of the Buddhist religion. He likewise compelled the Bhikshus or nuns to marry, and forced the Grihasthas to shave the knot of hair on the crown of their heads when performing the chātra-karma, or first shaving of the head. Thus he placed the Brahmans and nuns to marry, and forced the Grihasthas on the same footing. He also put an end to many of their religious ceremonies and cut their Brahmanical threads. There were at that time 84,000 works on the Buddhist religion, which he searched for and destroyed. He then went to the Mani-chára mountain, to destroy the Buddhists there. Six times the goddess Mani Jogini raised storms and prevented his ascending the mountains, but the seventh time he succeeded. He then decided that Mahákátá, who was a Buddha and abhorred aisva, should have animals sacrificed to him. Mani Jogini or Ugra-tárini was named by him Raja Jogini. Having thus overcome the Buddhists, he introduced the Saiva religion in the place of that of Buddha. * * * Sankara thus destroyed the Buddhist religion and allowed none to follow it: but he was obliged to leave Baudhdhmárgis in some places as priests of temples, when he found that no other persons would be able to propitiate the gods placed in them by great Baudhdhmárgis.”

When the children of some of these Baudhdhmárgi priests were desirous of performing the chātra-karma, or ceremony of shaving the head, they are reported to have said:—“Sankara has destroyed the Baudhdhmárgis. He has turned out the Baudhdhmárgi-grihastha Brahmans who hitherto worshipped Pasupáti and has appointed in their stead Brahmans from the Dakhin and those Baudhdhmárgis who have accepted Sankara’s doctrines have been made priests of Guhjísware and other places.” Our fathers obeyed not, but worshipped the old deities as before. Are we to abandon the gods of our forefathers and follow Sankara’s direction to perform the chātra-karma, without which we cannot undertake the duties of an Achárya? In this dilemma; they consulted the Bhikshus who had married the Bhikshunis at Sankara’s command, and were told that the people of that place remained silent through fear of Sankara, but had kept the truth in their hearts. They had, however, been visited with goitre as a punishment for their faint-heartedness, and it was the duty of all who could do so to leave at once a place where the worship of their old deities was not permitted them. Accordingly they emigrated to Pingala Bahál and, appointing Bhikshus to follow the Tantra Shástras, made a rule that each in turn should take charge of the image of Sákya (Buddha).”

59
The researches of Wilson and Hodgson show us that this is a fair representation of what actually took place in Nepal, and there is no reason to believe that the expulsion of the Buddhist priests from Kumaon took place either at a different time or at other hands. The universal tradition is that Sankara came into Kumaon and drove out the Buddhists and unbelievers and restored the ancient religion. Kumári Bhatta, the predecessor of Sankara, was equally with him a rigid maintainer of the orthodox faith and is credited with being the principal leader in the exterminating crusade waged against the Buddhists and heretics of all classes. Sankara was ably aided by Udáyana Achárya and the Saiva and Vaishnava princes, who from political motives were only too glad to assist in and profit by the destruction of those who had usurped the fairest provinces of Hindustán. As we shall see hereafter, the worship of Vásudeva or Básdeo as the representative on earth of the great god was re-established by Sankara. In Kumaon, as in Nepal, Sankara displaced the Buddhhamárgi priests of Pasupati at Kedár and of Náráyana at Badrináth and in their place introduced priests from the Dakhin, whose successors still manage the affairs of those temples. To keep up the prestige of his new arrangements, Sankara through his followers preached everywhere the efficacy of pilgrimage to the holy shrines and doubtless the facility of communication and the influx of orthodox pilgrims to Badari and Kedár prevented a relapse into Buddhism in Kumaon, whilst the absence of communication with the plains led to a revival of the friendly feeling between the followers of the two religions in Nepal which has continued to exist to the present day. So far therefore as we can see, the dispersion or absorption of the Buddhists in Kumaon was due to the efforts of Sankara towards the end of the seventh or beginning of the eighth century of our era, and that this must have been accompanied by considerable political disturbances may be inferred from the history of all other similar revolutions.

The Katyúris, regarding whom we have already had something to record, were, according to local tradition, the ruling family in

---

1 The belt of exclusive Brahmanism lies between the Káli on the east (or perhaps the Karnáli) and the Tons on the west, which contain the great pilgrim routes. Orthodoxy is here rampant and very profitable.
Kumaon both before and after the great religious cataclysm of the eighth century. After the time of Sankara we find them in the valley of the Alakananda at Joshimath in Garhwal. There is nothing to show how they settled there, but from what we have recorded we may consider them as one of the many petty dynasties at this time ruling in Garhwal. The Katyuris of the Katyur valley traced back their origin to Joshimath and every existing branch of the family traces back its origin to Katyur. The ancient temple of Badasdeo at Joshimath is said to be the oldest of all and also to bear the name of the first of the Katyuris kings. If in connection with the fact that Vasudeva was the name given by Sankara to the form of the Supreme being whose worship he principally inculcated we remember that the Katyuris in the few inscriptions that have come down to us are recorded as devoted followers of the Brahmanical religion, we may safely assume that they belonged to the ruling power that came forward and aided Sankara in his reforms, and therefore enjoyed the political advantages which accrued from the suppression of the monasteries and the spoiling of the Buddhist families. In fact, the earliest traditions record that the possessions of these Joshimath Katyuris extended from the Satlaj as far as the Gansaki and from the snow to the plains including the whole of Rohilkhand.

The cause of the emigration from Joshimath to the Katyur valley is told in the following legend:—

“"A descendant of Badasdeo went to hunt in the jungles one day, and during his absence Vishnu, in his man-lion incarnation as Nar-Sinha, taking the shape of a man, visited the palace and asked the wife of the absent prince for food. The Rani gave the man enough to eat and after eating he lay down on the Raja’s bed. When the Raja returned from the chase and found a stranger asleep on his bed, he drew his sword and struck him on the arm, but lot instead of blood, milk flowed forth from the wound. The Raja was terrified at the omen and called his Rani to counsel and she said:—‘No doubt this is a dèbtà: why did you strike him?’ The Raja then addressed Nar-Sinha and asked that his crime might be punished. On this the deity disclosed himself and said:—‘I am Nar-Sinha. I was pleased with thee and therefore came to thy darbär: now thy fault shall be punished in this wise: thou shalt leave this pleasant place Jyotirdhâm and go into Katyur and there establish thy home. Remember that this wound

1 In this connection we may recall to mind the Devaputra Vasudeva, the third of the Turushka kings of Kashmir. The Kaûcl Raja was styled Śī Badasdeo Giriraj Chakra Chàramani.
which thou hast given me shall also be seen on the image in my temple, and when that image shall fall to pieces and the hand shall no more remain; thy house shall fall to ruins and thy dynasty shall disappear from amongst the princes of the world."

So saying Nar-Sinha departed and was no more seen by the Raja. Another story makes Sankaráchárya the unwelcome visitor to the Ráni whilst her husband Básdeo was engaged in his ablutions at Vishnuprayág. Stripped of its embellishments the story would seem to show that the descendants of Básdeo were obliged to abandon Joshimath owing to religious quarrels. The preferential worship of Siva and Vishnu began to be taught even by the immediate followers of Sankara and soon led to dissensions, the history of which will be related elsewhere.

The immediate result of the interview with Nar-Sinha was that the Raja set out for the valley of the Gomati and near the present village of Baijnáth founded a city which he called after the war-like son of Mahádeo by the name Kárttikeyapura. He found there the ruins of an old town named Karbírprur and used the materials for rebuilding the temple to Kárttikeya and also for constructing wells, reservoirs and bazaars. The question whether the dynasty gave its name to the valley which ever afterwards was known as Katyúr or the valley gave its name to the family who ruled in it is of some importance in our researches. The name Katyúr may be derived from that of the capital city, the Pali form of which would be Káttikeyapura, easily shortened into Káttikyúra and Katyúra, but it appears equally probable that the resemblance between the name Katyúra and that of their capital city is purely accidental. The dynasty must have had a tribal name long before Kárttikeyapura was occupied, and it would be contrary to all precedent that this should be exchanged for a corrupted form of the name of their new capital city. It is therefore much more likely that the dynasty gave their tribal name to the valley and that this name was Kátor or Katyúr. Some have endeavoured to connect this name with the Surajbansi tribe of Katehiriya Rajpúts, who gave their name to the tract subsequently known as Rohilkhand, but this suggestion is opposed to all that we know regarding that clan of Rajpúts and is entirely unsupported.

1 Joins the Sarju at Bágewar.
by any received tradition either in the hills or in the plains. Most probably as we have seen, we have to look in a very different direction for the origin of the name Katyúri and that it is derived from the royal race of Kátüre, and in this connection it may be remarked that Kárttikeya was a favourite deity of the Turushka princes of Kashmir and occurs in the form Skanda on their coins.

The only actual records of the Katyúris that have come down to us consist of six inscriptions, five of which are grants engraved on copper and one is a similar record inscribed on stone. The last belongs to the temple of Siva as Vyaghreswar (the tiger-lord) or Vákeswar (the lord of eloquence) situated at the junction of the Gomati and Sarju in Patti Katyúr of Kumaon. The slab on which the writing is inscribed is, unfortunately, much injured, especially in the right lower corner, where the date has been obliterated. It records the grant by Sri Bhûdeva Deva of a village and land to the temple of Vyaghreswar and gives the names of seven Rajas, the ancestors of the donor,¹ as follows:—

1. Basantana Deva
2. Kharpura Deva
3. Kalyánraja Deva
4. Tribhúvanaraja Deva
5. Nimbarata Deva
6. Ishtara Deva
7. Laliteswara Deva
8. Bhúdeva Deva

The following is a tentative translation² of this inscription made from copies furnished by Mr. Traill:—

_Bágyeswar Inscription._

Blessing and salutation. On the southern part of this beautiful temple, the royal lineage is inscribed by learned persons.

Bow down at the foot of Paradeva placed at the gate called Nandnanuti at Pavupidanata in the village of Kánya which destroys the nets of animals. There was a raja named Mavantana Deva who was a king of kings most venerable and wealthy. In his wife, the queen named Sajyanarānevha, who knew no one but her husband, was conceived a raja who was also a king of kings, the richest, the most respected of his time, worthy to be trusted and properous; who set apart successively provisions for the worship of Paradéswar and caused several public roads to be constructed leading to Jayakúlabhúti and who provided fragrant substances, flowers, incense, lamps and ointments for Saghreswara

¹ J. A. S. Ben., VII., 1,056. The names in the text differ from those given in the Journal of the Asiatic Society, but as they were taken on the spot by Hudraddatta Pant, a competent Sanskrit scholar, they are retained here in preference to those taken from the copy. ² By Saroda Prasad Chakravartti.
Deva in Ambalipalika and who was the protector in battle; who, moreover, gave fragrant substances, flowers, &c., and the village named Sarveswara Grama which his father had granted to the Vaishnavas for worship of the abovementioned god. Who erected buildings on the side of the public roads. As long as the sun and moon exists so long shall there his virtuous deeds exist.

His son was Kharpura Deva, the king of kings, respectable and wealthy; in his wife, &c., who was much devoted to him, was born Adhiruddha, who was most wealthy, respectable and learned. Of his queen Lalitha Devi, who loved her husband dearly, was born Tribhuvana Raja Deva, who was active, rich, honorable and intelligent. He gave two dromas of a fruitful field named Niyata in the village Jayakshabhatika to the above god and also ordered the fragrant substances, &c., produced in it, to be employed in the worship of the same god. It is also worthy to be known that he was the intimate friend of the son of the Kirata who gave two and a half dromas land to the above-mentioned god and to the god Gambiyapinda. Another son of Adhiruddha gave one droma of land to the god Bahurake and moreover caused a grant of two bighas of land to be engraved on a stone in the Sambat year 11. He also gave one droma of land to the god Baghreswara and fourteen parcels of land to Chandamunda Debi and he established a prapa (baoli or well) in honour of the former. All these tracts of land have been consecrated to the god Baghreswara for his worship.

There was another Raja named Nuvarata who was possessed of compassion, sincerity, truth, strength, good dispositions, heroism, magnanimity, intellect, politeness and good character, of a charming person, adorned with morals and with several eminent qualities, active in conquering by the force of his bow held in hand, and born for worshipping the lily feet of the owner of Nandana and Ananvatari, who acquired fame by the force of his arms through the favour of Durjadhiti, who wears matted hair on his head, tied up with the pearls of his crown resembling a crescent and illuminated with the purest water of Ganga, which confers ten million beauties which head of matted hair robs other radiant substances of their lustre by its many large, clear and beautiful jewels and bright kevada flowers on which play the black snakes. He subdued all his enemies and his colour was like gold, his fair body was always bent down with respect for the worship of all gods, Daitya, men and learned persons, and his fame is sung everywhere as derived from the performance of Yajyas.

His son Istovana Deva born from the chief of his queens, Dasu Devi, who loved him dearly, was a king of kings, rich, respectable and learned. His son Lalita Sura Deva was born of his wife Dhara Devi, who was much devoted to him who was also a king of kings, wealthy, respected, intelligent and in all respects a hero. His son Bhudeva Deva was born of his wife Laya Devi, who loved much her husband. He also was king of kings, a zealous worshipper of Brahma, an enemy of Budha Sravanta, a lover of truth, rich, beautiful, learned, continually engaged in religious observances and a person near whom Kali could not approach: whose eyes were beautiful as blue lilies and quick, the palm of whose hands resembled young twigs whose ears were frequently troubled by the sound of jewels of the crowns of Rajas who bowed before him and whose great weapon destroyed darkness, whose feet resembled the colour of gold, who granted pensions to his favourite attendants. He
Four of the copper-plate grants are preserved in the temple of Pandukeswar near Badrináth, and of these two contain the fifth, sixth and seventh names of the Bágeshwar inscription. The first of these two records the grant in the 21st year of the Vijaya-rájya, or ‘realm of victory,’ of certain villages in Goranna Sári to Náráyana Bhattáraka by Lalitesvara Deva\(^1\) at the instigation of his queen Sáma Devi. The civil minister was Vijaka and the minister of war was Aryyata and the writer Ganga Bhadra. The second of the two plates is dated in the 22nd year of the same era and records a similar grant to the same personage, Náráyana Bhattáraka, ‘who is revered by the scholarly men of Garuda-asrama.’ The officials subscribing the grant are the same and the place intended is the village of Tapuban on the left bank of the Alaknanda above Joshimath, where there are still the remains of numerous temples and one of the places of pilgrimage connected with Badrináth. There are but three names mentioned in these two plates and these are:—

Nimbarata and his queen Náthú Devi.

Ishtagana Deva and his queen Desa (Vega) Devi.

Lalitaśvara Deva and his queen Sáma Devi.

Both these grants are dated from Kárttikeyapura.

Two other plates from Pandukeswar introduce us to a separate series of names ultimately connected with the last which are further confirmed by a similar grant made by the same princes to the temple of Báléswar in eastern Kumaon. The first of the plates of this new list is dated from Kárttikeyapura in the 5th year of the pravandukamána Vijaya-rájya, Samvat 5. It is addressed to the officials of the Ésála district by Desata Deva and records the grant to Vijayesvara of the village of Yamuna in that district. This plate gives the names of Salonáditya and his queen Sinhavali\(^2\) Devi followed by their son Ichchata Deva and his queen Sindhu Devi, whose son was Desata Deva. The record was subscribed by the chief civil officer, Bhatta Hari Sarmma; by the chief military officer, Nandáditya, and by the scribe Bhadra, and is now deposited in the Báleswar temple. The next plate is from Pandukeswar and is

---

\(^{1}\) The reading may be Lalitaśvara Deva.

\(^{2}\) This name may be read Sindhavali.
also dated from Kárttikikeyapura in the 25th year of a similar era. It is addressed to the officials in the district of Tanganapura and records the grant to the temple of Badari by Padmata Deva, son of the Desata Deva of the Báleswar plate of four villages situated in Drumati in the district of Tanganapura. The names of the three princes of the previous plate are given with the addition of the name Padmalla Devi as the name of the queen of Desata Deva. The officials concerned were in the civil department, Bhatta Dhana; in the military department, Náráyana Datta; and the writer was Nanda Bhadra. The plate is now deposited in the temple of Paudukeswar near Badrináth.

The third record of this dynasty is dated from the city of Subbhikshapura in the fourth year of the Vijaya-rájya. The donor in this case is Subbhiksharája Deva, son of Padmata Deva, who addresses the officials in the districts of Tanganapura and Antaránga to note the grant of the village of Vidimalaka and other parcels of land to Náráyana Bhattacharya and the village of Ratnapalli on the north of the Ganges to Brahmeswara Bhattacharya. The subscribers to the deed were Kamalá the civil justiciary, Iswaridatta in command of the army, and Nanda Bhadra the writer. The names from the three plates are as follows:

1. Balonáditya and his queen Sinhavall Devi.
2. Ichchhata Deva and his queen Sludhá Devi.
3. Desata Deva and his queen Padmalla Devi.
4. Padmata Deva and his queen Isála Devi.
5. Subbhiksharája Deva.

There is little doubt that the year used by each of these princes is the year of his own reign, for we have the inscription of Desata Deva in the year 5, that of his son Padmata Deva in the year 25, and that of his grandson Subbhiksharája Deva in the year 4 of the rising realm of victory; we have therefore to look elsewhere for some clue to the date of these princes.

Through the kindness of Sir Henry Ramsay one of the Paudukeswar plates was sent to me by the Rawal of Badrináth, and a facsimile obtained by photozincography from the original is given here as well as a transliteration made under the supervision of Dr. Rajendralala Mitra,
C.I.E. A rough translation of the entire five plates was also made through the latter gentleman, so that so far as these records are concerned we have full materials for the discussion of their date. The diction, style and form of all five is the same, showing that they all belong to the same period, the variations other than those in the description of the lands given away being of little importance. We have, moreover, in the records of the Pāla rajas of Bengal a grant of similar diction and import which will aid us in arriving at a conclusion in regard to the date of our Kumaon rajas and which, if not completely decisive of the question, will at least be the nearest approach to the truth that we can hope for. We shall now give a facsimile, transliteration and translation of one of the Kumaon plates.

Transcript of an inscription from Pândukèśvar near Badarināth.

(1) स्वस्ति प्रीमत्रांत्रिकेययुगराष्ट्रकलामदितिनुजमनुभियुगतमः-भक्तिमात्रमभारानमितामितामरामाकृष्टिकिरितमुकुटिरोत-विठुकृतिकोटिहोतानाति—

(2) नाना(ताता)येकार्दीपयदीपीतिपनन्दरत्रराक्राकनामल-विधुतब्रह्मसिंहरायररायरारारितखरविशेषविशेषयुक्ततमसात-जमक्ष्यधुनोधितजटायू—

(3) तस्य भगवते घुज्जेते: श्रवाधनमुनेजापरितांत्वनि-क्षिपितिर्युद्धथेत्रप्रकाशदयादिविभवसत्सर्वशिल-शोचशोयादंगम्ययंदयार्थःप्राप्ताचर्यार्थ्याचर्यार्थ्यार्थाचर्यार्थ—

(4) काय एविदुश्चितविशालनकृतशिर: महामुकुस्तिस्नानवीशीजाव-तारा: कुत्युगममभुपाललितकीलि: नन्दाभागवतोचररक्रम-लकिमलामनायमूलिः: पीमिम्बस्यस्म्यतम—

(5) नवमल्ल्यानुभाति राजीमहादेवी श्री नानुमदेवी तस्यामुप्त्तत्र:-परम महेश्वरं परमब्रह्मयं शिवकृपायारोत्तमनेभकु-म्याकृष्टिकिरितमुकुटिरोतकलियायः पताका—

* The translation has been kindly revised through Dr. Mitra, but I am alone responsible for the translation and collation of the names of the officials and the comparison with other inscriptions.
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

(6) क्षायचन्द्रकापहसिततारागण: परमभटारकमहाराजाधिपा-
जपरमेश्वरधेमिद्धकांदेवस्तथा पुष्चतपदानुचालते राजी-
महादेवीश्रीगदेबीतस्यामुन्यन: परममा—

(7) हेशबर: परमभ्रमण: कलिकूलपंजामिण्डमयदयुद्वारधारी
तथैऽद्यदयाराधचरित: सहनमातिविभवविभूतिविनियमी-
तारातिचक्र प्रतापदहन:। अतिविभय संहारारम्भ—

(8) मृतभीमभूकटकुटित नकेसारिसघरोत्तिरतांतीर्ममकलमः
अर्धसाहित्यकुपातब्रजमुःप्राणगाह ठाकृंदेश्वरकुलालजयले-
मोग्राहसममालिकावलो—

(9) कनवलचक्षेतुरुसुऽनुस्वरीभिधरकस्थलदुलयकुसमणकरणकी
श्रवसनममधुर्द्विकोलिसियोज: पृथुरिव दाेट्रैक्षाधिततथनमे-
हदलबनावयणमवश—

(10) बशीकृतमे: पालनानिश्चलोकुत्थरधरेरूदः परमभटारकमहा-
राजाधिकाजपरमेश्वरणीमधुलितस्यादेवकुलामी प्रस्थिते व योज-
त्तवांशिकंयुरुविषयी समु—

(11) पगतानु श्रव्यनिन्योगस्यानुजपाराधिकराजपुष्यामात्य-
सामन्तमहासामन्तकईमहामुष्यमहाकुतिकथितमहाप्रति—
हारमहातमदनायकमहाराजप्रमातारश—

(12) रमयुकुमारमात्याराकुमारिकुम्भस्याराधिकचरो-ईयुक्तकापिलकितमात्यायुक्तकापिलकितमात्यान्योजी-
कार्यमहाधिकृतहर्षपीयर्ग—

(13) बलव्यापृतकपुत्रप्रतिशिक्षितकपिलकमफलपिलकममात्यांशिकी—
कार्यमहाएकाराजस्वानी प्रविष्वपति भेगपतिनरपत्यशयां-
ति श्रव्यप्रतिशृङ्गर—
(१४) कस्यानाधिकृतवस्तमपर्कारकेतपालघटपालबशे पालप्रांतपाल-
किरिकारबरवागीमहिपिकृतममहतममादिक्षेत्रेशुरौ-
गायत्रीदातश्रृक्—

(१५) त्वथिष्णानानामुखपकरात्मद्विलकिःशीर्षःकुमोदेनुमेदान्यवा-
ष्ठालयन्तायामवसर्नासस्मासत्जनपदानुभटाचतुष्कीर्तादोन-
न्यायव कोयिन्तानकोईतानस्य—

(१६) त्वादतपोपजीवि: प्रतिवासिनश्च ब्राह्मणाराण् यथाहं
मन्यतिवोधर्मित समाचारपत्रस्तु तेषुमाधिरितमत्परिनिर्दि-
शुष्किषो गीतदिवसायां प्रतिवद्द्वारिष्टाक्—

(१७) परिमुद्धमानपिल्लः तथा पश्चिमूचि कायां प्रतिवद्द्वुगुलपरि-
मुद्धमानपिल्लाद्यं यथे मधामानापिल्लारत्मनश्च पुक्क्कू-
शीभिम्भूवशेषभवनविघटिता—

(१८) श्वत्वप्रचारचुललरि जीवलेकमबलोक्य जलवृषुद्धाकारार्यां
वायुद्धृष्णोगजकण्ठेण च पालताल्या त्वाप्रलेक्षिति:श्रय-
सार्यसंसाराशोियतारार्यां—

(१९) पुश्येहनि उत्तरारणशस्त्राः गच्चपुष्यधृपदीपेलिपनेवेदत:-
वलिचकन्तरुक्तेन्यवादस्त्रादिप्रवर्त्नानाम खश्वस्तुतितसंस्कर-
श्याम अभिनवकम्मकर्षा—

(२०) य च भूत्यपदालमर्गाम च गीतदिवसायां महादेवबाधिशाम-
देयस्यारघायितमगवते शीनारायणाम्बातरकाय शासनदा-
नेन प्रतिपादिता: प्रकृतिपरिहारायुक्तः—

(२१) प्रचाषामर्गावेशः अकिस्मितप्रायाः अनाचेत आचावर्णः
क्षतिस्थित्तपार्वकालिकः विश्वामुद्दूतपिलियसंसारान्य:चर-
प्यन्तर्य वृक्षारामो हृदप्राच्छोपेयं—
OF THE NORTH-WESTERN PROVINCES.

(52) तद्विच्छात्रमुखमुच्यमानववजयति: यतापुवं पारंपरियः परि-
भुक्तस्तवस्योपरिनार्ययुत्ते। खराविधारारापिररिण्यः
जनादिकापद्वः मनायिनि कर्म—

(53) यो नायका दोऽगौराहः स्वादितिग्राशु मानविधारणैः
सम्बूस्यकर्मिणेश्चित्सम्बूस्ययैः माखयी दोऽगौरात्
खयपतलाधिकृतशिपो: लि—

(54) खितमित्वं महाविन्धविषयानपतलाधिकृतशिमदाताः
टक्कोलाकृती:। श्रीगूर्मलमेश्व:। श्रुतिभव्यसुगाः। मुक्त कर्मः। सगायण
दिदिहः। यथा यथा यथा। मूर्दितः—

(55) यथा तथा तदा फलः। सम्यानेरतान्भाविनः पारिवेन्द्रानु
मूया मूया याच्ये रामभद्रः। सामाययः धर्मस्थेनानुपास्यानो
कलिकाल पालनोयेऽविशेषः।। स्वदान परदान यो या है—

(56) रैत चसुन्दराः। शिष्टमबर्षङ्गस्थितिश्वायमा जायः। कृतिः।
भूमेदरात याति लोके सुगायक हनप्युः यानमाहह दियं
लोके। कुम्भेतीपला। सुत्रपे। मूर्दितः—

(57) तां पच्छे काणूति॥। शिष्टिवर्ष सहस्राणि स्वायः लिङ्ग्वि मूर्दितः।
आच्छेताचानुमनता च तायेव नरके वसेत॥। गमेकाले शुचिकृताः
भूमेश्वेमिसमकलं। हृद्या नरकमायायति यावदाहश्चितंस्मवं।। यानोह
दत्तानिरुम नरेन्द्रदानानि धर्मार्थंयश्चकानि।। निम्माल्याः
वनित्रातिमानि तालिका का नाम साधू। पुनरादित।।——

(58) भ्रममित्यं समुदाहरिद्विष्टैः। दानमिदमभयुस्त्रादत्तोनीयः। नाम
क्ष्यास्तिसिद्धिसिद्धुदुः। दानं फलं परमपः। परिपालनस्य।। शिल्लितमलदल—

(59) विन्दुलालमिदमनुचित्वा। मनुष्योज्यविश्व। सकलमिदमदुः
हृतस्त्रुबुद्धा। न हि प्रहेः। परकर्मया विलोया।।
Be it suspicious: from the prosperous city of Kárttikeya. By the grace of the divine Siva, whose matted hairs are washed by the celestial stream of Ganga, whose lotus feet profusely shed an abundant shower of pure and resplendent pollen, the brightness of which dispels the endless varieties of the thick gloom (of ignorance), and which flashes with a vinous sublimacy by imbuing the beams emitted from the lamps of the several chief gems of the terrific coronets, diadems and helmets of the lords of all the immortals, Dáityas and human beings whose heads bow down under the heavy burden of devotion, did the prosperous King Nimbabarana gain the glory of the rising sun by conquering the mist of his face. His person was adorned with an assemblage of the qualities of energy and dexterity, truthfulness and good manners, purity, heroism, munificence, graveness, respectability, Aryan conduct and wonderful and honorable acts whereby he became an incarnation of the seed of an offspring of great virtues, and lord of a fame worthy of the rulers of the earth in the returning golden age, and resembling in his complexion the lotus feet of the goddess Nanda and of the lotus-born Brahma. To him was born a son, a meditator on his feet, of his queen and great lady, the fortunate Náthu Devi. He was a devout worshipper of Siva, and devoted to the supreme Brahm. He, with the edge of a sharp sword, slew furious elephants, whose frontal globes scattered a series of excellent pearls, while the lustre of his lifted banner laughed to scorn the array of the stars. This was the most venerable king of kings and lord paramount, the prosperous Ishtagana Deva.

His son meditating on his feet, and begotten on his queen and great lady, the fortunate Vega Devi, is the most venerable and great king of kings and sovereign lord, the prosperous Lalita Sara Deva, the suspicious, who is a devout worshipper of Mahesa, and devoted to the supreme Brahm (or exceedingly liberal to Brahm). He has acted the part of the great boar encumbered with the weight of the earth by delivering it from drowning under the dread of the dirt of the sinful age of Káli. He possessed an exuberance of natural genius and super-human prowess, whereby his blazing valour withstood the hosts of his encompassing enemies. Being ever ready in his preparations for war, by the vast resources of his wealth, he, by the terrific frowns of his brows, bore an intimidation to his enemies, as the curling mane of the lion affrights the cub of the elephant. He, by his restless sword and arrows in battle, has slain many a soul (in warfare), and violently seized on the goddess of prosperity in victory, as if he had dragged her from underneath the waters (of the deep). The damsels of heaven viewing this reverse of fortune with affliction at his embraces to her, dropped down the bracelets from their trembling wrists, which, strewn like wreaths of flowers, formed his head-dress (as if it blossomed), to mature the seeds of his glory. Like Prithu his arms were
imbued to the bending of the bow, by the force of which he subdued and protected the world and established its monarchs.

All the people assembled in the fortunate city of Kārtaṇīyaṇa, all—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>V.</th>
<th>VI.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The titles of the officials to whom the grant is addressed follow here and the order of the names in each grant is given in the column to the left. I = the Mungir plate; II = the Pandukeshwar plate of Lalitaśrama forming a portion of the text translated here; III = Lalitaśrama's second plate; IV = Pujma Deva's plate; V = Subhikharaja's plate and VI = the Bhagapat plate.
HIMALAYAN DISTRICTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II. III.</th>
<th>IV. V.</th>
<th>VI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>33 33</td>
<td>33 26</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>34 34</td>
<td>34 27</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>35 35</td>
<td>35 28</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>36 36</td>
<td>36 22</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>37 37</td>
<td>37 30</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>38 38</td>
<td>38 31</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>... ...</td>
<td>39 39</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>39 39</td>
<td>40 33</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>40 40</td>
<td>41 34</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>41 41</td>
<td>42 35</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>43 43</td>
<td>43 36</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>43 43</td>
<td>44 37</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>44 44</td>
<td>45 38</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>45 45</td>
<td>46 39</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>46 46</td>
<td>47 40</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>48 48</td>
<td>49 42</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>49 49</td>
<td>50 43</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>47 47</td>
<td>50 43</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>48 48</td>
<td>51 44</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>49 49</td>
<td>52 45</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>50 50</td>
<td>53 46</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>51 51</td>
<td>54 47</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>52 52</td>
<td>55 48</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Together with Khasias, Draviras, Kalingas, Gauras, Odhras, Andhras down to Chandalas, all peoples and places, all soldiers, slaves, and servants and others, whether mentioned here or not, who depend upon our royal feet, know ye, mark ye this Brhadmanottama.

Be it known to you that the village situated in Gorunna Sari within the aforementioned estate, which is now in the possession of Khashiaka, as also that in the possession of Gugula, and situated in the Palli of Bhutikâ, these two villages are given by me by means of the grant of this edict ordered to be made at Gorunna Sari by the great queen Sama Devi herself to the reverend Nâriyana Bhuttarâka, for adding to the merit and reputation of my parents and of myself, by observing the living world to be as unsteady as the leaves of the fîtra religiosa, and the bilow moved by the breeze and by seeing this life to be as vain and void of substance as the form of a bubble of water, as also by knowing the instability of fortune, likened to the unsteadiness of the tips of a young elephant's ears, for the sake of (obtaining) beatitude in the next world, and salvation in the ocean of this, on this meritorious day of the winter solstice, accompanied with diffusion of fragrant flowers, incense, lights and ointments, with offerings, sacrifices,
oblations, dancing, singing and music for the performance of the feast, and puri-
fication (correction) of all omissions and errors in the new act, as also for exped-
diting the feet of our servants, and further conferring the right to debar the in-
gress of all government officers therein, also exemption from every duty and a per-
petuity contemporaneous with the continuance of the sun, moon, and earth. They
are to remain as parcels detached from the estate as far as their visible bounda-
ries, with all the trees, arbours, springs, and cataracts contained in them, and
free from all past and present usurpations, of gods and Brahmans therein. The
possessor thereof having full rights for ever and ever as defined herein, must not
at all be annoyed by seizure, resumption, robbery, or any other disturbance,
under a heavy penalty attendant upon any violation of this commandment.
In the year of the rising kingdom of victory \(pravardhahma\) vijayardijya\)
twenty-one Samvat 21, the third day of the waning moon of Magha. The
deputies in this affair are the chief justice of lawsuits concerning gifts and grants,
named Sri Vijaka, the writer hereto, and the chief arbiter of cases relating to
peace and war, Sri Aryatta, by whose order this plate is inscribed by Ganga Bhadra.

\(\textbf{Verses.}\)

1. "This earth has been in the possession of several kings, commencing with
Sagara. Whosoever becomes the owner of land at any time, he then reaps the
fruits thereof

2. Béma Bhadra hath required of all future princes of the earth that they
preserve from time to time the bridge of their beneficence.

3. The donor of lands ascends to the abode of the gods, mounting on a heaven-
ally car yoked with horses (swanas). But the resumer of lands is boiled in an iron
calderon filled with hot oil by the delegates of the regent of death.

4. Whosoever resumes lands given either by himself or others may be be-
born as a worm to remain in filth for full sixty thousand years.

5. The donor of lands dwells in heaven for sixty thousand years, but the
resumer and his counsellor remain in hell for the same number of years.

6. The appropriator of a village, a gold coin, or one inch of ground, enters
into hell to remain there until the return of the offerings.

7. What man is there who can deny gifts made by former lords of men for
the sake of piety and renown, and attested by the articles of sacred offerings.

8. From this example of our caution against resumption by our posterity,
let others adopt the same in regard to their own donations, and know that gifts
and gain of renown are the only benefits of prosperity which is as unsteady as
a flash of lightning or a bubble of water.

9. Unsteady as the dewdrop on the lotus leaf, so fleeting is fortune, and
so brief is human life. Considering these, and knowing the donor's name, no
man should destroy the deeds of another's reputation."

I have not thought it necessary to reproduce here the Mungir
inscription\(^1\) of the Pála Raja, Deva Pála
Deva or the Bhagalpur\(^2\) inscription of the

\(1\) This plate, of which a copy is given in \textit{A.S. Res.}, I, 123, was translated by
Mr. Wilkins in 1761. It was discovered amid the ruins of Mungir by Colonel
Watson.

\(2\) J. A. S. Ben., XLVII., i., 384.
Pála-Raja Náráyana. The Mungir inscription calls Deva Pála a sar-gata. His genealogy is traced from Go Pála, whose son was Dharmá Pála, of whom it is said:—"He went to extirpate the wicked and plant the good and happily his salvation was effected at the same time: for his servants visited Kedára and drank milk according to the law." Deva Pála succeeded and 'peaceably inherited the kingdom of his father as Bodhisattwa succeeded Sugata.' He also is said to have conquered the earth from the sources of the Ganges as far as the well-known bridge which was constructed by the enemy of Dusáyana, i.e., from Garhwal to Cape Comorin. The characters in the five Kumaon plates are the same and belong to the earlier form of the kutila or 'bent' alphabet of which we have several examples from the eighth to the tenth century. A comparison with the form of the letters on the Mungir and Bhoagalpur plates shows that they also belong to the same class. The tribal name of the writer is the same in all six records. In the plates of Lalitasára Deva, the writer is Ganga Bhadra; in that of Desata Deva it is ** Bhadra; in those of Padma Deva and Subhiksharája Deva it is Nanda Bhadra and in the Pála plates we have Bindabhadra on one and the Bhatta Gurava on another. In the Buddal Pála inscription the name is Binda Bhadra. The very remarkable list of officials common to all the plates has been analysed in the translation of the Kumaon plate. The coincidences in order and position in this respect cannot be accidental and clearly shows that all were derived from one common original in the family of the professional scribes whose tribal name was Bhadra. The form of dedication is the same in all and also the precatory verses attached to each grant. An examination of the names of the officials shows that it is improbable that all of them could not have existed in a small hill state, especially such as the keepers of camels and elephants and the commanders of cavalry. This portion of the form of the grant is clearly borrowed from that in use in a larger and more important state in the plains. Another point of resemblance is that both the hill grants and the Pála plates are dated from some unknown local era and in the hills clearly from the accession of the reigning monarch, a practice presumably also borrowed from the Bengal Rájas. The hill plates are still in possession of the representatives of the grantees and there is not the slightest reason for
believing them to be other than genuine; in fact not one of their present possessors can decipher a single line much less attempt a meaningless forgery of this nature.

Turning to the Pandukeswar plates we learn that Nimbarata Deva's reign was remarkable for some great contest with, we may suppose, a foreign foe. Nimbarata Deva himself is said to have vanquished his enemies as the rising sun dispels the mist, and his son Ishtagana Deva 'with the edge of his sword slew furious elephants.' If we accept this statement the elephant could hardly be used by one hill-tribe against another, so that the invader must have come from the plains and been met by the Katyúris at the passes into the hills, for within the hills themselves elephants could hardly be used. Lalitasúra Deva, however, is the prince who is most praised for his successes in war. Ever ready in his preparations for a campaign and aided by his vast wealth, he was found resistless and 'established the monarchs of the earth.' In the Pála inscriptions Go Pála is likened to Prithu as Lalitasúra is in his inscriptions. In the Buddal inscription of the minister Gurava Bhatta, the empire of Deva Pála is said to have extended from the Mahendra mountain to the Himálaya.

Of the second series of Kumaon plates those of Desata Deva and his son Padmata Deva are dated from Kárttikeyapura in the same manner as those of Lalitasúra Deva and that of Subhiksharája Deva are dated from Subhikshapura, most probably another name for Kárttikeyapura or a suburb thereof. They do not mention any Rája of the previous lists, but the character of the writing, the style and form, the name of the scribe, and the place from which they are dated is the same as in the former group. As these grants of Lalitasúra connect themselves by the names of the Rájas with the Búgeswar inscription from which they differ in form, this group must be considered as following those of Lalitasúra Deva, at no great distance of time. The two first records were written by the same scribe and all give a literally identical account of Salónaditya, ascribing to him many virtues and success in battle. All agree also in passing over his son Ichháta Deva with the simple record of his birth, and little more is said of his successor Desata Deva than that he and his mother were devout worshippers of Siva and Brahma and were exceedingly liberal to Brahmans and
the poor. Of Padmata Deva it is said that he was a devout Saiva and "acquired by the might of his arms unnumbered provinces on all sides, the owners of which coming to make him obeisance poured forth such incessant gifts of horses, elephants and jewels before him that they held in contempt the offerings made to Indra. He resembled Dadhichi and Chandragupta in his conduct and mastered the earth, stretching to its zone, the reservoir of the ocean" His son Subhiksharaja Deva was a "Vaishnava, devoted to the supreme Brahma and a patron of those learned in the Shastras," besides being adorned with many virtues. We can glean little more from the descriptions in these grants beyond what is given above.

With regard to the localities mentioned, the two grants of Lalitasura Deva are addressed to the officials and others in the district of Kàrttikkeyapura. One is translated here and need not be further noticed. The second conveys a similar grant to the same person of Thapyala Sari in the possession of Indra Vaha to provide for the necessities of the religious anchorites residing at Tapuban, a place on the right bank of the Dhauli above Joshimath, which will show that this village was still in the Kàrttikkeyapura district. The grant of Desata Deva is addressed to the officers in the Esàla district and bestows the village of Yamuna in the possession of Narayana Varmana on Vijayesvara. The grant of Padmata Deva is addressed to the officials of the district of Tanganapura and that of Subhiksharaja Deva to the officials of the districts of Tanganapura and Antaranga. Tanganapura has already been identified with the tract above the confluence of the Bhagirathi and Alaknanda and Antaranga with the country lying between those rivers. The first of these two bestows certain lands on the temple of Badarikasrama. There were four villages in Drumati in the possession of the Aditya family of Buddhachal together with fifteen shares (bhuiya) in Pangara also in Drumati, also the vritti of Ogala in Yoshi and another patch on the banks of the Gangápadi, an accretion to Sankrima, as well as the fields detached from Ulika. Also the land near the great banyan-tree in Kákasthal village in Drumati and two dronas of land in the Randayaka village in Yoshi.

1 Page 357.
In the grant of Subhiksharāja Deva there is a long list of villages and lands conferred on two priests, and amongst them the following which are given so that hereafter possibly they may be identified:

"Land in Vidimalaka belonging to Yachchhetaka: in Bhetha Sāryya: measuring eight adha; in Bārīyāl, measuring four dornas; in Vamolika; also an accretion from Kandayika to Sarana belonging to Subhattaka; a piece called Satika; also one called Yachobha Saddha, held by Goehittangaka; Talia Rāta belonging to Vihāndaka; Kahira belonging to Vena Vāka; Gangaraka belonging to Sohi Jīvāka; Pettaka; Kathanila; Nyāyapattāka; Bandiwala belonging to the Adityas; Ichhawala, Vihalaka and Maharijyaka; Khora-khattanka belonging to Silāditya; in Harshapura, land formerly belonging to Farbabbāna Unga in the estate of Durga Bhatta; also new land in Varosehika belonging to the Sittakas, Usokka, Vijjata, Dujjana, Attanga, Vāchataka and Varāha; Jatipātaka in Ijara; Samjjilya; Gododha in Purī belonging to the sons of Brātaka; Ghasamagaka in Yoshihka; Sihāra; Balfardda and Silla; Ibanga; Rullatha; Tirunga; Kattanaśia; Gondodārika; Yoga; Karkatathāla; Dālimūlaka belonging to Ghara Nāga; Dāraka belonging to Sirvāla; Karkarāta belonging to the Vijāyana; Chihdārika belonging to the Kasthikos; Randavaka; Loharaśa belonging to Tungadītyn; also land in Yoshihka; Ratnapallī near Sadāyika with the following limits: west of the boundary of Sankata, east of Andāriganika, north of the Ganga; and south of the village of Timahaka belonging to the sons of Senāyita." The donees are Nārayana and Brahmāswara, who appear to have been the officiating priests of the temple of Durga Devi. The tribal names Vāka, Jīvāka, Aditya, Vijāyana and Kasthul do not appear to occur now, but we have Manivāka as the name of one of the sons of the ruler of Sakadwipa and in the Bharhat sculptures.

The countries enumerated as subject to the Rājas who caused the grants to be inscribed are worthy of notice here. We shall accordingly place the statements of the six inscriptions together for comparison—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rāja's name.</th>
<th>Date of grant.</th>
<th>Tribes to whom it is addressed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Lalitasāra Deva ...</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Khasas, Draviras, Kalingas, Gauras, Odras, Andhras, Chándálas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Ditto ...</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>The same with the addition of Kirátas, Hūnas and Medas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Desata Deva ...</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Khasas, Kalingas, Húnas, Gauras, Medas, Andhras, Chándálas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Subhiksharāja Deva (son of Padma)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Same as No. 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Deva Pāla Deva ...</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Gauras, Mālavas, Khasas, Húnas, Kalingas, Karnátas, Līsátas, Bhoteśas, Medás, Andhrakas, Chándálas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Mungir plate contains four names not given in the Kumoon plates, those of the Málavas, Karnátas, Lásáta, and Bhotas. We have already seen that the Málavas were a Panjáb tribe who after several changes of abode eventually gave their name to the part of Central India now called Malwa. The Karnátas were a southern tribe who have also left their name behind them in the Carnatic. The Lásátas and Bhotas are spoken of together and quite correctly. Lhása was made the capital of the first really independent Tibetan State in or about 640 A.D., and the Bhotas represent the Chi-ang and wandering tribes not subject to Lhása and indeed the common people of Tibet generally. There was constant intercourse between the Buddhist people of Tibet and their fellow Buddhists in Magadha. The Mungir inscription shows that Deva Pála was a Buddhist, though one of a very liberal mind. The names of Lhása and Bhot have properly been omitted from the Kumoon inscriptions, as Kumoon was too near those countries to permit of their submission being recorded as a matter of fact. The insertion, too, of the names Dravíra in southern India, Kalinga on the Coromandel coast, Odra or Oríssa, Gaura in Bengal and Meda in the Panjáb or indeed of any other names than those of the Khasas and Kirátas must simply be due to the existence of these names in the original form from which the Bhadrás of Kumoon copied the terms of the grant.

In a grant of Náráyana Pála lately discovered at Bhégalpur and translated by Dr. Mitra1 we have a second record quite as full as that of the Mungir plate and some important rectifications of the genealogy. "The record opens with a stanza in praise of Go Pála, who was a devout Buddhist and a follower of Sugata. His son and immediate successor was Dharma Pála. The latter had a brother named Vák Pála, who lived under his sway. On his death Deva Pála, the eldest son of his brother, succeeded him. Vák Pála had a second son named Jaya Pála, who is said to have brought Oríssa and Allahabad under his brother's government. On the death of Deva Pála, Vigraha Pála, the son of Jaya Pála, came to the throne. Vigraha Pála was succeeded by his son Náráyana Pála, the donor of the grant." We have

1 J. A. S. Ben., XLVII., 1., 384.
accordingly to revise the indications afforded by the Mungir plate thus:

I. Go Pála.

II. Dharma Pála. Vák Pála

III. Deva Pála. Jaya Pála.

IV. Vigraha Pála I.

Nárayana Pála.

The donee's name was Siva Bhattára, a name found also in the Ballabhi grants, and the record was composed by Bhatta Guráva, the minister who erected the Buddal pillar. The latter is a record of the family of this minister and contains the names of Panchal and Gaya and of the son of Garga called Darbhapáni, of whom it is recorded that by his policy "the great prince Deva Pála made the earth tributary from the father of Reva, whose piles of rock are moist with juice from the heads of lascivious elephants, to the father of Gauri, whose white mountains are brightened with beams from the morn of Isvara and as far as the two oceans whose waters are red with the rising and with the setting sun." Here Deva Pála is credited with the conquest of the country from the Mahendra mountain which contains the source of the Reva to the Himavat who was father of Gauri. To Darbhapáni was born Someswar and to him Kedára Misra, trusting to whose wisdom, "the réja of Gaur for a long time enjoyed the country of the eradicated race of Utkala (Orissa) of the Húnas of humbled pride, of the kings of Dravira and Gujara whose glory was reduced and the universal sea girt throne." To him, amulem of Vrihaspati and to his religious rites, the prince Sura Pála, who was a second Indra and whose soldiers were fond of wounds, went repeatedly." Kedára-Misra had a son Gurava Misra, who was greatly respected by the prince Náráyana Pála and who caused the record to be inscribed by Binda Bhadra. We may also note that the donee in Deva Pála's inscription was a Misra. In the Ain-i-Akbari, Abul Fazl

* The Guravas in western India enjoy a monopoly of the service in Saiva temples and have a right to the offerings made: Ind. Ant., III., 77.

* As. Res., L 133: this is translated by Mr. C. Wilkins, with notes by Sir W. Jones. The inscription was found on a stone pillar near Buddal on the boundary of the Dinájpur and Boghra districts in Lower Bengal, about forty miles south-east of Dinájpur, in 1780.
gives the names of seven so-called Vaidya rajas of Bengal ending with Náráyana, whose successor Lakshmaniya was expelled by Muhammad Bakhtiýár Khilji in 1203 A.D. Before these Vaidyas occur the names of ten Pála rajas, all of which except the first three are wanting in their proper places in the inscriptions. The length of many of the reigns also is so absurdly prolonged as to render this tradition utterly worthless.

Vassiliev in his work on 'Buddhism' states, on the authority of Tábanáh, that the origin of the Pálas was in this wise. On the extinction of the Chandra dynasty as a ruling power in eastern India; in Orissa and Bengal and in the other five provinces of the east, each Kshatriya, Brahman and merchant constituted himself king of his surroundings, but there was no king ruling the country. The wife of one of the late kings assassinated by night every one of those who had been chosen to be kings, but after a certain number of years Go Pála, who had been elected for a time, delivered himself from her and was made king for life. He began to reign in Bengal, but afterwards reduced Magadha under his power. He built the Nálandára temple not far from Otantapura and reigned forty-five years. Sri Harsha was at this time reigning in Kashmir. Go Pála was succeeded by his son Deva Pála, who greatly extended his kingdom and re-established the Buddhist religion. He reigned forty-eight years and was succeeded by his son Rasa Pála, by a daughter of Vibharata, king of Gajana. After twelve years he was succeeded by Dharma Pála, who reigned sixty-four years and was a contemporary of Tissong l de-b tazan. The successors were—

Bádurakshita, son-in-law of Dharma Pála, reigned eight years.
Vaná Pála, son of Dharma Pála.
Mahá Pála, reigned fifty-two years, contemporary of Khri-ral.
Mahá Pála, son of Mahá Pála, reigned four years.
Sámu Pála, son-in-law of Mahá Pála, reigned twelve years.
Srehshta, eldest son of Mahá Pála, reigned three years.
Chánaka, maternal uncle of Srehshta, reigned twenty-nine years.
Bheya Pála, nephew of Chánaka, reigned thirty-two years.

1 Gladwin, II., 21. The following names with the length of reigns are given:—
Bhupála, 55: Dpápa, 96: Dpápa, 96: Bhupatpála, 70: Dhanpatpála, 45: Blijepála, 78: Jayapála, 98: Rajapála, 98: Bhôpála (brother of Rajapála). 5: Jagadpála (son of Bhôpála), 74. Bhupála may be identified with Go Pála; Dhirpála or more correctly Darhpála with Dharmpála and Deópála with Devapála.

3 Khrisong, 728-755 A.D.
Neya Pâla, son of Bheya Pâla, reigned thirty-five years.
Amar Pâla, son of Neya Pâla, reigned thirteen years.
Regency for eight years.
Hasti Pâla, son of Amra Pâla, reigned fifteen years.
Kámbâti Pâla, maternal brother of Hasti Pâla, reigned seventeen years.
Hâma Pâla, son of Hasti Pâla, reigned forty-six years.

Then came Lava Sena and expelled the Pâlas. Most of these
names are hopelessly out of accord with existing inscriptions.

In 1806, a grant inscribed on a copper-plate was found at Am-
gâchhi in parganah Sultânpur in the Dinápur district, a place
about fourteen miles from Buddal. It contained the name of Vi-
graha Pâla Deva and some others and was dated in samvat 12.
In an inscription from Sárñáth, however, we have a dated record
clearly belonging to the Pâlas. It was discovered on a figure of
Buddha near Benares by Mr. Jonathan Duncan in 1794 and bears
the date samvat 1083, equivalent to 1026 A.D. The writing has been translated by
Colonel Wilford and again by General Cunningham, whose version is as follows:—

"Adoration to Buddha. Having worshipped the lotus foot of Sri Dharma-
râsl, sprung from the lake of Varânasî, and having for its base the hair of pro-
strate kings, the fortunate Mahîpâla, king of Gaurâ, caused to be built in Kâl
hundred of monuments, such as Isána and Chitrâghanta. The fortunate Sthíra-
pâla and his younger brother, the fortunate Bâsanta-pâla, have renewed religion
completely in all its parts and have raised a tower (easilu) with an inner chamber
(garha-kuti) and eight large niches, samvat 1083, the 11th day of Pausha."

As now translated the date should be assigned to the buildings
of Sthîra Pâla and his brother, Bâsanta Pâla, who were contempo-
raries of Mahî Pâla, who according to the Angâchhi plate was him-
self a successor of Vigraha Pâla II. General Cunningham's new
reading and translation will set at rest the discussion regarding
the names and dates raised on Wilford's imperfect transcript. In
another inscription on the base of a statue of Buddha the ascetic
found by General Cunningham in Buddha Gaya we have the name
Mahîpâla and in the second line containing the date the following
formula:—

1 As. Res., IX., 442; Colebrooke's Essays, II., 379; J. A. S. Ben. XLVII.,
L., 387.
2 Arch., Rep., III., 121.
3 Arch., Rep., V., 132; J. A. S. Ben., IV., 211. Lassen makes the successors of Nârâyanâ Pâla rulers of Kânauj and
connects with them the name Yasah Pâla found in an inscription dated in the
year 1036 A.D.; see Colebrooke Misc. Ess., II., 277; J. A. S. Ben., V., 731.
4 Arch., Rep., III., 132.
which General Cunningham translates:—"In the 10th year of the prosperous and victorious reign of the paramount king, the eminent Buddhist, the fortunate Mahipâla Deva." Here we have the exact formula used in the dates of the Pandu keswar plates and which we have translated "in the year of the rising realm of victory." We have other inscriptions of Go Pâla, Vigraha Pâla, Mahi Pâla, Naya Pâla, Râma Pâla Deva, Mahendra Pâla Deva, Govind Pâla Deva (1175 A.D.), all of which except the last are dated in regnal years.

General Cunningham takes the names from the Amgâchhi plates and adds to them the name Deva Pâla from the Mungir plate and that of Sura Pâla from the Buddal pillar. He takes the date of the Sârnâth inscription as settled and allowing 25 years to each of the thirteen names in his list between Pâla dates.

Vigraha Pâla II. and Go Pâla, places the latter in 765 A.D. The rectification in the list due to the Bhâgalpur plate reduces the number of names and in addition the average of 25 years for each reign is excessive and even the 20 years given by Dr. Mitra is far too high. Allowing the 20 years to each reign assumed by Dr. Mitra and accepting the Sârnâth date we have the following result:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A.D.</th>
<th>A.D.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Go Pâla... 855</td>
<td>Pâla... 975</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharma Pâla... 875</td>
<td>Vigraha Pâla II... 905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deva Pâla... 895</td>
<td>Mahi Pâla... 1015-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vigraha Pâla I... 915</td>
<td>Naya Pâla... 1040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nârâyana Pâla... 935</td>
<td>Vigraha Pâla III... 1080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Râja Pâla... 955</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This calculation assigns the accession to power of the Pâla dynasty of Magadha to the latter half of the ninth century. Those who have followed the remarkable coincidences in form, language and recorded facts between the grants of the Bengal Râjas and those assigned to the Kumaon Katyûris will readily see that all are

1 Arch. Rep., III., 183: the initial date of Go Pâla is given as 765 A.D. at p. 134 and as 850 A.D. at p. 139. 2 J. A. S. Ben., XLVII., i, 394. 3 Ibid., VII., 40: XXXIV., i, 199: XLVII., i, 402.
derived from a common original. The quaint list of officials to whom the grants are addressed has no parallel elsewhere. We find it, in a modified form, in the inscriptions of the Senas, the successors and in part the contemporaries of the later Pālas. In the Baktirangaj inscription of Kesva Sena (1136 A.D.) the following titles occur:—

'Samupagatūyeha rāja rājanyaka rāj nibālaka rājaputra rājdmāya mahāpurohita mahādharmanāmadhyajñā mahāśāndhivigrahīkā mahadeśapati mahādahāśadhiḥ chārodvaranika naubala hastyavagomahishdajavikādi vyāprita gauλniūka dandupāsika dandanīyaka neyagapatyādīnanyāṃśchi sakalardyādhīkapojnavadhyaka kekanodhya kehpa ravadnēcha chhatta bhakttajātāyān, Bṛhmanabrāhmanottarānecha.'

Here, too, the grant is dated in saṃvat 3. A similar formula occurs in the Tarpaṇdighi inscription of Lakṣmāman Sēnā1 dated in saṃvat 7.

The short list of officials given in the grants of the Rājthor Rājas of Kanauj3 has nothing in common with these Pāla lists and we have to look for their origin elsewhere. We think that this will be found in the influence of the Hindu revivalists from western India, for the beginnings and germs of these lists are traceable from the Vallabhi grants of Gujṛat onwards in western inscriptions.3 The Gurava who was minister of the Pālas was a Bhatta, a family who for generations were scribes of the rulers of Gujṛat and the Guravas are to this day in charge of the Saiva temples in western India. The practice of dating in regnal years was general in western India after the reign of Vikramāditya VI. (1075 A.D.), of whom Mr. Fleet observes4 that:—"After his time it became the custom for his successors, as a rule, to date their inscrip-

1 Ibid., XLIV, 1.  
3 Dhruvasena l. has the title Dandanīyaka, Ind. Ant., IV., 101: see especially Guhassena's inscription. Ibid., p. 175, and the plate edited by Prof. Ichhāndārkar in J. B. B. A. S., X., 77, and the Gurjara grants of Dadda in Ind. Ant., VII, 61. In an inscription found at Suoni we find a grant of Pravarasena, Raja of Vākātaka, in which the form of the date of the grant is somewhat similar to that given in the Pandukēswar plates:—"pravarādhāmanā rājyasaṅga terse agra naadanda. Prīṣnap translates this sentence, "in the eighteenth year of his reign," but notes that it may mean 'date of the growing (or current) reign'. Vākātaka lay between the Bay of Bengal and the Sīla hills to the south of Haidarābād: sūtras. The Jaina Merutunga mentions the 'Vikrama Rāja rājya-kalā' or dynastic year of Vikrama which commenced 17 years earlier than the Vikrama era or Rāja-阎māsā: J. B. B. A. S., IX., 149: J. A. S. Ben, V., 736.  
tions not in the Saka era but in the years of their reigns coupled with the name of the samvatara of the particular year under reference." This is not strictly in accordance with the Kumaon practice, but it is of a similar nature and is another link in the chain connecting Kumaon with western influences. The formula for the regnal year occurs in a Pála inscription already noticed in exactly the same peculiar words as those used in the Pandukeswar plates, but it is also the ‘standard formula’ in Chalukya grants and occurs in one of Udyotaka Kesari Deva of Kalinga. The form of dedication and the precatory verses at the end are common to all India. We have, however, the tribal name of the scribes the same in all the Pandukeswar and many of the Pála grants.

In addition there is the express statement that Dharma Pála visited Kedár, a connection that was kept up by Deva Pála, and it was in their time (the latter half of the ninth century) that these Pandukeswar grants were inscribed. We are not without further evidence to show a connection between Bengal and Kumaon. The Senas, who followed the Pálas in Mágadha, have left an inscription at the great temple of Jägeswar beyond Almora, which though very imperfect allows the name Máchava Sena to be read. The Rájas of Mágadha are distinctly mentioned in the Nepál annals as having made incursions into the hills. Go Pála was probably the first to extend his dominion northwards and his conquest was confirmed and enlarged by Dharma Pála, whose generous treatment of the vanquished in sending them back to their own country laden with presents was so unusual that the conquered when reflecting on the deed 'longed to see him again.' It is evident, therefore, that there was no permanent occupation of the country and instead a semi-friendly relation arose which was further cemented by the enlistment of followers of the Bengál Rája in the service of the hill chief. It is to these circumstances that we owe the occurrence of the names of the hill-districts of Lásáta and Bhot in the Pála inscriptions. It may be suggested that all these records should be referred to an intrusive Bengál colony settled in the Katyúr valley, but with existing materials this theory must be negatived.

1 Ibid., X., 60. 2 J. A. S. Ben., VIII., 557. 3 Cf. Burnell's 'Elements of South Indian Palaeography.' 4 Thomas's Prinsep, II., 272. J. A. S. Ben., XLVII., I., 396.
There is little in the nature of records that can be relied upon to help us in ascertaining the time when the power of the Katyúris began to decline, but there are several traditions as to their dispersion which will aid us in estimating the causes of their downfall. One of these causes was the tyranny and incapacity of the later Katyúris. The curse pronounced on the family by Nar Sinha worked through them as the following story regarding Dham Deo and Bir Deo will show:—"The revenue of the country was collected in kind and it was customary to give out a part of the grain brought into the Rája's treasury to be ground for the use of the household. Each village took its turn to prepare the flour, as a customary due to the State. The servants of the Rája, however, used to measure out the grain in the slightly indented bottom of the náli turned upside down, but still called the grain given out a náli. When the people brought back the grain ground, the Rája's officer spread at the foot of a great stone seven mats and then mounting on the stone, scattered the flour in the wind. The heavier particles fell on the mats near the stone and none but the very finest reached the seventh mat. Then coming down he collected the flour from the seventh mat and told the people to take away the rest as it was not fit for his master's use. Of this fine flour, moreover, they were obliged to give a quantity equal to the nominal weight of the grain that had been given out to them from the Rája's stores. The Rája used also to seize their sons and daughters as slaves and the taxation was on no system. In order to provide themselves with water from a favourite spring (Hatchina) some twelve miles from the palace, the Katyúris stationed slaves along the road, who remained there night and day and passed the water from hand to hand. Bir Deo still further shocked the prejudices of the people by forcibly marrying his own aunt. He used to fasten iron rings on to the shoulders of the litter-bearers and pass through them the poles of the dandi, so that the bearers might not be able to throw him down a precipice; but wearied with his tyranny and profligacy two men were at last found patriotic enough to sacrifice themselves for the good of the people. They reflected that they themselves were ruined, their children were taken as slaves and life was not

1 A measure in common use.  
2 A litter in use in the hills.
worth living: so one day being pressed into service as litter-bearers, they flung themselves and the Rája over a cliff and so perished. After the Rája's death dissensions broke out amongst his family and each seized on a portion of the kingdom for himself, whilst the countries beyond Kumcon and Garhwál that had always paid tribute to the Katyúris threw off their allegiance.” This account represents very fairly the state of the country at the time of the rising of the Chand family. We find then the Domkot Ráwat ruling in Káli Kumaon in subordination to a branch of the Katyúri family which had established itself in a fort on the Súi range. Another branch was settled in Doti, a third in Askot, a fourth in Bárarahmandal, a fifth still occupied Katyúr and Dánpur, and a sixth had several settlements in Páli, chief of which were Dwára Hát and Lakhanpur. The ruined temples and buildings in many parts of the country are attributed to these Katyúri Rájas. The low carved stone pillars in eastern Kumaon known as bríh kumbh (vrihastambha) are also attributed to the same dynasty and are said to have been erected to mark the halts or encampments in the royal progresses. Batten writes that “some of these ruins, especially the chabútras and wells, are not without beauty, at least in their carving, and the great number of small temples even now standing, each as it were dedicated to a separate idol, and the quantity of idol images themselves which have been found in their precincts, show that the Katyúri Rájas were devout worshippers of the whole Hindu Pantheon. The shape of the buildings and the character of the sculptures are said to be similar to the architectural features observed in the south of India; in Bundelkhand and on the banks of the Nerbudda. From the account above given it will at once be seen that the dynasty of which we are speaking was of low-land origin, and that no signs of an aboriginal extraction are visible in its remains. As before the Muhammadan conquests of India, the rulers of a region so illustrious in the Shástras as the Himálaya mountains, being also by their position masters of the sacred sites at the various sources of the Ganges, may be supposed to have held rank equal with, if not superior to, the Rájas of Katehir, or the country between the mountains and the Ganges now called Rohilkhand; and as, after the establishment of the Muhammadan
empire in Hindustán, the Kumaon Rájas were found in hereditary possession of the Taráí by a tenure quite independent of any grant from low-land potentates, I see no reason for doubting that the Taráí throughout its whole extent formed an integral part of the Katyúrí Kumaon Ráj. That it also formed an important part may be assumed from the almost absolute necessity still existing, that a large portion of plain country should, if not attached to the hills, at least be available for the annual resort of the hill-men and their cattle (an occupancy which under native rulers could hardly be maintained without an actual right of property in the soil, and actual separate possession thereof by the hill powers); and from analogies drawn from the late and existing feeling in Nepál in regard to the tract at its base. Beyond this all is conjecture regarding these ancient times; and the question whether Sambhal and Bareli were then subject to Katyúr may be left for discussion when more accurate materials are available.

There is nothing, however, to show us that during Katyúrí times there was either such communication with the plains or such a surplus population in the hills as would enable them to colonise the Taráí. On the other hand everything that we know indicates that from the ninth to the eleventh centuries the Taráí had relapsed into its original state of forest and its towns were deserted and allowed to fall to ruin; in fact it was not till the sixteenth century that the hill state attempted to exercise any practical control over any part of the low-lands beyond the strip close to the foot of the hills, known as the Bhábar. Elsewhere we have given the pedigrees of the principal Katyúrí families, but, strange to say, we do not find amongst them a single name of those known from the inscriptions already noticed. There is no reason, however, to doubt that these families are really members of the Katyúrí stock, for, more than two centuries ago, their position as descendants of the old Rájas of Katyúr was recognised by the Chand rulers of Kumaon. It is commonly believed that the object of the Chands in neither destroying nor exiling the Katyúris was that they might be able to obtain wives for the members of their own family. The Chands often married Katyúri wives, but never gave their own daughters to the Katyúris.
These now intermarry with the families of the petty Vaisya Thákuri Rájas to the east of Doti and Jumla in Nepál. The Askot family also intermarries with the Nepálese, but of late years the poorer descendants of the Páli families have begun to intermarry with the more wealthy Khasiyas. Besides these dynasties sprung from the original stock, we find others who had no connection with the Katyúris¹ established at this time in Kumaon. Phaldakot and Dhaniyakot fell into the hands of a tribe of Káthi Rajpúts who claim to be of Surajbansi origin. Chau-garkha came into the power of the Padyár Rajpúts, whose capital village was Padyárkot. A family calling themselves Chandrabansí Rajpúts came from Pyuthána in Doti and established themselves at Maukot in Gangoli. After the conquest of Gangoli by the Chands this family returned to Doti, where their descendants still exist. Kota, Chhakhhta, Katoli and the remaining pattis to the south became subject to the leading Khasiya families, whilst Sor, Síra, Dárma, Askot and Juhár were annexed to the Doti kingdom.

¹The Manurál and Kálakoti Rajpúts claim descent from the Katyúris.